BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 91

The Continuation of Theophanes

ΧΡΟΝΟΓΡΑΦΙΑ

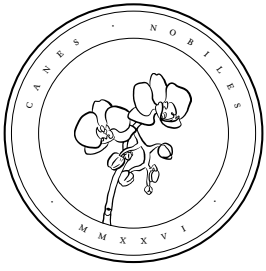
The Continuation of Theophanes

Books I–IV: From Leo V to Michael III

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

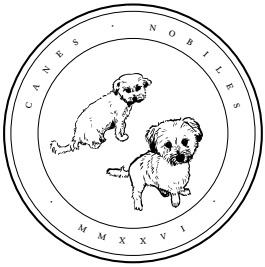


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 91 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows Immanuel Bekker's text
in Theophanes Continuatus (Bonn, 1838), Books I–IV

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The margin gives the edition's chapter numbers, which begin again with each book. The fifth book, the Life of Basil, is Byzantine Greek 87.

CONTENTS

BOOK I · LEO V

Prologue 7

1–6 · Bardanes and the Rise of Leo 11

7–14 · Leo Takes the Throne 28

15–26 · Iconoclasm and the Murder of Leo 45

BOOK II · MICHAEL II

1–7 · Michael of Amorion 68

8–13 · Thomas the Slav 80

14–17 · The Siege of Constantinople 96

18–21 · The End of Thomas and the Loss of Crete 111

22–28 · Crete, Sicily, and the Death of Michael 128

BOOK III · THEOPHILOS

1–6 · Theophilos and Theodora 142
7–10 · Justice, Building, and the Embassy of John 156
11–17 · The Persecution of the Image-Lovers 170
18–23 · Theophobos and the Persians 181
24–29 · Manuel, John the Grammarian, and Sozopetra 196
30–37 · The Fall of Amorion 212
38–44 · Theophobos, the Death of Theophilos, and His Buildings . 228

BOOK IV · MICHAEL III

1–6 · The Restoration of the Images 249
7–12 · John the Grammarian 260
13–16 · Bulgaria and the Paulicians 272
17–21 · Bardas, Theoktistos, and the Treasury 281
22–25 · Theodora Deposed; Samosata and Poson 292
26–29 · Bardas Caesar and Leo the Philosopher 310
30–36 · Ignatius, Photius, and the Rus 325
37–45 · The Fall of Bardas and the Death of Michael 336

ΧΡΟΝΟΓΡΑΦΙΑ ΣΥΓΓΡΑΦΕΙΣΑ ΕΚ ΠΡΟΣΤΑΓΜΑΤΟΣ ΚΩΝΣΤΑΝΤΙΝΟΥ ΤΟΥ ΦΙΛΟΧΡΙΣΤΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΠΟΡΦΥΡΟΓΕΝΝΗΤΟΥ ΔΕΣΠΟΤΟΥ, ΥΙΟΥ ΛΕΟΝΤΟΣ ΤΟΥ ΣΟΦΩΤΑΤΟΥ ΔΕΣΠΟΤΟΥ ΚΑΙ ΑΥΤΟΚΡΑΤΟΡΟΣ ∗∗∗ ΑΡΧΟΜΕΝΗ ΟΠΟΥ ΕΛΗΞΕ ΘΕΟΦΑΝΗΣ ∗∗∗ ΤΩ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙ ΜΙΧΑΗΛ ΥΙΟΥ ΘΕΟΦΙΛΟΥ ΤΟΥ ΚΟΥΡΟΠΑΛΑΤΟΥ, ΗΓΟΥΝ ΑΠΟ ΤΗΣ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΑΣ ΛΕΟΝΤΟΣ ΤΟΥ ΑΡΜΕΝΙΟΥ

PROLOGUE

The writer addresses the emperor Constantine, who has gathered the subjects of this history himself, and praises him for reviving what time let slip and caring for history, which earlier rulers neglected. Constantine collected what is written and what is told by report and set it before all as a common school, the writer serving only as his hand. Theophanes, whose grandson by kinship and marriage Constantine is, ended his chronicle with the reign of Michael the kouropalates and his betrayal and defeat by the Bulgarians, mentioning only Leo's proclamation and nothing of who Leo was or how he was reared; this history joins the remaining parts to that head and carries the story forward.

Τῶν δὲ καθ' ἕκαστα τὰς ὑποθέσεις ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς
of-the and in particular the subjects the same emperor
Κωνσταντῖνος φιλοπόνως συνέλεξε καὶ εὐσυνόπτως ἐξέθετο,
Constantine laboriously collected and comprehensibly set-out
νῆ τῶν μετέπειτα δῆλα γίν ∗∗∗ τῆς βασιλείας. Καὶ
(broken) of-the afterward clear (broken) (lacuna) of-the reign and
τοῦτο πάντως τῶν σῶν, ὦ φιλοσοφώτατε βασιλεῦ, καλῶν,
this surely (is)-of-the your O most-philosophical emperor fine(-deeds)
μετά γε πολλῶν ἄλλων τε καὶ μεγάλων, τὸ τὰ
with at-least many others both and great the the(-things)

τῷ χρόνῳ παραρρυέντα καὶ κεχωρηκότα πρὸς τὸ μὴ ὂν
by-the time having-slipped-away and having-gone toward the not being
πρὸς παλινζωΐαν αὖθις καὶ παλιγγενεσίαν ἀναγαγεῖν, καὶ
to revival again and rebirth to-bring-back and
τοῦ τῆς ἱστορίας ἐπιμεληθῆναι καλοῦ, ἀλλὰ μὴ τοῖς
of-the of-the history to-take-care fine(-thing) but not by-the(-men)
πρὸ τοῦ τὴν βασιλικὴν ἐπειλημμένοις ἀμεληθῆναι ἀρχήν.
before the(-time) the imperial having-taken-hold to-be-neglected rule
οἱ μὲν γὰρ ζῆλον ἐζηλωκότες τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ἀζήλωτον
the(-ones) indeed for zeal having-emulated for-the good(-things) unenviable
ὑπεξῃρήσθωσαν τοῦ λόγου. τινὲς διενηνοχέναι ἐσπουδάκασι
let-be-excepted of-the account some to-have-excelled have-striven
τῶν πολλῶν κατ᾽ οὐδέν, ὅτι μὴ λόγου σύντροφοι
of-the many in nothing except that of-learning nurslings
ἀλλ᾽ ἀγροικίας γεγόνασι κατεντρύφημα. τί γὰρ τοιοῦτον
but of-rusticity have-become delight what for such
ἐξασκεῖν αὐτοκράτορα δεῖ, ὃ μὴ ∗∗∗ ἐπιφέρει τὴν ὄνησιν
to-practice (an)-emperor must which not (lacuna) brings the benefit
μετὰ λόγου γινομένων, δέον ἐπιμελεῖσθαι ἀνδρῶν καὶ
with learning happening it-being-needful to-care-for men and
τῆς λογικῆς ὅτι μάλιστα ἐπιστήμης, ἐξ ὧν τὸ κράτος
of-the learned as most knowledge from which the power
βασιλείας, ὡς ἂν μὴ λάθοιεν κατὰ πρανοῦς
of-empire so-that — not they-might-escape-notice down (the)-slope
φερόμενοι ἀλογωθέντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ κινδυνεύσῃ
being-borne having-been-made-irrational the men and might-be-endangered
τοῦτο, ᾧ τῶν πάντων διαφέρομεν, ἀφωνίᾳ παραδοθέν.
this by-which from-the all we-differ to-speechlessness handed-over
Ἀλλ᾽ ὅσον μέν σοι πεπόνηται, πραότατε βασιλεῦ,
but as-much-as indeed by-you has-been-labored most-gentle emperor
περὶ τὴν λογικὴν καὶ τὴν τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐπιμέλειαν,
about the learned and the of-the men care

ἵνα τἄλλα....., θεωρήσουσι μὲν οἱ σοφοί, ὅτι δὴ καὶ
so-that the-rest will-behold indeed the wise that indeed also
σύ, μᾶλλον δὲ δὴ σὺ σαφῶς, ὅτι γε καὶ ἐκεῖνοι
you rather and indeed you clearly that at-least also those
σοφοί. ἱστορεῖς δὲ αὐτός, χεῖρα μόνως λαβὼν ἡμῶν
(are)-wise you-narrate and yourself (a)-hand only having-taken our
διακονουμένην σοι, ὅσα τοῖς πρὸ σοῦ βεβίωται,
serving you as-much-as by-the(-men) before you has-been-lived
κἂν ἀποχρώντως ἔχωσι τὸ φαῦλον καὶ οὐ λαμπρόν, ἐπεὶ
even-if sufficiently they-have the mean and not brilliant since
καὶ τούτων ἔνεστι θηρᾶσαι τοῖς σπουδαίοις τὰ χρήσιμα.
also from-these it-is-possible to-hunt for-the earnest(-ones) the useful(-things)
ἀμέλει τοιγαροῦν πάσης ἀσχολίας καὶ ἀργίας τὴν περὶ
assuredly therefore (over)-every occupation and idleness the about
λόγου προτετιμηκὼς σπουδήν, ἅτε δὴ τούτου μάλιστα
learning having-preferred zeal inasmuch-as indeed this most-of-all
τοῖς ὑπηκόοις φιλομαθέσι τε καὶ φιλιστοροῦσιν ζῆλον καὶ
in-the subjects learning-loving both and history-loving zeal and
ἀρετὴν ἐγγεννῶντος, τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῶν γεγραμμένων
virtue engendering the(-things) indeed from the written(-things)
τὰ δὲ ἐκ τῶν ἀκοῇ παραδεδομένων συνηθροικὼς
the(-things) and from the by-hearing handed-down having-gathered-together
ὥσπερ τι κοινὸν διδασκαλεῖον προθεῖναι πᾶσιν ἐβουλεύσω
as some common school to-set-before all you-resolved
καλῶς, ἐκείνην ταύτης ἀρχὴν εἶναι νομίσας τῆς ἱστορίας
well that of-this beginning to-be thinking of-the history
ἀρίστην, τὴν τῷ μακαρίτῃ Θεοφάνει γενομένην
best the for-the blessed Theophanes having-come-about
κατάληξιν, ὃν κατὰ συγγένειαν καὶ ἀγχιστείαν, τὸ εἶναι
close whom by kinship and affinity the to-be

υἱωνὸς λαχών, ἀποσεμνύνεις τε ἐκ τῶν σῶν ἱκανῶς
grandson having-obtained you-dignify both from the yours sufficiently
καὶ ἀντιλαμβάνεις αὖθις παρ' αὐτοῦ τινὰ εὔκλειαν.
and receive-in-return again from him some renown
Ἐκεῖνος μὲν οὖν εἰς τὴν τοῦ κουροπαλάτου Μιχαὴλ
that(-man) indeed then at the of-the kouropalates Michael
βασιλείαν καὶ ἥτταν τὴν ἐκ τῶν Βουλγάρων συμβᾶσαν
reign and defeat the(-one) from the Bulgarians having-befallen
αὐτῷ καταπροδοθέντος ὑπὸ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ κατέληγε, τῆς τοῦ
him (he)-having-been-betrayed by the own(-men) ended the —
Λέοντος μόνον μνησθεὶς ἀναρρήσεως, μηδὲν μήθ' ὅθεν
of-Leo only having-mentioned proclamation nothing neither whence
ἦν μήθ' ὅπως ἐτράφη δῆλον τοῖς ἀναγινώσκουσι
he-was nor how he-was-reared clear to-the(-ones) reading
πεποιηκώς. ἡμεῖς δέ, ὥσπερ τῇ κεφαλῇ τὰ ἄλλα μέρη
having-made we but as to-the head the other parts
συνάπτοντες, αὐτήν τε τὴν ἱστορίαν ὁλόσωμον ἀλλ' οὐχ
joining itself both the history whole-bodied but not
ἡμιτελῆ ἀποδείκνυμεν, καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἑξῆς καὶ κάτω χρόνον
half-finished we-show and to the next and later time
τοῖς μὴ ῥαθυμότερον ζῶσι διαβιβάζομεν, κέρδος ἀλλ'
for-the(-ones) not more-carelessly living we-carry-across profit but
οὐ ζημίαν αὐτοῖς πορίζόμενοι, εἴγε δὴ καλὸν καὶ πρὸς
not loss for-them providing if-indeed indeed (it-is)-fine also for
ἀσφάλειαν εὔοδον τῶν ἀγαθῶν τε καὶ μὴ τὸν βίον
safety (an)-easy-way of-the good both and not the life
διαγινώσκειν.
to-discern

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΑΣ ΛΕΟΝΤΟΣ. ΛΟΓΟΣ Α.

1–6 · BARDANES AND THE RISE OF LEO

Leo, Armenian by race and partly of Assyrian stock, moves as a youth to Pidra in the Anatolikon, and the general Bardanes Tourkos takes him into his bodyguard with Michael the Stammerer and Thomas. A monk at Philomelion warns Bardanes off the throne and foretells that the first two companions will reign while the third is only acclaimed and perishes. Bardanes revolts against Nikephoros, is deserted by Leo and Michael, who are rewarded with commands, yields, takes the habit on Prote, and is blinded. Entrusted with the army's pay, Leo idles at Euchaita, flees a Hagarene raid, and is flogged and exiled. Recalled under Michael the kouropalates, he becomes general of the Anatolikon; when Krum demands back the refugees and the council refuses, Leo urges battle, then turns and flees at the first clash, the Romans are routed, and the army proclaims him emperor.

Πατρὶς μὲν οὖν τοῦ δηλωθέντος Λέοντος Ἀρμενία, γένος 1
fatherland indeed then of-the shown Leo (was)-Armenia race
δὲ τὸ μὲν ἐξ Ἀσσυρίων τὸ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν Ἀρμενίων,
and in-part indeed from Assyrians in-part and also of-the(-very) Armenians
οἳ καὶ τοὺς ἰδίους ἐξ ἀνοσίου γνώμης σφαγῇ μιαφόνῳ
who also the own from unholy purpose to-slaughter bloodstained
παραδόντες γεννήτορας ὑπερορίας κατεδικάσθησαν, κἀκεῖσε
having-handed-over parents to-exile were-condemned and-there
δὴ τὸν πένητα βίον, ἅτε δὴ καὶ φυγάδες, διαθλοῦντες
indeed the poor life inasmuch-as indeed also fugitives struggling-through
τὸν εἰρημένον θῆρα ἀπέτεκον. ἄρτι γοῦν εἰς ἐφήβους
the said beast begot just at-any-rate into youths
ὁ Λέων ἐτάττετο, καὶ κώμην Πίδραν κατονομαζομένην,
— Leo was-ranked and (a)-village Pidra named
ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα τελοῦσαν τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν, τῆς πατρίδος
under the theme belonging of-the Anatolikoi for-the fatherland
ἀλλάσσεται· ἔνθα δὴ καὶ ἀνδρὸς ἡλικίαν δεξάμενος,
he-exchanged where indeed also of-man (the)-age having-received

τοῖς μαχιμωτάτοις καὶ φονικωτάτοις καταριθμούμενος
among-the most-warlike and most-murderous being-counted
δόξης εὐμοίρησεν ἐπὶ γενναιότητι. Νικηφόρος τότε τὰς
of-glory he-had-good-share for nobility Nikephoros then the
τῆς βασιλείας ἴθυνεν ἡνίας, ὁ τρόπαιον ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ
of-the empire steered reins the(-one) trophy in Bulgaria
γενόμενος, καὶ μονοστράτηγον τὸν Βαρδάνιον, ᾧ
having-become and sole-general — Bardanes to-whom
Τοῦρκος ἐπίκλην, τῶν πέντε θεμάτων τῶν κατὰ
Tourkos (the)-surname of-the five themes the(-ones) in
τὴν Ἀνατολὴν τὴν ἐφορείαν καὶ πρόνοιαν διοικούμενον
the East the oversight and providence administering
διά τε τὴν ἐν πολέμοις τόλμαν καὶ τὰς ἄλλας
because-of both the in wars daring and the other
ἐπανθούσας αὐτῷ ἀρετὰς ἐξαπέσταλκεν· ὃς ἅτε δὴ
blooming-on him virtues had-sent-out who inasmuch-as indeed
τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἀγαπῶν κυριεύειν καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ἑκάστοτε
of-the enemies loving to-master and the empire each-time
ὀνειροπολῶν, τοῦτόν τε, περὶ οὗ ὁ λόγος, τὸν Λέοντα
dreaming-of this(-man) both about whom the account(-is) — Leo
καταπληκτικὸν βλέποντα καὶ γενναῖον ἀνάστημα ἔχοντα
formidable looking and noble stature having
καὶ ἄλλως ἀστεῖον ἐν ταῖς ὁμιλίαις δοκοῦντα τοῖς
and otherwise urbane in the conversations seeming among-the
ἑαυτοῦ δορυφόροις ἐγκαταλέγει καὶ διακόνοις, καὶ πρό
his-own bodyguards enrolls and attendants and before
γε τούτου ἢ μετὰ τοῦτο μικρὸν Μιχαήλ τε τὸν Τραυλὸν
at-least this or after this (a)-little Michael both the Stammerer
καὶ Θωμᾶν τὸν ἀπὸ λίμνης Γαζουροῦ, ταπεινοὺς πάντας
and Thomas the(-one) from (the)-lake Gazouros humble all

καὶ ἀζήλους ὄντας καὶ ἀρτίως εἰς γνῶσιν ἀγομένους
and unenvied being and just-now into notice being-brought
τοῖς τὰς πολεμικὰς ἐγκεχειρισμένοις ἀρχάς.
to-the(-men) the warlike having-been-entrusted commands
ἐκρέμαντο οὖν οὗτοι τοῦ Βαρδανίου, καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ τὰς 2
hung then these(-men) — on-Bardanes and on him the
κοσμικὰς ἐλπίδας ἐσάλευον· καὶ οὗτος τῆς βασιλείας ὢν
worldly hopes they-rode and he of-the empire being
ἐραστὴς ἀνδρί τινι μονάζοντι κατὰ τὸν τοῦ Φιλομηλίου
(a)-lover to-a-man certain living-as-a-monk in the — of-Philomelion
χῶρον καὶ ἐνδιαιτωμένῳ τὴν ταύτης ἀνακοινοῦται γνώμην
district and dwelling the of-it shares mind
αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιθυμίαν, καὶ πρὸς θεὸν εὐχὰς ἱκετηρίους
with-him and desire and to god prayers suppliant
παρεκάλει τοῦτον ἀναπέμπειν, τὰ αὐτοῦ διαβήματα
he-begged him to-send-up the his steps
κατευθυνούσας καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ἐπιβραβευούσας αὐτῷ.
directing and the empire awarding to-him
ἀλλ᾽ ἤκουσεν αὐθωρὸν ὡς οὐ δέοι τοιούτων κατατολμᾶν
but be-heard at-once that not one-should such to-dare-against
πραγμάτων, Βαρδάνιε, δι᾽ ὧν ἀπώλειά τε περιουσίας
affairs Bardanes through which loss both of-property
καὶ ὀμμάτων περικοπὴ καὶ δυστυχία ἄλλως οὐ καλῶς σοι
and of-eyes cutting-off and misfortune otherwise not well for-you
γενήσεται· ἀλλ᾽ εἴ τι ἔχεις πεισθῆναί σοι συμβουλεύοντι,
will-come but if anything you-have to-be-persuaded you advising
ἀποπήδησον τούτων διὰ βραχέων, ἀρχήν τινα μηδ᾽ ὅλως
jump-away from-these in brief beginning any nor at-all
τῶν τοιούτων σου πραγμάτων βάλλων εἰς νοῦν. ἐπληρώθη
of-the such your affairs casting into mind was-filled
κατηφείας καὶ ἀχλύος ὁ ἄνθρωπος τούτων τῶν λόγων
with-dejection and gloom the man these the words

ἀκηκοώς. καὶ τέλος ἐξῄει τοῦ δωματίου πλήρης ἀθυμίας
having-heard and finally went-out of-the chamber full of-despondency
καὶ θλίψεως. ὡς δὲ τοὺς εἰρημένους ἄνδρας, Λέοντά τε
and distress when and the said men Leo both
καὶ Μιχαὴλ καὶ Θωμᾶν, τὸν ἵππον ἄγοντας ἀναβῆναι
and Michael and Thomas the horse leading to-mount
τούτῳ ὁ μοναχὸς ἐθεάσατο, τὸν στρατηγὸν ὑποστρέφειν
it the monk saw the general to-return
παρεκελεύετο· καὶ ὡς καινῶν τινῶν καὶ ξένων
he-urged and as new some and strange(-things)
ἀκούσεσθαι προσδοκῶν, θᾶττον ἢ λόγος ὑπέστρεφεν.
to-hear expecting quicker than word he-returned
ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνον μὲν αὖθις ἐξελιπάρει μὴ πρὸς τὰ ἐλπιζόμενα
but that(-man) indeed again he-entreated not to the hoped-for
αὐτομολῆσαι δεινὰ καὶ τὴν ἀποῦσαν κακοπραγίαν
to-desert terrible(-things) and the absent misfortune
τῆς παρούσης εὐδαιμονίας ἀλλάξασθαι· αὐτοὺς δὲ τούτους
for-the present happiness to-exchange themselves and these
προφήτιδι γλώττῃ διεμαρτύρετο, βεβαιῶν ὡς ὁ πρῶτος
with-prophetic tongue he-testified confirming that the first
τούτων καὶ δεύτερος τῆς σοι πεποθημένης βασιλείας
of-these and (the)-second of-the by-you longed-for empire
γενήσονται ἐγκρατεῖς, ἀλλ' οὐ σύ, ὁ τρίτος δὲ εὐφημίας
will-become masters but not you the third and of-acclamation
μόνης καὶ ἀναρρήσεως μετασχὼν οὐδ' ὅλως εὐοδωθήσεται,
alone and proclamation having-shared not at-all will-prosper
ἀλλὰ καὶ κακῶς τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπορρήξει τὴν ἑαυτοῦ. τούτοις
but also wretchedly the soul will-break-off the his-own by-these
βαλλόμενος τὴν ψυχὴν ποικίλως ἠφίει κατὰ πρόσωπον τὰς
being-struck the soul variously he-let-go on (the)-face the
χροιὰς καὶ αὖθις ἀπῄει τὴν οἴκαδε, ὁμοῦ μὲν βλάσφημά
colors and again went-off the(-road) homeward at-once indeed blasphemous(-things)

τινα κατὰ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ ὕβρεις ἀπορρίπτων, ὁμοῦ δὲ
some against the man and insults hurling at-once and
τούτοις τὰς ἐκείνου δι᾽ αὐτοὺς ἐξαγγέλλων προρρήσεις,
with-these the of-that(-man) because-of them announcing predictions
καὶ γέλωτα πολὺν καταχέων τῶν εἰρημένων.
and laughter much pouring-down on-the(-things) said
χαίρειν οὖν εἰπὼν τοῖς ἐκείνου λόγοις, τῇ ἐννεακαιδεκάτῃ 3
farewell then having-said to-the of-that(-man) words on-the nineteenth
τοῦ Ἰουλίου μηνὸς τῆς ια΄ ἰνδικτιῶνος κατὰ τοῦ
of-the July month of-the 11th indiction against the
βασιλεύοντος Νικηφόρου χεῖρα συναθροίσας πολλήν, καὶ
reigning Nikephoros (a)-force having-gathered much and
τὰ ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν τέσσαρα θέματα τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ λόγοις
the(-themes) under himself four themes to-the his-own words
ὑπαγαγών, τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν χωρὶς (οὐδὲ γὰρ ὑπεῖξαν
having-brought-under of-the Armeniakoi except not for they-yielded
αὐτῷ), τῆς ἐπαναστάσεως ἄρχεται. ἐμίσει μὲν οὖν τότε
to-him of-the revolt he-begins hated indeed then at-that-time
τὸν Νικηφόρον τὸ ὑπήκοον τῷ βάρει πιεζόμενον τῶν
— Nikephoros the subject(-people) by-the weight being-oppressed of-the
δημοσίων τελῶν, ὃ γέγονέ πως καὶ ἀφορμὴ καὶ
public taxes which became somehow both (a)-pretext and
σύνδρομον ἐκείνῳ τῆς ἐπαναστάσεως· γέγονε δέ τι
concurrent for-that(-man) of-the revolt there-was and something
καὶ ἕτερον αἴτιον. ὡς γὰρ κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ὁ Βαρδάνιος
also another cause as for against the Hagarenes — Bardanes
ἠνδραγάθησεν καὶ τῆς γενομένης πολλῆς λαφυραγωγίας
did-brave-deeds and of-the having-come much plunder
δικαίᾳ προνοίᾳ πεποίηκε τὴν διανομήν, κατάλληλα τοῖς
with-just providence he-made the distribution in-proportion to-the(-men)
ἀγωνιζομένοις ἐν πολέμῳ ἀλλ᾽ οὐ κατὰ πρόσωπον
contending in war but not according-to (the)-person

τὰ ἆθλα προθείς, ἔδοξε καὶ βασιλείας τούτοις ἄξιος
the prizes having-set-forth he-seemed also of-empire to-them worthy
μεταλαχεῖν. ὅθεν ἀναρρηθεὶς δημοσίᾳ φωνῇ βασιλεύς,
to-get-a-share whence having-been-proclaimed with-public voice emperor
καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων ἀπολαύσεών τε καὶ γερῶν ἐκ τοῦ
and of-many other enjoyments both and honors from the
δήμου καταξιωθείς, ὡς καὶ ναὸν ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι αὐτοῦ
people having-been-deemed-worthy so-that also (a)-church in (the)-name his
ἀνεγεῖραί τε καὶ κατασκευάσαι, τὴν ἐπὶ Νικομήδειαν
to-raise both and to-furnish the(-road) to Nikomedeia
φέρουσαν ᾗει ὁδόν. ἀλλ᾽ ἀποχρῶσαν καὶ ἐφάμιλλον ὁ
leading he-went road but sufficient and rivaling the
βασιλεύων Νικηφόρος δύναμιν ἐκστρατεύσας, καὶ περὶ τοῦ
reigning Nikephoros (a)-force having-sent-out and about the
μέλλοντος δύσελπιν ποιήσας αὐτὸν τῷ πλήθει τῶν
future despairing having-made him by-the multitude of-the(-men)
ἀντιπαραταττομένων, ἔπεισεν αὐτὸν συγγνώμην φθάσαντα
arrayed-against(-him) persuaded him pardon anticipating
ἐξαιτήσασθαι. ἄρτι μὲν γὰρ Λέων ἄρτι δὲ καὶ Μιχαὴλ
to-ask just indeed for Leo just and also Michael
ἀπορρυέντες πρὸς βασιλέα, ἆθλον ὁ μὲν τὴν
having-slipped-away to (the)-emperor (as)-prize the(-one) indeed the(-command)
φοιδεράτων καὶ βασιλικὸν οἶκον τοῦ Ζήνωνος καὶ τὸν
of-foederati and (the)-imperial house — of-Zeno and —
Δαγισθέα, ὁ δὲ τὴν τῆς κόρτης κόμητος ἀρχὴν καὶ
Dagisthaios the(-other) and the of-the tent count('s) command and
τὸν τοῦ Καριανοῦ οἶκον ἀπενεγκάμενοι, οὐκ ἀγαθὰ φρονεῖν
the — of-Karianos house having-carried-off not good(-things) to-think
αὐτὸν περὶ ἑαυτοῦ πεποιήκασιν. ὅθεν αὐτῷ τε καὶ τῷ λαῷ
him about himself made whence for-himself both and for-the people
συγγνώμην αἰτούμενος ἐκ βασιλέως μέχρι τῶν Μαλαγίνων
pardon asking from (the)-emperor up-to the Malagina

ὑπέστρεφεν· κἀκεῖ τοὺς τῆς ἀπαθείας λόγους δεξάμενος καὶ
returned and-there the of-the impunity words having-received and
τὸ χρυσοῦν σταυρίδιον, ὃ παρὰ τοῦ Νικηφόρου φορούμενον
the golden little-cross which by — Nikephoros worn
αὐτῷ ἀπέσταλτο πρὸς ἀσφάλειάν τε καὶ πίστωσιν, πρὸς
to-him had-been-sent for security both and assurance to
τὴν τοῦ Ἡρακλείου μονὴν νύκτωρ, τὸν Θωμᾶν μόνον
the — of-Herakleios monastery by-night — Thomas alone
συγκινδυνεύοντα ἔχων, ἀπέφυγεν, τὸν τῆς κεφαλῆς κόσμον
sharing-the-danger having fled the of-the head adornment
ἀφαιρῆσαι σπουδάζων. καὶ ὁ μὲν τῆς μονῆς προεστὼς
to-remove hastening and the indeed of-the monastery presiding(-one)
τοῦτο δρᾶσαι τοῦτον οὐ συνεχώρει· αὐτὸς δὲ τῇ ᾗ
this to-do him not allowed he but with-the with-which
περιεζώννυτο σπάθῃ τὸν πλόκαμον αὐτοῦ ἀφελών, καὶ
he-was-girded sword the lock his having-removed and
πενιχρὰν ἐσθῆτα ἀμφιασάμενος, εἶχετο τῆς πρὸς τὴν Πρώτην
poor clothing having-put-on held to-the to — Prote
νῆσον πορείας, ἔνθα δὴ τούτῳ κτῆμα καλῶς πεπονημένον
island journey where indeed to-him (an)-estate well worked
ἐνῆν, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐκεῖ μένειν περιωρισμένον ἐπέτρεψεν.
was and the emperor there to-stay confined permitted(-him)
ἐκεῖσε γοῦν περαιωθείς, καὶ τὰς συνήθεις εὐχὰς καὶ
there at-any-rate having-crossed and the customary prayers and
τὸ τῶν μοναχῶν θεῖον σχῆμα δεξάμενος, μετωνομάσθη
the of-the monks divine habit having-received he-was-renamed
Σάββας, ἀγῶνας ἀσκητικοὺς πολλοὺς ἐνδεικνύμενος. οὐ
Sabbas struggles ascetic many displaying not
πολὺ τὸ ἐν μέσῳ, καί τινες τῶν ἐκ τῆς Λυκαονίας
much the(-time) in between and some of-the(-men) from — Lycaonia
αὐτῷ ἐπιθέμενοι καὶ ποιήσαντες ἔρημον τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν,
him having-attacked and having-made bereft of-the eyes

γνώσει καὶ εἰδήσει τοῦ βασιλεύοντος, τῷ τοῦ θεοῦ
with-(the)-knowledge and awareness of-the reigning(-emperor) to-the — of-god
προσφεύγουσι θείῳ καὶ μεγάλῳ ναῷ· καὶ τέλος εἶχεν
flee divine and great church and end had
καὶ ἡ πρόρρησις τοῦ τὸ Φιλομήλιον ἐνδιαιτωμένου
also the prediction of-the(-one) the Philomelion inhabiting
μονάζοντος. ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνος μὲν ὡς εὐεργέταις αὐτοῖς
monk but that(-man) indeed as benefactors for-them
ἐπευξάμενος τῆς σκληροτέρας εἴχετο ἀγωγῆς, οἴνου τε καὶ
having-prayed to-the harsher held regimen of-wine both and
ἰχθύων καὶ ἐλαίου ὁλοσχερῶς ἀπεχόμενος, γυμνήν τε ἀεὶ
of-fish and of-oil altogether abstaining bare both always
φέρων τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ πόδας, κἂν εἴ τις
bearing the head and the his-own feet even if any
σφοδρότερος ἐγεγόνει χειμών. ἔτι δὲ μονοχίτων διετέλει,
more-violent had-come storm further and single-tunicked he-continued
τῷ θέρει μὲν δερμάτινον χιτῶνα ἀμφιεννύμενος, τῷ
in-the summer indeed (a)-leather tunic putting-on in-the
χειμῶνι δὲ τρίχινον περιβαλλόμενος. ἔζη δὲ οὐ σιτίνῳ,
winter and (a)-hair(-one) wrapping-around he-lived and not on-wheaten
κρίθης δὲ ἀλεύρῳ ἐγκρυφίαν ποιῶν. καὶ οὕτω παρέπεμπεν
of-barley but flour ash-baked-loaf making and thus he-passed
τὸν ἑαυτοῦ βίον, διαρκέσας ἕως ὁ Λέων τῆς βασιλείας
the his-own life having-held-out until — Leo of-the empire
ἐγένετο ἐγκρατής. ἀποκαρῆναι δὲ καὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σύμβιον
became master to-be-tonsured and also the his-own wife
Δομνίκαν ἅμα θυγατρὶ καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ παισὶν ἐν
Domnika together-with (the)-daughter and the his-own children in
τῷ ἰδίῳ οἴκῳ ἐποίησεν, μετονομάσας αὐτὴν Ἀθανασίαν,
the own house he-made having-renamed her Athanasia

ἅπαντα δηλαδὴ τὸν πλοῦτον διανείμας πτωχοῖς. καὶ
all clearly the wealth having-distributed to-(the)-poor and
τὰ μὲν κατὰ τὸν Βαρδάνιον οὕτω τε καὶ τοιαῦτα.
the(-things) indeed concerning — Bardanes so both and such(-were-they)
Ὁ δὲ Λέων εἴχετο τῆς δόξης καὶ ἐγαυρία ἐκ ταπεινοῦ 4
— and Leo held to-the glory and exulted from humble
καὶ ἀδόξου περίβλεπτος ὁραθεὶς κατὰ τὴν τῶν φοιδεράτων
and obscure conspicuous seen in the of-the foederati
ἀρχήν. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ τῆς ἀχαριστίας ἀπείχετο, τοιοῦτος
command but not-even from-the ingratitude abstained such
περὶ τὸν εὐεργέτην φανείς. πλὴν εἴχετο, καὶ μάχαις
toward the benefactor having-appeared but he-held also to-battles
μάχας ἐπισυνάπτων κατὰ τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν ἠνδραγαθίζετο,
battles joining against the Ishmaelites did-brave-deeds
ἅτε μεγάλην ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ μέρει καὶ φύσει καὶ
inasmuch-as great in the such part both by-nature and
τριβῇ προσφερόμενος δύναμιν. καί ποτε στρατιωτικῶν
by-practice bringing power and once of-military
χρημάτων διανομὴν παρὰ τοῦ τὰ σκῆπτρα διέποντος
funds distribution by the(-one) the scepters wielding
Νικηφόρου ἐγχειρισθείς, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲν ἔμελεν αὐτῷ τῶν
Nikephoros having-been-entrusted since nothing mattered to-him of-the
βασιλικῶν ἐντολῶν, οὐδ᾽ ἐξεπέραινέ τι, ἀλλ᾽ ἐν πολίχνῃ
imperial commands nor he-accomplished anything but in (the)-little-town
Εὐχαΐτων τὸν καιρὸν ῥαστώνῃ καὶ ἀμελείᾳ κατατρίβων
of-Euchaita the time in-ease and neglect wearing-away
ἀνεβάλλετο τὰ νενομισμένα τῷ στρατῷ παρασχεῖν·
he-put-off the(-things) customary to-the army to-provide
καὶ φυλακῆς οὐδεμίαν πρόνοιαν ἔχων, οὔτε μὴν τῶν κοινῶν
and of-guard no forethought having neither indeed of-the public
χρημάτων, οὐδὲ καὶ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ σώματος, οὐδ᾽ αὐτῶν
funds nor even of-the his-own body nor of-the(-very)

τῶν ὑπὸ χεῖρα, τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐκδραμόντων καὶ τὰ
the(-men) under hand the Hagarenes having-sallied-out and the(-lands)
Ῥωμαίων ληϊζομένων τὴν λείαν αὐτοῖς οὗτος, ἀλλ' οὐκ
of-(the)-Romans plundering the booty for-them he but not
ἄλλος τις, ἀπεπλήρου ἀταλαιπώρως, ἀλλὰ δι' αὐτοῦ
other anyone made-up without-toil but through him
μὲν οὔ (ὀξείᾳ γὰρ φυγῇ τὴν σωτηρίαν ἐπραγματεύσατο),
indeed not by-swift for flight the safety he-procured
τὰ στρατιωτικὰ δὲ προδοὺς καὶ μόνον οὐχὶ χερσὶ
the military and having-betrayed and only not into-hands
πολεμίοις ἐμβαλὼν χρήματα. οὗ δὴ ἕνεκα δίκας,
to-enemies having-thrown (the)-funds of-which indeed for-the-sake penalties
εἰ καὶ μὴ τὰς ἀξίας, τῷ καταπιστεύσαντι δοὺς
if even not the worthy(-ones) to-the(-one) having-entrusted(-him) having-paid
Νικηφόρῳ πληγαῖς τε ταῖς κατὰ νώτου ὑπήχθη καὶ
to-Nikephoros by-blows both the(-ones) on (the)-back he-was-subjected and
στέρνων καὶ φυγῇ ἀϊδίῳ τὴν ζημίαν ἀπέτισεν. ἀλλὰ τοῦ
(the)-chest and by-exile everlasting the loss paid but —
Νικηφόρου κατὰ Σκυθῶν ἐκστρατεύσαντος καὶ τραυματίου
Nikephoros against (the)-Scythians having-campaigned and wounded
κατὰ τὴν παρεμβολὴν τοῦ πολέμου πεσόντος μηνὶ
in the camp of-the war having-fallen in-(the)-month
Ἰουλίῳ εἰκάδι ἕκτῃ τῆς τετάρτης ἰνδικτιῶνος, καὶ τοῦ
July (on)-twentieth sixth of-the fourth indiction and the
υἱοῦ Σταυρακίου κατὰ τὸν πόλεμον καιρίαν τρωθέντος
son Staurakios in the war mortally having-been-wounded
ὡς δύο μὲν μόνους μῆνας καὶ ἡμέρας ἐπιζῆσαι ὀκτώ,
so-that two indeed only months and days to-survive eight
συμβασιλεύσαντος δὲ πρότερον τῷ πατρὶ ἔτη ὀκτὼ
having-co-reigned and before with-the father years eight
μῆνας ἑπτά, καὶ Μιχαὴλ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου μετὰ τὴν
months seven and Michael the kouropalates after the

τοῦ Σταυρακίου κατὰ τὴν δευτέραν τοῦ Ὀκτωβρίου
— of-Staurakios on the second of-the October
μηνὸς ἀποβίωσιν, γαμβροῦ μὲν Νικηφόρου τελοῦντος,
month death (a)-son-in-law indeed of-Nikephoros being
ἐκ γενεᾶς δὲ καταγομένου τοῦ Ῥαγγαβὲ καὶ κατὰ τὴν
by family and descended — of-Rhangabe and at the
θέσιν τῶν Μαγγάνων σκηνοῦντος, τὴν τῆς βασιλείας
site of-the Mangana dwelling the of-the empire
δεξαμένου ἀρχὴν κατὰ τὸν Ὀκτώβριον μῆνα τῆς πέμπτης
having-received rule in the October month of-the fifth
ἰνδικτιῶνος, ἀπολύεται ὁ Λέων τῆς ὑπερορίας κατὰ
indiction is-released — Leo from-the exile according-to
τὸ ἐπικρατῆσαν ἔθος τῆς χρηστότητος ἕνεκεν τοῖς
the prevailing custom of-the kindness for-the-sake for-the
Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῦσι, καὶ τῆς φυγῆς κατάγεται, καὶ τοῖς
of-(the)-Romans emperors and from-the exile is-brought-back and to-the
αὐτοῦ τούτου δὴ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ῥαβδούχοις τοῖς κατὰ τὰ
of-him this(-very) indeed — of-Michael rod-bearers the(-ones) in the
ἀνάκτορα συντάττεται ἐφεδρεύουσι, καὶ πατρικίων τιμᾶται
palace is-ranked attending and of-patricians is-honored
μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ τιμῇ, καὶ στρατηγὸς Ἀνατολικῶν
after not long with-(the)-honor and general of-(the)-Anatolikoi
ἀναδείκνυται, ἡνίκα καὶ τὴν παλαιὰν φιλίαν τοῦ σὺν
is-appointed when also the old friendship of-the(-one) with
αὐτῷ τραφέντος ἀνδρὸς Μιχαὴλ ἀνανεῶν, ὃν κόμητα
him reared man Michael renewing whom count
τῆς κόρτης ἡ ἐκ τοῦ Βαρδανίου μετάταξις προετίμησεν,
of-the tent the from — Bardanes transfer preferred
καὶ τῶν ἀπορρήτων μύστην λαμβάνων, τῶν ἔνδον τε
and of-the secrets initiate taking of-the(-men) inside both
εἶχεν πιστότατον καὶ τῶν ἐκτὸς πρακτικώτατον.
he-had most-faithful and of-the(-men) outside most-practical

Ἀλλ᾽ ἔμελλεν αὖθις ἀχαριστίας ἁλῶναι γραφῇ; ὠμότητι
but he-was-about again of-ingratitude to-be-convicted by-indictment with-cruelty
συντραφεὶς καὶ ἀγριότητι ἐκτραφείς, καὶ τοῖς δευτέροις
reared-together and in-savagery brought-up and with-the second(-deeds)
τὰ πρῶτα καλύψαι ὁ ἀλιτήριος.
the first to-cover the wicked(-one)
ὅθεν ἄρτι Κρούμνου τοῦ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἡγεμόνος
whence just-then Krum the of-the Bulgarians leader
συμβάσεις καὶ φιλίας ὑποκριναμένου καὶ σπονδὰς ζητοῦντος
agreements and friendship having-feigned and treaties seeking
εἰρηνικάς, εἰ μόνον τὰ κατ᾽ ἔτος διδόμενα εἰς τάξιν
peaceful if only the(-things) by year given in order
οἶμαι δοθῶσιν φόρου αὐτῷ, ὡς τοῖς πρότερον ἔδοξε,
I-think should-be-given of-tribute to-him as to-the(-men) before it-seemed
καὶ προστιθέντος ὡς καὶ τοὺς πρόσφυγας Βουλγάρων,
and adding that also the refugees of-Bulgarians
πρὸς δὲ καὶ Ῥωμαίων εἰς τοὐπίσω ἐκδίδοσθαι τῷ ἑαυτῶν
besides and also of-Romans to the-back be-handed-over to-the their-own
ἔθνει, ἄτοπον ἐφάνη τὸ τῶν προσφύγων τοῖς τῆς
nation monstrous appeared the(-thing) of-the refugees to-the(-men) of-the
συγκλήτου βουλῆς, εἰ καὶ ὁ βασιλεύων Μιχαὴλ ὅλως
senatorial council if even the reigning Michael wholly
ἐγένετο τῆς δόξης τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῷ γε δὴ τῆς
became of-the opinion of-the ruler by-the at-least indeed of-the
εἰρήνης βούλεσθαι μὴ ἀποτυχεῖν. ἀλλ᾽ ἐκράτησεν ἡ βουλή,
peace to-wish not to-fail but prevailed the council
Θεόκτιστον μάγιστρον ἐπικυροῦντα καὶ συντιθέμενον ἔχουσα
Theoktistos (the)-magistros confirming and agreeing having
τῇ δόξῃ, καὶ διελύθησαν πάλιν εἰς ἔργα πολέμου, τοὺς
with-the opinion and they-dispersed again to deeds of-war the
λόγους καταλιπόντες γυμνούς. καὶ τοῦτ᾽ εἰκότως ἐφάνη
words having-left bare and this fittingly appeared

καλόν· πῶς γὰρ ἄν τις φιλάνθρωπος δόξῃ καὶ συμπαθὴς
fine how for — anyone humane would-seem and compassionate
τόν γε διά τινα σφαλέντα δὴ περιπέτειαν καὶ
the(-one) at-least because-of some having-stumbled indeed reversal and
τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μὲν ἀρνησάμενον ἐνεγκαμένην, ἧς οὐδὲν
the(-land) his-own indeed having-denied having-borne(-him) than-which nothing
γλύκιον, ὥς φασι, πρὸς δὲ καὶ γαμετήν τε καὶ ἔγγονα,
sweeter as they-say besides and also wife both and offspring
ὡς εἰς ἄσυλον καταφυγόντα βωμὸν τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
as to (an)-inviolable having-fled altar to-the of-the Romans
πολιτείᾳ, τοῦτον ἐκδίδοσθαι ὠμότητι Σκυθῶν, θηρίων
commonwealth him to-be-handed-over to-cruelty of-Scythians from-beasts
διενηνοχότων οὐδέν; οἷς γὰρ τὸ φοβερὸν καὶ ἄγριον
having-differed in-nothing to-whom for the fearsome and savage
ὁρῶσιν αὐτῶν τοὺς πολλοὺς μὴ ὑποφέροντας καὶ διὰ
seeing their the many not enduring and because-of
τοῦτο ἀπορρέοντας πρὸς τὸ ἥμερον καὶ πρᾶον ἡμῶν
this flowing-away to the gentle and mild our(-ways)
συχνῶς, ἅτε δή, μὴ κατὰ μικρὸν λάθωσιν ἑαυτοὺς
frequently inasmuch-as indeed lest by little they-escape-notice themselves
πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐκκενώσαντες, δεδιότες οἱ σφῶν ἀρχηγοὶ τὸν
to us having-emptied fearing the their leaders the
πολὺν περὶ τούτων λόγον πολλάκις καὶ μέχρις ἡμῶν
much about these(-things) talk often even up-to us
κεκινήκασιν. ἀλλὰ κενήν, τὸ δὴ λεγόμενον κατὰ τὴν
have-stirred but empty the(-thing) indeed said according-to the
παροιμίαν, ἔψηλαν, ἀνθρώποις ἐντυχόντες στερροῖς.
proverb they-plucked(-the-strings) on-men having-met firm
τοιγαροῦν μικρὸν διαλιπόντες κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων ὁπλίζονται. 6
therefore (a)-little having-paused against one-another they-arm
καὶ Μιχαὴλ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποστράτηγον Λέοντα ἐπανάγειν
and Michael the his-own lieutenant-general Leo to-bring-up

καὶ διαπεραιοῦσθαι ἐκ τῆς Ἀνατολῆς θᾶττον ἠξίου μετὰ
and to-cross from the East quicker asked with
καὶ τῶν δυνάμεων· καὶ βοηθῷ μέλλων χρῆσθαι αὐτῷ
also the forces and as-helper about to-use him
ἐχθρὸν κατέλαβεν ἄσπονδον. ὡς γὰρ ἐκ τῶν μεγαλαύχων
(an)-enemy he-found implacable as for from the boastful
ῥημάτων καὶ ἀπειλῶν ὧν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ὁ Κροῦμνος
words and threats which against Romans — Krum
ἀπέπεμπε, φθόρους σωμάτων ἐπαπειλῶν καὶ γῆς δῄωσιν
sent-off destructions of-bodies threatening and of-land ravaging
καὶ δένδρων ἐκτομὰς καὶ οἰκημάτων πυρπόλησιν, καὶ ὅλως
and of-trees cuttings and of-dwellings burning and wholly
καθ' ἡμῶν οἷά τις χειμάρρους ποταμὸς φερόμενος πάντας
against us like some torrent river borne all
ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν ποιῆσαι διεβεβαίου, ἄρτι δὴ τοῦ βασιλέως
under himself to-make he-affirmed just-then indeed the emperor
ἐκστρατεύσαντος καὶ συστείλαντος τὰς ὑπερορίους ἐκείνας
having-campaigned and having-curbed the beyond-the-borders those
ἀπειλάς, καὶ μόνον οὐ τοῖς οἰκείοις ὅροις ἐμμένειν
threats and only not in-the own bounds to-remain
καταναγκάζοντος ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκπηδᾶν καὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν
compelling(-him) but not to-leap-out and the our(-land)
λῃΐζεσθαι, καὶ πολλάκις ἐκ παρατάξεως προσκαλουμένου
to-plunder and often from battle-line challenging
μὲν τοῦ Μιχαήλ, ἐκείνου δὲ μὴ ἀπαυθαδιαζομένου ἀλλὰ
indeed — Michael that(-man) and not being-insolent but
τὴν οἰκείαν ἐπιγινώσκοντος ἀσθένειαν καὶ μὴ πρὸς βασιλέα
the own recognizing weakness and not against (the)-emperor
χεῖρα ἀντᾶραι κατατολμῶντος, ἐδόκει μὲν τῷ Μιχαὴλ
(a)-hand to-raise-against daring it-seemed indeed — to-Michael
ἀρκεῖσθαι τὸ προπετὲς ἐκείνου καὶ αὔθαδες ἐν τοῖς
to-be-content(-with) the rashness of-that(-man) and insolence in the(-bounds)

ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ κατακλείσαντα, μὴ καὶ μάχην ἐπισυνάψαι,
by him having-shut-in(-him) not also battle to-join
ὡς ἀδήλου ὄντος τοῦ μέλλοντος· "ἐπεὶ" γὰρ ἔλεγεν
since uncertain being the future since for he-said
"ἐκ παρατάξεως ἡμῶν οὐκ εἰς πόλεμον οἷοί τέ ἐσμεν
from battle-line us not to war able — are-we
ἐκκαλέσασθαι, ἀλλὰ φυγομαχεῖν καὶ ἐφ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ μένειν
to-call-out but to-shun-battle and by himself to-stay
ἀναγκάζομεν, τί καὶ δράσαιμεν βιαζόμενοι; διὰ τοῦτο οὖν
we-compel what also might-we-do using-force because-of this then
παλινδρομεῖν ἠρέμα πως καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν
to-return quietly somehow and by little to the own
βασιλείαν βουλομένου, ἀπρεπὲς ἐφάνη τῷ Λέοντι καὶ οὐ κατὰ
capital (he)-wishing unseemly appeared — to-Leo and not befitting
βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων νῶτα διδόναι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς, οὕτω καλοῦντι
(an)-emperor of-Romans backs to-give to-the enemies so calling
ἐκείνην τὴν καλλίστην βουλὴν τῷ μὴ ὀρθὰ μηδ᾽ ὑγιᾶ φρονεῖν
that the finest counsel by-the not right nor sound thinking
σεσαθρωμένα δὲ καὶ δόλια, καὶ ὅλην ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν ποιῆσαι τὴν
rotten but and deceitful and whole under himself to-make the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων μελετῶντι ἡγεμονίαν. "ἀλλ᾽ ἰτητέον" ἔφη
of-the Romans planning rule but one-must-go he-said
"πρὸς αὐτούς, ὦ βασιλεῦ, καὶ ὄψει με σήμερον τὸ κράτος
against them O emperor and you-will-see me today the power
καθαρῶς ἀναδούμενον κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν καὶ νικηφόρον
purely binding-on against the enemies and victorious
δεικνύμενον, τῇ σῇ καταθαρροῦντα καὶ προπολεμοῦντα
being-shown in-the your trusting and fighting-in-front
πεποιθήσει τε καὶ εὐχῇ." τούτοις ὁ Μιχαὴλ τοῖς λόγοις
confidence both and prayer these — Michael by-the words
ἐκτραπείς τε καὶ παρασαλευθεὶς συρρῆξαι παρεκελεύσατο
having-been-turned both and having-been-shaken to-break(-into) urged

τὸν πόλεμον. ὡς δὲ μόνον ἐγένετο συμβολή, νῶτα δοὺς
the battle when and only came (the)-clash backs having-given
ὁ Λέων τὴν φυγαδείαν ἠσπάσατο, τὴν βασιλείαν ἀεί
— Leo the flight welcomed the empire always
πως ἐπιζητῶν. καὶ τοῦτο τέως ἄδηλον ἦν αὐτῷ τε τῷ
somehow seeking and this for-a-time unclear was to-him both —
Μιχαὴλ καὶ τοῖς ὑπεναντίοις· μήπω γάρ τινος γεγονότος,
Michael and to-the opponents not-yet for any having-happened
οἷα φιλεῖ κατὰ πόλεμον, μηδετέρῳ ἀνδραγαθήματος,
such-as is-wont in war on-neither(-side) brave-deed
ἀλλ' ἔτι κατ' ἀρχὰς οὔσης τῆς μάχης καὶ μικροῦ ὅτι
but still at (the)-beginnings being the battle and (a)-little that
καὶ συνερράγησαν ἀγνώστου, αὐτοῖς τε τοῖς Βουλγάροις
also they-had-clashed unknown to-them both the Bulgarians
καὶ πᾶσιν ἐφάνη τρόπος εἶναι τὸ πρᾶγμα, ὡς μέλλουσιν
and to-all it-appeared (a)-stratagem to-be the affair as about
αὐτοὺς διασπᾶν καὶ αὖθις ἐξ ὑποστροφῆς καταπολεμεῖν.
them to-draw-apart and again from (a)-turning-back to-war-down(-them)
ὡς δ' ἀμφότεροι οὐ κατὰ τρόπον ἀλλ' ἀληθῆ δὴ ἔγνωσαν
when and both not as stratagem but real indeed knew
εἶναι τὴν φυγήν, τότε προσπεσόντες οἱ μὲν ἐναντίοι
to-be the flight then having-fallen-on the(-men) indeed opposing
φόνον πολὺν ἐνειργάζοντο τῶν φευγόντων νεανικῶς, ὁ δὲ
slaughter much worked of-the fleeing vigorously — and
Μιχαὴλ ἑαυτὸν σώζειν ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀντιπίπτειν μετ' ὀλίγων
Michael himself to-save but not to-fall-upon(-them) with few
ὢν διεπείραζε. καὶ οὕτω μὲν ταύτην γενέσθαι τὴν μάχην
being tried and thus indeed this to-have-been the battle
τινὲς ἡμῖν ἐγγράφως παραδεδώκασιν· εἰσὶ δ' οἳ καὶ τὰς
some to-us in-writing have-handed-down there-are and who also the
δυνάμεις μᾶλλον τῷ Λέοντι διδόασι διασῶσαι καὶ καρτερῶς
forces rather — to-Leo give to-have-saved and stoutly

ἀγωνίσασθαι, τῶν βασιλικῶν ταγμάτων ἐθελοκακησάντων
to-have-fought of-the imperial regiments having-played-the-coward
καὶ τὴν οἰκείαν προδεδωκότων παράταξιν, ἀλλ᾽ οὐ τοῦ
and the own having-betrayed battle-line but not of-the
κατὰ τὸν Λέοντα μέρους. πλὴν καθυπερτερεῖ μὲν τὰ
in — Leo part but prevails indeed the(-forces)
Βουλγάρων δυσελπίστως, τὰ δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἥττῃ
of-Bulgarians hopelessly the(-forces) and of-the Romans by-defeat
συνεχόμενα βαρείᾳ καὶ φοβερᾷ τὸν βασιλέα ἔπεμπον
held heavy and fearful the emperor sent(-off)
ἀγωνιῶντα περὶ ψυχῆς. ἀλλ᾽ ἐκεῖνος μὲν πρὸς τὰς
in-agony about (his)-life but he indeed to the
βασιλείους αὐλὰς παρεπέμπετο, τὸν Λέοντα οἷόν τινα
imperial courts was-escorted — Leo like some
πρόβολον καταλιπὼν ἔξωθεν ἐφεδρεύειν τοῦ μή τινα
bulwark having-left outside to-wait of-the not any
γενέσθαι λαφυραγωγίαν πλείονα παρὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν. ὁ δὲ
to-happen plundering more by the enemies he and
καιροῦ λαβόμενος ἐπιτηδείου τὸν στρατιώτην ὄχλον ἠρέθιζέ
occasion having-seized suitable the soldier crowd provoked
τε καὶ βλάσφημά τινα ῥιπτεῖν κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
both and blasphemous(-things) some to-hurl against the emperor
ἠνάγκαζε, καὶ μὴ ἂν ἔλαφον, ἐκεῖνο δὴ τοῦ μύθου, ἡγεῖσθαι
compelled and not — (a)-deer that indeed of-the fable to-lead
λεόντων καλὸν ἔλεγεν εἶναι, τὴν φυγὴν ἀσπασάμενον νῦν
lions fine he-said to-be the flight having-welcomed now
καὶ πρὸς τοὺς κόλπους φυγόντα τῆς γυναικός, τὸν ἑαυτοῦ
and to the bosom having-fled of-the wife the his-own
ἡμᾶς καταλιπόντα λαὸν παρανάλωμα τῶν ἐχθρῶν. οὔπω
us having-abandoned people (as)-waste of-the enemies not-yet
πέρας πρὸς τοὺς κοινωνοὺς τῶν λόγων ὁ λόγος ἐλάμβανε,
(an)-end toward the partners of-the words the word took

καὶ εἰς ἔργον ἦν τοῦτον ἀπεκβάντα ἰδεῖν, τῇ τῶν
and into deed it-was(-possible) this having-come-out to-see by-the of-the
κολάκων κατασπαρέντα στωμυλίᾳ καὶ συνδρομῇ. καὶ τέλος
flatterers having-been-sown chatter and concourse and finally
ἀνάρρησις αὐθωρόν, καὶ τὸν αὐτὸν εἶχε τὸ βραχύτατον
(the)-proclamation instantly and the same(-man) had the shortest
μόριον τῆς ἡμέρας ἰδιώτην ἅμα καὶ αὐτοκράτορα.
part of-the day private-man at-once and emperor

7–14 · LEO TAKES THE THRONE

Leo hesitates, from pretense or real fear, until Michael the Stammerer threatens to kill him unless he accepts. John Hexaboulios warns the emperor Michael against Leo, but Michael, though Prokopia and Manuel urge him to fight, will not keep a throne flowing with his fellow Christians' blood and sends Leo the insignia, and Prokopia rages at it. At the palace Michael the Stammerer puts on the purple cloak Leo takes off, an omen that he will reign next. Michael and his family take the tonsure; Leo exiles him to Plate and has his son Eustratios castrated. The writer traces the surrender to a possessed slave girl who cries to Michael to step down, and to Kassiteras, who betrays her prophecy to Leo. Leo rewards his old comrades and rebukes Manuel, who silences him in turn. At Mesembria he ambushes the Bulgarians by night and routs them, then turns cruel, mutilating men for the smallest fault.

7 Ἄρτι γοῦν ἀνηγορεύετο παρὰ τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ φόβοι
just-then at-any-rate he-was-proclaimed by the army and fears
τοῦτον καὶ δέη ὑφεῖρπον, εἴτε σκηνὴν ὄντως ὑποκρινόμενον,
him and dreads crept-over whether (a)-show really feigning
ἵν' ἀπολογίαν σχοίη εἰς ὕστερον, εἴτε καὶ ἀληθείᾳ
that (an)-excuse he-might-have for later or also in-truth
τὰ ταῖς τηλικαύταις πράξεσιν ἀκολουθοῦντα ἀντίπαλα
the(-things) the so-great deeds following adverse

διαλογιζόμενον, ἐπεὶ καὶ τοῖς ἁρπάσαι τὰ ἀλλότρια
reckoning since also for-the(-men) to-seize the others'
προθυμουμένοις μαλακώτεραι πρὸς τὰ δεινὰ τόλμαι
eager softer toward the terrible(-things) daring(-moods)
φιλοῦσι γίνεσθαι, καὶ τὸ μέγιστον, ὅπως τῶν βασιλείων
are-wont to-become and the greatest how of-the imperial
μετάσχῃ αὐλῶν, θυραυλῶν τε καὶ πόρρω που αὐλιζόμενος.
he-may-share courts camping-out both and far somewhere bivouacking
ἀλλ' ἔμελλε πάντως καὶ αὐτὸς ἐνσκηνῶσαι τοῖς βασιλείοις,
but he-was-about surely also he to-encamp in-the palace
καὶ διὰ τοῦτο πνεῦμα πονηρότατον διεγεῖραν Μιχαὴλ
and because-of this (a)-spirit most-wicked having-roused Michael
τὸν Τραυλὸν καιρίαν οἱ καθικέσθαι διηπείλει, εἰ μὴ τὴν
the Stammerer (a)-mortal(-blow) him to-strike threatened if not the
ἀνάρρησιν ἀσμένως προσδέξοιτο· ὡς αὐτῷ γε πάντων
proclamation gladly he-would-accept as to-him at-least of-all
μελήσειν τῶν νομιζομένων δυσχερῶν, καὶ αὐτῆς γε
to-be-a-care the(-things) reckoned difficult and itself at-least
ταύτης τῆς πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια ἀφίξεως. ὃ δὴ καὶ γέγονεν.
this the to the palace arrival which indeed also happened
Ὡς δέ τις ἀνὴρ (Ἰωάννης οὗτος ὁ κατὰ τὸν 8
when and (a)-certain man John this(-one) the(-one) in —
Ἑξαβούλιον) τὴν τῶν τειχῶν ἐπιμέλειαν καὶ πρόνοιαν
Hexaboulios the of-the walls care and providence
ποιούμενος ᾔσθετο τὸν Λέοντα τοῦτον καταλελειμμένον πρὸς
making perceived — Leo this(-man) left-behind for
φυλακὴν ἅμα τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰσόδῳ, (δεινὸς δὲ ἄρα
(the)-guard together-with the of-the emperor entry clever and it-seems
ἀνδρὸς φύσιν στοχάσασθαι πόρρωθεν) οὐκ ἐν καλῷ τὴν
of-(a)-man (the)-nature to-guess from-afar not in good the
ἐκείνου ἔφησε γενέσθαι προστασίαν τῶν στρατευμάτων·
of-that(-man) he-said to-be (the)-command of-the armies

ὅθεν σύμβουλος γίνεται τῷ βασιλεῖ διανοήσασθαί τι καὶ
whence counselor he-becomes to-the emperor to-devise something and
τὸν ἄνδρα μεταστῆσαι καλῶς. πλὴν ἔδει τὸν τέως
the man to-remove well but it-was-needful the(-one) for-a-time
τῷ κωδίῳ θῆρα κρυπτόμενον ἀνακαλυφθῆναί ποτε καὶ
by-the fleece beast hidden to-be-uncovered some-time and
δοκιμασθῆναι ὡς ἐν χοάνῳ χρυσὸν τοὺς τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκλεκτούς·
to-be-tested as in (a)-crucible gold the — of-god elect
συγχωρεῖται δὲ τοῦτο πολλάκις κατά τινα τοῦ χρόνου
is-allowed and this often by some of-the time
κυκλικὴν περίοδον γίνεσθαι, ἐξ αἰτήσεως οἶμαι δαιμονικῆς,
circular period to-happen from (a)-request I-think demonic
καθάπερ ἐπὶ Ἰώβ, εἰς γνῶσιν μὲν καὶ διάκρισιν
as in(-the-case-of) Job for knowledge indeed and discernment
τῶν εὐσεβῶν, ἀλλοτρίωσιν δὲ καὶ ἀποποίησιν τῶν κακῶν.
of-the pious estrangement and also rejection of-the wicked
9 οὔπω γὰρ πέρας ἔσχον οἱ λόγοι, καὶ φήμη προθέουσα
not-yet for (an)-end had the words and rumor running-ahead
τὴν τοῦ τυράννου ἐμήνυεν ἀναγόρευσιν. προσπεσούσης δὲ
the of-the usurper announced proclamation having-arrived and
ταύτης, ἡ μὲν πόλις πρὸς τοιοῦτον ἄγγελμα μικροῦ δεῖν
this the indeed city at such (a)-message (a)-little lacking
ἔκφρων γενομένη μόλις ἑαυτὴν συνεῖχεν, τοὺς ἐμφυλίους
out-of-its-mind having-become scarcely itself held-together the civil
κατορρωδοῦσα πολέμους, ἐξ οὗ πολλάκις αὔτανδροι
dreading wars from which often with-their-men
πόλεις κατεβαπτίσθησαν· ὁ δ' αὐτοκράτωρ ἐξεπλήγη μὲν
cities were-sunk the but autocrat was-struck indeed
τὴν ψυχήν, οὐκ ἐταράχθη δὲ τὴν γνώμην ἀλλ' ἀχαριστίαν
in-the soul not was-troubled but in-the judgment but ingratitude
αὐτοῦ μόνον κατεγνωκώς, ἠρέμα πως ὑποψιθυρίσας ὡς
his only having-condemned quietly somehow having-whispered that

καλὸν τῷ θείῳ θελήματι ἕπεσθαι, ἀφῄρει τῆς πόλεως
(it-is)-fine the divine will to-follow removed from-the city
τὸ περιθαμβὲς καὶ ταραχῶδες, ἅπαντας προτρεψάμενος
the amazement and turmoil all having-urged
χωρῆσαι τούτου πρὸς ἀπαντήν, ἵνα μένουσαν σώζῃ τὴν
to-go of-him to (a)-meeting so-that remaining he-might-keep the
ἑαυτοῦ πόλιν ἐμφυλίου αἵματος ἄχραντόν τε καὶ καθαράν.
his-own city of-civil blood undefiled both and pure
ἵστασθαι δέ τινων πρὸς τὰ δεινὰ καὶ πρὸς τὸν διὰ
to-stand and (while)-some to the terrible(-things) and to the by
μάχης ἀγῶνα παρακελευομένων χωρεῖν, καὶ μένειν αὐτῶν
battle struggle urging(-him) to-go and to-stand they
ὑπισχνουμένων βεβαιῶν ὑπὲρ βασιλέως πράου τε καὶ
promising firmly for (an)-emperor gentle both and
πιστοῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτῆς ἀποδεχομένης τοῦτο τῆς γαμετῆς
faithful but also herself accepting this the wife
Προκοπίας καὶ Μανουήλ τινος τῶν ἐξ Ἀμαληκιτῶν
Prokopia and Manuel (a)-certain of-the from Amalekites
πρωτοστράτορος τηνικαῦτα τυγχάνοντος, οὐκ ἔφη χρῄζειν
protostrator then being not he-said to-need
τὴν βασιλείαν αἵμασι καταρρεομένην ἀδελφικοῖς. ὅθεν καί
the empire with-bloods flowing brotherly whence also
τινι τῶν πρὸς θεραπείαν αὐτοῦ γνησίων παράσημά
to-one of-the(-men) for service his genuine insignia
τινα δοὺς τῆς βασιλείας φοιτᾶν ἐκεῖσε ἐξεβιάσατο. ἐφ᾽
some having-given of-the empire to-go there he-compelled at
οἷς καὶ δεινοπαθήσασα καὶ οἷον ἐκβακχευθεῖσα ἡ τούτου
which also having-suffered-terribly and as-if gone-into-frenzy the his
δὴ γαμετὴ δεινὸν λέγεται ἀνακραγεῖν, εἰ Βάρκα, οὕτω
indeed wife terribly is-said to-have-cried-out if Barka so
δὴ τὸ τοῦ Λέοντος καλέσασα γύναιον, τῇ κεφαλῇ
indeed the — of-Leo calling woman on-the head

ἐπίθοιτο τὸ μοδίολον. ὁ δὲ στερροῖς λόγοις ταύτην
should-put the crown he but with-firm words her
ἐπιρραπίσας, καὶ ὅλον δὴ ἀναθεὶς ἑαυτὸν τῷ θεῷ,
having-rebuked and whole indeed having-committed himself — to-god
ἐκαραδόκει τὰ μέλλοντα. ἄρτι γοῦν κατηγγέλλετο τὸν
awaited the future(-things) just-then at-any-rate it-was-announced the
τύραννον εἰσιέναι διὰ πύλης τῆς χρυσηλάτου, καὶ πᾶσα
usurper to-enter through (the)-gate the golden and all
ἡ σύγκλητος κατὰ τὸν θεῖον τοῦ προδρόμου νεών, ὃν
the senate at the divine of-the forerunner church which
ὁ Στούδιος ἐκ βάθρων ἀνήγειρεν, ἀπήντα καὶ ὑπτίαις
— Stoudios from foundations raised met(-him) and with-upturned
ἐδέχετο ταῖς χερσί, προπέμπουσά τε καὶ ἐκθειάζουσα. ὡς
received(-him) the hands escorting both and deifying(-him) when
δὲ τοῖς βασιλείοις ἤγγιζε καὶ κατὰ πρόσωπον δὴ τῆς
and to-the palace he-drew-near and to face indeed of-the
θείας εἰκόνος τοῦ δι' ἡμᾶς ἐνανθρωπήσαντος θεοῦ λόγου,
divine image of-the(-one) for us made-man god word
κατὰ τὸν οὕτω κατονομαζόμενον τόπον Χαλκῆν, ἔμελλε
at the so named place Chalke he-was-about
στῆναι τὰς εὐχὰς ἀποδώσων, ἐπεί τι φοινικοβαφὲς
to-stand the prayers going-to-render since some purple-dyed
θοιμάτιον κατά τι στρατιωτικὸν ἔθος ἄζωστον ἐπημφίετο
cloak by some military custom ungirded he-had-on
(ἀετὸν τοῦτο καλοῦσιν ἢ θάλασσαν οἱ περὶ ταῦτα
eagle this they-call or sea the(-men) about these(-things)
κομψοί), τοῦτο μὲν αὐτίκα ἀπαμφιέννυται, καὶ Μιχαὴλ
refined this indeed at-once he-takes-off and Michael
ὁ τὴν γλῶτταν φέρων παράσημον, ἐπιμελητὴς τῶν
the(-one) the tongue bearing marked overseer of-the
τοῦ Λέοντος ἵππων τηνικαῦτα τυγχάνων, ἐπὶ χεῖρας
— of-Leo horses then being into hands

λαβὼν αὐθωρὸν ἐπαμπίσχεται. ἔδοξεν οὖν τοῦτο τοῖς
having-taken instantly puts-on(-it) seemed then this to-the
πολλοῖς οἰωνὸς ἐξ ἐκείνου δεύτερον τῆς βασιλείας τυχεῖν.
many (an)-omen from that(-one) second of-the empire to-obtain
ὡς δὲ κατὰ τὰ Σκῦλα ἐγένοντο, οὕτω δή τινα τόπον
when and at the Skyla they-were so indeed some place
κατὰ τὰς βασιλείους εἰσόδους λεγόμενον, ἀκρατῶς πως
at the imperial entrances called unrestrainedly somehow
ἐπιρρέων καὶ κατ᾽ ἴχνος θέων αὐτοῦ τὸ πρὸς τῇ
pressing-on and in (his)-track running his the(-part) at the
πέζῃ λῆγον τοῦ ἱματίου ἄκροις ἐπέβη ποσίν, ὡς καὶ
hem ending of-the cloak with-(the)-tips stepped-on (his)-feet so-that even
αὐτὸν αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸν Λέοντα καί τινα παράβολον κίνησιν
himself to-perceive — Leo and some reckless movement
ἐξ αὐτοῦ προσδοκᾶν. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν ὕστερον ἐγένετο.
from him to-expect this indeed then later happened
Τότε δὲ τοῦ Λέοντος ἐπιφανέντος, Μιχαὴλ ἅμα παισί 10
then and — Leo having-appeared Michael together-with children
τε καὶ γυναικὶ τὴν κόμην ἀποθέμενοι πρὸς τὸ τοῦ
both and wife the hair having-put-off to the —
θεοῦ τεμένισμα, ὃ Φάρος κατονομάζεται ἀπὸ τοῦ φῶς
of-god precinct which Pharos is-named from the light
ἀνάπτειν πᾶσι καὶ κατὰ τὰς νύκτας χειραγωγεῖν ἐπὶ
to-kindle for-all and in the nights to-guide to
καταγωγάς τινας ἀσφαλεῖς, ἀντίμιμον τοῦ κατὰ τὴν
havens some safe (a)-copy of-the(-one) at —
Ἀλεξάνδρειαν ὄντα τε καὶ λεγόμενον, τὴν αὐτοῦ εὐμένειαν
Alexandria being both and called the his goodwill
χωρεῖ ἐκκαλούμενος. ὁ δὲ συλῆσαι μὲν ἐκ θεοῦ καὶ
goes calling-forth he and to-drag-away indeed from god and
ἔρημον θεῖναι ψυχῆς οὐκ ἐν καλῷ θέμενος, ἐκεῖνον
bereft to-make of-life not in good having-thought that(-man)

μὲν ἐν τῇ Πλάτῃ νήσῳ ὑπερόριον θεὶς ἡσυχάζειν
indeed on — Plate island (as)-exile having-set to-be-quiet
ἐπέτρεψεν, χρυσόν τινα κατ᾽ ἔτος ἐπιχορηγῶν, ἔνθεν καὶ τὸ
permitted gold some by year supplying whence also the
μοναχικὸν σχῆμα λαβόντα καὶ Ἀθανάσιον μετονομασθέντα
monastic habit having-taken and Athanasios having-been-renamed
ἐπιβιῶναί φασιν ἔτη δύο καὶ τριάκοντα. συνῆν δὲ αὐτῷ
to-have-lived-on they-say years two and thirty was-with and him
καὶ Εὐστράτιος ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ καὶ ἀποκαρεὶς καὶ
also Eustratios the son his the(-one) also tonsured and
εὐνουχισθεὶς ὢν ἐτῶν εἴκοσι προστάξει τοῦ Λέοντος, καὶ
castrated being of-years twenty by-order — of-Leo and
Νικήτας, ὃς πρότερον μὲν παῖς ὢν τὴν τῶν ἱκανάτων
Niketas who formerly indeed (a)-boy being the of-the hikanatoi
διεῖπεν ἀρχήν, ἅτε δὴ φίλιος τοῖς στρατιώταις καὶ
administered command inasmuch-as indeed friendly to-the soldiers and
ἐν ὑπαίθρῳ διάγουσιν εἶναί τε θέλων καὶ τῶν πολλῶν
in (the)-open-air living to-be both wishing and of-the many
πραγμάτων ἔμπειρος, τότε δὲ τὴν κόμην καὶ αὐτὸς
affairs experienced then and the hair also he
ἀποθέμενος Ἰγνάτιος ἐκαλεῖτο καὶ τῷ πατρὶ συνεῖναι
having-put-off Ignatius was-called and with-the father to-be-with
ἐτύγχανεν τῷ μονήρη βίῳ προσκείμενος. τὴν δ᾽ αὐτοῦ
happened to-the solitary life devoted the and his
σύνευνον ἀπεσχοίνισε καὶ ἀπέσπασε καὶ πρὸς τὴν μονὴν
bedfellow he-separated and tore-away and to the monastery
τὴν οὕτω λεγομένην Προκοπίας μετέθηκεν, καίτοι γε
the(-one) so called of-Prokopia transferred although at-least
τοῦτο μὴ γενέσθαι πολλὰ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἱκετεύσαντος.
this not to-happen much — Michael having-entreated
καὶ ὁ μὲν Μιχαὴλ τοῦ βίου ἔξω γενόμενος μηνὶ
and — indeed Michael of-the life out having-gone in-(the)-month

Ἰανουαρίῳ ια΄, ἔτει στβ΄, τὸν χοῦν ἀποθέμενος ἐν αὐτῇ
January 11th (in)-year 6302 the dust having-put-off on the(-very)
τῇ νήσῳ, ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ μέρει τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἐτέθαπτο·
the island on the right part of-the church was-buried
ὁ Εὐστράτιος δὲ μετὰ τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς τελευτὴν ἔτη
— Eustratios and after the of-the father death years
ἐπιβιοὺς πέντε [καὶ δέκα] καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκοιμήθη κατὰ τὴν
having-lived-on five and ten also he fell-asleep on the
ιε΄ τοῦ Ἰανουαρίου μηνός, ἔτους στζ΄, ἐν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ
15th of-the January month of-(the)-year 6307 on the left
μέρει τῆς ἐκκλησίας πεσών. ὁ δὲ Ἰγνάτιος ὁ καὶ
part of-the church having-fallen — and Ignatius the(-one) also
πρότερον Νικήτας καλούμενος, τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως
formerly Niketas called — of-Constantinople
πρόεδρος εἶναι λαχών, πολλοῖς ὕστερον χρόνοις ἐν
president to-be having-obtained many later times in
τῇ μονῇ καλουμένῃ Σατύρου, ἣν ἄρτι ἐκ βάθρων
the monastery called of-Satyros which just-now from foundations
δειμάμενος ἔτυχεν, τὸ ἱερὸν αὐτοῦ σῶμα κατέθηκεν. αὕτη
having-built he-happened the sacred his body deposited this
δὲ ἡ μονὴ καὶ τοῦ Ἀνατέλλοντος κέκληται τρόπῳ
and the monastery also of-the Rising(-One) has-been-called in-manner
τοιῷδε. ἀλλὰ Σάτυρος μέν, ὅτι ἐκ μικροῦ διαστήματος
such but Satyros indeed because from (a)-small distance
τῆς τοιαύτης μονῆς ὁ παλαιὸς ὀνομάζεται Σάτυρος, ἐν
of-the such monastery the old(-place) is-named Satyros in
ᾧ ἦν ἱερὸν παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἰκοδομηθὲν τῷ αὐτῷ
which was (a)-shrine by the Greeks built to-the same
Σατύρῳ, οὗ καθ' ὁμωνυμίαν, διὰ τὸ πλησίον εἶναι
Satyros of-which by sameness-of-name because-of the near to-be
τὴν εἰρημένην μονήν, τῷ τοιούτῳ καλεῖται ὀνόματι· ἐξ
the said monastery by-the such it-is-called name from

οὗπερ καὶ ὁ τοῦ Βρύου παλάτια κτίσας Θεόφιλος
which also the(-one) — of-Bryas palaces having-built Theophilos
βασιλεὺς τὴν ὕλην ἀφελόμενος ταῦτα ἐδείματο. Ἀνατέλλων
emperor the material having-taken these built Rising(-One)
δὲ δι' αἰτίαν τοιαύτην. κυνηγετοῦντί ποτε Νικηφόρῳ τῷ
and for (a)-reason such to-(him)-hunting once Nikephoros the
βασιλεῖ ἐν οἷς ἀρτίως ἐστὶν ἡ μονὴ μέρεσι, διὰ
emperor in which(-parts) now is the monastery parts because-of
τὸ ἀλσώδη καὶ δύσβατον εἶναι καὶ πρὸς θήραν ζῴων
the wooded and impassable to-be and for hunting of-animals
ἐπιτηδείαν, ἐλάφου μεγίστης φανείσης καὶ καταδιωκομένης
suitable (a)-deer very-great having-appeared and being-pursued
καὶ χειρωθείσης ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ τόπῳ ἐν ᾧ νῦν τὸ τῆς
and having-been-caught on the(-very) the place in which now the of-the
μονῆς θυσιαστήριον ἵδρυται, εὑρέθη τράπεζα παλαιὰ ὑπὸ
monastery altar is-set was-found (a)-table old by
κίονος βασταζομένη, γράφουσα οὕτως "τοῦτό ἐστι τὸ
(a)-column supported bearing-writing thus this is the
θυσιαστήριον τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου Μιχαὴλ τοῦ ἀνατέλλοντος,
altar of-the archistrategos Michael the Rising(-One)
ὅπερ ἐνεθρόνισεν ὁ ἀπόστολος Ἀνδρέας." ἀλλὰ ταῦτα
which enthroned the apostle Andrew but these(-things)
μὲν οὐ τότε, χρόνου δὲ παρεληλυθότος πολλοῦ ὕστερον.
indeed not then of-time and having-passed much later
11 Ἐπανακτέον δὲ τὸν λόγον, καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν ζητητέον
one-must-bring-back and the account and the cause one-must-seek
τὴν οὕτως ὡς ἐξ ὁμολόγου πείσασαν ἀμφοτέρους, τὸν
the(-one) thus as by agreement having-persuaded both —
μὲν Μιχαὴλ μηδ' ὅλως ὑπὲρ τῆς βασιλείας ἀντισχεῖν
indeed Michael not at-all for the empire to-hold-out
(ἔνεστι γάρ, ὡς ἡ παροιμία, κἂν μύρμηκι χολή), τὸν
it-is(-there) for as the proverb even in-(an)-ant bile —

Λέοντα δὲ θαρρούντως ἐπιβῆναι καὶ κατατολμῆσαι αὐτῆς.
Leo and boldly to-mount and to-dare it
καὶ γὰρ ταύτην μόνην εἴποιμι ἂν ἐγὼ εἶναι ἀληθινωτάτην
and for this alone would-say — I to-be truest
παιδείαν τε καὶ γυμνασίαν πρὸς τὰς πολιτικὰς πράξεις,
education both and training for the political deeds
τὴν ἐναργεστάτην αἰτίαν καὶ τὸ μὴ τήνδε ἀλλὰ τήνδε
the clearest cause and the not this but that
ἐπικεκαλυμμένην καταφοράν, ἧς πᾶσα δὴ βίβλος
veiled (the)-tendency of-which every indeed book
ἱστορικὴ στερουμένη καὶ ἀπογυμνουμένη οὐκ οἶδ' εἴ
historical being-deprived and being-stripped not I-know whether
τινα ὄνησιν παράσχοι τοῖς ἐντυγχάνουσιν. ὑπῆρχε δὲ
any benefit it-would-provide to-the(-ones) reading there-was and
Μιχαὴλ θεραπαινίδιόν τι πρόσοικον, ὃ κατά τινας
to-Michael (a)-little-slave-girl some of-the-household who by some(-accounts)
ἐκβακχευόμενόν τε καὶ ἐνεργούμενον περιόδους ἀπεφοίβαζέ
being-in-frenzy both and possessed at-periods prophesied
τε καὶ ἐμαντεύετο, καὶ πρὸς τῷ τοῦ Βουκολέοντος αἰγιαλῷ
both and divined and at the — of-Boukoleon shore
προσφοιτῶν "κατάβηθι ἐκεῖθεν, κατάβηθι," γεγωνότερον,
frequenting go-down from-there go-down more-loudly
"ὦ Μιχαήλ," ἐπεβόα, "καὶ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἀφίστασο,"
O Michael she-shouted and from-the others' stand-away
πρὸς αὐτὸν δὴ τοῦτον ἀπορριπτοῦσα φωνάς. οὐκ ἔλαθε
at him indeed this(-man) hurling words not escaped-notice
γοῦν τοῦτο πολλάκις γενόμενον οὐδὲ τοὺς ἐθελοκωφεῖν
at-any-rate this often happening not-even the(-ones) to-play-deaf
ἐθέλοντας καὶ τὸν βίον παραπέμπειν εὐφρόσυνον, ἀλλ'
wishing and the life to-pass merry but
ἔφθασεν ὀψὲ γοῦν εἰς τὰς βασιλικὰς ἀκοάς, θροῦν καὶ
reached late at-any-rate to the imperial ears (a)-murmur and

λαλιάν τινα οὐκ εὔελπιν ἐμποιοῦν. καὶ ὃς (φιλεῖ γὰρ ἕκαστος
talk some not hopeful producing and he is-wont for each
τὸ λυποῦν ἐκπομπεύειν τοῖς φιλουμένοις) Θεοδότῳ
the grieving(-thing) to-display to-the(-ones) loved to-Theodotos
τινὶ τῷ κατὰ τὸν Μελισσηνὸν γνησίῳ δοκοῦντι,
(a)-certain the(-one) of — Melissenos genuine seeming
ᾧ ἐπώνυμον ὁ Κασσιτερᾶς, τὰ τῶν λόγων
to-whom (the)-surname — Kassiteras the(-things) of-the words
ἀνεκοινοῦτο, καί τινα βουλὴν ἐξανύεσθαι ἐσυμβούλευεν
shared and some counsel to-accomplish advised
αἰσίαν ὄντως καὶ ἀσφαλῆ. ἡ δὲ ἦν τοῦ κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν
auspicious truly and safe which and was of-the at the time
ὅτε δὴ φοιβόληπτον γένηται τὸ κοράσιον, ἀκριβολογῆσαι
when indeed possessed becomes the girl to-inquire-exactly
τρόπῳ παντὶ τίς τε εἴη οἰκία τοῦ βασιλεύσοντος, καὶ
by-way every who both would-be (the)-house of-the going-to-reign and
κλῆσιν ἥντινα φέρει, καὶ ὁποῖος τούτου ὁ χαρακτήρ.
(the)-name whichever he-bears and of-what-kind his the character
ἐδόκει ταῦτα ποιεῖν, καὶ ἡ ἐνεργουμένη πνεύματι
seemed these(-things) to-do and the(-one) possessed by-spirit
Πύθωνος οὐδὲν ὑποστειλαμένη "κατὰ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν"
of-Python nothing having-held-back at the acropolis
φησί "γενομένῳ σοι κατὰ τὸν δεῖνα καιρὸν δύο τινὲς
she-says having-come to-you at the such-and-such time two certain
ἄνθρωποι εἰσελεύσονται· Λέων ὄνομα τῷ ἑνὶ ἐποχουμένῳ
men will-enter Leo (the)-name to-the one riding
ἡμιόνῳ, θατέρῳ δὲ ἕτερον· οὗτος δὲ τῆς βασιλείας
(a)-mule to-the-other and another(-name) this(-one) and of-the empire
κατευμοιρήσειεν." ταῦτα γοῦν ἐκεῖνος ὁ θεομισὴς
would-have-good-fortune these(-things) at-any-rate that the god-hated
ἀνὴρ ἐξόμνυταί τε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ λέγει τῶν
man denies both to the emperor and says of-the(-things)

γενομένων οὐδέν, λῆρον δὲ τοὺς λόγους ἀποκαλεῖ καὶ μηδὲν
happened nothing nonsense and the words calls and nothing
ἔχοντας ὑγιές. ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἐκείνῳ λῆροι ἢ ἔμετος ἄλλως·
having sound but not to-that(-man) nonsense or vomit otherwise
ἄπεισι γὰρ εὐθύς, καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα, ὡς ἀκηκόει, καταλαβὼν
he-goes-off for at-once and the man as he-had-heard having-found
ἐν τῷ τοῦ θείου Παύλου σηκῷ τῷ ὀρφανοὺς τρέφειν
in the of-the divine Paul precinct the(-one) orphans to-rear
λαχόντι, συνεδριάσας καὶ ὁμολογίαις κατεμπεδώσας καὶ
having-obtained having-sat-in-council and with-agreements having-confirmed and
ὀχυρώσας καὶ θαρρεῖν καὶ χαίρειν παρακελευσάμενος,
having-fortified and to-take-courage and to-rejoice having-urged
ἐκ θείας φωνῆς ἔλεγεν διδαχθῆναί με ἀπορρήτως τὰ
by divine voice he-said to-have-been-taught me secretly the
μέλλοντα, τήν σε βασιλέα διαπρυσίως κηρύττουσαν.
future(-things) the(-voice) you emperor loudly proclaiming
ταῦτα γοῦν ὑπολαληθέντα καὶ οἷον δεύτερά τινα
these(-things) at-any-rate having-been-whispered and as-if second some
χρώματα ὡς ἐν ζωγραφίᾳ ταῖς προτέραις ἐμμορφωθέντα
colors as in painting on-the earlier having-been-formed
σκιαῖς (ἐκείνας λέγω πρώτας τὰς ὑπὸ τοῦ κατὰ τὸ
shadows those I-mean first the(-ones) by the at —
Φιλομήλιον μοναχοῦ ἐκφανθείσας) οὐκέτι ἐν εἰδώλῳ καὶ
Philomelion monk displayed no-longer in phantom and
ἐμφάσει τινὶ ἐμποιεῖ τὴν βασιλείαν ὁρᾶν, γυμνὴν δὲ καὶ οἷον
appearance some makes the empire to-see bare but and as-if
ἐν ἐκβάσει σαφῶς. τοῦτο οὖν τήν τε ἤδη κατηθαλωμένην
in outcome clearly this then the both already burned-down
τοῦ Λέοντος καὶ οἷον ἀπομαρανθεῖσαν φλόγα τῆς ἐλπίδος
— of-Leo and as-if withered flame of-the hope
ὑποτύφεσθαι ἐποίησεν καὶ τὸν Μιχαὴλ ἐν ἀβύσσῳ ἀθυμίας
to-smolder made and — Michael into (an)-abyss of-despondency

καταδῦναι πολλῇ, καὶ τοῦ μὲν τῆς ψυχῆς πύργον
to-sink much and of-the(-one) indeed of-the soul (the)-tower
ἀνέστησεν, τοῦ δὲ ἐγκατέσεισεν. οὐ τοῦτο δὲ μόνον
raised of-the(-other) and shook-down not this but only
τὸ γύναιον, ἀλλὰ δὴ ὁ πιστευθεὶς καὶ ἐξαπατήσας
the little-woman but indeed the(-one) trusted and having-deceived
τῷ ὄντι Κασσιτερᾶς. ἀλλ' αὖθις ἐπὶ τὴν ἱστορίαν ἰτέον.
in-the reality Kassiteras but again to the history one-must-go

12 Ὡς δ' οὖν τὴν αὐτοκράτορα εἴληφεν ὁ Λέων ἀρχήν,
when and then the autocratic took — Leo rule
ἀναρρηθεὶς δημοσίᾳ κατὰ τὸν Ἰούλιον μῆνα τῆς ς΄
having-been-proclaimed publicly in the July month of-the 6th
ἰνδικτιῶνος, Μιχαὴλ μὲν τὸν τὴν γλῶτταν ὑποσυρίζοντα
indiction Michael indeed the(-one) the tongue lisping
τῇ τῶν πατρικίων ἐγκαταλέγει τιμῇ, τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ
in-the of-the patricians enrolls rank the son his
πρότερον ἐκ τοῦ θείου λουτροῦ υἱοποιησάμενος, Θωμᾶν
before from the divine bath having-adopted Thomas
δὲ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ διαφερόντως ὁμήλικα καὶ συμπαίστορα
and the his-own especially age-mate and playmate
τῶν φοιδεράτων τουρμάρχην ἐγκαθιστᾷ. καὶ Μανουὴλ δὲ
of-the foederati tourmarches installs and Manuel also
τὸν Μιχαὴλ πρωτοστράτορα πατρικίοις ἐγκαταλέξας
the(-one) under-Michael protostrator among-patricians having-enrolled
καὶ στρατηγὸν τιμήσας τῶν Ἀρμενίων, "οὐκ ἔδει
and (as)-general having-honored of-the Armenians not it-was-right
σε" ἔφη "πρὸς τὸν κατ' ἐμοῦ ὁπλίζεσθαι πόλεμον,
you he-said against the against me to-arm(-yourself) war
σύμβουλον τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τῆς Προκοπίας γενόμενον."
counselor of-the emperor and — of-Prokopia having-become
καὶ ὃς εὖ μάλιστα παρρησιαζόμενος "ἀλλ' οὐδὲ σὲ
and he well most-of-all speaking-freely but not-even you

ἔδει” ἀντέφησεν “κατὰ τοῦ εὐεργέτου, ἔτι δὲ καὶ
it-was-right retorted against the benefactor further and also
συντέκνου σου, χεῖρα ἀντᾶραι.” τότε μὲν οὖν τούτοις
fellow-godparent your (a)-hand to-raise then indeed then by-these(-words)
κατεσιγάσθη, τὴν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς αἰδεσθεὶς ἀρετήν.
he-was-silenced the of-the man having-respected virtue
ὡς δὲ τὸν τῶν Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντα τῇ προτεραίᾳ νίκῃ 13
when and the of-the Bulgarians ruler by-the previous victory
φρονηματιζόμενον διακήκοεν, καὶ αὖθις δηοῦντα μὲν τὴν
emboldened he-heard and again ravaging indeed the
γείτονα γῆν, κείροντα δὲ καὶ λεηλατοῦντα τοὺς ἀγροὺς καὶ
neighboring land shearing and also plundering the fields and
πολλὰ μὲν σώματα πολλὰ δὲ βοσκήματα καθαρπάζοντα,
many indeed bodies many and cattle seizing
οἰκήσεις δ’ ἑτέρωθεν κατεμπιπρῶντα καὶ ὅλως ὄντα
dwellings and elsewhere burning-down and wholly being
ἀφόρητον, πρῶτον μὲν δεῖν ᾠήθη διὰ πρεσβείας
unbearable first indeed (it)-to-be-needful he-thought through (an)-embassy
εἰρήνης ἀναμνῆσαι αὐτόν, ὡς δ’ οὐκ ἔπεισεν, τὰ
of-peace to-remind him when but not he-persuaded(-him) the(-parts)
τῶν τειχῶν διερρυηκότα δι’ ἑαυτοῦ ἀνοικοδομησάμενος
of-the walls having-fallen-down by himself having-rebuilt
ἐξεβοήθει διὰ ταχέων, καὶ γενόμενος ἐν Μεσημβρίᾳ
he-went-out-to-help in haste and having-come at Mesembria
τῇ πόλει τοιούτῳ τινὶ διεχρήσατο στρατηγήματι. ἡμέρας
the city (a)-such some used stratagem days
ἱκανὰς ἔν τινι τόπῳ ἐπιταφρώσας ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τὸν
sufficient in some place having-entrenched himself both and the
στρατὸν ἐκαθέζετο ἑκάστοτε σιτιζόμενος ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμετέρας
army he-sat each-time being-fed from the our(-land)
καὶ λειπόμενος τῶν ἀναγκαίων, ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς τρυφήν,
and lacking of-the necessities but even for luxury

οὐδενός. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς παρακειμένους καὶ κατ' αὐτοῦ
of-nothing when and the(-men) lying-near and against him
καθωπλισμένους Βουλγάρους ἐν στενότητι εἶναι τῶν
armed Bulgarians in straitness to-be of-the
ἀναγκαίων ἀκήκοεν, τοῦ μὲν οὗ ἐφήδρευε τόπου
necessities he-heard from-the indeed where he-was-encamped place
νύκτωρ ἀπάνεισι μετὰ στρατιωτῶν ἱκανῶν καὶ ῥώμῃ
by-night he-goes-off with soldiers sufficient and in-strength
τε καὶ καρτερίᾳ γεγυμνασμένων, ἑνὶ μόνῳ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
both and in-endurance trained to-one only the his-own
παραγυμνώσας γνώμην, καὶ πρὸς λόχον ἐπί τινος βουνοῦ
having-bared purpose and to ambush on some hill
χωρεῖ, σύνθημα τοῦ πολέμου καὶ ὥραν εἰπών. ὡς
goes (a)-signal of-the war and (an)-hour having-told when
δ' ἡμέρα ἀνέλαμπε καὶ ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐγυμνοῦτο τοῦ
and day shone and the army was-stripped of-the
βασιλεύοντος, φυγῇ χρήσασθαι τοῦτον, τὸν βασιλέα δηλονότι,
reigning(-emperor) flight to-have-used this the emperor clearly
πάντες καθωμολόγουν, τῶν γεγονότων εἰδότες οὐδέν. ὅθεν
all agreed of-the happened(-things) knowing nothing whence
ἀναθαρρήσαντες οἱ ἐναντίοι μένειν ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν οὐδ' ὅλως
having-taken-courage the opponents to-stay by themselves not at-all
ἐδύναντο, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατεξανίσταντο καὶ ἐπὶ χεῖρας ᾤοντο
could but even rose-up and into hands they-thought
τὸ στράτευμα ἔχειν. νυκτὸς οὖν ἐπιγενομένης κάτεισιν
the army to-have of-night then having-come-on comes-down
ἐκ τοῦ λόχου ὁ Λέων ἀπροσδοκήτοις οὖσι κακῶν, καὶ
from the ambush — Leo on(-men)-unexpecting being of-evils and
συμμίξας αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν ὅπλων γυμνοῖς καὶ διαλελυμένοις
having-engaged them men of-arms bare and relaxed
ὕπνῳ τε καὶ θάρρει τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως φυγῆς τοσοῦτον
with-sleep both and confidence of-the of-the emperor flight so-much

ἐνειργάσατο φθόρον καὶ φόνον πάντοθεν ἐκχυθέντων τῶν
worked destruction and slaughter from-everywhere having-poured-out the
Ῥωμαίων κατὰ τὸ σύνθημα, ὡς πανδημεὶ αἱρῆσαι τὸ
Romans according-to the signal so-that in-full-force to-take the
στρατόπεδον καὶ μηδὲ πυρφόρον, τὸ δὴ λεγόμενον,
camp and not-even (a)-fire-bearer the(-thing) indeed said
διασωθῆναι. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν ἐκ
to-be-saved not indeed but also every age from
καταδρομῆς τε καὶ προνομῆς ἀνάρπαστον θείς, καὶ τὰ
raid both and foraging (as)-plunder having-made and the
τέκνα τούτων ταῖς πέτραις καὶ τῇ γῇ προσκροτῶν, τὴν
children of-these on-the rocks and on-the ground dashing the
ἑαυτοῦ κατέλαβεν ἐν τάχει. ὅθεν ἔκτοτε ἐκεῖνος ὁ βουνὸς
his-own(-land) reached in speed whence from-then that the hill
Λέοντος ἐπωνομάσθη· καὶ οἱ ἀεὶ ἐκεῖσε διαβιβαζόμενοι
of-Leo was-named and the(-men) always there being-taken-across
τῶν Βουλγάρων τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐπισείοντες δακτυλοδεικτοῦσι,
of-the Bulgarians the head shaking point-with-the-finger
καὶ λήθην λαμβάνουσι τῶν τότε κακῶν οὐδαμῶς.
and forgetfulness take of-the then evils in-no-way
Τοῦτο γοῦν θρασύτερόν πως αὐτὸν καὶ ἰταμώτερον 14
this at-any-rate bolder somehow him and more-reckless
ἐνειργάσατο τὸ προτέρημα, καὶ εἰς τὴν σύντροφον
made the advantage and into the inbred
ὠμότητα ἐναπέρραξε. μικροῦ γὰρ καὶ μείζονος οὐκ ἦν
cruelty broke-out of-small for and greater not was
αὐτῷ διαφορὰ ἁμαρτήματος, ἀλλὰ κατὰ πάντων ἐφ' ᾧ
to-him difference of-fault but against all on which
τινι καταλαμβανομένων μία ψῆφος, τὸ ἀκρωτηριάζεσθαι
any being-caught one vote(-was) the to-be-mutilated
τῶν ἀναγκαίων μέλος ὁποιονοῦν καὶ πάντων ἐπ'
of-the necessary (a)-limb whatever and of-all before

ὄψεσι τίθεσθαι ἐκκρεμές. ἃ καὶ πᾶσι πεποιηκότων
(the)-eyes to-be-set hanging which also all having-done
τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐνέτικτον μῖσος δὴ τούτου καὶ δεινὴν
to-the men engendered hatred indeed of-him and terrible
ἀπέχθειαν· οἷς γὰρ ἄκρατον τὴν ἐγχώριον θηριωδίαν
enmity whom for unmixed the native savagery
ἐνήσκησεν, ἀλλ᾽ οὐ κεκολασμένην τινὰ καὶ πρὸς τὸ
he-practiced but not chastened some and toward the
πραότερον ἀπονεύουσαν, τὴν συγγενίδα φύσιν ἐκφαυλίζων
milder inclining the kindred nature disparaging
ἀνηλεῶς, μισθὸν τὸ ἔχθος ἀλλ᾽ οὐ τὴν φιλίαν ἠμπόλησεν.
pitilessly (as)-wage the enmity but not the friendship he-bought

Leo sends gifts to the monk of Philomelion but finds him dead; in his cell a schemer, Symbatios, warns that Leo will not reign long while he holds to the images, which he calls idols. Kassiteras, Leo's confidant, coaches a monk at the portico of Maurianos to promise him seventy-two years if he follows Leo the Isaurian against the images. Leo proclaims the images' destruction, exiles the patriarch Nikephoros, whom Theophanes salutes from afar, and installs Kassiteras. A diligent ruler and incorruptible judge, he is impious in the faith, swearing a treaty by Bulgarian rites and persecuting the orthodox. Michael the Stammerer, convicted of treason the day before Christmas, is condemned to the furnace, but Leo's wife Theodosia makes him wait out the feast. Haunted by a Sibylline oracle of a lion slain at Christmas, his mother's vision, and a dream of Tarasios, Leo visits Michael by night and is seen; Michael threatens to name his accomplices, and they, disguised as clergy, kill Leo at the morning office.

Ταῦτ᾽ οὖν ἔπραττεν, καὶ κατὰ νοῦν λαμβάνει τὸν ἐπὶ 15
these(-things) then he-did and into mind takes the(-one) at
τῷ Φιλομηλίῳ μονάζοντα, καὶ ἀμείβεσθαί οἱ δοκεῖ τῆς
— Philomelion living-as-a-monk and to-repay him seems(-good) of-the
προρρήσεως, εὐχαριστήριά τινα προπέμπων αὐτῷ, τὰς
prediction thank-offerings some sending-ahead to-him the
τοῦ κράτους νίκας δῆθεν αἰτῶν. ἀλλ᾽ ἐκεῖνος μὲν ἤδη
of-the power victories supposedly asking but that(-one) indeed already
φθάσας ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο, πονηρὸς δέ τις
having-been-beforehand from men had-gone (a)-wicked and some
δαίμων καὶ βάσκανος (οὐ γὰρ ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον καλέσαιμι
demon and envious not for (a)-man this(-one) would-I-call
τὸν πάντα συγχέαντα καὶ ταράξαντα καὶ κατὰ τὸν
the(-one) all having-confounded and having-troubled and after the
παλαιὸν ὄφιν τὸν ἰὸν τοῖς τοῦ ταλαιπώρου Λέοντος ὠσὶν
ancient serpent the venom into-the of-the wretched Leo ears
ἐγχέαντα, ἀνεπίστατον κεκτημένου ὅλον τὸν νοῦν) τῷ τοῦ
having-poured heedless possessing whole the mind in-the of-the

γέροντος οἰκίσκῳ ἐν εὐλαβείας προσχήματι ἐγκατέλαβεν.
old-man little-house in of-piety pretext caught(-him)
Συμβάτιος οὗτος ἐλέγετο, ὃς τὸν βασιλικὸν ἄγγελον
Symbatios this(-one) was-called who the imperial messenger
πολλὰ προσονειδίζων, καὶ δύσφημα κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
much reproaching and ill-omened(-things) against the emperor
εἰς πρόσωπον ἀλλ' οὐχ ὑπὸ κόλπον λαλῶν, ἦ μὴν
to (his)-face but not under (the)-bosom speaking verily indeed
ἐξελιπάρει μηδὲν καθυποστελλόμενον ἐξειπεῖν ὡς οὐκ ἔσται
begged nothing holding-back to-say that not will-be
σοι τὸ βασιλεύειν ἐπὶ πολὺ εἰδώλοις (ὢ τῆς καταράτου
for-you the to-reign for long to-idols oh of-the accursed
γλώσσης ἐκείνης) προσανέχοντι καὶ τολμῶντι τοῖς
tongue that holding-to and daring for-the(-ones)
ὑπὸ τῆς παρδεῶς καὶ θυάδος καὶ ταραξίου σεβομένοις, τὴν
by the panther and maenad and troubler worshiped the
βασιλεύσασαν Εἰρήνην καὶ τὸν ἐν ἁγίοις Ταράσιον
having-reigned Irene and the(-one) among (the)-saints Tarasios
ἀφέτῳ γλώττῃ περὶ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων οὕτως ἀποκαλῶν.
with-unbridled tongue about the divine images so calling(-them)
ὁ δὲ Λέων, τὸ ὄντως δαιμόνων εἴδωλον, τὸ τῆς ἀμαθίας
— and Leo the really of-demons idol the of-the ignorance
ἀνδράποδον, τὸ τῆς σκιᾶς ἀφωνότερον, δέον
slave the(-one) than-the shadow more-voiceless (it-)being-needful
τούτων κατολιγωρῆσαι, ἢ εἰ μὴ τοῦτο, ἐκπομπεύειν γοῦν
these(-things) to-disregard or if not this to-display at-any-rate
καὶ θεατρίζειν ταῦτα τῷ τὰς τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἡνίας
and to-make-a-show(-of) these(-things) to-the(-one) the of-the church reins
ἰθύνοντι, καὶ σύνοδον συγκροτῆσαι περὶ μεγάλων μεγάλως
steering and (a)-synod to-convene about great(-things) greatly
ἀνερευνῶν, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀνδράσι μηδὲν ὑγιὲς φρονοῦσι, μηδὲ
investigating but not with-men nothing sound thinking nor

τὰ ἑαυτοῦ (φεῦ τῆς μετὰ δόλου φιλίας) ἀλλὰ τὰ
the(-things) of-himself alas for-the with guile friendship but the(-things)
οἰκεῖα προμηθουμένων καὶ προδιοικουμένων, τῷ φιλουμένῳ
own forethinking and pre-arranging to-the beloved
ἀνακοινοῦται Κασσιτερᾷ, καὶ τὰ ἀπεσταλμένα ἄγει
shares Kassiteras and the(-things) sent brings
τούτῳ εἰς φῶς. ὁ δὲ κακῷ τὸ κακὸν καὶ λύσσῃ
to-him into light he and with-evil the evil and with-madness
λύσσαν οὐ θεραπεύων ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεγείρων, ἕτερόν τινα τῇ
madness not curing but rousing another some by-the
ὁμοίᾳ δόξῃ περὶ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων ἐνισχημένον κατὰ τοῦ
like opinion about the divine images held at —
Μαυριανοῦ ἔμβολον ἐνσκηνοῦντα ἀναγνωρίζει, ἀπέραντά
of-Maurianos portico dwelling he-makes-known boundless(-things)
τινα καὶ μετέωρα λεσχηνεύων καὶ ὑπεράγγελον τοῦτον
some and lofty chattering and above-the-angels this(-one)
εἶναι διαβεβαιούμενος· “τούτῳ οὖν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, χρῶ περὶ
to-be affirming him then O emperor use about
τῶν τοιούτων μυσταγωγῷ· καὶ ὃ ἂν εἴποι σοι ποιῶν
the such(-things) (as)-initiator and what — he-may-say to-you doing
οὐχ ἁμαρτήσεις τοῦ δέοντος.”
not you-will-miss of-the needful
ὡς οὖν ἐπεράνατο τὰ τῆς συμβουλῆς, μεταθέειν 16
when then he-had-finished the(-things) of-the counsel to-run-over
ἔγνω πρὸς τὸν μονάζοντα, καὶ τοῦτον καταντλήσας
he-decided to the monk and him having-drenched
ταῖς φλυαρίαις προσέθηκεν ὡς κατὰ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν
with-the nonsense added that on the coming
νύκτα, ἰδιώτου σχῆμα ἀναλαβόμενον, αὐτὸν ἐνταῦθα
night of-(a)-private-man (the)-guise having-taken-on him here
βασιλέα ἀγάγω σοι, περί τε πίστεως καὶ ἄλλων οὐκ
(the)-emperor I-shall-bring to-you about both faith and other not

εὐκαταφρονήτων πραγμάτων συμβουλευόμενον. τοῦτον οὖν
easily-despised affairs consulting him then
ἔτη δύο καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα τὴν βασιλείαν κατευθυνεῖν
years two and seventy the empire to-steer
καθυπισχνοῦ, καὶ τρισκαιδέκατον ἀρίθμει τῶν ἀποστόλων,
promise and thirteenth count(-him) of-the apostles
καὶ παῖδας παίδων ἐπὶ θρόνου τῆς βασιλείας ἰδεῖν, εἴ γε
and children of-children on (the)-throne of-the empire to-see if at-least
Λέοντος ἐξ Ἰσαυρίας συστοιχεῖ πως τῷ δόγματι. μὴ
of-Leo from Isauria he-agrees somehow with-the doctrine not
ὑπισχνουμένου δὲ ἀλλ᾽ ἀπαναινομένου, τὴν ἐξώλειαν καὶ
promising and but refusing the utter-ruin and
ἀπώλειαν καὶ κρημνοὺς καὶ βάραθρα ἠπειλῆσθαι τούτῳ
destruction and cliffs and pits to-have-been-threatened to-him
ἐπόμνυε ἐκ θεοῦ. ταῦτ᾽ οὖν ἐκ σκαιωρίας καὶ γνώμης
swear by god these(-things) then from mischief and purpose
πονηρᾶς ἀναδιδάξας, τὸν βασιλέα ἦγεν κατὰ τὸν δηλωθέντα
wicked having-taught the emperor he-led at the shown
καιρόν· καὶ ἐπείπερ εἰσῄεσαν μετὰ τοῦ Θεοδότου καὶ τῶν
time and when they-went-in with — Theodotos and of-the
ἀπορρήτων ἀπήρχοντο, "οὐ χρή σε" ἔφη ὁ μοναχός
secrets began not must you he-said the monk
"τὴν ἁλουργίδα καταλιμπάνοντα, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἰδιώτου
the purple leaving O emperor of-(a)-private-man
σχῆμα ἀλλάσσεσθαι καὶ τρώγειν γνώμας οὕτω τὰς τῶν
guise to-take-on and to-nibble opinions thus the of-the
πολλῶν." καὶ ὃς ἐκπαθὴς ἅμα καὶ παραπλὴξ τῷ ῥήματι
many and he excited at-once and stunned by-the word
τούτῳ γενόμενος, καὶ ἄλλως οἰηθεὶς ἐκ θείας εἶναι
this having-become and otherwise having-thought from divine to-be
προγνώσεως, ὡς σκιὰ τῷ ἀνδριάντι εἵπετο ἀληθῶς, καὶ
foreknowledge like (a)-shadow the statue followed truly and

ὅλως ἤρτητο καὶ ἐκρέματο ἐξ ὥτων ὥσπερ τι κεραμοῦν
wholly was-fastened and hung from (the)-ears like some earthen
ἀγγεῖον τοῖς λόγοις τοῦ μοναχοῦ. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν
vessel on-the words of-the monk but these(-things) indeed
εἴρηται καὶ τοῖς πρὸ ἡμῶν διὰ μέτρου ποιήσεως.
have-been-told also by-the(-men) before us through meter of-poetry
Αὐτίκα γοῦν τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων ἀναγορεύει 17
at-once at-any-rate the of-the revered images proclaims
καθαίρεσιν, καὶ τὸν πατριάρχην (Νικηφόρος δὲ οὗτος ἦν)
destruction and the patriarch Nikephoros and this(-one) was
γραφῇ αὐτοχείρῳ ἠξίου τοῦτο συγκατατίθεσθαι, εἴ γε
in-writing with-own-hand he-asked this to-agree-to if at-least
μὴ μέλλοι ὑπερορίαν καταψηφίζεσθαι. ὁ δὲ καὶ ἄλλοθεν
not he-was-about exile to-be-condemned-to he and also from-elsewhere
τεκμηράμενος τὴν τοῦ τυράννου πρὸς τὸ θεῖον ἀπέχθειαν,
having-inferred the of-the usurper toward the divine hatred
ἄγεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ συνεῖναι τοιούτῳ κρίνας ἀπήγετο
to-be-led-away rather than to-be-with such(-a-man) having-judged was-led-away
πρὸς τὴν καταψηφισθεῖσαν ὁμολογίαν· καὶ Θεόδοτος ὁ
to the condemned confession and Theodotos the
Κασσιτερᾶς τὸν τῆς ἱεραρχίας θρόνον ἆθλον λάμβανε κατὰ
Kassiteras the of-the hierarchy throne (as)-prize takes at
τὸν τοῦ θείου πάσχα καιρόν. ἄξιον δὲ μηδὲ τὸ τεκμήριον
the of-the divine Easter time worthy and not-even the proof
παραδραμεῖν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ Νικηφόρος, ἅτε τῆς ἱερωσύνης
to-pass-over — indeed for Nikephoros inasmuch-as of-the priesthood
προϊστάμενος, ἐζήτει τὴν διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ συμβόλου πρὸς τὴν
presiding sought the through the sacred creed to the
θείαν πίστιν συγκατάθεσιν· ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη νῦν τοῦτο ποιήσειν,
divine faith assent he and not he-said now this to-do
ὑπερθέσθαι δὲ μέχρις ἂν ἡ τῆς βασιλείας αὐτῷ τελείως
to-postpone(-it) but until — the of-the empire to-him completely

ἀνάρρησις γένηται, δηλούσης τῆς ἀναβολῆς ὡς καὶ αὐτοῦ
proclamation should-happen showing the postponement that also of-him
γε προενισχημένου τῇ τῆς αἱρέσεως μανίᾳ ἐκ γενετῆς.
at-least having-been-preoccupied by-the of-the heresy madness from birth
18 ἕτερον δὲ τοῦ λεχθέντος σαφέστερον· ὡς γὰρ ἄρτι
another and than-the(-thing) said clearer when for just
τὸ πρῶτον ἀνηγορευμένος ἐδεῖτο τοῦ διαδήματος, καὶ
the first having-been-proclaimed he-needed the diadem and
τοῦτο ἔδει τὸν ἀρχιερέα τῇ καταπτύστῳ ἐπιθεῖναι
this it-was-needful the high-priest on-the despicable to-place
κεφαλῇ, προσήγγισεν δὲ ταύτη καὶ κατεπαφώμενος
head he-approached and to-it and touching
οὐ τριχῶν, ὅπερ ἐδόκει, μαλακῶν, ἀκανθῶν δὲ καὶ
not of-hairs which seemed soft of-thorns but and
τριβόλων, ὅπερ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ἐνῆν, ἐν αἰσθήσει ἐγένετο,
caltrops which in-the truth were-there into perception he-came
ἀκίσιν οἷον κατακεντούμενος καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ὀδύναις
with-points as-if being-pricked and the hand with-pains
περιπειρόμενος ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν πρότερον· τότε γοῦν
being-pierced but these(-things) indeed before then at-any-rate
ὁ πατριάρχης ὑπερόριος, τὴν καταχειροτονήσασαν ψῆφον
the patriarch (as)-exile the condemning vote
δεξάμενος, ἐπορεύετο, ὅτε δὴ καὶ λέγεται ἐφ᾽ ὁλκάδος
having-received was-traveling when indeed also it-is-said on (a)-merchant-ship
αὐτῷ φερομένῳ μακρὰν κατά τινα τόπον παραθαλάττιον
him being-carried far-off at some place by-the-sea
πόρρωθεν ἰδεῖν Θεοφάνην τὸν μακαρίτην, θυμιάμασί τε
from-afar to-see Theophanes the blessed with-incense both
καὶ λαμπάσι δεξιούμενον, οἷόν τινα προπομπὴν τῇ καλῇ
and torches greeting(-him) as-if some escort to-the fine
ἐκείνῃ ὁμολογίᾳ προπέμποντα. ὃν ὡς εἰκὸς ἀποδοχῆς
that confession sending-forward whom as (is)-likely of-welcome

ἀξιώσας καὶ θεῷ παραδοὺς δι᾽ εὐχῆς, τὰς χεῖρας
having-deemed-worthy and to-god having-handed-over through prayer the hands
οἷον ἄρας μεταρσίως περιεβάλετο τοῦτον, πόρρωθεν τὸν
as-if having-raised aloft embraced him from-afar the
τελευταῖον ἀποδοὺς ἀσπασμόν. ἐρομένου δέ τινος τῶν
last having-given greeting having-asked and one of-the(-men)
συνεπομένων, ὡς δὴ τίνι τοῦτον ἀποδίδως εὐκτῶς
following-with(-him) as indeed to-whom this you-give prayerfully
τε καὶ ἐφετῶς, "τῷ ὁμολογητῇ" φάναι "Θεοφάνει"
both and longingly to-the confessor to-have-said Theophanes
προφητίδι γλώττῃ, "μονῇ προεστῶτι τοῦ Ἀγροῦ.".
with-prophetic tongue (the)-monastery presiding-over — of-Agros
ὃ καὶ συνέβη μετ᾽ οὐ πολύ· αὐτός τε γὰρ τοῦτον
which also happened after not long he both for him
ἑώρακεν οὐδαμῶς, κἀκεῖνος τὸν τῆς ὁμολογίας στέφανον
saw in-no-way and-that(-one) the of-the confession crown
ἀνεδήσατο. καὶ τὰ μὲν τοῦ ἀρχιερέως οὕτως.
bound-on and the(-things) indeed of-the high-priest thus(-were)
Αὐτὸς δὲ οἷόν τινα τῆς αὐτοῦ βασιλείας ἀρχὴν ἐπιθεὶς 19
he and as-if some of-the his reign beginning having-placed
δεξιὰν τὸ τὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας οὕτωσὶ διοικονομῆσαι,
auspicious the the(-things) of-the church thus to-arrange
καὶ τὴν φιλοτιμίαν εἴπερ τις νοσῶν, τῶν κοινῶν
and the ambition if-ever any sick of-the common
πραγμάτων ἀντελαμβάνετο, πανταχοῦ τὸ κέντρον κατὰ
affairs he-took-up everywhere the sting like
τοὺς σφῆκας φέρων μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ, τὸν στρατιώτην τε
the wasps bearing with himself the soldier both
ὄχλον γυμνάζων αὐτός, καὶ πόλεις πολλαχοῦ τῶν κατὰ
crowd training himself and cities in-many-places of-the(-ones) in
Θρᾴκην καὶ Μακεδονίαν δι᾽ ἑαυτοῦ ἐκ βάθρων ἀνεγείρων,
Thrace and Macedonia by himself from foundations raising

καὶ περιπορευόμενος πανταχοῦ, ὡς φοβερὸς εἶναι καὶ
and going-round everywhere so-as fearsome to-be and
καταπληκτικὸς καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἐχθροῖς. ὑπὲρ ὧν καὶ
astounding even to-the(-very) the enemies for which also
τὸν ἅγιον Νικηφόρον φασὶν εἰπεῖν ποτὲ μετὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ
the holy Nikephoros they-say to-have-said once after the his
ἀποβίωσιν ὡς εἰ καὶ ἀλάστορα, ἀλλ᾽ οὖν ἐπιμελητὴν τῶν
death that if even (an)-avenging-fiend but yet (a)-caretaker of-the
κοινῶν ἡ πόλις ἄνδρα ἀπώλεσεν. καὶ περὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς
common(-things) the city (a)-man lost and about the offices
δὲ καὶ ἡγεμονίας, οὐ τὰς πολιτικὰς δὴ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ
too and commands not the civil indeed only but also
τὰς στρατηγικάς, διεπτόητο ἰσχυρῶς· χρημάτων κρείττων
the military(-ones) he-was-agitated strongly of-money superior
αὐτὸς ὢν τοὺς ἀδωροτάτους πάντων προέκρινεν, ἀριστίνδην
himself being the most-incorruptible of-all he-preferred by-merit
πάντας ἀλλ᾽ οὐ κατὰ πλοῦτον τιμῶν. καὶ δικαιοσύνης μὲν
all but not by wealth honoring and of-justice indeed
ἐραστὴς λέγεσθαι ἐβούλετο, οὐκ ἐγίνετο δέ· πλὴν ἀντεποιεῖτο
(a)-lover to-be-called he-wished not he-was and but he-laid-claim
ταύτης, καὶ πολλὰς τῶν κρίσεων δι᾽ ἑαυτοῦ ἐξεπέραινε
to-it and many of-the judgments by himself he-completed
κατὰ τὸ Λαυσιακὸν ἐγκαθήμενος. καί ποτε δή τινος
at the Lausiakos sitting and once indeed (when)-someone
ἔγκλησιν πρὸς αὐτὸν ποιησαμένου περὶ γυναικὸς ἁρπαγῆς,
(a)-complaint to him having-made about (a)-woman's abduction
ὡς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τις τῶν ἐπιφανῶν ἀνηρπάκει ἀνδρῶν, καὶ
that the his-own one of-the notable had-seized men and
ὅτι οὐδὲ λόγων ἠξίωμαι τῷ ὑπάρχῳ πολλάκις
that not-even of-words I-have-been-deemed-worthy by-the eparch often
διενοχλῶν, ἐκεῖνον μέν, ἐπείπερ αὐθωρὸν παραστάντα
troubling(-him) that(-man) indeed since instantly standing-by

οὕτως ἔχειν ἐπεμαρτύρησεν, εἰς εὐθύνας ἦγε τῆς
so to-be(-the-case) testified into accounts he-brought from-the
ἀρχῆς μεταστήσας καὶ πικρίαν πολλὴν καταχέας
office having-removed(-him) and bitterness much having-poured-down
αὐτοῦ, τὸν δὲ μοιχὸν νόμῳ ἐκδοθῆναι προστέταχεν.
on-him the and adulterer to-the-law to-be-handed-over he-ordered
Ἀλλὰ τούτοις μὲν τὴν πολιτείαν οἷον ὑπέσαινε καὶ τὴν
but with-these indeed the commonwealth as-if he-fawned-on and the
πρὸς αὐτόν, ὡς ἂν εἴποι τις, εὔνοιαν ἐκαπήλευσεν·
toward him as — might-say one goodwill peddled
περὶ δὲ τὴν πίστιν ἐμαίνετο κραταιῶς, τοσοῦτον ὡς 20
about and the faith he-raved mightily so-much that
μηδὲ θεὸν ὀνομάζειν ἐδόκει τούτῳ καλόν. καὶ γὰρ τὰς
not-even god to-name seemed to-him fine and for the
τριακοντούτας σπονδὰς τοῖς Οὔννοις δὴ τούτοις τοῖς
thirty-year treaties with-the Huns indeed these the(-ones)
καλουμένοις Βουλγάροις ἐνωμότως ποιῶν καὶ εἰρηνικὰς
called Bulgarians on-oath making and peaceful
συμβάσεις καταπραττόμενος, ἐπεὶ δι᾽ ὅρκων ταύτας ἔμελλε
agreements concluding since by oaths these he-was-about
βεβαιοῦν τε καὶ ἐμπεδοῦν, οὐ τούτοις δὴ τοῖς ἡμετέροις
to-confirm both and to-ratify not these indeed the ours
ἐχρῆτο, θεὸν καὶ οὐρανίους δυνάμεις ἢ τὴν κατὰ σάρκα
he-used god and heavenly powers or the(-one) according-to flesh
γενομένην μητέρα Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ τῶν λεγομένων
having-become mother of-Christ — god of-the(-things) said
τε καὶ πραττομένων ἐφόρους καὶ μάρτυρας· ἀλλ᾽ οἷά τις
both and done overseers and witnesses but like some
ψυχὴ βάρβαρος θεοσεβείας ἀπῳκισμένη, κύνας μέν, καὶ
soul barbarian from-piety estranged dogs indeed and
οἷς τὰ ἄνομα ἔθνη θύουσιν, ἐχρῆτο μάρτυσι
(the-things)-to-which the lawless nations sacrifice he-used (as)-witnesses

τῶν πραττομένων καὶ ἀπέτεμνεν καὶ διὰ στόματος
of-the(-things) done and he-cut(-them) and through (the)-mouth
ἄγειν οὐκ ἐμυσάττετο εἰς βεβαίωσιν, οἷς ἐκεῖνοι
to-take not he-loathed for confirmation with-which those(-men)
ἐμφορούμενοι, τὴν τῶν Χριστιανῶν δὲ πίστιν ἐκείνοις
being-filled the of-the Christians and faith to-those(-men)
μέλλουσί ποτε ὑφ' ἡμῶν διαβιβάζεσθαι πρὸς ἐκείνην, ὡς
about some-time by us to-be-brought-across to that(-faith) as
ἔοικε, κατεπίστευσεν. καὶ σαφῶς οὑτωσὶ οὐκ ᾐσχύνετο
it-seems he-entrusted and clearly thus not he-was-ashamed
ἀσεβῶν· οἷς τε γὰρ τοὺς τῆς πίστεως μαργαρίτας
being-impious with-which both for the of-the faith pearls
κατὰ τὴν τοῦ κυρίου φωνὴν ἔμπροσθεν ἠφίει τῶν
according-to the of-the lord voice before he-threw the
χοίρων καὶ χρῆσθαι τούτοις ἐπὶ στόματος ἐξεβιάζετο, ἄξιος
swine and to-use these on (the)-mouth he-forced worthy
βδελυρίας ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀσεβῶν· καὶ οἷς τὰ ἐκείνων
of-loathing the man being-impious and with-which the(-things) of-those
αὖθις αὐτὸς τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων διέπων βασιλείαν τε καὶ
again he the of-the Romans administering empire both and
ἀρχὴν οὐκ ἠρυθρία μυσταγωγούμενος καὶ τελούμενος ἐν
rule not blushed being-initiated and being-consecrated in
πανδήμῳ θεάτρῳ καὶ οὕτω γε δὴ πλήρει τῶν ἀπίστων
(a)-public theater and so at-least indeed full of-the unbelievers
τε καὶ πιστῶν, τοῦ αἰωνίου σκώληκος καὶ πυρὸς ἀλλ' οὐκ
both and believers of-the eternal worm and fire but not
ἄλλων ἐπάξιος. καὶ ὅσους δὲ τὸν ὀρθὸν εὕρισκε λόγον
of-others deserving and as-many-as too the right he-found doctrine
τηροῦντας, τούτους πικρῶς κατῄκιζε καὶ δεινῶς· ἐτέρωθεν
keeping these bitterly he-maltreated and terribly elsewhere
δὲ τὰ τῶν ὁμοφρόνων οἱ στίφη τε καὶ συστήματα
and the(-things) of-the like-minded for-him bands both and companies

συνεκρότει τε καὶ συνήγειρεν ἐν ταὐτῷ παρὰ πλευρὰν
he-assembled both and gathered in the-same(-place) beside (the)-side
αὐτοῦ τιθεὶς καὶ προσεπικλύζων ταῖς ὠφελείαις.
his placing(-them) and flooding(-them) with-the benefits
τούτοις καὶ Ἰωάννης ὁ γραμματικὸς ἐγκατέλεκτο, παντὸς
among-these also John the grammarian was-enrolled of-every
ἀνάσκητος ὑπάρχων καλοῦ. οἷς καί τινα γραφὴν ὁ
unpracticed being good to-whom also some writing —
Λέων νεαρᾶς τινὸς καὶ μιαρᾶς ἐξαρχομένην πίστεως
Leo of-new some and defiled beginning faith
ἀναγράψαι κελεύσας, τὸν κατὰ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων δρόμον
to-write-up having-ordered the against the divine images course
ἐδίωκεν. ἀνερρίπισε δέ πως οἷον καὶ ἐξεφύσησεν εἰς
pursued fanned and somehow as-if also blew-up to
ὕψος αἴρων αὐτὸν (καὶ γὰρ ἦν κοῦφος καὶ πρὸς οὐδὲν
height raising him and for he-was light and toward nothing
ἐφέρετο λελογισμένῳ τῷ νῷ) ὁ τοῦ ἱεροῦ συστήματός
was-borne with-reasoned the mind the(-one) of-the sacred company
τε καὶ κλήρου τῶν βασιλικῶν αὐλῶν ἀρχηγός. λοχῶν
both and clergy of-the imperial courts leader lying-in-wait
γὰρ αὐτὸν ἐκ πολλοῦ καὶ οἷον ἐξ ἐνέδρας ὡς τὸν
for him from long and as-if from ambush as —
Πρωτέα αἱρήσειν ἐρῶν, ἐπεὶ κατά τινα καιρὸν τὸ θεῖον
Proteus to-catch longing when at some time the divine
ἐκεῖνο εἰς ἐπήκοον ῥητὸν ἐκκλησιαζόμενον ἐκηρύττετο
that to (the)-hearing saying being-read-in-church was-proclaimed
“τίνι ὡμοιώσατε κύριον, καὶ τίνι ὁμοιώματι ὡμοιώσατε
to-whom have-you-likened (the)-lord and to-what likeness have-you-likened
αὐτόν; μὴ εἰκόνα ἐποίησε τέκτων, ἢ χρυσόχοος χωνεύσας
him not (an)-image made (a)-carpenter or (a)-goldsmith having-melted
χρυσίον περιεχρύσωσεν αὐτόν, ἢ ὁμοίωμα κατεσκεύασεν;”
gold gilded him or (a)-likeness fashioned

ἐπεὶ γοῦν τοῦτο κατὰ τὸν τοῦ Φάρου ναὸν ἐξηχεῖτό
when at-any-rate this in the — of-Pharos church was-sounded
τε καὶ διεβεβόητο, ἠρέμα πως ὑποσυρεὶς καὶ ἑαυτὸν
both and was-cried-abroad quietly somehow having-slipped-up and himself
εἰς προῦπτον ἀγαγών, "σύνες ὅ τι λέγει," φησίν, "ὦ
into (the)-open having-brought understand what ever says he-says O
βασιλεῦ, τὸ ἱερὸν λόγιον· καὶ μηδείς σοι μετάμελος ἐπὶ
emperor the sacred oracle and no to-you regret over
τοῖς ἐναρχθεῖσιν ἔστω, ἀλλ' ἅπαν θεῖον δοκοῦν ἐκποδὼν
the(-things) begun let-be but every divine seeming out-of-the-way
ποιήσας εἰκόνισμα τῆς ὀρθῆς ἔχου λατρείας τῶν
having-made image of-the right hold worship of-the(-men)
μὴ σεβομένων αὐτά." τούτοις, ὡς εἶπον, ἀσυλλογίστως
not worshiping them by-these as I-said unreasoningly
ὑπεκκαεὶς καὶ τὴν ἄθλιον ἐκείνην ψυχὴν προσεκπυρωθεὶς
having-been-kindled and the wretched that soul having-been-inflamed
ὅλην ἐκίνησε κατὰ μὲν τῶν εὐσεβῶν τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μανίαν,
whole he-moved against indeed the pious the his-own madness
κατὰ δὲ τῶν ἀσεβῶν τὴν θείαν καὶ δικαίαν ὀργήν. ὁ μὲν
against and the impious the divine and just wrath he indeed
γὰρ θεσπίσματι πάντας τοὺς ἀρχιερεῖς ἐκ τῆς ὑπερορίας
for by-decree all the high-priests from the exile
μετεπέμπετο, συλαγωγῶν τούτους, τῆς τοῦ πατριάρχου
he-summoned plundering them of-the of-the patriarch
θέας πόρρωθεν καθιστῶν καὶ ἀποκηρύττων αὐτούς, ὡς
sight far-off establishing(-them) and denouncing them as
τῷ οἰκείῳ βουλήματι πειθηνίους κατεργαζόμενος, πολλοὺς
to-the own will obedient making(-them) many
τὴν καλὴν ἀναιρήσασθαι μαρτυρίαν πεπεικὼς τῷ γε
the fine to-take-back testimony having-persuaded by-the at-least
μὴ πεισθῆναι αὐτῷ.
not to-be-persuaded by-him

Θεὸς δέ, οἷος τρόπος ἐκείνου οὐ σύντονός τις ἀλλὰ 21
God and such(-as-is) (the)-way of-that(-one) not severe some but
μακρόθυμος, τὴν ῥομφαίαν ἐστίλβου μέν, οὐκ ἠφίει δέ.
long-suffering the sword burnished indeed not let-fly but
νῦν μὲν γὰρ αὐτοῖς λοιμοὶ καὶ αὐχμοὶ καὶ διάπυροι ἥλιοι,
now indeed for to-them plagues and droughts and fiery suns
νῦν δὲ σεισμοὶ καὶ ἀναβρασμοί, καὶ ἄλλοτε φλογὸς
now and earthquakes and upheavals and at-other-times of-flame
οἷα κατὰ τοῦ ἀέρος ἀκοντίσεις καὶ ἑτέρωθεν ἐμφύλιοι
as-it-were through the air hurlings and elsewhere civil
στάσεις τῶν δεινῶν τὰ ἀκμαιότατα ἐπεσείοντο.
strifes of-the terrible(-things) the most-acute were-shaken-over(-them)
ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἦν ἐκείνην ἐπισχεῖν τὴν ψυχήν, συὸς
but not was(-it-possible) that to-check the soul of-(a)-swine
δίκην κατὰ κρημνοῦ ἐπιβρίσασαν. ἐντεῦθεν ὀψὲ γοῦν καὶ
like down (a)-cliff having-rushed from-here late at-any-rate and
καιρίως πλήττουσα μάχαιρα παρὰ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκπεπόρευται,
timely striking (a)-sword from — god has-gone-forth
ἵν᾽ ἥλῳ τέως ἧλος ἐκκρουσθῇ καὶ κακὸν τῷ
that by-(a)-nail for-the-time (a)-nail be-knocked-out and evil by-the
κακῷ ἰαθῇ. Μιχαὴλ τοῦτο ἦν, ὃς τὴν φοιδεράτων τότε
evil be-cured Michael this was who the of-foederati then
ἐπειλημμένος ἀρχήν, ἐγκλήματι καθοσιώσεως ἁλούς, μόγῳ
having-held command on-(a)-charge of-treason convicted with-toil
πολλῷ καὶ κόπῳ ἀποτρίψασθαι ἴσχυσεν. ἀλλ᾽ ἔμελλεν ὑπ᾽
much and labor to-rub-off(-it) was-able but he-was-about under
ὀδόντα τοῦτον ἔχων ἀεὶ καθάπερ διαπεπραγμένον ἱερεῖον
(the)-tooth him having always like (a)-finished-off victim
δεῖξαι οὐκ εἰς μακράν. ἄλλως μὲν γὰρ ἐξήσκει γλῶσσαν
to-show not for long otherwise indeed for practiced (a)-tongue
ὁ Μιχαὴλ πρόλαλόν τε καὶ ἰταμόν, καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ οὐκ
— Michael forward-talking both and reckless and the his not

ἔληγεν ἐκπομπεύων θηριοτροπίαν, ἅτε δὴ αὐτῷ καὶ
ceased parading savagery inasmuch-as indeed with-him also
συναυξηθεὶς καὶ τῇ ἐκ χειρὸς γαννύμενος ἀνδρειότητι. ὁ
having-grown-up and in-the from (the)-hand exulting prowess —
Λέων δέ (οὐ φέρει γάρ τις πάντων κρατῶν ἑνὸς ἡττᾶσθαι
Leo and not bears for anyone over-all ruling by-one to-be-worsted
μωροῦ, εἰ μή γε ὄντως οὐκ ἀνδρῶν ἀλλὰ καὶ θυμοῦ
fool if not at-least really not of-men but also of-anger
βασιλεὺς καταστῇ) ὠτακουστάς τινας τούτῳ λόχον
king he-be-established eavesdroppers some for-him (as)-ambush
κατέστησεν, ὡς ἂν διά τινος πορθμείου διαβιβάζοιντο
he-set so-that — through some ferry might-be-carried-across
λόγοι οἱ αὐτοῦ· καὶ γὰρ ὑπείδετο τὸ μέλλον, τῆς κατὰ
words — his and for he-suspected the future of-the at
τὸ Φιλομήλιον προρρήσεως ἐξημβλωκυίας τῆς αὐτοῦ
the Philomelion prediction having-miscarried of-the his
ψυχῆς μηδαμῶς, ἢ τὸν Μιχαὴλ δεύτερον τοῦ Λέοντος
soul in-no-way than — Michael second — to-Leo
ἀναρρηθῆναι διωμολόγησεν. τούτων τῶν ἐφεδρευόντων εἷς
to-be-proclaimed it-agreed of-these the lying-in-wait one
ἦν καὶ Ἑξαβούλιος, ἀνὴρ οἷός τε ὢν ἦθος καὶ φύσιν
was also Hexaboulios (a)-man able — being (the)-character and nature
ἀνθρώπου καταμαθεῖν. ὡς οὖν χρόνου προϊόντος οὐκ ἐνεδίδου
of-man to-learn when then time advancing not he-yielded
τῆς ἀθυροστομίας μηδὲ τοῦ τωθασμοῦ, ἀλλ' οἷόν τις
from-the loose-talk nor from-the mockery but as some
κυματίας πᾶσαν ἀκαίρως ἰλὺν ἐξέβρασεν ποταμός, ἠπείλησε
billowing all unseasonably mud spewed-out river he-threatened
τῷ Λέοντι πανώλειαν καὶ ἀλλ' ἄττα θυμὸς ἐτρέφετο
— to-Leo total-ruin and other some(-things) anger nursed
πονηρός, ἀνεπέμπετο δὲ ταῦτα πρὸς βασιλέα, ἀνάρπαστος
wicked were-sent-up and these(-things) to (the)-emperor seized

γίνεται ἐξ αὐτῆς, καὶ τέλος τῶν ἐλεγχόντων τὰ
he-is from it(-at-once) and finally the(-men) proving the(-things)
τῆς κατηγορίας κατεμπεδούντων κατατίθεται τυραννίδος
of-the charge confirming he-is-convicted of-tyranny
ἐπίθεσιν μελετῶν. ἡμέρα ἦν προτεραία τῆς καθ' ἡμᾶς
(an)-attempt planning (the)-day was (the)-day-before of-the for us
τοῦ λόγου Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν ἐπιδημίας τε καὶ
of-the word Christ — god our coming both and
σαρκώσεως. ἐπεὶ γοῦν πάντοθεν κατάφωρος ἐγεγένητο
incarnation when at-any-rate from-all-sides caught-in-the-act he-had-become
αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐν τοῖς ἀσηκρητείοις ἐξετάζοντος, καὶ
of-the-very the emperor in the asekreteia examining(-him) and
δρασμὸς τῶν τολμηθέντων οὐκ ἦν, καταχειροτονεῖται
escape from-the(-things) dared not was he-is-condemned
τὴν ἐπὶ θάνατον, καὶ θάνατον οὐ τόνδε ἢ τόνδε,
the(-sentence) to death and (a)-death not this or that
ἀλλ' ἵν' ἔχῃ καὶ τὸν βασιλέα αὐτὸν θεατήν τε καὶ
but that he-may-have also the emperor himself spectator both and
αὐτουργόν, εἴτε τῷ πάθει τῆς ὀργῆς ἐκνικώμενον, εἴτ'
executor whether by-the passion of-the anger overcome or
ἄλλως τῇ ὠμότητι ἐφηδόμενον, κατὰ τὴν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
otherwise in-the cruelty delighting into the of-the imperial
βαλανείου κάμινον δριμέως ἐκριφῆναι πυρὸς παραβόσκημα.
bath furnace fiercely to-be-thrown of-fire (as)-fodder
ὥριστο ταῦτα, καὶ αὐτὸς προέθεεν τὰ τοῦ δράματος
was-decreed these(-things) and he ran-ahead the(-things) of-the drama
ἐποψόμενος. ἀλλ' ἡ τούτου σύζυγος (Θεοδοσία ἦν, τὸ
going-to-watch but the his consort Theodosia she-was the
τοῦ Ἀρσαβὴρ θυγάτριον) ἀνασπούδασα καὶ ὡς ἔτυχε
— of-Arsaber little-daughter having-rushed-up and as it-happened
θέουσα, ὡς ἔκ τινος βακχείας ἐξοιστρηθεῖσα, ἀπέσπευδε
running as from some frenzy maddened tried-to-hold-back

τοῦτον καὶ τῆς ὁρμῆς ἐγκατέπαυεν, ἀλάστορα καὶ
him and from-the onrush made-stop avenging-fiend and
θεομάχον ἀποκαλοῦσα, οἷς οὔτε τὴν ἡμέραν ἄγει διὰ
god-fighter calling(-him) for-which neither the day he-keeps with
φειδοῦς, τοῦ θείου μέλλων σώματος μετασχεῖν. ἐκθειόμενος
sparing the divine about body to-share being-adjured
οὖν τὰ δεινά, καὶ τῷ θεῷ μὴ ἀπὸ θυμοῦ γένηται
then the terrible(-things) and — to-god lest from anger it-should-happen
δεδοικώς, τότε μὲν αὐτῷ τὴν σωτηρίαν τὴν παλίντροπον
fearing then indeed to-him the salvation the reversed
ἐπεβράβευσε, τῷ παππίᾳ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐπιτρέψας φρουράν,
he-awarded to-the papias the his having-entrusted guard
εἰ καὶ τῶν σιδηροπέδων δι' ἑαυτοῦ φρουρεῖσθαι ἠξίου
if even of-the iron-fetters by himself to-be-guarded he-thought-fit
τὴν κλεῖν. ἐπηπείλει δὲ καὶ τῇ γυναικί, καὶ "οὐκ εἰς
the key he-threatened and also to-the wife and not for
μακρὰν ἐπόψεσθε" ἔφη, "σύ τε ὦ γύναι καὶ τὰ τῆς
long you-will-see he-said you both O woman and the of-the
ἐμῆς νηδύος βλαστήματα, τὰ ἀποβησόμενα, εἰ καὶ
my womb shoots the(-things) going-to-result if even
σήμερόν με τοῦ ἐκεῖθεν ἁμαρτήματος προσηλευθέρωσας."
today me of-the there sin you-have-set-free
τούτοις τὸ μέλλον ἀπεφοίβασέ τε καὶ προεκήρυξε.
by-these the future he-prophesied both and proclaimed-beforehand
22 Καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ δέος τῇ ψυχῇ ἐγκαθήμενον
and for there-was in-him (a)-fear in-the soul seated
ἔκ τινος χρησμολογίας, ὡς κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν τοῦ
from some oracle-telling that on the day —
Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν κατὰ σάρκα γεννήσεως πᾶσαν
of-Christ — god our according-to flesh birth all
τὴν αὐξηθεῖσαν εὐδαιμονίαν καὶ βασιλείαν ἀποκείρεσθαι
the increased prosperity and empire to-be-shorn

μέλλοντος. ὁ δὲ χρησμὸς ἦν Σιβυλλιακός, ἔν τινι βίβλῳ
(he)-being-about the and oracle was Sibylline in some book
εἰς τὴν βασιλικὴν βιβλιοθήκην ἐναποκείμενος, οὐ χρησμοὺς
in the imperial library stored not oracles
μόνον ἁπλῶς ἀλλὰ καὶ μορφὰς καὶ σχήματα ἔχουσα τῶν
only simply but also forms and figures having of-the
γενησομένων βασιλέων διὰ χρωμάτων. ἦν οὖν λέων θηρίον
to-be emperors through colors was then (a)-lion beast
μεμορφωμένον, χῖ στοιχεῖον κεχαραγμένον ἀπὸ τῆς ῥάχεως
formed chi letter engraved from the spine
μέχρι τῆς γαστρὸς αὐτοῦ. τούτου κατόπιν ἀνήρ τις
to the belly his this(-one) behind (a)-man certain
ἐπιθέων δόρατι καιρίαν ἐδίδου πληγὴν τῷ θηρίῳ διὰ
running-on with-(a)-spear (a)-mortal gave blow to-the beast through
τοῦ χῖ. πολλοῖς οὖν πρὸς σαφήνειαν τούτου δειχθέντος,
the chi to-many then for clarity this having-been-shown
ὁ τηνικαῦτα τὴν τοῦ κοιαίστορος ἐπανῃρημένος ἀρχὴν
the(-one) then the of-the quaestor having-taken-up office
μόνος διετράνου τὸ τοῦ χρησμοῦ, ὡς Λέοντος οὕτως
alone made-plain the(-meaning) of-the oracle that (a)-Leo so
καλουμένου βασιλέως τινὸς κατὰ τὴν ἡμέραν τῆς Χριστοῦ
called emperor certain on the day of-the of-Christ
γεννήσεως θανάτῳ ὀλεθρίῳ μέλλοντος παραδίδοσθαι.
birth to-death destructive being-about to-be-handed-over
Προσέτι δὲ καὶ ἡ τῆς μητρὸς ὄψις ἐπλήρου φόβου αὐτόν· 23
moreover and also the of-the mother vision filled with-fear him
ἣ τότε μὲν λεχθεῖσα εἰς οὐδὲν τούτῳ λελόγιστο, τὰ
which then indeed told at nothing by-him had-been-reckoned the(-things)
νῦν δὲ καὶ σφόδρα δάκνουσα ἐπέκειτο τὴν ψυχήν. ἐφάνη γὰρ
now but also exceedingly biting pressed-on the soul appeared for
αὐτῇ κατὰ τὸν ἐν Βλαχέρναις θεῖον ναὸν προσφοιτώσῃ ἀεὶ
to-her in the at Blachernai divine church frequenting always

κόρη τις ὑπὸ πολλῶν λευχειμόνων περιστοιχιζομένη καὶ
(a)-maiden certain by many white-robed(-ones) surrounded and
ὁ ναὸς αἵματος ἅπας πλήρης. ταύτην οὖν τὴν κόρην εἰπεῖν
the church with-blood all full this then the maiden to-say
τινὶ τῶν παρεστώτων, χύτραν ἐπιπληρώσαντα αἵματος
to-one of-the(-ones) standing-by (a)-pot having-filled with-blood
ἐπιδοῦναι τῇ μητρὶ τοῦ Λέοντος πιεῖν. αὐτῆς δὲ πολυετῆ
to-give to-the mother — of-Leo to-drink she but (a)-many-years
χηρείαν προβαλλομένης, δι' ἧς μήτε κρεῶν μήτε τινὸς
widowhood putting-forward through which neither meats nor any
ἐναίμων γεύσασθαι, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μηδὲ ταύτης χρῄζειν
blooded(-things) to-taste and because-of this not-even this to-need
τῆς χύτρας, "καὶ πῶς" ἀντέφησεν ἡ κόρη μετὰ θυμοῦ
the pot and how retorted the maiden with anger
"ὁ σὸς υἱὸς οὐ παύεται ἐμὲ πολλῶν αἱμάτων πληρῶν, καὶ
the your son not ceases me with-much blood filling and
τούτῳ τὸν ἐμὸν υἱὸν παροργίζων τε καὶ θεόν;" πολλά τε
by-this the my son provoking both and god many(-times) both
ἔκτοτε ἐλιτάνευε τὸν αὐτῆς υἱὸν τῆς τῶν εἰκονοκαυστῶν
from-then she-besought the her son from-the of-the image-burners
αἱρέσεως ἀποστῆναι, τὴν ὄψιν ταύτην ἐκτραγῳδήσασα.
heresy to-stand-off the vision this having-recounted-tragically

24 Καί τις δὲ ὄψις ἄλλη νυκτερινὴ ἐδειμάτου τοῦτον
and some too vision other nocturnal frightened him
οὐκ ἔλαττον· αὐτοῦ γὰρ Ταρασίου τοῦ ἀοιδίμου
not less of-the-very for Tarasios the celebrated
πατριάρχου πάλαι τὸν βίον μετηλλαχότος Μιχαήλ τινα
patriarch long-ago the life having-changed (a)-Michael certain
ἐξ ὀνόματος διακοῦσαι ἐπιπηδήσαντα προτρεπομένου
by name to-hear having-leapt-on urging
ἐπιπλῆξαι καιρίαν καὶ κατὰ κρημνοῦ ὠθῆσαι ἄβυσσον
to-strike (a)-mortal(-blow) and down (a)-cliff to-push (an)-abyss

ἔχοντος. πρὸς τούτοις καὶ τὸ τοῦ μοναχοῦ τοῦ
having besides these also the(-prophecy) of-the monk the(-one)
κατὰ τὸ Φιλομήλιον. ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς ἐσθῆτος θᾶττον
at the Philomelion but also of-the clothing (the)-quicker
μεταμφίασις. ἃ συμφορήσας ἐπάλλετό τε τῷ
change which having-gathered-together he-shook both with-the
δέει καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν ἐκυμαίνετο, τῷ ὕπνῳ κατὰ τὴν
fear and in-the soul was-tossed by-the sleep in the
νύκτα ἀπεχθανόμενος. ὅθεν ἀκμαζούσης νυκτὸς σοφώτερα
night being-hated whence at-the-height of-night more-cleverly
ἢ βασιλικώτερα βουλευσάμενος, τὰς ἐπὶ τὸν παπίαν
than more-imperially having-counseled the to the papias
φερούσας πυλίδας καταρράξας (καὶ γὰρ ἦν εὐσθενὴς
leading little-gates having-broken-down and for he-was strong
τὼ χεῖρε) τὴν ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν διήνυε πρόοδον. ὡς δὲ
in-the(-two) hands the to him accomplished approach when and
κατὰ τὸ δωμάτιον εἰσήει, θέαμα ὁρᾷ εἰς ἔκπληξιν οὐ τὴν
into the chamber he-entered (a)-sight he-sees to amazement not the
τυχοῦσαν ἄγον αὐτόν· εἶδεν γὰρ τὸν μὲν κατάκριτον ἐν
ordinary leading him he-saw for the indeed condemned(-man) on
σκίμποδι τῷ τοῦ παππίου περιδεξίως, τὸν δὲ παππίαν ἐπ᾽
(the)-couch the of-the papias comfortably the and papias on
ἐδάφους κοιμώμενον εὕρισκεν. τὰς χεῖρας ἐπῆγε πρὸς τὸν
(the)-floor sleeping he-found the hands he-brought to —
Μιχαὴλ καὶ τὴν κεφαλήν, μαθεῖν βουλόμενος εἰ ἄρα,
Michael and the head to-learn wishing whether then
ὅπερ τοῖς ἐν συμφορᾷ ἐπακολουθεῖ, ἄφροντίν τινα καὶ
which to-the(-ones) in misfortune follows untroubled some and
ἡδὺν ἢ ἐμμέριμνον ὕπνον καὶ κεχολασμένον καθεύδει. ὡς
sweet or anxious sleep and bitter he-sleeps when
δ᾽ εὗρεν ἄνετον καὶ πάσης ἀπηλλαγμένον μερίμνης
and he-found (him)-relaxed and of-every freed care

(οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ' ἐπαφώμενος αὐτὸν διύπνισεν), μείζονα
not for not-even touching him he-woke greater
τὸν θυμὸν ἔθρεψε τοῖς ἀπ' ἐλπίδος τούτοις θεάμασι,
the anger he-nursed at-the from hope these sights
καὶ δεινὸν ἀπῄει οὐκ αὐτῷ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ
and (a)-terrible(-thing) went-off not to-him only but also to-the
παππίᾳ ἐνσείων. οὐκ ἔλαθε γοῦν ταῦτα τοῖς
papias shaking(-a-threat) not escaped-notice at-any-rate these(-things) the(-men)
περὶ τὸν παππίαν, ἀλλά τις τῶν προκοίτων τοῦ Μιχαὴλ
around the papias but one of-the chamberlains — of-Michael
ἐκ τῶν φοινικῶν φωρασάμενος ὑποδημάτων ἀπήγγειλε
from the purple having-detected shoes reported
πάντα σαφῶς. οἷς ἐκπαθεῖς γενόμενοι καὶ ἀμάχῳ δέει
all clearly at-which excited having-become and by-unfightable fear
περιληφθέντες βουλὴν ἐξήρτυον αὐτοῖς τὴν σωτήριον.
seized (a)-counsel prepared for-themselves the saving
25 Ἕως ἄρτι ὑπέλαμπεν, καὶ σκῆψις γίνεται τῷ Μιχαήλ,
dawn just was-glimmering and (a)-pretext is-made — for-Michael
ψυχικάς τινας κηλῖδας ἐπαγομένῳ, διὰ Θεοκτίστου, ὃν
of-soul some stains bringing-forward through Theoktistos whom
καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα τῷ τοῦ κανικλείου τετίμηκεν ἀξιώματι,
also after these(-things) with-the of-the kanikleion he-honored dignity
ταύτας βούλεσθαί τινι προσαναθέσθαι τῶν θεοφιλῶν.
these to-wish to-some to-confess of-the god-loved(-men)
ἐπετέτραπτο γοῦν καὶ συγκεχώρητο ταῦτα παρὰ
it-was-permitted at-any-rate and was-allowed these(-things) by
βασιλέως. καὶ ὅγε δή φησιν τῷ Θεοκτίστῳ "τοῖς
(the)-emperor and he indeed says — to-Theoktistos to-the(-men)
ἡμῖν κεκοινωνηκόσι τῆς πράξεως πάντα ἀνειπεῖν διαπείλει
with-us having-shared of-the deed all to-tell-out threaten
τῷ βασιλεῖ, εἰ μή τι γένηται παρ' ὑμῶν γενναῖον,
to-the emperor if not something is-done by you noble

τούτου με διασῶζον τοῦ θανάτου καὶ τῆς εἱρκτῆς.” καὶ
this me saving from-the death and from-the prison and
οἱ συνωμόται, ὡς ταῦτα διήκουσαν, βουλὴν τοιαύτην
the conspirators when these(-things) heard (a)-counsel such
συρράπτουσιν. ἔθος ἦν τῷ κλήρῳ τῷ ἱερῷ οὐχ ὡς νῦν
stitch-together custom was for-the clergy the sacred not as now
ἔνδον τοῖς βασιλείοις, ἔκτοτε λαβὸν τὴν ἀρχήν, προσμένειν
inside in-the palace from-then having-taken the beginning to-stay
διὰ νυκτός, ἀλλὰ τοῖς σφῶν οἴκοις, ἄρτι δὲ τρίτης
through (the)-night but in-the their-own houses just and (the)-third
ἀρχομένης φυλακῆς κατὰ τὴν ἐλεφαντίνην συναγείρεσθαι,
beginning watch at the Ivory(-gate) to-gather
δοξολογίαν ἀποδώσοντας κυρίῳ τῷ θεῷ τὴν ἑωθινήν.
(a)-doxology going-to-render to-(the)-lord — god the morning(-one)
τούτοις οἱ συνωμόται ὑπὸ μάλης φέροντες ἐγχειρίδια
among-these the conspirators under (the)-armpit bearing daggers
ἐγκαταμιχθέντες, ἅτε δὴ καὶ κνέφᾳ καὶ ταῖς
having-mingled-in inasmuch-as indeed also by-darkness and by-the
ἱερατικαῖς λαθόντες στολαῖς, συνεισήεσαν ἀφειδῶς, ἔν τινι
priestly escaping-notice robes went-in-with(-them) unsparingly in some
σκοτεινῷ λοχήσαντες τόπῳ, τὸ σύνθημα προσδεχόμενοι.
dark having-lain-in-ambush place the signal awaiting
ὡς δ’ ὁ ὕμνος διεπεραίνετο καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτοῦ που
when and the hymn was-being-completed and the emperor there somewhere
πλησίον ἦν τοῖς ᾄδουσιν, προεξάρχων πολλάκις τοῦτο
near was to-the(-ones) singing leading-off often this
δὴ τὸ φίλον αὐτῷ τὸ παντάνακτος ἐξεφαύλισαν πόθῳ
indeed the dear to-him the of-the-All-King they-disparaged with-longing
(ἦν γὰρ φύσει τε εὔφωνος καὶ ἐν ταῖς μελῳδίαις
he-was for by-nature both melodious and in the melodies
τῶν κατ’ ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ ἀνθρώπων ἡδύτατος), τότε δὴ
of-the in that time men sweetest then indeed

εἰσπηδήσαντες ἀθρόως ἐκ μὲν τῆς πρώτης ἡμάρτανον
having-leapt-in all-together from indeed the first they-missed
προσβολῆς, πρὸς τὸν τοῦ κλήρου ἔπαρχον ἀποπλανηθέντες,
onset to the of-the clergy eparch having-strayed
εἴτε δή τινι ἐμφερείᾳ καὶ σώματος ὁμοιότητι εἴτε
whether indeed by-some resemblance and of-body likeness or
κατὰ τὴν κεφαλὴν ὁμοίᾳ περιβολῇ· κρυμώδους γὰρ οὔσης
by the head like covering icy for being
καὶ χειμερίου τῆς ὥρας ἑνὶ περιβλήματι ἀμφότεροι
and wintry the season in-one wrap both
διεκαρτέρουν, πίλῳ τὴν κεφαλὴν ὀξυτάτῳ περικαλύπτοντες.
endured with-felt the head most-pointed covering
ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν τοῦ κλήρου καθηγεμὼν τὸν κίνδυνον ἀπεώσατο
but the indeed of-the clergy leader the danger thrust-away
(αὐτίκα γὰρ γυμνώσας τὴν κεφαλὴν τῷ φαλακρώματι τὴν
at-once for having-bared the head by-the baldness the
σωτηρίαν ἐθήρασεν), ὁ Λέων δὲ τοῖς ἀδύτοις ἐπισυρεὶς
safety he-hunted — Leo and into-the sanctuary having-rushed
οὐ σώζεται, ἀλλ' ἀμύνασθαι διεσπούδαζεν. ὅθεν τὴν τοῦ
not is-saved but to-defend(-himself) strove whence the of-the
θυμιατηρίου σειρὰν διαρπάσας, ἢ κατά τινας θεῖον
censer chain having-seized or according-to some (a)-divine
σταυρόν, τοῖς ἐπερχομένοις ἀντιπαρατάττεσθαι
cross against-the(-men) attacking to-array-himself
ἐβούλετο. ἀλλ' οὗτοι πολλοὶ καὶ οὐ καθ' εἷς ἐπιδραμόντες
wished but these many and not by one having-run-at(-him)
κατετίτρωσκον, καὶ ὡς ἀμυνόμενον καὶ τῇ τοῦ
wounded(-him) and even-so defending(-himself) and with-the of-the
σταυροῦ ὕλῃ τὰς τῶν ξιφῶν ὁρμὰς ἀποπέμποντα. ἀλλ'
cross material the of-the swords onsets sending-off but
ἔκαμεν πάντοθεν ὡς θηρίον βαλλόμενος, ὅτε δὴ καὶ
he-grew-weary from-all-sides like (a)-beast being-struck when indeed also

ἀπογνοὺς ὅρκῳ τῆς ἐνοικούσης χάριτος ἐν τῷ ναῷ
having-despaired by-oath of-the indwelling grace in the church
τινὰ εὐμεγέθη καὶ γιγανταῖον ἐπιφέροντα ὁρῶν τὴν
(one)-certain very-large and gigantic bringing-on seeing the
πληγὴν ἐδυσώπει καὶ ἐξελιπάρει τρανῶς· τῆς ἐκ τῶν
blow he-implored and begged clearly from-the from the
Κραμβωνιτῶν οὗτος ὥρμᾶτο γενεᾶς. ἀλλ' ὅγε "οὐχ
Krambonitai this(-one) sprang family but he not
ὅρκων" εἰπὼν "ἀλλὰ φόνων καιρός," ἔτι τε κατὰ τῆς
of-oaths having-said but of-murders (the)-time further both by the
θείας ὀμόσας χάριτος, παίει διανταίαν κατὰ χειρὸς οὕτω
divine having-sworn grace strikes right-through on (the)-hand so
δὴ ἀνδρικῶς ὡς οὐ μόνον τῆς κλειδὸς ἀπαρράξαι
indeed manfully that not only from-the collarbone to-break-off
ταύτην δεινῶς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ κέρας τοῦ σταυροῦ κοπτόμενον
it terribly but also the arm of-the cross being-cut
μέχρι πολλοῦ προελθεῖν. συναποτέμνει δέ τις αὐτοῦ καὶ
up-to far to-go-on cuts-off-too and someone his also
τὴν κεφαλήν, ὅλμου δίκην τὸ σῶμα καταλιπών.
the head of-(a)-mortar like the body having-left
Τοιούτῳ μὲν τέλει βίου ὁ Λέων ἐχρήσατο κατὰ τὸν 26
such indeed (an)-end of-life — Leo met in the
Δεκέμβριον μῆνα (ὥρα δὲ ἦν δεκάτη τῆς νυκτός),
December month (the)-hour and was (the)-tenth of-the night
βασιλεύσας ἔτεσιν ἑπτὰ πρὸς πέντε μησίν, ὠμότητα μὲν
having-reigned years seven with five months cruelty indeed
ἐξασκήσας, πρὸς δὲ καὶ ἀσέβειαν, εἴπερ τις τῶν πρὸ
having-practiced besides and also impiety if-ever any of-the(-men) before
αὐτοῦ· καὶ τούτοις τήν τε προσοῦσαν αὐτῷ πρὸς τὰ
him and by-these the both being-with him toward the
κοινὰ ἐπιμέλειαν καὶ τὴν ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἰσχὺν καὶ
common(-affairs) diligence and the in the hands strength and

ἀνδρίαν κατῄσχυνεν. λέγεται δὲ καί τινα φωνὴν οὐρανόθεν
courage he-disgraced it-is-said and also some voice from-heaven
αὐθωρὸν ῥαγῆναι, τὴν αὐτοῦ κατάλυσιν εὐαγγελιζομένην
instantly to-have-burst-forth the his downfall announcing
πολλοῖς· ἧς καί τινες ἀκηκοότες ναυτίλοι, τὸν καιρόν τε
to-many which also some having-heard sailors the time both
καὶ τὴν νύκτα ἀπογραψάμενοι, ἐκ τῆς ὕστερον ἐρεύνης
and the night having-written-down from the later inquiry
ταύτην εὗρον οὖσαν ἀληθινήν.
it found being true

BOOK II · MICHAEL II

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΑΣ ΜΙΧΑΗΛ ΤΟΥ ΕΞ ΑΜΟΡΙΟΥ. ΛΟΓΟΣ Β.

1–7 · MICHAEL OF AMORION

The conspirators drag Leo's corpse to the hippodrome and send his wife and four sons to Prote, where the boys are castrated and Theodosios dies. Michael, still in fetters, is seated on the throne and hurries to the Great Church to be crowned. He comes from Amorion, whose mixed Jewish and Athinganian heresy he shares, and as a youth he is skilled in judging sows, horses, and mules. An Athinganian seer foretells his rise, and the general he serves gives him a daughter in marriage. The writer doubts that such divination is pure. Michael provides for Leo's widow and children, and Leo's son Constantine, renamed Basil, struck dumb after his castration, recovers his voice through Saint Gregory's image and turns to venerating the images.

1 Ἀνῃρηκότες δὲ τὸν Λέοντα οἱ περὶ τὸν Μιχαήλ,
having-killed and — Leo the(-men) around — Michael
ὡς ἐν τῷ πρὸ τούτου ἡμῖν δεδήλωται συντάγματι, τὸ
as in the before this by-us has-been-shown composition the
τούτου νεκρὸν σύροντες ἀνηλεῶς τε καὶ ἀφειδῶς διὰ
his corpse dragging pitilessly both and unsparingly through

τῶν Σκύλων εἰς τὸν ἱππόδρομον ἐξήγαγον, μή τινα
the Skyla into the hippodrome brought-out not any
φόβον ἔχοντες ἤδη διὰ τὸ πλήρη εἶναι τῶν ἐπιβουλῶν
fear having already because-of the full to-be of-the plotters
καὶ συνωμοτῶν τὴν βασίλειον αὐλήν. συνεξέφερον
and conspirators the imperial court they-carried-out-together
δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ γαμετὴν σὺν τέτταρσι τέκνοις
and with-him also the his wife with four children
αὐτῶν, Συμβατίῳ τῷ κατὰ στέψιμον μετονομασθέντι
their Symbatios the(-one) at (the)-crowning renamed
Κωνσταντίνῳ, Βασιλείῳ τε καὶ Γρηγορίῳ ἅμα
Constantine Basil both and Gregory together-with
Θεοδοσίῳ· οὓς καὶ ἀκατίῳ ἐνθέντες πρὸς τὴν Πρώτην
Theodosios whom also in-(a)-skiff having-put to — Prote
νῆσον ἀπήγαγον, ἔνθα καὶ τῶν παίδων εὐνουχισθέντων
island they-led-away where also the boys having-been-castrated
τὸν Θεοδόσιον συνέβη δυστυχῆσαι περὶ τὴν ζωὴν καὶ τῆς
— Theodosios it-befell to-be-unfortunate about the life and of-the
τοῦ σώματος ταφῆς τῷ ἰδίῳ κεκοινωνηκέναι πατρί.
of-the body burial with-the own to-have-shared father
Ὁ δὲ Μιχαὴλ τῆς ἐκ τοῦ παππίου φρουρᾶς ἀνενεχθείς, 2
— and Michael from-the from the papias custody brought-up
ἔτι τοὺς πόδας σιδήρῳ δεδεμένους ἔχων διὰ τὸ
still the feet with-iron bound having because-of the
τὴν κλεῖν παρὰ τοῦ Λέοντος φυλαττομένην ἀσφαλείας
the key by — Leo kept of-security
ἕνεκεν τέως εἶναι ἀφανῆ, ἐπὶ τὸν βασίλειον ἐκάθισεν
for-the-sake for-a-time to-be missing on the imperial sat
θρόνον, καὶ παρὰ πάντων τῶν τέως ὄντων ἐν τῷ
throne and by all the(-men) for-the-time being in the
παλατίῳ προσεκυνήθη αὐτοκράτωρ ἀναγορευθείς. ἤδη
palace was-done-obeisance-to (as)-autocrat having-been-proclaimed already

δὲ μεσούσης ἡμέρας τῆς φήμης πανταχοῦ διαδραμούσης,
and mid day the rumor everywhere having-run-through
τῶν δεσμῶν σφύρᾳ θλασθέντων μόλις, οὐ χεῖρας
the bonds with-(a)-hammer having-been-broken scarcely not hands
ἀπονιψάμενος, οὐ τὸν θεῖον φόβον κατὰ νοῦν εἰληφώς,
having-washed not the divine fear in mind having-taken
οὐκ ἄλλο οὐδὲν τῶν δεόντων ποιήσας, πρὸς τὸν θεῖον καὶ
not other nothing of-the needful having-done to the divine and
μέγαν ναὸν προελήλυθεν τοῦ στέφους ἐκ τῆς πατριαρχικῆς
great church has-gone-forth of-the crown from the patriarchal
χειρὸς καὶ τῆς πανδήμου τυχεῖν ἐπιθυμῶν ἀναρρήσεως,
hand and of-the public to-obtain desiring proclamation
ἐκείνους μόνους φραγμὸν καὶ περιχαράκωμα ἔχων τοὺς
those alone (as)-fence and palisade having the(-men)
τοῦ φόνου μετεσχηκότας καὶ συνομωμοκότας αὐτῷ. ἔνθα
of-the murder having-shared and having-conspired with-him where
καί τις ἀμφοτέρων θαυμάσειεν τὸ κακόγνωμον, τοῦ
also anyone of-both might-marvel-at the ill-disposition of-the(-one)
μὲν ὅπως οὐδένα εἶχε τῶν τηλικούτων κολάκων καὶ
indeed how no-one he-had of-the so-great flatterers and
φιλούντων τότε δὴ βοηθόν, πάντων ὥσπερ ἑρπετῶν εἰς
friends then indeed (as)-helper all like reptiles into
καταδύσεις χωρησάντων, τοῦ δευτέρου δὲ τὸ πρὸς πάντας
hiding-holes having-gone of-the second and the toward all
ἄφοβον καὶ αἱμοχαρές, οἷς ὥσπερ τις ἀπὸ νίκης
fearless and bloodthirsty with-whom like some from victory
ἀθλοφόρος ἐπανερχόμενος ἀλλ᾽ οὐ δήμιος (τοῦτο γὰρ ὑπὸ
prize-winner returning but not executioner this for by
τῆς τὰ πάντα διοικούσης προνοίας ἐγένετο) κατὰ τὴν
the the all(-things) administering providence happened along the
πλατεῖαν διήρχετο δέον ἐγκαλύπτεσθαι καὶ θρηνεῖν,
avenue he-went it-being-needful to-veil(-himself) and to-lament

οὐκ ἐφ᾽ οἷς ἄξιον αἷμα δικαίως ἐξέχεεν (καί τοί γε
not for which worthy blood justly he-shed and yet at-least
οὐδὲ τοῦτο τῶν ἐπαινετῶν), ἀλλ᾽ ἐφ᾽ οἷς οὐκ ἐν ἀξίῳ
not-even this of-the praiseworthy(-things) but for which not in (a)-worthy
τόπῳ, θείῳ δὲ καὶ καθαρῷ, καὶ μόνον ἔνθα τὸ δεσποτικὸν
place divine but and pure and only where the Lord's(-blood)
καθ᾽ ἡμέραν ἐκχέεται, τῶν ἡμετέρων λύτρον ἁμαρτιῶν.
by day is-poured-out of-the our ransom sins
Ἀλλ᾽ ἐπὶ τὴν θρεψαμένην τοῦτον ἡ ἱστορία ἀγέσθω, καὶ 3
but to the(-city) having-reared him the history let-be-led and
μέσον αὐτὸν λαμβανέτω τὰ αὐτοῦ ἐπαγγέλλουσα.
in-the-midst him let-it-take the(-things) of-him announcing
ἤνεγκε μὲν οὖν αὐτὸν ἡ κατὰ τὴν ἄνω Φρυγίαν πόλις
bore indeed then him the in the upper Phrygia city
Ἀμόριον οὕτω καλουμένη, ἐν ᾗ καὶ Ἰουδαίων καί τινων
Amorion so called in which also of-Jews and of-some
Ἀθιγγάνων πλῆθος ἀεί πως ἐγκατοικίζεται· καί τις δὲ
Athinganoi (a)-multitude always somehow is-settled and some too
αἵρεσις ἐκ τῆς ἀλλήλων κοινωνίας καὶ διηνεκοῦς ὁμιλίας
heresy from the of-one-another communion and continual association
καινὸν ἔχουσα τρόπον καὶ δόγματα ἐπιφύεται, ἧς καὶ
new having (a)-way and doctrines grows-up of-which also
αὐτὸς μετέσχεν ἐκ πατέρων διαδεξάμενος. αὕτη δὲ τοῦ
he shared from (his)-fathers having-received it and of-the
μὲν θείου λουτροῦ ὡς σωτηριώδους ὄντος καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτοὺς
indeed divine bath as saving being and by them
διωμολογημένου τοὺς τελουμένους μεταλαγχάνειν ἀνίησι,
agreed the(-ones) being-initiated to-partake lets
τἄλλα δὲ πάντα σώζει φυλάττουσα κατὰ νόμον τὸν
the-rest and all keeps guarding according-to (the)-law the
Μωσαϊκόν, πλὴν τῆς περιτομῆς. διδάσκαλον δὲ καὶ οἷον
Mosaic except the circumcision (as)-teacher and also as-it-were

ἔξαρχον ὁ ταύτῃ μεμυσταγωγημένος Ἑβραῖόν τινα
leader the(-one) in-it initiated (a)-Hebrew some
ἢ Ἑβραΐδα κέκτηται, τοῦ θείου τελέως βαπτίσματος
or (a)-Hebrew-woman possesses of-the divine completely baptism
ἀπεχόμενον, κατὰ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ οἶκον, ᾧ καὶ τὰ
abstaining in the his-own house to-whom also the(-things)
ἑαυτοῦ οὐ μόνον τὰ ψυχικὰ ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὰς κατ᾽
of-himself not only the(-things) of-the-soul but indeed also the in
οἶκον οἰκονομίας ἐμπιστεύει καὶ ὑπὸ χεῖρα δίδωσι τὴν αὐτοῦ.
house managements he-entrusts and under hand gives the his
ταύτης οὖν ἐκ παιδὸς μετασχὼν καὶ ᾗ τὴν ψυχὴν
of-this then from childhood having-shared and by-which the soul
προκαταληφθεὶς οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ᾽ οὕτως τὸ τῆς προλήψεως
having-been-preoccupied not he-had not-even so the of-the preconception
καθαρόν, ἀλλ᾽ οἷόν τις ἀπιστίας σύνοδος γεγονὼς ὁμοῦ
pure but as some of-unbelief (a)-meeting having-become together
τε ταύτην οὐ πόρρω γενόμενος παρεχάραξεν καὶ τὴν
both this not far having-come he-debased and the
Χριστιανῶν παρενόθευσεν καὶ τὴν Ἰουδαϊκὴν ἐκιβδήλευσεν.
of-Christians adulterated and the Jewish counterfeited
τέως μὲν οὖν εἴχετο αὐτῆς, καὶ τὴν εἰς ἄνδρας
for-a-time indeed then he-held to-it and the to men
τελοῦσαν ἡλικίαν ἀνήγετο, ἀγροικίαν καὶ ἀμαθίαν ὥσπερ
belonging age reached rusticity and ignorance like
τινὰς ἕλικας ἄμπελος συνανιούσας ἔχων αὐτῷ· μᾶλλον
some tendrils (a)-vine growing-up-with having in-him rather
δὲ ὑπὸ τούτων ἐχόμενος καὶ παιδαγωγούμενος κατάλληλα
and by these being-held and being-tutored corresponding
προσῄει μαθήματα διδασκόμενος, οἷς πολλάκις τὴν
approached lessons being-taught in-which often the
βασίλειον δεδραγμένος ἀρχὴν ἐφαίνετο σεμνυνόμενός τε καὶ
imperial having-grasped rule he-appeared priding-himself both and

καλλωπιζόμενος ἢ τῷ ἑαυτοῦ διαδήματι. τὴν λογικὴν
adorning-himself than in-the his-own diadem the learned(-art)
δὲ παντάπασιν, ὡς τὰ παρ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ προβαλλόμενα
but altogether as the(-things) by himself put-forward
ἀνατρέπουσαν καὶ πείθειν δυναμένην τε καὶ μεταδιδάσκειν
overturning and to-persuade being-able both and to-teach-otherwise
τοῦ μὴ τῆς αἱρέσεως αὐτοῦ καὶ θρησκείας ὀπίσω
of-the not of-the heresy his and religion after
πορεύεσθαι, ἠτίμαζέ τε καὶ ἀπεβάλλετο τῆς ἑαυτοῦ
to-go dishonored both and cast-away from-the his-own
ἐπιβούλως ψυχῆς. καί τοί γε ἦν αὐτῷ δυνατὸν τὰ
treacherously soul and yet at-least it-was for-him possible the(-things)
ἑαυτοῦ τε σέβεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἡμέτερα μὴ ἀτιμοῦν, ὅταν
of-himself both to-revere and the(-things) ours not to-dishonor when
μὴ πρὸς τοσοῦτον χορὸν τῶν ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ διαλαμψάντων
not against so-great (a)-choir of-the(-men) in wisdom having-shone
χρόνῳ καὶ ἀριθμῷ κεκρατηκότα ἀνθαμιλλᾶσθαι ἠδύνατο.
in-time and in-number having-prevailed to-vie he-could
πλὴν ἐτίμα τὰ ἑαυτοῦ. τὰ δὲ ἦν συῶν μὲν 4
but he-honored the(-things) of-himself these and were of-sows indeed
τῶν ἀρτιτόκων προλέγειν ὅσοι τε ἔσονται εὐτραφεῖς
the newly-farrowed to-foretell how-many both will-be well-fed
καὶ σωμάτων μεγέθους οὐκ ἀμοιρήσουσι, καὶ ὅσοι
and of-bodies of-greatness not will-lack-a-share and how-many
τοῖς ἐναντίοις περισχεθήσονται, καὶ ἵππων μὲν ἐγγὺς
by-the opposite(-ills) will-be-gripped and of-horses indeed near
ἑστάναι τῶν λακτιζόντων εἰδέναι, ὄνους δὲ λακτίζοντας
to-stand the kicking(-ones) to-know donkeys but kicking
ὡς πορρωτάτω ἀποτρέπεσθαι εὐφυῶς, ἡμιόνων τε κριτὴς
as farthest to-turn-away cleverly of-mules both (a)-judge
ἄριστος εἶναι, καὶ τούτων ὅσοι μὲν πρὸς φόρτον ἁρμόδιοί
best to-be and of-these how-many indeed for load fit

τε καὶ ἐπιτήδειοι, ὅσοι δὲ τοὺς ἐπιβάτας εὐφόρως, ἀλλὰ
both and suitable how-many and the riders easily but
μή τινι πτοίᾳ περιδεεῖς γινόμενοι, φέρουσιν. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ
not by-some terror fearful becoming carry not indeed but
καὶ τοὺς ἵππους μόναις ὀφθαλμῶν διακρίνειν βολαῖς, ὅσαι
also the horses by-only of-the-eyes to-distinguish glances how-many
τε πρὸς δρόμον εὔτονοί τε καὶ τάχισται πεφύκασιν καὶ
both for running vigorous both and swiftest are-by-nature and
ὅσοι πρὸς πόλεμον τὸ καρτερικὸν διασώζουσιν, προβάτων
how-many for war the endurance preserve of-sheep
τε καὶ βοῶν τὴν εὐτοκίαν, καὶ τὴν τοῦ γάλακτος ὅσαι
both and of-cattle the fertility and the of-the milk how-many
τὴν δαψίλειαν ἐκ φύσεως ἔλαχον, καὶ ὡς σιγώντων, τὸ
the abundance by nature obtained and as of-silent(-ones) the(-thing)
δὴ μεῖζον, τῆς τε μητρὸς καὶ τῶν ἀρτιγενῶν γεννημάτων,
indeed greater of-the both mother and of-the newborn offspring
εἰδέναι διακρίνειν ποῖον ὁποίας ἐστὶν ἴδιον. καὶ τὰ
to-know to-distinguish which of-which is own and the(-signs)
μὲν τῆς πρώτης ἡλικίας, εἰπεῖν δὲ καὶ τῆς τελευταίας,
indeed of-the first age to-tell and also of-the last
ταῦτα δὴ τὰ μαθήματά τε καὶ σεμνολογήματα·
these indeed the lessons both and solemn-boasts
ὡς δ' ἤδη ἤκμαζε τὸν πένητα βίον διαθλῶν τε
when and already he-was-in-his-prime the poor life struggling-through both
καὶ καρτερῶν, ἔσπευδε δὲ τοῦτον πάσῃ ἀποτρίψασθαι
and enduring he-hastened and it with-every to-rub-off
μηχανῇ, καί ποτε τῷ ἑαυτοῦ παρέστη δὴ στρατηγῷ,
contrivance and once to-the his-own stood-by indeed general
ἑαυτόν τε ὑποφαίνων καὶ τῇ τῆς γλώττης τραυλότητι
himself both showing and by-the of-the tongue stammering
τὸν ἄρχοντα ἐκκαλούμενος, τῶν Ἀθιγγάνων τις γνωστός
the ruler calling-out of-the Athinganoi one known

τε καὶ οἰκεῖος τῷ στρατηγῷ ὢν αὐτόν τε τοῦτον
both and intimate to-the general being him both this(-one)
Μιχαὴλ καί τινα ἕτερον περιβοήτους ἔσεσθαι μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ
Michael and some other famous to-be after not long
διηγόρευε καὶ βασιλείας αὐτῆς ἐπιτυχεῖν οὐκ εἰς μακράν.
declared and empire itself to-attain not for long
τούτοις τὴν ψυχὴν ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκθερμανθείς, καὶ τὸ
by-these the soul the general having-been-warmed and the
μέλλον ὥσπερ κατατρυγῶν, οὐκ ἔγνω βραδύτητι τὸν
future as-if gathering-in-the-vintage not decided by-slowness the
καιρὸν ἀπώσασθαι, οὗ πάλιν τυχεῖν οὐκ εὐπετὲς οὐδὲ
moment to-thrust-away which again to-obtain not easy nor
ῥᾴδιον. τράπεζα γοῦν παραχρῆμα, καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
simple (a)-table at-any-rate forthwith and the others
πάντας καταλιπὼν τούτους δὴ τοὺς ἄνδρας εἰς ἑστίασιν
all having-left these indeed the men to (a)-feast
συγκαλεῖ. ὡς δὲ τοῦ πότου ἀκμάζοντος καὶ τὰς θυγατέρας
he-calls-together when and the drinking being-at-its-height also the daughters
ἄγων ἐδίδου ὁ στρατηγὸς καὶ νυμφίους καθωμολόγει,
bringing gave the general and (as)-bridegrooms agreed(-them)
τῷ ξένῳ μὲν καὶ παραδόξῳ τοῦ πράγματος ἐν ἐκστάσει
by-the strange indeed and paradoxical of-the affair in amazement
τούτους τὸ πρῶτον ἐποίει καὶ δίχα φωνῆς, ἀποδεχομένους
them at-the first he-made and without voice accepting
δὲ ὅμως μετὰ ταῦτα καὶ συγκατατιθεμένους καὶ θεὸν
but nevertheless after these(-things) also agreeing and god
τάχα, οὐκ ἄνθρωπον, ὁμολογοῦντας αὐτόν.
perhaps not (a)-man confessing him
Εἶναι μὲν οὖν τέχνῃ τῇ μαντικῇ πολλὰ τὰ 6
to-be indeed then for-(the)-art the prophetic many the(-things)
ὑποκείμενα, ὀρνίθων τε πτήσεις ὀνείρων τε ἀγέλας καὶ
underlying of-birds both flights of-dreams both flocks and

παντοίων σωμάτων διεντόμων θέας, ἵνα μὴ πολλοῖς
of-all-kinds bodies dissected viewings that not against-many
ὀλίγος φιλονεικῶ, οὐκ ἐπὶ πολὺ διοίσομαι. εἶναι δὲ
(a)-small(-one) I-quarrel not for long will-I-dispute to-be but
καθαρὰν καὶ δαιμόνων τινῶν ἐκτὸς ὑπηρεσίας, πόρρω θεοῦ
pure and of-demons some without service far from-god
τὸν ἄνθρωπον σπουδαζόντων βαλεῖν, οὔτ' αὐτὸς εἴποιμι
the man striving to-cast neither myself would-I-say
οὔτ' ἄλλος οἶμαι τῶν φρονούντων εὖ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τοὺς
nor another I-think of-the(-ones) thinking well since also the(-ones)
οὐκ εἰλικρινῆ τινὰ βίον διώκοντας καὶ καθαρόν, τοὺς
not sincere some life pursuing and pure the(-ones)
ἀσπούδαστον δὲ καὶ ἀνελεύθερον, τὴν ἀκριβῆ γνῶσιν ταύτης
unearnest and also illiberal the exact knowledge of-it
λαβεῖν ἀκηκόαμεν. τί μοι τοῦτο τὸ παρὸν ἐζήτηται; ἵνα
to-take we-have-heard why for-me this the present has-been-sought that
μή τις ἐπιπνοίᾳ θείᾳ τοὺς περὶ ταῦτα ἀσχολουμένους
not anyone by-inspiration divine the(-ones) about these(-things) busied
νομίζῃ τι τοιοῦτον διασαφεῖν, καὶ αἴτιον ποιῇ
should-think something such to-make-clear and cause should-make
τὸν θεὸν τῆς ἀδίκου γνώμης αὐτῶν, ταὐτὸ δ' εἰπεῖν καὶ
— god of-the unjust purpose their the-same and to-say also
ἀρχῆς, μηδὲ τοὺς ἐπιδιδόντας τούτοις ἑαυτοὺς ἔχειν νοῦν
of-(the)-rule nor the(-ones) giving to-these themselves to-have sense
οἰηθῇ, ἅτε καὶ πολλῶν καθ' ἡμέραν ἀποτυγχανόντων
should-think inasmuch-as also many by day failing
καὶ αἰτίων γινομένων τῆς ἀπωλείας αὐτῶν. ἀλλὰ τὸν
and causes becoming of-the destruction their but the
ἀρχέκακον ὄφιν καταιτιῶτο, ὃς κατὰ τὴν οἰκουμένην
author-of-evil serpent let-him-blame who along the inhabited-world
ἐμπεριπατῶν καὶ ὄργανα καταλαμβάνων ἁρμόδια οὐκ
walking-about and instruments seizing fit not

ἐν τῷδε μόνῳ ἢ τῷδε τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ τὰ περὶ τῆς
in this(-one) only or that the man the(-seeds) about the
βασιλείας σπέρματα καταβάλλει, ἀλλ' ἐν πολλοῖς, καὶ
empire seeds casts-down but in many and
τούτους ἀναπείθων τε καὶ κινῶν ἐπιβάλλειν μὲν πείθει
these persuading both and moving to-attack indeed he-persuades
καὶ δήμους ἀνατρέπειν καὶ ἐμφυλίους μάχας ἐργάζεσθαι,
and peoples to-overturn and civil battles to-work
κατὰ τὴν εἰκόνα τοῦ λίθους πολλάκις ἐπαφιέντος τισὶ
after the image of-the(-one) stones often letting-fly at-some
τυφλοῦ· πολλοὺς γὰρ βάλλων τάχα καὶ μὴ ὁρῶν ὀψὲ
(a)-blind(-man) many for throwing perhaps and not seeing late
καὶ μόλις τοῦ βαλλομένου καταστοχάζοιτο. ταῦτα μὲν
and scarcely the(-one) being-struck might-hit these(-things) indeed
οὖν ἡμῖν παρὰ θεωρίαν, ἵνα μὴ τῷ θείῳ ἀναφέροι τις
then by-us by-the-way (of)-speculation that not to-the divine may-refer anyone
τὰς τοιαύτας τῶν πράξεων μηδὲ δὴ τὰς πονηροτέρας
the such of-the deeds nor indeed the more-wicked
ἀρχάς, ἐκείνῃ δὲ τῇ γραφικῇ βοηθούμενος μαρτυρίᾳ, τῇ
rules by-that and the scriptural being-helped testimony the(-one)
"ἑαυτοῖς ἐβασίλευσαν" λεγούσῃ, "ἀλλ' οὐ δι' ἐμοῦ."
for-themselves they-reigned saying but not through me
Ταύτην οὖν τὴν τοῦ Ἀθιγγάνου μάντεως φωνὴν ὡς 7
this then the of-the Athinganian seer voice as
θείαν τινὰ πρόρρησιν ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἐνηχηθείς, καὶ
divine some prediction — Michael having-had-ringing-in-the-ears and
αὖθις ὀψέ ποτε τὴν κατὰ τὸ Φιλομήλιον, ὥς μοι
again late once the(-prophecy) at the Philomelion as by-me
πρότερον εἴρηται, τὸν τοῦ Λέοντος φόνον θρασύτερόν
earlier has-been-said the — of-Leo murder more-boldly
πως μεταχειρισάμενος ἐξεπλήρωσεν, ἔκτοτε μελέτην τοῦτο
somehow having-handled fulfilled from-then (a)-study this

διηνεκῆ σχών, καὶ αὖθις τὴν εἰς τὸν θεῖον ναὸν θᾶττον ἢ
continual having and again the into the divine church quicker than
ἔδει θαρρούντως ἐξειργάσατο πρόοδον, κακὸς μὲν περὶ
was-needful boldly accomplished advance bad indeed toward
τὸν πρῶτον εὐεργέτην φανείς, ἐκεῖνον δὴ τὸν εἰρημένον
the first benefactor having-appeared that indeed the said
Βαρδάνιον, κακίων δὲ περὶ τὸν δεύτερον Λέοντα, ὅσον καὶ
Bardanes worse and toward the second Leo as-much-as also
τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ ἐκ τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος υἱοθετησάμενος
the son his from the divine baptism having-adopted
ἦν. πλὴν ἀπόμοιράν τινα ποιεῖται καὶ πρὸς ἀπόλαυσιν
he-was but (a)-portion some he-makes and for enjoyment
χορηγεῖσθαι πράττει τοῖς τοῦ Λέοντος παισὶν ἅμα
to-be-supplied arranges for-the — of-Leo children together-with
τῇ τούτου μητρί τε καὶ γαμετῇ ἐκ τῶν ἐκκομισθέντων
the his mother both and wife from the carried-off
κτημάτων αὐτοῦ, καί τινας τῶν ἑαυτοῦ παίδων πρὸς
possessions his and some of-the his-own servants for
ὑπηρεσίαν, εἰ καὶ μὴ πάντας, αὐτοῖς ἐδωρήσατο, τῇ μητρὶ
service if even not all to-them he-gave to-the mother
μὲν καὶ γαμετῇ εἰς τὴν μονὴν τὴν οὕτω λεγομένην τῶν
indeed and wife into the monastery the(-one) so called of-the
Δεσποτῶν ἐν ἀσφαλείᾳ ζῆν κελεύσας αὐθεντικῶς, τοὺς
Despotai in safety to-live having-ordered authoritatively the
ἄρρενας δὲ τῶν παίδων ἐν τῇ Πρώτῃ νήσῳ, ὡς εἴρηται,
males and of-the children on — Prote island as has-been-said
ἔνθα καὶ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ μετονομασθεὶς Βασίλειος
where also Constantine the(-one) renamed Basil
ἀφωνίᾳ πως συσχεθεὶς μετὰ τὸ τὰ γόνιμα τῶν μορίων
by-speechlessness somehow gripped after the the generative of-the parts
ἀφαιρεθῆναι ἐδέετο μὲν τοῦ θεοῦ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ λυθῆναι
to-be-removed begged indeed — of-god the his-own to-be-loosed

φωνὴν καὶ τὴν γλῶτταν αὖθις τὸ εὔηχον ἀπολαβεῖν, ἐδέετο
voice and the tongue again the clear-sound to-get-back begged
δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἐν θεολογίᾳ διαλάμψαντος Γρηγορίου, ἐκεῖσέ
and also the(-one) in theology having-shone Gregory there
που ἀνεστηλωμένου τυγχάνοντος. εἶξε γοῦν ὁ ἅγιος,
somewhere set-up being yielded at-any-rate the saint
καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ δεήσεως κατὰ τὴν τῶν φώτων πανήγυριν
also of-the his prayer at the of-the Lights festival
ἐπακήκοεν. ὁρᾷ γὰρ τὸν θεῖον ἐκεῖνον χαρακτῆρα κατὰ
heard he-sees for the divine that image at
τὸν ὄρθρον τούτῳ διαλεγόμενον καὶ "τὸν κηρὸν" οὕτω
the dawn to-him conversing and the wax thus
δὴ λέγοντα "λαβὼν ἀνάγνωθι." ὁ δὲ πιστεύων τοῖς
indeed saying having-taken read he and believing the(-things)
λεγομένοις εἰσελθὼν ἀνέγνω λαμπρᾷ καὶ καθαρᾷ τῇ
said having-gone-in read with-bright and clear the
φωνῇ τὸ "πάλιν Ἰησοῦς ὁ ἐμός." ἔκτοτε γοῦν τὴν
voice the(-verse) again Jesus the mine from-then at-any-rate the
πατροπαράδοτον αὐτοῦ οὐ διέλιπε βδελυσσόμενος ἄνοιαν καὶ
ancestral his not ceased loathing folly and
περὶ τὰς θείας εἰκόνας ἀγνωμοσύνην, μετετίθετο δὲ καὶ τοὺς
about the divine images senselessness be-changed and also the
τῶν ἁγίων χαρακτῆρας περιπτυσσόμενος οὐ διέλιπεν. ἀλλὰ
of-the saints images embracing not ceased but
ταῦτα μὲν ὀψὲ τοῦ καιροῦ καὶ πολύ περ ἐς ὕστερον.
these(-things) indeed late of-the time and much indeed into later

Michael refuses Nikephoros' plea to restore the images and soon turns on monks and the faithful, imprisoning Methodios and having Euthymios of Sardis flogged to death. A civil war rises in the East under Thomas, whose origin the writer gives in two accounts: a poor Slav who fled to the Hagarenes after trying to disgrace his master's bed and passed himself off as Constantine, son of Irene, or Bardanes' old companion, avenging Leo against a hated Michael. All Asia but the commands of Katakylas and Olbianos goes over to him. He makes peace with the Saracens, is crowned by Job of Antioch, routs the emperor's army, seizes the thematic fleet, gathers it at Lesbos, and marches on Abydos. Olbianos ambushes and beheads his adopted son, and Michael sends the head to Thomas, who crosses into Thrace on a moonless night. The Thracians Michael had rallied go over to him without a word.

8 Ἤδη δὲ καὶ τὴν αὐτοκράτορα τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἐπανελομένου
already and also the autocratic — Michael having-taken-up
ἀρχὴν καὶ τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὴν ὡς ἐβούλετο διοικοῦντος,
rule and the(-things) concerning it as be-wished administering
ἐπιστολὴν ὁ μακαρίτης Νικηφόρος ἐκπέμπει, τὴν τῆς
(a)-letter the blessed Nikephoros sends-out the of-the
πίστεως παρακαλῶν ἀνάκλησιν γενέσθαι καὶ πάλιν
faith entreating (a)-recall to-happen and again
ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν ἀσπασμὸν τὰς θείας εἰκόνας. "ἀλλ᾽ οὔτε
to-receive the veneration the divine images but neither
καινουργήσων" ἀπεκρίνετο ὁ Μιχαὴλ "τῶν περὶ πίστεώς
going-to-innovate answered — Michael of-the about faith
τι δογμάτων ἐξελήλυθα, οὔτε μὴν τῶν ἤδη παραδοθέντων
any doctrines have-I-come-out nor indeed of-the already handed-down
καὶ ἀνομολογηθέντων καταδρομήν τινα ἐργάσασθαι καὶ
and confessed (an)-attack any to-work and
καθαίρεσιν. ἕκαστος οὖν τὸ δοκοῦν αὐτῷ ποιείτω
(a)-destruction each then the(-thing) seeming(-good) to-him let-him-do

καὶ ἐφετόν, ἀμαθὴς πόνων καὶ ἄγευστος λύπης διατελῶν.”
and desired ignorant of-toils and untasting of-grief continuing
πλὴν οὐ μέχρι τέλους ταύτην ἐτήρησε τὴν προαίρεσιν
but not until (the)-end this he-kept the choice
ὁ μηδ’ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἀληθὴς Χριστιανὸς γεγονώς·
the(-one) not-even from (the)-beginning true Christian having-become
ἀλλ’ ὅσῳ τῆς βασιλείας ἐγένετο ἐγκρατής, τοσούτῳ
but as-much-as of-the empire he-became master so-much
κακοδαίμονι φύσει καὶ ὠμοτάτῃ τὸν κατὰ Χριστιανῶν
with-ill-starred nature and most-cruel the against Christians
καὶ τῶν ὁμοφύλων ἀνερρίπισε πόλεμον, νῦν μὲν τοὺς
and the kinsmen fanned-up war now indeed the
μοναχοὺς διαπτύων παντοίοις τε περιβάλλων δεινοῖς καὶ
monks spitting-on with-all-kinds both surrounding terrible(-things) and
ποιναῖς ἐξευρίσκων ποινάς, νῦν δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους πιστοὺς
upon-punishments devising punishments now and the other faithful
παραπέμπων ταῖς φρουραῖς καὶ ὑπερορίους ποιῶν. ἐντεῦθεν
dispatching to-the prisons and exiles making from-there
καὶ Μεθόδιον τὸν μετὰ βραχὺ τοῦ πατριαρχικοῦ θρόνου
also Methodios the(-one) after (a)-little the patriarchal throne
ἀντιλαβόμενον καὶ Εὐθύμιον τὸν τηνικαῦτα Σάρδεων
having-taken-up and Euthymios the(-one) then of-Sardis
πρόεδρον, τῷ αὐτοῦ θελήματι μὴ ὑπείκοντας μηδὲ τὴν
president to-the his will not yielding nor the
τῶν εἰκόνων ἐξαρνουμένους τιμήν, τῆς πόλεως ἐξωθεῖ,
of-the images denying honor from-the city thrusts-out
καὶ τὸν μὲν θεῖον Μεθόδιον φυλακῇ παραδίδωσι κατὰ
and the indeed divine Methodios to-prison hands-over on
τὴν νῆσον Ἀνδρέου τοῦ ἀποστόλου, καθ’ ἣν ὁ Ἀκρίτας
the island of-Andrew the apostle by which — Akritas
ἐγγειτονεῖ, τὸν δὲ μακαρίτην Εὐθύμιον διὰ Θεοφίλου τοῦ
neighbors the and blessed Euthymios through Theophilos the

οἰκείου υἱοῦ θανάτῳ παραδίδωσι, βουνεύροις τυπτόμενον
own son to-death hands-over with-ox-sinews beaten
ἀφειδῶς. ὅσῳ δὲ τὴν Χριστοῦ κληρονομίαν ἐπίεζε καὶ
unsparingly as-much-as and — Christ's inheritance he-oppressed and
οἷόν τις θὴρ ἄγριος κατενέμετο, τοσούτῳ τοὺς Ἰουδαίους
like some beast wild devoured so-much the Jews
ἀνέτους φόρων καὶ ἐλευθέρους ἐδείκνυεν, ἀγαπωμένους καὶ
exempt of-taxes and free he-showed loved and
στεργομένους αὐτῷ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων διαφερόντως.
cherished by-him of-the other men especially
καὶ ζωγράφοι μὲν τὰ καλὰ τῶν ζῴων εἰς μίμησιν
and painters indeed the fine(-things) of-the living-things for imitation
ἔχουσιν, οὗτος δὲ τὸν τοῦ Κοπρωνύμου βίον οἷόν
have this(-man) but the — of-Kopronymos life as-it-were
τι προχάραγμα καὶ πρωτότυπον θεὶς ἀπομιμεῖσθαι εἰς
some model and prototype having-set to-imitate to
ἄκρον ἐσπούδαζεν. διὸ καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐλαύνει
(the)-utmost strove whence also to the citadel he-drives
τῆς ἀσεβείας, ἄρτι μὲν σάββατα νηστεύειν νομοθετῶν, ἄρτι
of-the impiety just indeed sabbaths to-fast legislating just
δὲ κατὰ τῶν θείων προφητῶν τὴν γλῶσσαν ἐξακονῶν,
and against the divine prophets the tongue sharpening
ἀνάστασίν τε τὴν μέλλουσαν καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖθεν ἀπιστῶν
resurrection both the future and the(-things) thence disbelieving
ἀγαθά. διάβολόν τε ὅλως μὴ εἶναι διισχυρίζετο, ἅτε
good(-things) (a)-devil both wholly not to-be maintained inasmuch-as
μηδ' ὑπὸ τοῦ Μωσέως τούτου παραδεδομένου. πορνείαν
not-even by — Moses this having-been-handed-down fornication
δὲ κατασπαζόμενος, καὶ τὸν ἐπὶ πάντων δεῖν ὀμνύναι
and welcoming and the in all(-matters) (one)-must to-swear
μόνον θεὸν νομοθετῶν, καὶ τὸν Ἰούδαν ἀκολάστῳ γλώσσῃ
only (by)-god legislating and — Judas with-licentious tongue

κατατάττων τοῖς σωζομένοις, καὶ τὴν ἑορτὴν τοῦ
ranking among-the(-ones) being-saved and the feast of-the
σωτηρίου πάσχα κακῶς καὶ παρὰ καιρὸν χλευάζων
saving Easter wickedly and contrary-to time mocking
τιμᾶσθαι, καὶ τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν παίδευσιν διαπτύων, καὶ
to-be-honored and the Hellenic education spitting-on and
τῆς ἡμετέρας καὶ θείας τοσοῦτον καταφρονῶν ὡς μηδὲ
of-the our and divine so-much despising that not-even
τοὺς νέους παιδοτριβεῖσθαί που συγχωρεῖν, ἵνα μήτε
the young to-be-schooled anywhere to-allow that neither
τῇ αὐτοῦ ἀλογίᾳ ἔχοι τις ἀντιστῆναί ποτε καὶ
with-the his unreason might-be-able anyone to-oppose ever and
διελέγξαι, μήτε πάλιν τῷ τάχει τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν καὶ τῇ
to-refute nor again by-the quickness of-the eyes and by-the
τῆς γλώττης ῥύμῃ φερόμενος διὰ τῆς παιδεύσεως τὰ
of-the tongue force carried-along through the education the
δευτερεῖα τοῦτον φέρειν καταναγκάσειεν· τοσοῦτον γὰρ
second(-place) him to-bear might-compel so-much for
ἤργει πρὸς τὴν μῖξιν τῶν γραμμάτων ἐκεῖνος καὶ τὴν
he-was-idle toward the joining of-the letters that(-man) and the
τῶν συλλαβῶν ἀνάγνωσιν, ὡς ῥᾷον ἄν τις διῆλθε
of-the syllables reading that more-easily — anyone would-go-through
βιβλίον ἢ αὐτὸς τῇ βραδύτητι τοῦ νοῦ τὰ τοῦ οἰκείου
(a)-book than he by-the slowness of-the mind the of-the own
στοιχεῖα ὀνόματος. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὡς καὶ τοῖς κατ᾽
letters name but these(-things) indeed as also by-the in
ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ κεκωμῳδημένα θείοις ἀνδράσιν ἐατέον·
that time having-been-satirized divine men one-must-let-be
πλήρεις γὰρ βίβλοι τὰ ἐκείνου ἐκστηλιτεύουσαι·
full for (are)-books the(-things) of-that(-man) pillorying

ἡμεῖς δὲ πρὸς τὰ ἑξῆς προσβῶμεν τῆς ἱστορίας, τὰ
we but to the next let-us-advance of-the history the
ἀποτελέσματα τῶν ἀθέων αὐτοῦ πράξεων ἐνορῶντες.
results of-the godless his deeds observing

9 Κατὰ γὰρ τὸν καιρὸν τοῦτον ἀρχὴν λαβὼν ἐμφύλιος
at for the time this (a)-beginning having-taken civil
πόλεμος ἐξ Ἀνατολῆς παντοίων ἐνέπλησε τὴν οἰκουμένην
war from (the)-East with-all-kinds filled the inhabited-world
κακῶν καὶ ἐκ πολλῶν ὀλίγους τοὺς ἀνθρώπους εἰργάσατο,
of-evils and from many few the men made
πατέρων δηλονότι τὰς δεξιὰς κατὰ τῶν υἱῶν ὁπλισάντων,
of-fathers clearly the right(-hands) against the sons having-armed
καὶ ἀδελφῶν κατὰ τῶν ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς φύντων γαστρός,
and of-brothers against the(-ones) from the same born womb
καὶ φίλου τὸ τέλος κατὰ τοῦ φιλοῦντος τὰ
and of-(a)-friend the end against the(-one) loving the(-things)
μάλιστα. Θωμᾶς τούτων ἦν ἔξαρχος, περὶ οὗ διττὸς λόγος
most Thomas of-these was leader about whom (a)-twofold account
φέρεται. ἀνάγκη δὲ ἀνθρώποις οὖσιν ἡμῖν, καὶ ἀκοῇ ἀλλ᾽
is-current (it-is)-necessary and for-men being us and by-hearing but
οὐκ ὄψει ἐκ τῆς τοσούτου χρόνου παρολκῆς τὰ τοιαῦτα
not by-sight from the so-long time lapse the such(-things)
κατειληφόσι τῆς ἱστορίας, ἵνα δὴ πανταχοῦ τὴν ἀλήθειαν
having-grasped of-the history that indeed everywhere the truth
σωζομένην ἔχοιμεν, καὶ τοὺς τοιῶσδε ἀλλὰ μὴ τοιῶσδε μόνον
preserved we-may-have and the thus but not thus only
παραδιδομένους λόγους ἀναγράφειν, οὐδὲν ἐκ τῆς τοιαύτης
handed-down accounts to-write-up nothing from the such
ἀμφιβολίας καὶ πλάνης λυμαινομένης τῆς προκειμένης
ambiguity and wandering damaging the set-before
ἡμῖν ὑποθέσεως, μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν καὶ ἀσφαλεστέρας
us subject rather indeed then and safer

τυγχανούσης τοῖς γε μὴ οὕτως ἔχειν ἀλλ᾽ οὕτως
being for-the(-ones) at-least not thus to-be(-the-case) but thus
διαπληκτιζομένοις ἀεί. ἄριστον μὲν γὰρ ἦν, εἰ γυμνῆς
contending always best indeed for it-was if naked
ὑπαρχούσης τῆς ἀληθείας καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐκτὸς παραπετάσματος
being the truth also we without (a)-curtain
τὴν πανείδησιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι εἴχομεν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ πολὺς
the all-knowledge the men had since but the much
ῥεύσας χρόνος οἷόν τι κάλυμμα ἡμῖν προστεθὲν
having-flowed time as-it-were some veil to-us added
ἀσθενεστέραν τὴν γνῶσιν ἐργάζεται, δεῖ τῇ γε φήμῃ
weaker the knowledge makes (one)-must by-the at-least rumor
καὶ κληδόνι πειθομένους εἰς φῶς ἄγειν ποσῶς τὰ πράγματα,
and report being-persuaded into light to-bring somewhat the affairs
ἀλλ᾽ οὐχὶ τῷ ποταμῷ τῆς λήθης παραδοῦναι ὁλοσχερῶς.
but not to-the river of-the forgetfulness to-hand-over wholly
Ὁ μὲν οὖν εἷς καὶ πρῶτος λόγος, ᾧ καὶ ἐγὼ 10
the indeed then one and first account to-which also I
πείθομαι ἐξ ἐγγράφων τινῶν ἔχων τὸ βέβαιον, τοῦτον
am-persuaded from writings some having the certainty this(-man)
ὁρμᾶσθαί φησι τὸν Θωμᾶν ἐξ ἀσήμων τε γονέων καὶ
to-spring says — Thomas from obscure both parents and
πενιχρῶν, ἄλλως δὲ καὶ Σκλαβογενῶν, τῶν πολλάκις
poor otherwise and also Slav-born of-the(-ones) often
ἐγκισσευθέντων κατὰ τὴν Ἀνατολήν. πενίᾳ γοῦν ἀποζῶν
settled in the East by-poverty at-any-rate living
καὶ τὴν τύχην ἐμπορευόμενος τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μὲν ἀπέδρα, πρὸς
and the fortune trading the his-own indeed he-ran-away to
δὲ τὴν μεγαλόπολιν ταύτην εἰσέφρησεν. καὶ δή τινι τῶν
and the great-city this slipped-into and indeed to-some of-the
συγκλητικῶν ἐξυπηρετεῖν τε καὶ λειτουργεῖν κολληθεὶς
senators to-serve both and to-minister having-been-attached

αἰσχῦναι δι᾽ ἀκολασίαν καὶ καθυβρίσαι τὴν δεσποτικὴν
to-disgrace because-of licentiousness and to-outrage the master's
εὐνὴν καὶ τὰ λέκτρα τούτου ἠπείγετο. ἐπεὶ οὖν φωραθεὶς
bed and the couch his he-hastened when then having-been-caught
οὐχ οἷός τε ἦν τὸν πολὺν ὄνειδον καὶ τὰς διὰ τοῦτο
not able — was the much reproach and the because-of this
ὑπομεῖναι πληγάς, φυγὰς πρὸς τοὺς ἐξ Ἄγαρ γίνεται, καὶ
to-endure blows (a)-fugitive to the(-men) from Hagar he-becomes and
τούτοις πίστιν ἱκανὴν ἔκ τε τῶν καταλλήλων αὐτοῦ δοὺς
to-these assurance sufficient from both the corresponding his having-given
πράξεων διὰ πολλῶν ἤδη χρόνων (ἔτος γάρ που διηνύετο
deeds through many already times (a)-year for about was-completed
τούτῳ πεμπτὸν καὶ εἰκοστὸν) καὶ ἐκ τοῦ τὸν Χριστὸν καὶ
for-him fifth and twentieth and from the — Christ and
θεὸν ἠρνῆσθαι ἡμῶν, πολεμικῆς τινὸς φάλαγγος γίνεται
god to-have-denied our warlike some phalanx becomes
ἀρχηγὸς καὶ κατὰ Χριστιανῶν ὁπλίζεται, κραταιοτάτῃ χειρὶ
leader and against Christians arms-himself with-mightiest hand
τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείαν ὑπὸ τὴν αὐτῶν χεῖρα ποιῆσαι
the of-the Romans empire under the their hand to-make
καθυποσχόμενος. καὶ ἵνα μή τινα ἐμποδὼν παρὰ Ῥωμαίοις
having-promised and that not any hindrance among Romans
γινόμενος σχῇ, πάντας δὲ συνεφαπτομένους καὶ τούτου
becoming he-might-have all but taking-part and for-this
προκινδυνεύοντας, Κωνσταντῖνον εἶναι αὐτὸν τῆς Εἰρήνης
running-risks-first Constantine to-be himself — of-Irene
διετράνου καὶ ἐπεφήμιζεν, ὃν ἡ ἄνοια καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἤθους
he-declared and proclaimed whom the folly and the of-the character
ὠμὸν πάλαι μὲν μετὰ τῆς βασιλείας ἀφείλετο καὶ τοὺς
cruel long-ago indeed with the empire took-away also the
ὀφθαλμούς, τηνικαῦτα δὲ καὶ τὸν βίον μεταλλαχὼς ἦν.
eyes then but also the life having-changed he-was

ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὸ τῶν πράξεων μέγεθος καὶ αἱ βόσκουσαι
since and also the of-the deeds greatness and the feeding
τοῦτον ἐλπίδες κοινωνόν τινα τῶν πραγμάτων ἀπήτουν
him hopes (a)-partner some of-the affairs demanded
(οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἄλλως αὐτῷ τὰ κατὰ γῆν καὶ θάλατταν
not for — otherwise for-him the(-things) on land and sea
ὑπελάμβανε κραταιοῦσθαι), καὶ υἱόν τινα ἐπείσακτον
he-supposed to-be-strengthened and (a)-son some imported
εἰσποιεῖται, τῇ τοῦ σώματος μεταμορφώσει τὴν τῆς
he-adopts by-the of-the body transformation the of-the
ψυχῆς δηλοῦντα ἀπόνοιαν, ᾧ καὶ δυνάμεις ἀρχούσας
soul showing madness to-whom also forces commanding
παρασχὼν καὶ Κωνστάντιον μετονομάσας ἄλλοθεν, ἑαυτὸν
having-provided and Konstantios having-renamed(-him) from-one-side himself
δὲ ἑτέρωθεν τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων κείρειν καὶ κατατρέχειν
and from-another the of-the Romans to-shear and to-overrun
ἐπέταττε γῆν. Λέων τότε καιροῦ ὁ ἐξ Ἀρμενίων τὰς
ordered land Leo then of-time the(-one) from Armenians the
τῆς βασιλείας ἐκεκρατήκει ἡνίας, ἐν ὑστέρῳ καιρῷ· ὃς
of-the empire had-taken reins in later time who
δύναμίν τινα κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ συστήσας οὐκ ἀξιόλογον αὐτὴν
(a)-force some against him having-assembled not considerable it
μὲν σφαλῆναι ἐποίησεν (ἅμα γὰρ τῇ πρὸς πρόσωπον
indeed to-fail made at-once for with-the to face
ἀπαντήσει ἐτρέπετο πρὸς φυγήν), τοῦτον δὲ θρασύτερον
encounter it-turned to flight him and bolder
καὶ πλέον ἢ ἦν τὰ καθ᾽ ἑαυτὸν φρονεῖν. καὶ ὁ
and more than was the(-things) concerning himself to-think and the
μὲν πρῶτος καὶ πολὺς οὕτως ἔχειν λόγος περὶ τῆς
indeed first and much(-repeated) so to-be account about the
τοιαύτης κινήσεως καὶ στάσεώς φησι τὴν ἀρχήν.
such movement and revolt says the beginning

11 Ἄτερος δὲ τοῦτον εἶναι τὸν Θωμᾶν, μηδὲν περὶ τῆς
the-other and this(-man) to-be — Thomas nothing about the
κλήσεως διενηνεγμένος, τὸν τῷ Βαρδανίῳ μὲν πάλαι
name differing the(-one) — with-Bardanes indeed long-ago
συνόντα, παρὰ τοῦ ἡγησαμένου δὲ Λέοντος τιμηθέντα·
being-with(-him) by the having-led and Leo honored
ὃς τὴν τῶν φοιδεράτων τηνικαῦτα διοικῶν ἀρχήν,
who the of-the foederati then administering command
κατὰ τὸν Ἀνατολικὸν ἐνδιατρίβων, ἐπεὶ τὸν Μιχαὴλ ἄρτι
in the Anatolikon staying when — Michael just
διήκουεν ἀνῃρηκότα τὸν Λέοντα, ἐκδικῶν, ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ
he-heard having-killed — Leo avenging(-him) together and also
θυμὸν ἴδιον ἀποπιμπλῶν (ἐτύγχανε γάρ που πόρρωθεν
anger own fulfilling he-happened for somehow from-afar
ἐξ ἡλικιωτῶν διαφερόμενος πρὸς αὐτόν), καὶ ἅμα τὴν
from age-mates quarreling with him and at-once the
περὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἐν τῷ Φιλομηλίῳ μοναχοῦ πρόρρησιν
about him the at — Philomelion monk prediction
φοβούμενος, χεῖρα ἐναντίαν κινεῖ, καὶ χεῖρα οὐ μικράν
fearing (a)-hand opposing moves and (a)-hand not small
τινα καὶ ἀσθενῆ, βαρεῖαν δὲ καὶ ἀνδρώδη καὶ νεανικήν,
some and weak heavy but and manly and youthful
πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν τῶν δόρυ δυναμένων κινεῖν ἔχων μεθ'
every age of-the(-men) (a)-spear able to-move having with
ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτύγχανε γάρ πως καὶ ἄλλως ὁ Μιχαὴλ ὑπὸ
himself happened for somehow also otherwise — Michael by
πάντων μισούμενος, ἅτε δὴ κακῆς μὲν αἱρέσεως
all hated inasmuch-as indeed of-evil indeed heresy
μετεσχηκὼς τῆς τῶν Ἀθιγγάνων, ὡς εἴρηται, καὶ ὅτι
having-shared the(-one) of-the Athinganoi as has-been-said and because
γλῶσσαν χωλεύουσαν ἔχων εἰς ἀνανδρίαν καὶ μαλακίαν
(a)-tongue limping having for unmanliness and softness

διεβεβόητο, πολλῷ δὲ μᾶλλον, ὅτι τὴν ψυχὴν τῆς
he-was-noised-abroad by-much but more because the soul than-the
γλώττης οὐχ ἧττον χωλεύουσαν ἔφερεν, ἐβδελύσσετό
tongue not less limping he-bore he-was-loathed
τε καὶ εἰς φόρτον λελόγιστο τοῖς πολλοῖς. ὁ Θωμᾶς
both and as (a)-burden was-reckoned by-the many — Thomas
δέ, εἰ καὶ τὸ σκέλος πεπηρωμένος καὶ τῷ γένει
but if even (in)-the leg maimed and by-the race
βάρβαρος ἦν, ἀλλ᾽ οὖν τῇ γε πολιᾷ αἰδέσιμος, καὶ
barbarian he-was but yet by-the at-least gray-hair venerable and
μᾶλλον φιλούμενος ἐτύγχανεν, ὅτι τὸ εὐπροσήγορον καὶ
more loved he-was because the affability and
ἀστεῖον, οἷα δὴ φιλεῖ ὁ στρατιώτης ὄχλος, αὐτῷ που
urbanity such-as indeed is-wont the soldier crowd to-him somehow
συνουσίωτο ἐκ παιδός, καὶ τῶν κατὰ γενναιότητα
had-been-joined from childhood and of-the(-things) in nobility
σώματος οὐ δή τινος ἐφαίνετο δεύτερος. οὗτος
of-body not indeed to-anyone appeared second this(-man)
οὖν τοὺς τοὺς δημοσίους φόρους εἰσπράττοντας εἰς
then the(-men) the public taxes collecting to
ἑαυτὸν εἰσποιησάμενος, καὶ ἐκ μεγαλόφρονος ἐπιδόσεως
himself having-won-over and from magnanimous giving
σπουδάζων ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν ποιεῖν τοὺς πολλούς, πολὺς γέγονεν
striving under himself to-make the many great he-became
ἐκ μικροῦ καὶ μέγας ἐξ ἐλαχίστης χειρός· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ
from small and great from very-small band some indeed for
ἦγε πειθοῖ καί τινι φιλίᾳ, ὅσοις δὴ ὁ τῶν καινῶν
he-led by-persuasion and some (by)-friendship in-whom indeed the of-the new
πραγμάτων καὶ τὸ φιλοπλουτεῖν ἔρως ἐνῆν, τοὺς δὲ
affairs and the wealth-loving love was-present others and
βίᾳ καὶ γνώμῃ ἀβουλήτῳ, ὅσοις δὴ τὰ τῶν ἐμφυλίων
by-force and by-purpose unwilling in-whom indeed the of-the civil

στάσεων κακὰ ἐν πείρᾳ ἤδη γεγένηντο. ἐντεῦθεν οὖν οἱ
strifes evils in experience already had-been thence then the
ἐμφύλιοι ἀναρρηγνύμενοι πόλεμοι, καὶ οἷόν τινες Νειλῷοι
civil bursting-forth wars and like some Nilotic
καταρράκται ἀνοιγόμενοι, οὐχ ὕδατι ἀλλ᾽ αἵματι τὴν
cataracts opening not with-water but with-blood the
γῆν κατεπότιζον. ἐντεῦθεν καὶ δοῦλοι κατὰ δεσποτῶν καὶ
land drenched from-here both slaves against masters and
στρατιώτης κατὰ ταξεώτου καὶ λοχαγὸς κατὰ στρατηγέτου
soldier against officer and captain against general
τὴν χεῖρα φονῶσαν καθώπλιζεν, καὶ πᾶσα τέως ἡ
the hand murderous armed and all for-a-time —
Ἀσία βυθιζομένη κατέστενεν. αἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτάνδρως τῶν
Asia sinking groaned some indeed for with-their-men of-the
πόλεων ἀνῄρηντο τῷ Θωμᾷ, τῷ φόβῳ πεισθεῖσαι· αἱ
cities were-taken-over — by-Thomas by-the fear persuaded the(-others)
δὲ πολλάκις ἀντιπίπτουσαι, τὰ πιστὰ τῷ γε κρατοῦντι
and often resisting the faith to-the at-least ruling(-one)
τηροῦσαι, μετὰ πολλῶν φόνων καὶ ἀνδραποδισμῶν
keeping with many slaughters and enslavements
ὑπήγοντο δεύτεραι. πλὴν ἀλλὰ πᾶσα Ἀσία ὀπίσω
were-brought-under second but yet all Asia behind
τούτου ἐγένετο, ἐκτὸς τοῦ τὸ Ὀψίκιον Κατάκυλα
him became except the(-one) the Opsikion Katakylas
στρατηγοῦντος καὶ Ὀλβιανοῦ τοῦ τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν·
commanding and Olbianos the(-one) of-the Armeniakoi
οὗτοι γὰρ δὴ ἐν τοσούτοις μόνοι στρατηγέταις τὰ
these for indeed among so-many alone generals the
πιστὰ τηροῦντες πρὸς Μιχαὴλ ἀνεφάνησαν. οἷς καὶ τὴν
faith keeping toward Michael appeared to-whom also the
χάριν ἀπονέμων, ὡς μὴ προδεδωκόσιν αὐτόν, τὸ εἰς
favor rendering as not having-betrayed him the(-tax) to

τὸ βασιλικὸν τελούμενον ταμιεῖον δημόσιον καπνικὸν οὕτω
the imperial paid treasury public hearth(-tax) so
λεγόμενον μιλιαρίσιον ἓν συγκεχώρηται· τῶν γὰρ ἄλλων
called miliaresion one has-been-remitted of-the for others
πάντων ἀνὰ δύο τελούντων ἀνέκαθεν μιλιαρισίων, ἀλλὰ καὶ
all by two paying from-of-old miliaresia but also
αὐτῶν τούτων, τότε τὸ ἓν ἀφείλθη διὰ τὴν εὔνοιαν.
of-the-very these then the one was-taken-off because-of the loyalty
Ἃ καὶ μαθοῦσι τοῖς Ἀγαρηνοῖς ἀγαπητὸν κατεφαίνετο καὶ 12
which also having-learned to-the Hagarenes welcome appeared and
ὅλως ἐντρύφημα· καιροῦ γὰρ λαβόμενοι πᾶσαν χώραν
wholly (a)-delight of-(the)-moment for having-seized every land
καὶ νῆσον κατέτρεχον ἀδεῶς, μή τινος ἐμποδὼν ἱσταμένου
and island they-overran fearlessly not anyone in-the-way standing
αὐτοῖς. διὸ καὶ ταῦτα τῷ Θωμᾷ διακηκοότι, ἐπεί
for-them wherefore also these(-things) — to-Thomas having-heard since
τινα κίνησιν ἐκ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ᾤετο καὶ νεωτερισμόν, εἴ
some movement from the his-own(-people) he-thought and innovation if
γέ τινα φροντίδα μὴ τῶν ἐπ᾽ οἴκου ποιήσοιτο καὶ
at-least some care not of-the(-things) at home he-should-make and
τῆς ἄλλης Ἀνατολῆς, ἀλλὰ συγχωρήσοι τούς τε παῖδας
of-the other East but should-allow the both children
καὶ γυναῖκας καταληϊσθῆναι καὶ αἰχμαλωτισθῆναι αὐτῶν,
and wives to-be-plundered and to-be-captured their
συμφέρον κέκρικε τέως μὲν ἐπικρατῆσαι τὴν αὐτῶν
advantage he-judged for-a-time indeed to-check the their
ὁρμὴν δι᾽ ἐπιφανείας αὐτοῦ καὶ τῷ πλήθει τῶν δυνάμεων
onset through appearance his and by-the multitude of-the forces
ἐκπλῆξαί τε καὶ πρὸς εἰρήνην πανούργως ἐκκαλέσασθαι.
to-astound both and to peace craftily to-call-forth
ὃ καὶ συνέβη· ὡς γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἄρτι δὴ τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς
which also happened when for to-them just indeed the Saracens

εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν εἰσβάλλων ἐξ ὑποστροφῆς ἀνύποιστος
into the their(-land) invading from (a)-turn unbearable
κατεφαίνετο, εἰς λόγους δὴ προελθὼν βαρβαρικοὺς
he-appeared into talks indeed having-come barbarian
σπονδάς τε ἐποιεῖτο εἰρηνικὰς καὶ πρὸς συμμαχίαν
treaties both he-made peaceful and to alliance
ἐξεκαλεῖτο αὐτούς, συντιθέμενός τε καὶ ὑπισχνούμενος ἃ
called-forth them agreeing both and promising what
καὶ πρότερον εἴρηται, τὰ Ῥωμαίων τε προδοῦναι ὅρια
also before has-been-said the(-things) of-Romans both to-betray bounds
καὶ τὴν αὐτῶν αὐτοῖς ὑπὸ χεῖρας ποιῆσαι ἀρχήν. ὅθεν
and the their(-empire) to-them under hands to-make rule whence
τοῦ μὲν βουλεύματος οὐ διήμαρτεν τοῦ οἰκείου, ἀλλὰ καὶ
from-the indeed counsel not he-failed the own but also
στέφους μεταλαγχάνει καὶ αὐτοκράτωρ ἀναγορεύεται παρὰ
of-(a)-crown partakes and autocrat is-proclaimed by
τοῦ τὸν ἐν Ἀντιοχείᾳ θρόνον τηνικαῦτα μεταποιουμένου
the(-one) the in Antioch throne then laying-claim-to
Ἰακώβ, καὶ χεῖρα συλλέγει πολλήν, μᾶλλον δὲ λαμβάνει
Jacob and (a)-band collects much rather but receives
πρὸς τὴν αὐτοῦ κραταίωσιν· οὐ γὰρ Ἀγαρηνῶν μόνον
for the his strengthening not for of-Hagarenes only
τούτων δὴ τῶν ἡμῖν γειτονούντων καὶ ὁμορούντων,
these indeed the(-ones) to-us neighboring and bordering
ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν ἐνδότερον οἰκούντων, Αἰγυπτίων
but also of-the(-very) the further-in dwelling Egyptians
Ἰνδῶν Περσῶν Ἀσσυρίων Ἀρμενίων Χάλδων Ἰβήρων
Indians Persians Assyrians Armenians Chaldaeans Iberians
Ζηχῶν Καβείρων καὶ πάντων τῶν δὴ Μάνεντος
Zechs Kabeiroi and all the(-ones) indeed of-Mani
συστοιχούντων δόγμασι καὶ θεσπίσμασι. τούτοις οὖν οἷον
agreeing in-doctrines and decrees by-these then as-if

κατοχυρωθεὶς καὶ πάντοθεν ἑαυτὸν περιφράξας ἄριστον
fortified and from-all-sides himself having-fenced best
ὑπετόπασε τοῖς τρόποις καὶ τὴν κλῆσιν ἀλλάξασθαι καὶ
he-supposed in-the ways and the name to-change and
υἱὸν εἰσποιήσασθαι, ὥς μοι δεδήλωται.
(a)-son to-adopt as by-me has-been-shown
Εἰσβάλλει οὖν πᾶσαν πορθῶν τὴν Ἀνατολὴν καὶ πᾶσαν 13
he-invades then all ravaging the East and every
ἡλικίαν τὴν μὴ διὰ πειθοῦς ἐρχομένην αὐτῷ. ἃ
age the(-one) not through persuasion coming to-him which(-things)
δὴ ὁ βασιλεύων ἀκηκοώς, μεῖζον εἶναι κρίνας τῶν
indeed the reigning(-emperor) having-heard greater to-be having-judged than-the
ἔργων τὴν ἀκοήν, κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐκπέμπει στρατὸν οὐκ
deeds the report against him sends-out (an)-army not
ἀξιόχρεον οὐδ᾽ ἀξιόλογον, ᾧ συρραγεὶς ὁ Θωμᾶς
adequate nor considerable with-which having-clashed — Thomas
τοὺς μὲν ὥσπερ τι ποτὸν διψῶν ἀνερρόφησεν, τοὺς δὲ
some indeed like some drink thirsting gulped-down the and
λοιποὺς εἰς φυγὴν τρέψας τὰ καθ᾽ ἑαυτὸν διετίθετο
rest to flight having-turned the(-things) concerning himself arranged
κραταιότερον. ναῦς τε ἐξαρτύων διήρεις καὶ ἑτέρας
more-strongly ships both fitting-out two-banked and others
στρογγύλας σιταγωγοὺς ἑπομένας αὐτῷ καὶ ἱππαγωγούς,
round grain-carrying following him and horse-carrying
ἐντεῦθεν καὶ τοῦ θεματικοῦ στόλου γίνεται ἐγκρατής, καὶ
from-here also of-the thematic fleet he-becomes master and
πρὸς τὴν Λέσβον ἅπαν τὸ ναυτικὸν ἀθροίζεσθαι ἐγκελεύεται,
to — Lesbos all the naval(-force) to-be-gathered orders
αὐτὸς δὲ ἤδη που ἀνανταγώνιστος εἶναι δοκῶν πᾶσαν
he and already somewhere unrivaled to-be seeming all
τὴν Ἀσίαν λεηλατεῖ. ὀκτὼ γὰρ μυριάδων κατάρχων καὶ ἑνὶ
— Asia plunders eight for ten-thousands commanding and in-one

λόγῳ τούτους ἡνιοχῶν τὴν ἐπὶ Ἄβυδον ᾔει φέρουσαν
word them driving the(-road) to Abydos went leading
δὴ περαιωθησόμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα καταδραμὼν σποδὸν
indeed going-to-cross since and all having-overrun ash
καὶ κόνιν, μή πού γε τὰ ταπεινὰ τῶν χωρίων ἀλλὰ
and dust not only at-least the humble(-ones) of-the places but
δὴ καὶ τὰ κραταιότερα, ἐνειργάσατο, καταλέλειπτο δέ τι
indeed also the stronger(-ones) he-made had-been-left and some
χωρίον εὐφυὲς καὶ τῆς αὐτῶν κακώσεως ἄμοιρον ἦν,
place well-situated and of-the their ill-treatment without-share it-was
τῷ εἰσποιητῷ τοῦτο καταδραμεῖν μετὰ τῆς πρασούσης
for-the adopted this to-overrun with the green
φάλαγγος ἐπιτρέπει υἱῷ. ὁ δέ τισι δαιμόνων γοητείαις
phalanx he-entrusts son he and by-some of-demons sorceries
κατεπαιρόμενος καὶ μαντείᾳ τὴν ψυχὴν ἐμφυσώμενος τῇ
being-elated and by-divination the soul being-puffed-up on-the
προτεραίᾳ τοῦτο δὴ εἰς ἐπήκοον τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἐκεκράγει,
day-before this indeed into hearing to-the his-own(-men) had-cried
ῥητήν τινα ἡμέραν ἔσεσθαι καθομολογῶν καὶ φάσκων ᾗ
(a)-fixed some day to-be agreeing and saying on-which
μέλλοι εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν προελθεῖν. τότε γοῦν
he-was-about into the reigning(-city) to-advance then at-any-rate
θρασέως ἱππαζόμενος εἰς βαρεῖαν βλάβην ὁ δείλαιος
boldly riding into heavy harm the wretch
ἐξεχόρευσεν. διεσπαρμένως γὰρ φερόμενος καὶ γυμνὸν
danced-out scattered for being-borne and bare
εἶναι τῶν ἀντιπάλων τὸ χωρίον οἰόμενος λόχῳ δή
to-be of-the opponents the place thinking into-(an)-ambush indeed
τινι περιπίπτει τοῦ Ὀλβιανοῦ, καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐθωρὸν
some falls — of-Olbianos and the head instantly
ἀποτμηθεὶς τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀποστέλλεται Μιχαήλ. ὁ δὲ
having-been-cut-off to-the emperor is-sent Michael he and

οὐδὲν ὑφιεμένῳ κατὰ τὴν πορείαν, οὐδὲ μὴν τοῖς
nothing to-(one)-slackening in the march nor indeed for-the
δεινοῖς τῶν ἔργων καὶ χαλεποῖς, τῷ ἑαυτοῦ ἀποστέλλει
terrible of-the deeds and harsh to-the his-own sends(-it)
πατρί. ἄρτι ταύτην ἐδέδεκτο ὁ Θωμᾶς, καὶ πρὸς Θρᾴκην
father just this had-received — Thomas and to Thrace
οὐδὲν ὑποστελλόμενος ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ θάλατταν ὄντος
nothing holding-back from the on (the)-sea being
χωρίου (Ὁρκώσιον τοῦτο καλεῖται), καιρὸν ἐπιτηρήσας
place Horkosion this is-called (the)-moment having-watched
ὅτε δὴ κατὰ σύνοδον ἡ σελήνη ἀφώτιστος ἦν, πολλαχοῦ
when indeed at conjunction the moon unlit was in-many-places
διαπεραιοῦται κατὰ τὴν Θρᾴκην. ἔμελεν οὖν καὶ πρὸ
he-crosses into — Thrace was-a-care then also before
τῆς αὐτοῦ διαβάσεως ταῦτα τῷ Μιχαήλ, ὅθεν πᾶσαν
the his crossing these(-things) — to-Michael whence all
περιελθὼν τὴν Θρᾳκῶν ἰσχυροτέρους ἅμα παρῄνει γενέσθαι
having-gone-round the of-Thracians stronger at-once he-exhorted to-become
πρὸς τὸν ἀποστάτην καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ φρονεῖν μέχρις
against the rebel and the(-cause) his-own to-favor up-to
αἱμάτων παρεκάλει, μήτε τὴν βασιλέως πίστιν μήτε μὴν
bloods he-urged neither the emperor's faith nor indeed
τὴν σφῶν ἐξαρνουμένους ἀνδρίαν καὶ ἀρετήν. ἀλλ' ἔοικεν
the their-own denying courage and virtue but seems
ἡ ὄψις ἄμαχόν τι εἶναι πρᾶγμα τοῖς πολλοῖς· καὶ διὰ
the sight unfightable some to-be thing to-the many and because-of
τοῦτο ἐκείνου μὲν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ὑποκεχωρηκότος,
this that(-man) indeed to the reigning(-city) having-withdrawn
τοῦ Θωμᾶ δὲ κατὰ πρόσωπον παρισταμένου μεταθέσθαι
— Thomas and to face presenting(-himself) to-change-sides

συνέβη πάντας εὐκόλως, ὡς μηδὲ λόγου δεηθῆναι, καὶ
happened all easily so-that not-even of-(a)-word to-need and
ἅμα συστρατεύεσθαι ἡγουμένῳ κατὰ τὴν βασιλεύουσαν.
at-once to-campaign-with(-him) leading against the reigning(-city)

14–17 · THE SIEGE OF CONSTANTINOPLE

Michael gathers troops and ships and stretches an iron chain across the water from the acropolis to the town opposite. Thomas makes the exiled Gregory Pterotos, Leo's nephew, a general, adopts the ex-monk Anastasios, and camps before the city. He sees the emperor's standard on the Theotokos' church and Theophilos carrying the cross and the Virgin's robe around the walls, and despairs, but attacks at the Blachernai by land and sea; a storm scatters his fleet, the defenders beat off his engines, and with winter he withdraws. In spring he attacks again; Michael offers an amnesty from the walls, then sallies out and wins, most brilliantly at sea. Gregory deserts Thomas, who turns back, defeats him and kills him, and the imperial fire-ships destroy the fleet Thomas summons from Hellas. Omurtag the Bulgarian offers aid; Michael declines it, but the Bulgarians march anyway, and Thomas, fearing to divide his army, abandons the siege entirely and marches against them.

14 Οὐκ ἔλαθεν οὖν ταῦτα θᾶττον ἢ ἔδει τὸν
not escaped then these(-things) quicker than was-needful the
βασιλέα· ὅθεν καὶ στρατόν τινα ἐκ τῶν ἤδη που
emperor whence also army some from the(-men) already somewhere
καταλελειμμένων ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐπισυνάγει καὶ δυνάμεις
left-over from — Asia he-gathers and forces
τινὰς διὰ τοῦ Κατάκυλα καὶ Ὀλβιανοῦ συναθροίζει, τὸν
some through — Katakylas and Olbianos assembles the
περὶ τῆς βασιλείας ἤδη κίνδυνον δεδιώς. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τοῦ
about the empire already danger fearing but not-even of-the
κατὰ θάλασσαν ἠμέλει στρατοῦ, τάχει δὲ πολλῷ πρὸς
at sea he-neglected army with-speed and much against

τὴν ἐκείνου κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλατταν ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο
the of-that(-man) on land both and sea counter-prepared
δύναμιν. εἰς τοσοῦτο δὲ ἦκε δυσεργίας καὶ περιστάσεως
force to so-much and came of-difficulty and of-crisis
ὡς καὶ σιδηρᾶν ἅλυσιν ἐξ ἀκροπόλεως εἰς τὸ καταντικρὺ
that even (an)-iron chain from (the)-acropolis to the opposite
πολίχνιον ἐπεκτεῖναι, τὴν ἔσωθεν ἄβατον τηρῶν ὁδόν. ἦν
little-town to-stretch the inside impassable keeping road there-was
δέ τις ἐν Σκύρῳ νήσῳ τῶν Κυκλάδων μιᾷ πολλάκις
and (a)-certain on Skyros island of-the Cyclades one often
ἐστρατηγηκὼς ἀνὴρ ὑπερόριος, ἄρτι δὲ τῷ Μιχαὴλ εἰς
having-been-general man (an)-exile just and — with-Michael to
πικρίαν ψυχῆς ἀφικόμενος· ὄνομα τούτῳ Γρηγόριος ὁ
bitterness of-soul having-come (the)-name to-him Gregory the(-one)
οὕτω λεγόμενος Πτερωτός, ὃς ἀδελφιδοῦς μὲν ὑπάρχων
so called Pterotos who nephew indeed being
τοῦ Λέοντος, ἄρτι δὲ τούτου ἀναιρεθέντος ὑπερόριος
— of-Leo just and he having-been-killed (an)-exile
γίνεται, ὅτι μὴ σιγῇ, ζεούσῃ δὲ τῇ καρδίᾳ καὶ φιλίᾳ
becomes because not in-silence boiling but with-the heart and friendship
τοῦ Λέοντος, προσκυνήσων τὸν Μιχαὴλ εἰσερχόμενος
— of-Leo going-to-do-obeisance-to — Michael going-in
πολλοῖς ὀνειδισμοῖς αὐτὸν περιέβαλεν, τὸν φόνον φέρων
with-many reproaches him he-surrounded the murder bearing
τῶν λεγομένων κατήγορον. ᾧ Μιχαὴλ τότε μὲν
of-the said(-things) (as)-accuser to-whom Michael then indeed
εἰπὼν "οἶδά σου τῆς ἀθυμίας τὸ πέλαγος καὶ τῆς λύπης
having-said I-know your of-the despondency the sea and of-the grief
τὸ μέγεθος" φέρειν ἐπέτρεπε τὰ γενόμενα· τρίτης
the greatness to-bear he-bade the(-things) happened (the)-third
δὲ παρῳχηκυίας ἡμέρας κατὰ τὸν εἰρημένον τόπον τῶν
and having-passed day to the said place of-the

Κυκλάδων πεποίηκεν ὑπερόριον. τοῦτον ἑταιρισάμενος ὁ
Cyclades made exile him having-taken-as-comrade —
Θωμᾶς στρατεύματός τινος τοῦ κατὰ γῆν ὡσεὶ χιλιάδας
Thomas of-army some of-the(-one) on land about thousands
δέκα ἀνέδειξεν στρατηγόν. καὶ τὸν κατὰ θάλασσαν δὲ
ten appointed general and the at sea too
στόλον αὐτῷ γενόμενον εὐτρεπισάμενος [καὶ ἕτερον αὐτῷ
fleet for-him having-become having-prepared and another over-it
ἐπιστήσας στρατηγὸν] οἷόν τινας προδρόμους ἐξέπεμψεν,
having-set general as-it-were some forerunners sent-out
ὠφέλιμον εἶναι κρίνας τοῦ κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλασσαν
useful to-be having-judged of-the on land both and sea
ἅμα ποιεῖσθαι τὰς προσβολάς. γενομένου δὲ τούτου καὶ
at-once to-make the attacks having-happened and this and
κατὰ ταὐτὸν ἀναφανέντων τῶν ναυτικῶν καὶ πεζικῶν
at the-same(-time) having-appeared of-the naval and infantry
δυνάμεων ἐν τῷ πρὸς Βλαχέρναις κόλπῳ (οὐδὲ γὰρ
forces in the at Blachernai gulf not for
οὐδεμίαν κώλυσιν ἢ βοήθειαν ἡ ἐξαρτισθεῖσα σιδηρᾶ σειρὰ
not-any hindrance or help the fitted-out iron chain
ἐπεδέδεικτο) εἰς οὐδὲν ἢ μικρὸν ἡ τούτων παρουσία
had-shown at nothing or little the of-these presence
λελόγιστο· ὅθεν οὐδ' ἀξιόλογόν τι παρ' αὐτοῖς
had-been-reckoned whence not considerable anything by them
ἐπέπρακτο. πλὴν ὁ Θωμᾶς κριοὺς καὶ χελώνας καί τινας
was-done but — Thomas rams and tortoises and some
ἑλεπόλεις, δι' ὧν τὰ τείχη ᾤετο κατασείειν, διά τινων
siege-engines through which the walls he-thought to-shake through some
κατασκευάσας μηχανουργῶν, πρὸς δὲ καί τινα Ἀναστάσιον
having-built engineers besides and also some Anastasios
ἄρτι δὴ τὸν τῶν μοναχῶν ἀλλαξάμενον βίον καὶ εἰς
just indeed of-the monks having-changed life and to

τὸν ἀγυρτικὸν τοῦτον δὴ καὶ πολιτικὸν ὑποστρέψαντα,
the vagrant this indeed and civil having-returned
μέλανα τὴν χροιάν, μέλανα τὴν ψυχήν, υἱοθετήσας καὶ
black the complexion black the soul having-adopted and
συγκοινωνὸν τῆς ἀνταρσίας ἀναγορεύσας, πολλῷ στρατῷ
partner of-the rebellion having-proclaimed with-much army
καὶ δυνάμει ῥέων κατὰ τῆς βασιλευούσης προσήλαυνεν,
and force flowing against the reigning(-city) drove
ἅμα δὲ τῷ εἰς ὄψιν ἐποφθῆναι τῶν πολιτῶν τὰς πύλας
at-once and with-the into sight to-be-seen of-the citizens the gates
αὐτῷ ἀναπετάσαι οἰόμενος, μίσει δὴ τῷ πρὸς Μιχαήλ.
to-him to-throw-open thinking from-hatred indeed the toward Michael
ἐπεὶ δὲ ταύτης τῆς ἐλπίδος διέπεσεν, μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν καὶ
since and from-this the hope he-fell rather indeed then also
ὕβρεσι τούτων καὶ λοιδορίαις ἐπλύνετο, τότε μὲν δὴ τὴν
with-insults of-these and abuses he-was-drenched then indeed indeed the
στρατηγικὴν σκηνὴν καὶ τὸν χάρακα κατὰ τὸν τοῦ Παυλίνου
general's tent and the palisade at the — of-Paulinos
οἶκον, ἔνθα δὴ καὶ τὸ τῶν σεβασμίων Ἀναργύρων τέμενος
house where indeed also the of-the venerable Anargyroi precinct
οἷόν τι ἀνάκτορον ᾠκοδόμηται, ἐγκατέπηξε, καὶ πάντα
like some palace has-been-built he-pitched and all
τὸν ἄχρι Εὐξείνου τόπον καὶ Ἱεροῦ καὶ τῶν περαιτέρω
the up-to Euxine place and Hieron and of-the farther
δὴ τούτων πολιχνίων ἐπῆλθε διά τινος στρατεύματος
indeed of-these little-towns he-went-over through some army
πείσων, καὶ μή τινα ἔχειν ὑπὸ νώτου ἐχθρόν.
going-to-persuade and not any to-have behind (his)-back enemy
ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα κατὰ νοῦν ἔχειν ἐδόκει αὐτῷ,
since and these(-things) in mind to-have seemed(-good) to-him
τινὰς ἡμέρας πρὸς παρασκευὴν δοὺς ἑαυτῷ, ὡς ἔκ
some days for preparation having-given to-himself when from

τινος ἀπόπτου κατεῖδε τὸν μὲν Μιχαὴλ τὸ πολεμικὸν
some lookout he-saw — indeed Michael the war
σημεῖον ἐπὶ τέγους τοῦ τῆς θεοτόκου ναοῦ καταπεπηγότα
standard on (the)-roof of-the of-the god-bearer church having-fixed
κἀκεῖθεν τὴν κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων ἰσχὺν αἰτούμενόν τε
and-from-there the against the opponents strength asking both
καὶ προσλαμβάνοντα, τὸν δ' υἱὸν αὐτοῦ τὸν Θεόφιλον
and receiving the and son his — Theophilos
πάντα τὸν τῆς πόλεως περίβολον μετὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ
all the of-the city circuit with the sacred
τάγματος ἐπιφοιτῶντα, τό τε ζῳοποιὸν τοῦ σταυροῦ
order going-round the both life-giving of-the cross
ξύλον ἐπιφερόμενον καὶ τὴν ἐσθῆτα τῆς πανάγνου μητρὸς
wood carrying and the robe of-the all-pure mother
Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν, εἰς πολλὴν μὲν τῶν πραγμάτων
of-Christ — god our into much indeed of-the affairs
δυσελπιστίαν καὶ παντοῖος ἐγένετο τὴν γνώμην κατὰ τὸν
despair and of-every-kind became in-the mind like the
χαμαιλέοντα, εἴγε μὴ πρὸς ὁρατοὺς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ
chameleon if-indeed not against visible only but also
ἀοράτους τινὰς δυνάμεις ἀναγκάζοιτο διαμάχεσθαι. οὐκ
invisible some powers he-should-be-forced to-fight-it-out not
ἔχων δ' ὅτι καὶ πράξειεν, ἄλλως τε δὲ καὶ ὄχλῳ
having and what also he-might-do otherwise both and also with-(a)-crowd
δὴ τοσούτῳ τεθαρρηκώς, τὸν διὰ μάχης ἔκρινεν
indeed so-great having-taken-courage the through battle he-judged
ἀγῶνα τῶν τοιούτων δὴ λογισμῶν γενέσθαι κριτήν.
contest of-the such indeed reasonings to-become judge
ὅθεν τῇ ἑξῆς ἅμα τῷ φωτὶ σημάνας τὸ ἐνυάλιον
whence on-the next(-day) at-once with-the light having-signaled the war-cry
τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐξῆγε, καὶ τῷ μὲν υἱῷ κατὰ τὸν ἐν τῇ
the men he-led-out and to-the indeed son along the on the

χερσῷ τοῦ τείχους περίβολον φέρειν τὸν πόλεμον καὶ
land of-the wall circuit to-bring the war and
τὴν ἀνάγκην ἐπέτρεπεν, αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ πολὺ τῶν δυνάμεων
the pressure he-entrusted he and the most of-the forces
καὶ τῶν πολεμικῶν ὀργάνων, δι᾽ ὧν ἔμελλε τὸ
and of-the war engines through which he-was-about the
τεῖχος καταπειράζειν τῆς πόλεως, ἔχων κατὰ τοὺς τῶν
wall to-try of-the city having at the of-the
Βλαχερνῶν πύργους ἐποιεῖτο τὴν προσβολήν, κλίμακάς τε
Blachernai towers made the attack ladders both
τῷ ὕψει προσφέρων ἀναλογούσας καὶ χελώνας ἄλλοθεν
to-the height bringing proportioned and tortoises from-one-side
καὶ ἑτέρωθεν τοὺς κριούς, τοξεύμασί τε καὶ πετροβόλοις
and from-another the rams with-arrows both and stone-throwers
πανταχόθεν χρώμενος, οἷς ἔμελλε πάντοθεν παντοῖος
from-everywhere using with-which he-was-about from-everywhere all-sorts
φαινόμενος καταπλῆξαι μὲν τοὺς πολίτας, κρατήσειν δὲ
appearing to-astound indeed the citizens to-master and
καὶ τῆς πόλεως. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ τῶν κατὰ θάλατταν ἠμέλει
also the city not indeed not-even of-the at (the)-sea he-neglected
τειχῶν, ἀλλὰ τῷ ναυτικῷ πάντοθεν περικυκλώσας αὐτὴν
walls but with-the naval(-force) from-everywhere having-encircled it
πυρί τε καὶ τοξεύμασι, πρὸς δὲ καί τισι τετρασκελέσιν
with-fire both and with-arrows besides and also with-some four-legged
ἑλεπόλεσιν χρῆσθαι ἐκέλευεν ἀφειδῶς, ταὐτὸν δὲ καὶ
siege-engines to-use he-ordered unsparingly the-same and also
ἀτέχνως εἰπεῖν· ὅθεν οὐδὲν τῶν εἰς ὄνησιν φερόντων
artlessly to-say whence nothing of-the(-things) for benefit bringing
αὐτῷ ἡ τοσαύτη δύναμις συμπαρομαρτούντων ἀνδρῶν
to-him the so-great force of-accompanying men
κατεπράξατο. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ναυτικὸν εὐθύς τις ἐναντίος
accomplished the indeed for naval(-force) at-once (a)-certain contrary

ἐπιγενόμενος ἄνεμος συνδιέλκυσέ τε καὶ ἄλλο ἄλλῃ
having-come-on wind dragged-apart both and one(-ship) elsewhere
διασπαρῆναι ἐποίησεν ἅτε δὴ καὶ χειμῶνος ὄντος
to-be-scattered made inasmuch-as indeed also storm being
ἐξαισίου· κατὰ δὲ τὴν ἤπειρον γενναίως μὲν τῶν ἀπὸ
extraordinary on and the mainland nobly indeed the(-men) from
τῆς πόλεως ἀπομαχομένων, καὶ τέως μὲν τὰς κλίμακας
the city fighting-off and for-a-time indeed the ladders
ἀχρήστους αὐτῷ ποιούντων διὰ τῶν ἐκ τῶν πύργων
useless to-him making through the from the towers
ῥηγνυμένων ἰσχυροτέρων βελῶν, τῶν δ' ἄλλων ὀργάνων
bursting stronger missiles the and other engines
πῇ μὲν οὐκ ἐφικνουμένων, καὶ τούτου μεγάλην
in-some-places indeed not reaching and this great
ῥοπὴν τοῖς πράγμασι τεθεικότος καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ πρὸς τοὺς
weight to-the affairs having-set and the his toward the
πολέμους ἀπειρίαν καταμαρτυρήσαντος, πῇ δὲ καὶ
wars inexperience having-testified-against in-other-places and also
τῶν ἐφικνουμένων καὶ καταλαμβανόντων ἀσθενεστάτων
of-the(-ones) reaching and attaining weakest
ὄντων καὶ οὐ κατὰ μάχην γενναίαν τε καὶ διασείειν τείχη
being and not by battle noble both and to-shake walls
εἰδότων, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τοῦ κατὰ πύργους ἱσταμένου ἀνδρὸς
knowing but not-even of-the on towers standing man
ὑποχώρησίν τινα παρασκευαζόντων. ὡς οὖν ἐφαίνετο
retreat any preparing when then appeared
ταῦτα οὐ κατὰ τὴν προτέραν διαθρυλήσασαν πάντα
these(-things) not according-to the previous having-trumpeted all
φήμην καὶ διακωδωνίσασαν, ἧττω δὲ καὶ ὡς ἔκ τινος
rumor and having-noised-abroad lesser but and as from some
ἀσθενεστάτης φρενὸς διακυβερνώμενα καὶ ἐκπερατούμενα,
weakest mind steered and carried-out

ἀνεθάρρησέ τε ἡ πολιορκουμένη πόλις εὐθέως, καὶ
took-courage both the besieged city at-once and
τοσοῦτον ἐκηβολωτέροις ἐχρῆτο τοῖς βέλεσιν ὡς πόρρω
so-much farther-shooting it-used the missiles that far
που τούτους αὐλισθῆναι ἐπαναγκάσαι, τὰς τοσαύτας
somewhere them to-encamp to-compel the so-many
μηχανὰς ἐγκαταλιπόντας, καὶ περὶ τῆς ἰδίας βουλεύεσθαι
engines having-abandoned and about the own to-take-counsel
σωτηρίας. ὅθεν ἐπεὶ τὰ κατὰ τὴν πολιορκίαν οὐχ
safety whence since the(-things) at the siege not
ὡς ᾤετο, στερρότερα δὲ ἢ κατὰ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ γνώμην
as he-thought harder but than according-to the his-own purpose
ἀπήντησεν, ἄλλως δὲ καὶ ἡ ὥρα δριμύτερον ἐδείκνυ
met(-him) otherwise and also the season more-severe showed
τὸν καιρὸν ἅτε δὴ καὶ χειμῶνος ἐπιγενομένου
the time inasmuch-as indeed also winter having-come-on
καὶ τῆς Θρᾴκης τῶν ἄλλων οὔσης δυσχειμέρου, ἐπὶ
and — Thrace than-the others being wintry to
παραχειμασίαν ἐτράπη καὶ τὸν τοῦ στρατοῦ ἀνακομιδήν.
wintering-quarters he-turned and the of-the army withdrawal
Ἤδη δὲ τοῦ ἔαρος ἥμερον ἐπιλάμποντος καὶ τὸν στρατιώτην
already and the spring gently shining-on and the soldier
ὄχλον τὰς καταδύσεις καὶ χηραμοὺς καταλιπεῖν ἐκβιάζοντος,
crowd the lairs and holes to-leave forcing
ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὖθις κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν
on-both-sides again by land both and by sea
ἔκρινε προσβάλλειν τῇ Κωνσταντίνου. ἀλλ᾽ ἤδη τὸν
he-decided to-attack the(-city) of-Constantine but already —
Μιχαὴλ οὐχ ὡς τὸ πρότερον, ἄρτι δὲ στρατιωτικήν
Michael not as the before just but (a)-military
τινα δύναμιν εὗρισκε συλλεξάμενον, καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν
some force he-found having-collected and at sea

ἄλλην δὴ ναυτικήν. κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνο γοῦν πάλιν ᾔει τὸ
other indeed naval at that at-any-rate again he-went the
μέρος ὁπλισάμενος ᾗ καὶ πρότερον, τὸν κόλπον τῶν
part having-armed where also before the gulf of-the
Βλαχερνῶν. ὡς οὖν ἡμέρα ὑπέλαμπεν καὶ τὸ σύνθημα
Blachernai when then day was-glimmering and the signal
ἐδίδοτο τὸ πολεμικὸν καὶ τεῖχος ἔμελλε κατασείειν τῶν
was-given the warlike and (the)-wall he-was-about to-shake of-the
Βλαχερνῶν, εἰς λόγους δή τισιν ἐκ τοῦ τῶν τειχῶν
Blachernai into words indeed with-some from the of-the walls
μετεώρου ἦλθεν ὁ Μιχαήλ, ἀμνηστίαν αὐτοῖς δεινῶν
height came — Michael amnesty to-them of-terrible(-deeds)
εὐαγγελιζόμενος καὶ ὑπισχνούμενος δώσειν ἀγαθὰ πολλά,
announcing and promising to-give good(-things) many
εἰ μόνον δὴ μετατάξοιντο καὶ μὴ βουληθεῖεν αἵμασιν
if only indeed they-would-change-sides and not would-wish with-bloods
ὁμοφύλων καὶ ἀδελφῶν καταχραίνεσθαι. ἀλλ᾽ εἰς πίθον
of-kinsmen and brothers to-be-stained but into (a)-jar
τετρημένον, τὸ τοῦ λόγου, τούτους ἐναπεράνας τοὺς
bored the of-the saying these having-emptied the
λόγους, ἐκείνους μὲν θαρσαλεωτέρους, ὅτι δὴ καὶ
words them indeed bolder because indeed also
παρακαλοῖντο, ταὐτὸν δὲ εἰπεῖν καὶ τῆς ἐκ τοῦ φόβου
they-were-being-entreated the-same and to-say also of-the from the fear
συστάσεως λελυμένους εἰργάσατο, ἑαυτὸν δὲ σταθερόν τε
cohesion loosed he-made himself but steady both
καὶ στερρότερον. ὅθεν ἄφνω ἐκ πολλῶν πυλίδων κατ᾽
and firmer whence suddenly from many little-gates against
αὐτῶν συρρυείς, ᾗ μὴ προσεδόκων ἐκεῖνοι, συρρήγνυταί
them having-poured where not expected they he-clashes
τισι τούτοις εἰς μάχην, καὶ φθόρον ἱκανὸν ἐργασάμενος
with-some these into battle and destruction sufficient having-worked

τὴν νικῶσαν λαμβάνει λαμπρῶς. κατὰ θάλατταν δὲ καὶ
the victory takes brilliantly at sea and also
μᾶλλον ἢ κατ᾽ ἤπειρον τὴν νικῶσαν ἐλάμβανεν. ὡς γὰρ
more than on land the victory be-took when for
αἱ βασιλικαὶ τριήρεις ἀνήγοντο καὶ εἰς χεῖρας συνέρχεσθαι
the imperial triremes put-out and into hands to-come
ἔμελλον, ἄρτι δὴ πόλεμον συγκροτοῦντος καὶ λίθους
were-about just indeed battle joining and stones
ἐπαφιέντος τοῦ ἀποστατικοῦ πλῴμου, οὐκ οἶδ᾽ ὅ τι
letting-fly the rebel fleet not I-know what ever
παθόντος καὶ τίσι δείμασι καὶ θορύβοις περικτυπηθέντος
having-suffered and by-what terrors and tumults having-been-rattled
καὶ πρύμναν κρούσαντος κατήγετο πρὸς τὴν χέρσον· καὶ
and stern having-backed was-brought-in to the land and
οἱ μὲν τῶν ἀνδρῶν πρὸς βασιλέα αὐτομολοῦντες ἐθάρρουν
some indeed of-the men to (the)-emperor deserting took-courage
μετατιθέμενοι, οἱ δὲ πρὸς τὸ οἰκεῖον στρατόπεδον τὸ
changing-sides others and to the own camp the(-one)
κατὰ γῆν ἀπεδίδρασκον, τὸ κατὰ θάλασσαν εἶναι καὶ
on land ran-off the at sea to-be and
διαμάχεσθαι ἀπαρνησάμενοι παντελῶς. οὕτω μὲν οὖν
to-fight-it-out having-refused utterly thus indeed then
ἀπονητὶ διελύθη τὸ ναυτικόν, καὶ τέως ἐχώρησεν εἰς
without-toil was-dissolved the naval(-force) and for-a-time came to
οὐδέν, ἄξιον οὔτε τοῦ πλήθους τῶν νεῶν οὔτε τῶν
nothing worthy neither of-the multitude of-the ships nor of-the(-men)
εἰς αὐτὰς ἀναβεβηκότων ἀνδρῶν διαπραξάμενον.
into them having-embarked men having-accomplished
Ὅθεν καὶ Γρηγόριος ὁ δηλωθεὶς συνεωρακὼς αὐτόν 16
whence also Gregory the(-one) shown having-perceived him
τε τοῦτον τὸν ἀποστάτην εὐκαταφρόνητον ὄντα τε καὶ
both this the rebel easily-despised being both and

πλέον προϊόντος τοῦ χρόνου γενησόμενον, ἅτε δὴ
more advancing the time going-to-become inasmuch-as indeed
πότοις σχολάζοντα καὶ φρονήσεως ἀμοιροῦντα κατὰ
in-drinking-bouts idling and of-prudence lacking by
πολύ, δι' ἧς πεφύκασι μᾶλλον ἢ ποθεν ἄλλοθεν
much through which are-wont rather than from-somewhere else
αἱ νῖκαι προσγίνεσθαι, μοῖράν τινα τοῦ ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν
the victories to-accrue (a)-portion some of-the under himself
τάγματος συλλαβόμενος, καὶ πρότερον δὲ κοινολογησάμενος
regiment having-taken and before too having-conferred
τῷ βασιλεῖ διὰ μοναχοῦ τινὸς τοῦ ἀπὸ τῶν Στουδίου
with-the emperor through (a)-monk some of-the from the Stoudios
τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντος, ῥῆξιν ἐννοεῖ καὶ τοῦ
by-the emperor sent (a)-break devises and of-the
ἀποστάτου γίνεται κατὰ νώτου, ὁμοῦ μὲν τοῦτον
rebel gets at (the)-back at-once indeed him
ἐκδειματῶν καὶ θορύβου πληρῶν, ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ τῶν
frightening and with-tumult filling at-once and also for-the
εἰς βασιλέα ἑαυτῷ ἡμαρτημένων, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τῇ
against (the)-emperor by-himself committed-sins but indeed also for-the
αὐτοῦ γαμετῇ καὶ τοῖς τέκνοις (καὶ γὰρ ἐτηροῦντο
his wife and for-the children and for they-were-kept
ἐν φυλακῇ ἐκείνου τῷ Θωμᾷ προσθεμένου) διαλλαγὴν
in prison he — to-Thomas having-gone-over (a)-reconciliation
καὶ συγγνώμην πραγματευόμενος. ἀλλ' οὔτε ὁ βασιλεὺς
and pardon negotiating but neither the emperor
ταῦτα ἔφθασε διακοῦσαι· εἰς τοσοῦτον γὰρ ἀπεκέκλειστο
these(-things) managed to-hear to so-much for he-was-shut-in
καὶ τῶν ἔξωθεν, οὐδ' εἰ τῶν ἐγγὺς μόνον τις,
also of-the outside(-world) not if of-the(-men) near only anyone
ἀλλ' οὐδ' εἰ τῶν πορρωτέρω τὰ αὐτοῦ ἠρημένος
but not-even if of-the(-men) farther the(-cause) his having-chosen

ἐτύγχανε. καὶ ὁ Θωμᾶς τὸ μὴ πολὺν ἐξαίφνης τοῦτον
happened(-to-be) and — Thomas the not great suddenly this(-man)
γενέσθαι κατορρωδῶν, καὶ φόβον ἐν τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ποιῆσαι
to-become dreading and fear among the his-own to-make
βουλόμενος, τὴν μὲν στρατοπεδείαν τῆς πόλεως οὐκ
wishing the indeed encampment from-the city not
ἐξεκίνησε, ταὐτὸ τοῦτο προμηθούμενος, καὶ προνοῶν τὸ
moved the-same this foreseeing and providing the
μὴ διωχθῆναι ἐξόπισθεν· ὀλίγους δέ τινας, καὶ ὅσους
not to-be-pursued from-behind few and some and as-many-as
ᾔδει ἀξιοχρέους τῆς πρὸς τὸν Γρηγόριον μάχης ὄντας,
he-knew adequate of-the against — Gregory battle being
παραλαβὼν ἐξῄει πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ περιγίνεται τούτου, καὶ
having-taken went-out against him and prevails-over him and
φεύγοντα καταλαβὼν ἀναιρεῖ. καὶ αὖθις διὰ ταχέων πρὸς
fleeing having-caught kills(-him) and again in haste to
τὰς δυνάμεις τὰς προσεδρευούσας τῇ πόλει γίνεται,
the forces the(-ones) besieging the city comes
καὶ γράμμασιν ἐπιστέλλων τὰ ἑαυτοῦ περιαγγέλλει
and by-letters sending the(-news) of-himself announces
ἁπανταχοῦ, ὡς εἴη τε νενικηκώς, ὅπερ οὐκ ἦν, καὶ τὸ
everywhere that he-was both having-conquered which not it-was and the
προσχωριάζον κατὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ναυτικὸν ταχέως κελεύων
being-stationed in — Hellas naval(-force) quickly ordering
ἀναχθῆναι, ὡς αὖθις τοῖς κατὰ θάλασσαν προσβάλλοι
to-put-to-sea so-that again the at sea he-might-attack
μετὰ στερροτέρας δυνάμεως μέρεσιν. ἀλλ᾽ ἐκεῖναι μὲν εἰς
with stronger force parts but those indeed to
ἀριθμὸν τελοῦσαι πεντήκοντα πρὸς ταῖς τριακοσίαις
number amounting fifty in-addition-to the three-hundred
πολεμιστηρίοις ἅμα διήρεσι καὶ σιταγωγοῖς τῷ τῶν
warships together-with two-bankers and grain-carriers in-the of-the

Βυρίδων κατὰ Θρᾴκην λιμένι ἐγκαθορμίζονται, ἐξ οὐρίας
Byrides in Thrace harbor anchor with (a)-fair-wind
πλέουσαι. καὶ ὁ βασιλικὸς δὲ πυρφόρος στόλος τούτοις
sailing and the imperial too fire-bearing fleet on-them
μηδὲν ἐγνωκόσιν ἐκεῖσε ἐπιτεθεὶς πολλὰς μὲν αὐτάνδρους
nothing knowing there having-fallen many indeed with-their-men
αἱρεῖ τῶν νηῶν, τινὰς δὲ καὶ πυρπολεῖ δυνατωτάτῃ χειρί,
takes of-the ships some and also burns with-most-powerful hand
ὀλίγων παντελῶς ἔξω γενομένων τοῦ πάθους καὶ πρὸς
few altogether out having-come of-the suffering and to
τὸν τῶν Βλαχερνῶν κόλπον καταίρειν λόγον ποιουμένων
the of-the Blachernai gulf to-sail account making
πολύν, ὡς ἂν εἶεν ὁμοῦ τῇ κατὰ γῆν στρατιᾷ·
much so-that — they-might-be together with-the on land army
ὃ καὶ γέγονεν. τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ θάλατταν τοῦτον
which also happened the(-things) indeed then at sea this
ἐκυβερνᾶτο καὶ ηὐθύνετο τὸν τρόπον· κατὰ γῆν δὲ ἀεί
were-steered and were-directed the way on land and always
πως ἀκροβολισμοί τινες ἐκ μέρους καὶ φόνοι ἐγένοντο,
somehow skirmishes some in part and slaughters happened
νῦν μὲν τοῦ Μιχαὴλ νῦν δὲ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ Θεοφίλου
now indeed — Michael now and the son his Theophilos
αὐτοῖς ἐπεξιόντος μετὰ Ὀλβιανοῦ καὶ Κατάκυλα, καὶ
against-them sallying-out with Olbianos and Katakylas and
πληγὰς ἔσθ' ὅτε καιρίας διδόντος τε καὶ λαμβάνοντος· οὐ
blows it-is when mortal giving both and receiving not
μὴν ἀγῶνές τινες λαμπροὶ καὶ νεανικοὶ ἐκ παρατάξεως
indeed contests some brilliant and youthful from battle-line
καὶ τῆς ἰσορρόπου δυνάμεως ἔσχον τὸ κῦρος, ἅτε δὴ
and of-the equal force had the decision inasmuch-as indeed

πολλῷ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἐλαττουμένου καὶ μὴ πρὸς τὴν ἐκείνου
by-much — Michael being-inferior and not against the of-that(-man)
εὔζωνόν τε καὶ ἱππικὴν στρατιὰν ἀντιτάσσεσθαι δυναμένου.
light-armed both and cavalry army to-be-arrayed being-able
Ἐν τούτοις οὖν ὄντων αὐτῶν, Μορτάγων ὁ τῶν 17
in these(-affairs) then being they Omurtag the of-the
Βουλγάρων βασιλεὺς (καὶ γὰρ ἔφθασεν ἡ φήμη κατὰ τὴν
Bulgarians king and for had-reached the rumor through the
οἰκουμένην τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Ῥωμαίων πολιορκούμενον
inhabited-world the emperor of-the Romans besieged
διαγγέλλουσα) λάθρα τινὰς ἐς βασιλέα πέμψας ἐξαποστεῖλαι
announcing secretly some to (the)-emperor having-sent to-send-forth
αὐτομάτῳ γνώμῃ συμμαχίαν καθυπισχνεῖτο καὶ βοήθειαν
of-own-accord purpose alliance promised and help
αὐτῷ τὴν ἀρκοῦσαν διδόναι καθωμολόγει. ἀλλ᾽ ὅ γε
to-him the sufficient to-give agreed but he at-least
Μιχαήλ, εἴτε τῇ ἀληθείᾳ τὸ τῶν ὁμοφύλων πλῆθος
Michael whether in-the truth the of-the kinsmen multitude
καταιδούμενός τε καὶ ἐλεῶν, εἴτε καὶ χρημάτων φειδόμενος
respecting both and pitying or also money sparing
(ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐπὶ πολὺ τὰς χεῖρας τῶν ἄλλων βασιλέων
he-was for for much the hands of-the other emperors
ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν ἔχων ἐκ φειδωλίας), τὴν μὲν γνώμην ἠξίου
under himself having from thrift the indeed purpose deemed-worthy
ἀποδοχῆς τούτου, παρῃτεῖτο δὲ τὴν αὐτοῦ βοήθειαν, καὶ
of-acceptance of-this(-man) declined but the his help and
οὐκ εἴ τι γένοιτο παρὰ τοῦ ἀποστάτου, βούλεσθαι
not if anything should-happen from the rebel to-wish
τὴν ἐπικουρίαν αὐτῷ κατεμήνυεν. ἀλλ᾽ ὅ γε Μορτάγων
the aid to-him he-declared but he at-least Omurtag
καὶ ἄλλως πολέμοις χαίρων καὶ τὰς ἐκ τούτων λείας
both otherwise in-wars delighting and the from these booties

καρποῦσθαι φιλῶν, καὶ τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν δὲ τριακοντούτεις
to-enjoy loving and the toward him too thirty-year
σπονδὰς γεγενημένας παρὰ τοῦ προκατασχόντος Λέοντος
treaties made by the(-one) having-ruled-before Leo
ἐπιβεβαιῶσαι καὶ ἰσχυροτέρας ποιῆσαι ζητῶν, τὴν κατὰ
to-confirm and stronger to-make seeking the against
τοῦ τυράννου στρατιὰν εὐτρέπιζεν, καὶ δὴ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
the usurper army prepared and indeed of-the Romans'
ὅρων ἔντοσθε μετὰ παρρησίας γενόμενος κατὰ τὸν
bounds within with boldness having-come at the
Κηδούκτου χῶρον οὕτω καλούμενον ἐστρατοπέδευσεν.
of-Kedouktos place so called encamped
ἠκούοντο δέ, καὶ λαθεῖν ταῦτα τὸν ἀποστάτην οὐκ
were-heard and also to-escape-notice these(-things) the rebel not
ἦν· περιεδονήθη μὲν ὡς εἰκός, καὶ τὰς φρένας
was(-it-possible) he-was-whirled indeed as (is)-likely and the wits
κατεκτυπήθη, ἐν αὐτῷ δὲ πάλιν γενόμενος τὴν κατ' αὐτοῦ
was-dinned in himself and again having-come the against him
στρατιὰν ἐξώπλιζεν. καὶ ἐπεὶ εἰς δύο καταμεριζόμενος
army he-armed and since into two being-divided
ἐδόκει παντελῶς ἀσθενής τε εἶναι καὶ εὔπτωτος (ἥ
he-seemed altogether weak both to-be and easy-to-fall the(-one)
τε γὰρ τῶν πόλεων βασιλεύουσα οὐκ εὐαριθμήτου ἀλλὰ
both for of-the cities reigning not of-easily-counted but
πλείστου ἀξιολόγου στρατοῦ ἐδέετο πολιορκουμένη, ἤδη
very-great considerable army needed being-besieged already
καὶ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ δυνάμεις οὐκ ἀγεννεῖς συλλέγοντος καὶ
and — Michael forces not ignoble collecting and
κατὰ πόδας ἵστασθαι δυναμένου, καὶ πολλάκις ὄλεθρον
on (his)-heels to-stand being-able and often destruction
ἐπαγαγεῖν αὐτοῖς δυνηθέντος· καὶ ἡ τῶν Βουλγάρων δὲ
to-bring on-them having-been-able and the of-the Bulgarians too

δύναμις οὐ μικρᾶς τινὸς τάξεως καὶ στρατιᾶς, πολλῆς δὲ
force not small some order and army much but
καὶ οὐ τῆς τυχούσης ἐδέετο παρατάξεως), — μὴ οὖν εἰς
and not the chance needed battle-line lest then into
δύο τινὰ διαιρούμενος κατά τινα λάβρον χειμάρρουν
two some(-parts) being-divided like some violent torrent
ἀσθενέστερος παρ᾽ ὃ ἦν δόξῃ τε τοῖς ἐχθροῖς
weaker than what he-was he-might-seem both to-the enemies
καὶ εὐχείρωτος γένηται, ἀπαίρει μὲν ὅλως τῆς πόλεως,
and easy-to-subdue become he-sets-out indeed wholly from-the city
πρὸς τὸν Βούλγαρον δὲ ἀξιόμαχον κρίνας αὐτὸν κατὰ
to the Bulgarian and (a)-worthy-foe having-judged him at
τὸν εἰρημένον τόπον παρατάσσεται καὶ ἀνταγωνίζεται.
the said place he-is-arrayed and contends-against(-him)

18–21 · THE END OF THOMAS AND THE LOSS OF CRETE

The Bulgarians rout Thomas and go home with their spoils; his fleet goes over to the emperor. Thomas rallies at Diabasis, is beaten when his own men flee on his order and desert, and escapes with a few to Adrianople; Michael starves out the town until it hands him over, and he is mutilated and dies, and his adopted son Anastasios suffers the same. Panion falls to an earthquake and Herakleia from the sea. Choireas and Gazarenos refuse an amnesty and are betrayed by their own men. God's wrath falls on both continents and the islands, yet Michael keeps on against the images. Spanish Arabs, too many for their poor western land, sail under their emir Apochaps for a new home, land on Crete, see their ships burned by him, and settle there.

καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐς χεῖρας ἦεσαν κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων, ἡττᾶται δὴ 18
and when to hands they-came against one-another is-worsted indeed
ἰσχυρῶς ὁ τύραννος, καὶ φόνον οὐ ποιεῖ μὲν πάσχει
strongly the usurper and slaughter not does indeed suffers

δὲ παρὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν. καὶ ἐπεὶ μὴ ἄλλως ἦν
but from the enemies and since not otherwise was(-it-possible)
τῆς σωτηρίας λαβέσθαι, φυγαδείᾳ ταύτην εὑρίσκουσιν,
of-the safety to-take-hold by-flight it they-find
καὶ ἔν τινι χώρῳ δυσβάτῳ σκεδαννύμενοι ἐσκόπουν πῶς
and in some place impassable being-scattered considered how
συνάγωνται. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ μὲν τῶν Βουλγάρων ἀρχηγὸς εὐθὺς τά
they-might-gather but the indeed of-the Bulgarians leader at-once the
τε σώματα προσλαβόμενος ὧν ἐγένετο κύριος, καὶ λείας
both bodies having-taken of-which he-became master and of-plunder
δὲ πολλῆς γενόμενος ἐγκρατής, πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ὑπέστρεψε,
too much having-become master to the his-own returned
τῇ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ νίκῃ ἐπαιρόμενός τε καὶ γαυριῶν. τὸ δὲ
at-the over him victory being-elated both and exulting the and
καταλειφθὲν ναυτικὸν ὡς τοῦτο ἀκήκοεν, τοῦτο δὴ τῇ
left-behind naval(-force) when this it-heard this indeed the
πόλει προσεδρεῦον, προσχωρεῖ τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ
city besieging goes-over to-the emperor and with him
γίνεται. ὁ δ᾽ αὖ ἀποστάτης εἰς τοσοῦτο ἦκε θάρρους,
is the but again rebel to so-much came of-courage
παρὰ τῶν αὐτῷ συμμαχούντων, ὡς ἔοικε, δαιμόνων
from the him allied as it-seems demons
ἐγκρατής, ὥστε πάντοθεν συντριβόμενος καὶ πληττόμενος
master so-that from-everywhere being-crushed and being-struck
καὶ ὀλίγος ἐκ πολλῶν γενόμενος, καθαρᾶς τε νίκης οὔ
and few from many having-become of-clean both victory not
ποτε μετεσχηκὼς οὔτ᾽ ἀπὸ παρατάξεως οὔτε μὴν ἀπὸ τῶν
ever having-shared neither from battle-line nor indeed from the
καθ᾽ ἡμέραν προσαγομένων διὰ πολυχειρίας μηχανημάτων
by day brought through many-handedness of-engines
κατὰ τῶν τειχῶν τῆς πόλεως, αὖθις ἐπισυναχθεὶς κατά τι
against the walls of-the city again having-been-gathered at some

πεδίον, Διάβασιν οὕτω καλούμενον, σταδίους ἀπέχον τῆς
plain Diabasis so called stades distant from-the
πόλεως ἱκανοὺς καὶ πρὸς στρατοπεδείαν εὐφυὲς ἔκ τε
city sufficient and for encampment well-suited from both
τῶν φυομένων καὶ ὑδάτων ἐπιρρύτων ὄν, συναθροίζεται.
the growing(-things) and waters flowing being he-is-assembled
κἀκεῖθεν τὰς προνομὰς ποιῶν πάντα μὲν πρὸ τῆς
and-from-there the foragings making all indeed before the
πόλεως ἔκειρε κόσμον καὶ ἐπυρπόλει, ἐνεφανίζετο δὲ
city be-ravaged adornment and burned appeared but
τοῖς κατὰ πόλιν, ὡς τὸ πρότερον, οὐδαμῶς. ὃ καὶ
to-the(-men) in (the)-city as the before in-no-way which also
συνεὶς ὁ Μιχαὴλ καὶ ἀξιόλογον συστήσας στρατόν,
having-understood — Michael and considerable having-assembled army
αὐτόν τε Ὀλβιανὸν καὶ Κατάκυλαν ἔχων μετὰ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ
himself both Olbianos and Katakylas having with the his-own
ἀκμῆτας ταγμάτων καὶ ἀκεραίους, κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐκστρατεύει·
unwearied regiments and intact against him campaigns
καὶ τοῦτον οὐ κατορρωδοῦντα οὐδ᾽ ἐκφοβούμενον ἀλλ᾽
and him not dreading nor being-frightened but
αὐτῷ προσυπαντῶντα μετὰ σπουδῆς ἐφευρὼν συνῆλθεν
him coming-to-meet with haste having-found he-came
εἰς χειρῶν δύναμιν, κρῖναι τὸ πᾶν βουληθείς. ἔνθα δὴ
into of-hands power to-decide the all having-wished there indeed
καὶ καταστρατηγῆσαι τὸν βασιλέα βουλόμενος αὐτὸς
also to-outgeneral the emperor wishing himself
τῇ ἑαυτοῦ καταστρατηγεῖται βουλῇ καὶ τοῦ παντὸς
by-the his-own is-outgeneraled counsel and of-the whole
διαμαρτάνει σκοποῦ. ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἅμα τῷ συρραγῆναι
misses aim he indeed for at-once with-the to-break-out
τὸν πόλεμον νῶτα διδόναι τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐκέλευσεν, οὐ
the battle backs to-give to-the emperor ordered not

τὴν τῶν ἑαυτοῦ δυνάμεων γνώμην κατανοῶν, ἀνθρώπων
the of-the his-own forces mind perceiving men
ἔκπαλαι γυναικῶν καὶ τέκνων στερουμένων δι᾽ αὐτὸν
from-long-ago of-wives and children deprived because-of him
καὶ τὰς χεῖρας τῷ ἀδελφικῷ λύθρῳ καταμιαινόντων· οἳ
and the hands with-the brotherly gore defiling who
ταχεῖαν ἔσεσθαι καὶ οὐκ εἰς τοσοῦτον χρόνον ἐκταθῆναι τὴν
quick to-be and not to so-much time to-be-extended the
αὐτῶν ἐν τοῖς ὑπαίθροις διατριβὴν προσδοκήσαντες πρὸς
their in the open-air stay having-expected to
πᾶν μὲν ἦσαν κατ᾽ ἀρχὰς εὐπειθεῖς, ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ὁ
everything indeed were at (the)-beginnings obedient since and also the
χρόνος ἤδη που ἐξετέτατο (τρίτος γὰρ ἐξηνύετο)
time already somewhere had-been-extended third for was-being-completed
καὶ ἀνηνύτοις ἐκ τῶν καθ᾽ ἡμέραν γινομένων ἐδόκουν
and in-endless(-things) from the by day happening they-seemed
ἐπιχειρεῖν, ἀνδρὸς ἑνὸς ἐπιθυμίᾳ καὶ ἀπονοίᾳ δουλεύοντες,
to-be-engaged of-man one by-(the)-desire and madness slaving
τηνικαῦτα τὸ κελευσθὲν ὡς ἔρμαιόν τι λαβόντες οὐχ
then the(-thing) ordered as (a)-godsend some having-taken not
ὥσπερ ἐκεῖνος ἐβούλετο ἐξεπλήρουν, ἀλλὰ ὡς αὐτοῖς ἐδόκει
as that(-one) wished they-fulfilled but as to-them seemed
καλόν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἐγκλῖναι τούτοις εἰς τοσοῦτον ἐπέτρεπεν
fine he indeed for to-give-way to-them to so-much ordered
ὅσον τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως παράταξιν διαλῦσαι καὶ αὖθις
as-far-as the of-the emperor battle-line to-break and again
ὑποστρέψαι στερρῶς φονεύοντας· οἱ δὲ κόσμῳ καὶ τακτικῇ
to-turn-back stoutly slaying they and in-order and tactical
ἐμπειρίᾳ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως στρατιὰν κατόπιν θέουσαν, καὶ
experience the of-the emperor army behind running and
οὐχ ὡς ᾠήθη εὐδιαλύτως, εἰδότες ἀσχηματίστῳ χρῶνται
not as he-thought easily-broken knowing disordered use

φυγῇ, καὶ ἄλλος ἄλλῃ διεσκέδαστό τε καὶ διεφέρετο.
flight and one(-man) elsewhere was-scattered both and was-carried-off
ἀλλ᾽ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι, νῦν μὲν ὀλίγοι καὶ αὖθις ἕτεροι, τῷ
but the indeed others now indeed few and again others to-the
βασιλεῖ προσχωροῦσι καὶ καθομολογοῦσιν αὐτῷ· αὐτὸς δὲ
emperor go-over and agree(-terms) with-him he and
σὺν ὀλίγοις τισὶ πρὸς τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν σώζεται κἀκεῖσε
with few some to — Adrianople is-saved and-there
τῆς φυγῆς ἵσταται. ὁ δέ γε τούτου νόθος τε καὶ
from-the flight stops the but at-least his bastard both and
παρέγγραπτος υἱὸς Ἀναστάσιος τοῦ τῆς Βύζης φεύγων
spurious son Anastasios the — of-Byze fleeing
ἐπιλαμβάνεται πτολίσματος. καὶ οὐ κατὰ τύχην, οἶμαι,
seizes town and not by chance I-think
κατὰ δὲ πρόνοιάν τινα, ἵν᾽ ἕκαστος τούτων πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
by but providence some that each of-these to himself
ἑλκύων τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως προσεδρίαν τῷ ἑτέρῳ διδοῖ
drawing the of-the emperor siege to-the other might-give
ἄνεσίν τε καὶ καιρὸν εἰς τὴν προνομήν.
respite both and opportunity for the foraging
Ἀλλ᾽ ὅ γε βασιλεὺς ἐκ ποδὸς τούτοις ἑπόμενος πρῶτον 19
but the at-least emperor from (the)-foot them following first
ἔγνω τὸν Θωμᾶν πολιορκεῖν καὶ τὴν προγεγενημένην
decided — Thomas to-besiege and the having-happened-before
εἰς αὐτὸν ἀποδοῦναι τούτῳ ποινήν. ὅθεν ἐπάγει
against him to-repay to-him penalty whence he-brings-on
αὐτῷ πολιορκίαν, οὐ διὰ μηχανημάτων ἢ ἄλλων τινῶν
him siege not through engines or others any
σπουδάζων αὐτὸν καθελεῖν, ἅμα μὲν τὸν ἐμφύλιον
striving him to-take-down at-once indeed the civil
ἀποδιδράσκων πόλεμον, ἅμα δὲ τῷ τοὺς τὴν Σκυθίαν
running-from war at-once and by-the the(-men) — Scythia

οἰκοῦντας τῶν τοιούτων ἀμαθήτους κατασκευῶν βούλεσθαι
inhabiting of-the such ignorant constructions to-wish
διαμένειν, ἀλλὰ λιμῷ καὶ ἀνάγκῃ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, οἷς
to-remain but by-famine and necessity of-the provisions in-which
ἐν σπάνει καὶ ἐνδείᾳ ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἀποθησαυρίζουσα ἡ πόλις
in scarcity and want but not hoarding the city
ἐδείκνυτο. ἔγνωστο γοῦν ταῦτα αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀρχὴν
was-shown was-decided at-any-rate these(-things) by-him and (a)-beginning
ἡ πρᾶξις ἐλάμβανεν. ὁ δέ γε πολιορκούμενος παντὸς
the action took the and at-least besieged(-man) of-every
μὲν ζῴου πρῶτον ἰδέαν ἄχρηστον, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ πᾶσαν
indeed animal first kind useless then and also every
ἡλικίαν τῆς πόλεως ἐξωθεῖ, οὐ παρακλητικοῖς, ὡς ἂν
age of-the city thrusts-out not with-entreating as —
εἴποι τις, λόγοις τὰ πολλὰ τῶν πράξεων διοικῶν,
might-say one words the many of-the affairs administering
τυράννῳ δὲ γνώμῃ καὶ αὐθεκάστῳ· ὃ καὶ τὸ κατ᾽
with-tyrannical but purpose and self-willed which also the against
αὐτοῦ ἀνεθυμίασέ τε μῖσος καὶ ἀνενέωσεν. ἔπειτα ὡς ἤδη
him fumed-up both hatred and renewed then when already
ἤκμαζεν ὁ λιμός, σωτηρίας ἐλπὶς οὐδαμοῦ, ἠνάγκαζε
was-at-its-height the famine of-safety hope nowhere compelled
δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτῆς φόρους ἀνελλιπεῖς ἀπήτει δὴ ἡ
and also the its-own tributes unfailing demanded indeed the
γαστήρ, οἱ μὲν λάθρα διά τινων πυλίδων οἱ δὲ
belly some indeed secretly through some little-gates others and
διὰ τειχῶν καθιμώμενοι, οἱ μὲν φέροντες τῷ βασιλεῖ
over walls letting-themselves-down some indeed bearing to-the emperor
ἑαυτοὺς ἐπεδίδουν, οἱ δὲ πρὸς τὸν υἱὸν κατὰ τὸ Βύζης
themselves gave-up others and to the son at the of-Byze
πτολίεθρον ἀπεδίδρασκον. ἐπεὶ οὖν οὐ τὰ ἀναγκαῖα μόνον
town ran-off since then not the necessary(-things) only

ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἀπευκτὰ καὶ λυπρὰ τούτοις κατεδήδοτο,
but also the abominable(-things) and miserable by-them had-been-eaten
ἄχρι δὲ τῶν σεσημμένων σκυτῶν τε καὶ καττυμάτων
up-to and the rotten hides both and soles
τὰ τῆς τροφῆς ἐχώρει, εἰς λόγους τινὲς τῶν ἐν
the(-things) of-the food went into talks some of-the(-men) in
τῇ πόλει ἐλθόντες τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ τῶν ἡμαρτημένων
the city having-come with-the emperor and of-the sins
ἀμνηστίαν αἰτήσαντές τε καὶ λαβόντες, περισχόντες αὐτὸν
(an)-amnesty having-asked both and having-received having-surrounded him
λαμβάνουσί τε διὰ χειρῶν καὶ προσάγουσι τῷ ἐχθρῷ. ὁ
take both through hands and bring(-him) to-the enemy he
δὲ τὸ δόξαν πάλαι τοῖς βασιλεῦσι καὶ εἰς συνήθειαν
and the(-thing) seeming(-good) long-ago to-the emperors and into custom
ἤδη ἐλθὸν πρῶτον τελέσας καὶ ὑποκάτω θεὶς
already having-come first having-performed and under having-placed
τῶν ποδῶν, ἀκρωτηριάζει τοῦτον καὶ πόδας καὶ χεῖρας
the feet mutilates him and feet and hands
ἀπαράσσει αὐτοῦ, ἐπὶ ὄνου τε θεατρίζει πᾶσι, τοῦτο
strikes-off of-him on (a)-donkey both he-makes-a-show to-all this
μόνον ἐπιτραγῳδοῦντα “ἐλέησόν με ὁ ἀληθῶς βασιλεῦ.”
only lamenting have-pity-on me the truly emperor
ἐρομένου δὲ τοῦ βασιλέως εἴ τινες τῶν αὐτῷ συνόντων
having-asked and the emperor whether some of-the him being-with
φίλων καὶ ἕτεροι εἶεν τὰ αὐτοῦ φρονοῦντες, τάχα
friends and others might-be the(-things) of-him thinking perhaps
ἂν πολλῶν κατεῖπεν, εἰ μή τις ἀνὴρ Ἰωάννης
— many he-would-have-denounced if not some man John
ὁ κατὰ τὸν Ἑξαβούλιον οὐ δέον ἔφη εἶναι, ἀλλὰ
the(-one) at — Hexaboulios not needful he-said to-be but
καὶ ἄτοπον, ἐχθροῖς κατὰ φίλων πιστεύειν, ὦ βασιλεῦ.
also absurd enemies against friends to-trust O emperor

καὶ οὗτος μὲν τούτῳ διέλυσε τῷ λόγῳ τὰς μείζονας
and this(-man) indeed by-this dissolved the word the greater
τῶν ταλαιπώρων δὴ πολιτῶν καὶ φίλων αὐτοῦ τιμωρίας·
of-the wretched indeed citizens and friends his punishments
οὕτω δὲ καὶ ὁ ἀποστάτης κατέλυσε τὸν βίον, ταῖς κατὰ
thus and also the rebel ended the life by-the by
μικρὸν ποιναῖς τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπορρήξας ὥσπερ τι ζῷον
little penalties the soul having-broken-off like some animal
δυσθανατοῦν, μηνὸς μεσοῦντος Ὀκτωβρίου, κατὰ μὲν
dying-hard of-month mid October at indeed
τὰς ἀρχὰς γεγονέναι δοκῶν μεγαλεπήβολος καὶ τολμηρὸς
the beginnings to-have-been seeming of-great-enterprise and daring
καὶ τοῦ προτεθέντος ἐξεργαστικός, προβαίνων δὲ
and of-the(-thing) proposed accomplishing advancing but
φανεὶς πολὺ καταδεέστερος αὐτοῦ καὶ τῆς τῶν ἐκτὸς
having-appeared much inferior to-himself and to-the of-the outside
προσδοκίας. πότερον δὲ καὶ τοῦτ' ἐγένετο παρὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ
expectation whether and also this happened from the his
ἐκείνου διαφορὰν καὶ μεταβολὴν ἐπὶ τὸ χεῖρον ἢ παρὰ τὴν
of-that(-man) difference and change to the worse or from the
τῶν πολεμούντων πρὸς αὐτὸν παραλλαγήν, οὐ πολὺν
of-the(-men) warring against him alteration not much
ἔχει λόγον. ἕως μὲν γὰρ ἦν αὐτὸς ἑαυτοῦ πόλεμος ἔνδοθεν,
has account while indeed for was he of-himself (a)-war from-within
ὃν φθάσας ἀνερρίπισεν αὐθάδει γνώμῃ καὶ τολμηρᾷ,
which having-anticipated he-fanned-up with-self-willed purpose and daring
καὶ ἀμφίβολος πρὸς τὴν τῶν πραγμάτων κραταίωσιν ἦν,
and doubtful toward the of-the affairs strengthening was
ἔρρωντο τῶν λόγων αἱ πράξεις οὐκ ἔλαττον, καὶ κατὰ
were-strong than-the words the deeds not less and according-to
νοῦν ἐχώρει τὰ πράγματα· ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν Ἀσίαν μικροῦ
mind went the affairs when but — Asia almost

πᾶσαν ὑπέταξε, διεπεραιώθη δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὴν Εὐρώπην
all he-subjected crossed and also to — Europe
σὺν οὐκ ἀγεννεῖ τῷ φρονήματι μηδένα ἐμποδὼν εὑρηκώς,
with not ignoble the spirit no-one in-the-way having-found
ἀνὴρ ἅτε δὴ οὐκ ἐκ λόγων καὶ παιδείας ὁρμώμενος,
(a)-man inasmuch-as indeed not from learning and education starting
βαναύσου δέ τινος καὶ ἀγυρτικῆς ὁμιλίας, ἐξῆπτο ἤδη καὶ
of-vulgar but some and vagrant company he-was-kindled already and
ἐπεφύσητο καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἐξέπλει φρενῶν, πρὸς ἔρωτάς
was-puffed-up and from-the his-own sailed-out wits to loves
τινας καὶ γάμους οὐ σωφρονικοὺς διὰ τῆς καθ' ἡμέραν
some and marriages not chaste through the by day
μέθης καὶ βακχείας ἀγόμενος καὶ αὐξανόμενος. ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ
drunkenness and revelry being-led and increasing but about
μὲν τῆς τῶν πραγμάτων τούτων συντελείας δίδομεν καὶ
indeed the of-the affairs these completion we-allow also
ἄλλοις ἄλλως ἐννοεῖν, ὅτε μὴ τοῖς ἡμετέροις βούλωνται
to-others otherwise to-think when not to-the ours they-wish
ἐξακολουθεῖν. πλὴν περὶ μὲν τούτων αὐτάρκως. καὶ
to-follow but about indeed these(-things) sufficiently and
οἱ ἐκ Βύζης δὲ ἐφ' ἑτέρας ταχέως ἐγένοντο γνώμης,
the(-men) from Byze too to other quickly came opinion
ὑφορώμενοι τὸν προεστῶτα κίνδυνον· ἅμα γὰρ τῷ
suspecting the impending danger at-once for with-the
πυθέσθαι τὰ κατὰ τὸν Θωμᾶν ἀτυχήματα, ἐφ' ὁμοίαις
to-learn the(-things) concerning — Thomas misfortunes for like
πράξεσι τὰ ὅμοια πεποιηκότες τὸν Ἀναστάσιον ἤγαγον
deeds the like(-things) having-done — Anastasios they-brought
δεδεμένον χεῖρας καὶ πόδας. ταὐτὰ δὲ καὶ οὗτος [δέ
bound (as-to)-hands and feet the-same(-things) and also he and
τε] πεπονθέναι βιαζόμενος τῷ πατρὶ τὸν βίον μετήλλαξεν.
both to-suffer being-forced with-the father the life changed

20 Οὐ μὴν ἐπαύοντο τούτων οὕτω καθυπαντησάντων κατὰ
not indeed ceased these(-things) thus having-turned-out in
Θρᾴκην πόλεις παράλιοι, τό τε Πάνιον καὶ Ἡράκλεια,
Thrace cities coastal the both Panion and Herakleia
τὰ τοῦ τυράννου φρονῆσαι· τοσοῦτον ἄρα μῖσος
the(-cause) of-the usurper to-favor so-much then hatred
κατὰ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ πᾶσιν ἐνέφυ καὶ ἐξ ἄλλων μὲν ἴσως,
against — Michael in-all grew and from others indeed perhaps
πολλῷ δὲ πλέον ἐκ τοῦ μὴ βούλεσθαι τὸν κατὰ τῶν
by-much but more from the not to-wish the(-war) against the
θείων εἰκόνων ἀναρριπισθέντα καταλῦσαι. πλὴν ταύταις
divine images fanned-up to-end but to-these
πλησιάσας, τοῦ μὲν σεισμοῦ ἐπιγινομένου καὶ τοῦ τείχους
having-approached the indeed earthquake coming-on and the wall
τοῦ Πανίου καταβληθέντος ἡ εἰς αὐτὸ πάροδος ἀκμητὶ
— of-Panion having-been-thrown-down the into it entry without-toil
γέγονε τῷ Μιχαήλ· ἡ δ' Ἡράκλεια καὶ ὡς ἀντέχουσα,
happened — for-Michael — and Herakleia also even-so holding-out
ὅμως τῶν ἐκ τῆς θαλάττης μερῶν κατακυριευθεῖσα,
nevertheless from-the from the sea parts having-been-mastered
ἁλίσκεται καὶ αὖτη ἀναιμωτί, καὶ τοῦ φρονεῖν τὰ
is-taken also it bloodlessly and from-the to-favor the(-cause)
τοῦ τυράννου ἀπαλλάττεται, πίστεις δεδωκυῖα τῷ βασιλεῖ.
of-the usurper is-released pledges having-given to-the emperor
Καὶ τὰ μὲν κατὰ Θωμᾶν συμβεβηκότα τοιοῦτον ἔσχε
and the(-things) indeed concerning Thomas having-befallen such had
τέλος ἐκ τῆς εἰρημένης ἀρχῆς, καὶ οὕτω τροπαιοφόρος ὁ
end from the said beginning and thus trophy-bearing the
βασιλεὺς ἐκ τῶν κατ' ἤπειρον ἔρχεται πόλεων, οὐδὲν
emperor from the on (the)-mainland comes cities nothing
ἕτερον ἀπὸ στασιωτῶν ἐννοήσας ἢ ἐπὶ τῆς ἁμιλλητηρίου
other from (the)-rebels having-devised than at the racing

θέας ἐπὶ τούτῳ γεγενημένης ὀπίσω τὼ χεῖρε δεδεμένους
spectacle for this having-been-held behind the(-two) hands bound
ποιῆσαι διελθεῖν καὶ ὑπερορίους τοὺς αἰτιωτάτους γενέσθαι.
to-make to-go-through and exiles the most-guilty to-become
Αὐτίκα γοῦν καὶ πρὸς Χοιρέαν, ἔτι γε μὴν καὶ
at-once at-any-rate also to Choireas further at-least indeed and
πρὸς Γαζαρηνὸν τὸν Κολωνιάτην, ἀνθρώπους μὲν ὄντας
to Gazarenos the Koloniates men indeed being
καὶ πιστὰ φυλάττοντας τῷ Θωμᾷ, κατέχοντας δὲ τὸν
and faith keeping — to-Thomas holding and the(-one)
μὲν τὴν Καβάλαν τοῦ Χοιρέα, τοῦ Γαζαρηνοῦ δὲ τὴν
indeed — Kabala — Choireas — Gazarenos and —
Σανιάναν, καὶ πολλὰς ἐκεῖθεν ποιούντων καταδρομάς,
Saniana and many from-there making raids
καὶ λῃστρικῶς ζῶντάς τε καὶ τυραννικῶς, χρυσοβούλλιον
and piratically living both and tyrannically (a)-chrysobull
ἐκπέμπει ὁ Μιχαήλ, τιμὰς μεγάλας τὰς τῶν μαγίστρων
sends-out — Michael honors great the(-ones) of-the magistroi
καθυπισχνούμενος καὶ ἀμνηστίαν κακῶν, καὶ δῆλον τὸν
promising and amnesty of-evils and clear the
τοῦ Θωμᾶ θάνατον τούτοις ποιῶν. ἀλλ' ἐκείνους μὲν
— of-Thomas death to-them making but those indeed
οὐκ ἔπεισεν ὁ ἀποσταλείς, ἀλαζόνας ὄντας τε καὶ
not persuaded the(-man) sent boastful being both and
ἀτίθασσον κεκτημένους ψυχήν· ἑτέρους δέ τινας τῶν
untamed possessing soul others and some of-the
ὑποβεβηκότων κλέψας καὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως πίστιν
subordinates having-stolen and to the of-the emperor faith
μεταθεὶς ἔπεισεν ἐξελθόντας πρὸς τὰς συνήθεις λῃστείας
having-moved persuaded having-gone-out for the customary robberies
ἀποκλεῖσαι τούτοις τὰς τῶν τειχῶν πύλας καὶ λόγου
to-shut on-them the of-the walls gates and of-word

καταλελοιπέναι χωρίς. ὅπερ καὶ γέγονεν. ἐκεῖνοι μὲν
to-have-left without which also happened those indeed
οὖν ὡς εὗρον κεκλεισμένας τὰς πύλας, τὴν ἐπὶ Συρίαν
then when they-found shut the gates the to Syria
ἔσπευσαν διανύσαι ὁδόν, τῷ φόβῳ βαλλόμενοι. ζῶντες δὲ
hastened to-complete road by-the fear being-struck alive but
ὅμως ἁλόντες τῷ ξύλῳ ἐξήρτηνται καὶ τοῦ βίου
nevertheless having-been-caught on-the wood are-hung and of-the life
ἔξωθεν γίνονται. ἄξιον δὲ μηδὲ τοῦτο παραδραμεῖν, ὅπως
outside become worthy and not-even this to-pass-over how
ὁ Γαζαρηνὸς προδέδοτο καὶ τῶν τειχῶν ἀπεκέκλειστο.
— *Gazarenos was-betrayed and from-the walls was-shut-out*
ἄνδρα τινὰ ἄγροικον ὁ ἀποσταλεὶς δεξιωσάμενος φωνῆς
(a)-man certain rustic the(-one) sent having-befriended voice
ἐπιμελούμενον καὶ ταῖς ᾠδαῖς τερπόμενον ἐμμελῶς ταῖς
cultivating and in-the songs delighting tunefully in-the
ἀνειμέναις ταύταις καὶ ἀγροικικαῖς, μέλος τι ἔπλεξεν πρὸς
loose these and rustic (a)-song some wove for
τὸν ἐκείνου οἰκονόμον ἔχον τὴν ἀναφοράν. ἦν δὲ αὐταῖς
the of-that(-man) steward having the reference it-was and in-the(-very)
λέξεσιν οὕτω. "ἄκουσον, κῦρι οἰκονόμε, τί λέγει Γυβέριν.
words thus listen lord steward what says Gyberis
ἐάν μοι δῷς τὴν Σανιάναν, μητροπολίτην σε ποιήσω
if to-me you-give — Saniana metropolitan you I-will-make
καὶ Νεοκαισάρειάν σοι δώσω." τοῦτο πολλάκις ᾀδόμενον
and Neocaesarea to-you I-will-give this often being-sung
ἐν αἰσθήσει τοῦτον γενέσθαι τὸν οἰκονόμον πεποίηκεν.
into perception this to-come the steward made
ὅθεν ὡς ἔγνω τὸν νοῦν τε καὶ τὴν τῶν πραγμάτων
whence when he-knew the meaning both and the of-the affairs
ἀναφοράν, ἐξελθόντος ποτὲ τοῦ Γαζαρηνοῦ ἔκλεισεν κατ'
reference having-gone-out once — Gazarenos he-shut against

αὐτοῦ τὰς πύλας καὶ τοῦτον ἔξωθεν ἐγκατέλιπεν. καὶ
him the gates and him outside left and
ταῦτα μὲν περὶ τῶν ὑπερνεφῶν τούτων πολιχνίων, καὶ
these(-things) indeed about the above-the-clouds these little-towns and
οὕτω τούτων ἡ πάλιν ὑπὸ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ κατάληψις.
thus of-these the again by — Michael capture
Οὐκ ἔμελλε δὲ ἄχρι τούτων ἡ φορὰ στήσεσθαι τῶν
not was-about and as-far-as these the course to-stop of-the
κακῶν, ἀλλὰ τῶν δύο ἠπείρων, Ἀσίας φαμὲν καὶ Εὐρώπης,
evils but of-the two mainlands Asia we-mean and Europe
ἐν θυμῷ κυρίου οἷόν τινος κεφαλῆς καὶ οὐρᾶς, εἰ καὶ
in (the)-wrath of-(the)-lord as-it-were some head and tail if even
μὴ συνίεσαν, παιδευθέντων φόνοις, ἐμπρησμοῖς, σεισμοῖς,
not they-understood having-been-chastised by-murders by-burnings by-earthquakes
ἁρπαγαῖς, ἐμφυλίοις καταδρομαῖς, πόλεων ἀνελπίστοις
by-plunderings by-civil raids of-cities by-unhoped-for
μεταβολαῖς, σημείοις ἐξ οὐρανοῦ, σημείοις ἐξ ἀέρος,
changes by-signs from heaven by-signs from air
τέλος καὶ ταῖς ταλαιπώροις νήσοις οἷόν τινα μέσην,
finally also on-the wretched islands as-it-were some middle
ἵν' ὁλόσωμος εἴη ἡ πληγή, ἐπέδραμε τὰ δεινά.
that whole-bodied might-be the blow ran-on the terrible(-things)
ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦν παιδεῦσαι τοὺς τὴν θεάνθρωπον
but not was(-it-possible) to-teach the(-men) the god-man
ἐξηρνημένους μορφὴν προσκυνεῖν.
having-refused form to-worship
ὅθεν ἄρτι δὴ τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Θωμᾶν ἄρξαντος νεωτερισμοῦ, 21
whence just indeed the of — Thomas having-begun revolt
ἐπεὶ ταῦτα ἠκούετο πανταχοῦ, οἱ τὸν ἑσπέριον
when these(-things) were-heard everywhere the(-ones) the western
κόλπον τῆς Ἰβηρίας τῷ Ὠκεανῷ γειτονοῦντες Ἀγαρηνοὶ
gulf — of-Iberia to-the Ocean neighboring Hagarenes

κατοικοῦντες (Ἱσπάνους τούτους ὁ πολὺς ῥεύσας χρόνος
dwelling Spaniards them the much having-flowed time
μετωνόμασεν), εἰς πλῆθος σωμάτων καὶ εὐθηνίαν τοῦ
renamed to (a)-multitude of-bodies and abundance of-the
γένους ἐξηλακότες, τὴν κατ' αὐτοὺς ἑσπέριον πλευρὰν λυπρὰν
race having-advanced the by them western side wretched
οὖσαν καὶ μετρίως εὐδαίμονα ὁρῶντες, καὶ λειπομένην μὲν
being and moderately prosperous seeing and falling-short indeed
τῆς πρὸς γῆν ἀρετῆς καὶ ἀφθονίας κατὰ πολύ, ἐνδέουσαν
of-the for land excellence and plenty by much lacking
δὲ καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἑῷον τῆς Ἰβηρίας καὶ νότιον
and also toward this itself (the)-eastern — of-Iberia and southern(-part)
(οὐ γὰρ ἅπασα πρὸς πᾶσαν γῆς ἀρετὴν ἐπιτηδεία καὶ
not for all for every of-land excellence suitable and
εὔφορος, ἀλλὰ τὸ τῆς ἑσπερίου πλευρᾶς, ὡς εἴρηται,
fertile but the(-part) of-the western side as has-been-said
αὐχμηρόν τε καὶ λυπρότερον τῆς λοιπῆς) καὶ διὰ
parched both and more-wretched than-the rest and because-of
τοῦτο οὔτε τρέφειν δυναμένης αὐτοὺς καὶ διοικεῖν ἄνδρας
this neither to-feed being-able them and to-manage men
σώμασιν εὐμεγέθεσι χρωμένους καὶ ἀγαθῶν εὐφορίᾳ ἀλλ'
bodies large using and of-goods by-plenty but
οὐκ ἐνδείᾳ αὐξανομένους, οὗτοι γοῦν προσελθόντες
not by-want increasing these at-any-rate having-approached
Ἀπόχαψ τῷ ἑαυτῶν ἀμερμουμνῇ ἀποικίαν τινὰ καὶ
Apochaps the their-own commander-of-the-faithful (a)-colony some and
γῆς μετανάστασιν ἤτουν αὐτοῖς γενέσθαι, πλήθει τε
of-land migration asked for-them to-happen by-multitude both
στενοχωρουμένοις καὶ ἀναγκαίων σπάνει πιεζομένοις. ὁ δὲ
being-straitened and of-necessities by-scarcity being-pressed he and
πλοῖά τινα ἐπισκευάσας μακρά, καὶ δύναμιν οὐκ ὀλίγην ἐξ
ships some having-fitted-out long and (a)-force not small from

αὐτῶν τούτων ἐμβιβάσας, ἐπὶ λῃστείαν τέως, λανθάνουσαν
these themselves having-embarked to piracy for-a-time hidden
ἔχων τὴν ἔννοιαν, τῶν πρὸς τῇ ἕῳ κειμένων νήσων
having the intention of-the toward the east lying islands
καὶ ἡμετέρων τυγχανόντων ἐτράπετο, ὁμοῦ μὲν τὸ
and ours being he-turned at-once indeed the(-thing)
αὐτοῖς ἐπιθυμούμενον ἐκπληρῶν καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων
by-them desired fulfilling and from the others'
τούτους προσκορεννύς, ὁμοῦ δὲ κατασκεψόμενος εἴ τις
them glutting at-once and going-to-spy-out whether any
ἔστιν οὕτως εὔφορος τῶν νήσων καὶ λιπαρὰ εἰς μετοικίαν
is so fertile of-the islands and rich for (a)-settlement
αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν πολλαῖς τῶν νήσων πλησιάζων τὸν
their since at-any-rate many of-the islands approaching the(-one)
ἀντιπαραταττόμενον μικρῷ ἢ μεγάλῳ πλοίῳ οὐχ εὕρισκεν
arrayed-against(-him) with-small or great ship not he-found
(ἐχηροῦντο γὰρ πᾶσαι τῆς αὐτῶν βοηθείας, ἄρτι κατὰ
were-bereft for all of-the their help just against
τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως ἐκβοηθουσῶν καὶ πλευσῶν μετὰ
— Constantinople sallying-to-help and sailing with
τοῦ Θωμᾷ), μεγάλας δὲ ὠφελείας ἐκ πασῶν, αἷς καὶ
— Thomas great and benefits from all at-which also
προσώρμιζεν, ἐκαρποῦτό τε καὶ ἐλάμβανεν, ἦκε καὶ
he-put-in he-enjoyed both and took he-came also
πρὸς τοὺς Κρηταιεῖς, καὶ τούτους καταδραμὼν καὶ λείαν
to the Cretans and these having-overrun and booty
ποιήσας καὶ ἀνδραποδισάμενος, ὡς ἐνῆν, καὶ πάντοθεν
having-made and having-enslaved as was-possible and from-everywhere
καταμαθὼν τὴν τῆς γῆς ἀρετήν, καὶ πῶς εἴη πρὸς πᾶσαν
having-learned the of-the land excellence and how it-was for every
χάριν καὶ ἀγαθῶν εὔφορος ἀφθονίαν, "τοῦτο" ἔφη "γῆ
grace and of-goods fertile abundance this he-said (is)-(the)-land

οὐκ ἄλλη ἢ ἡ ῥέουσα μέλι καὶ γάλα." καὶ τότε
not other than the(-one) flowing (with)-honey and milk and then
μὲν παντοίων γενόμενος ἀγαθῶν ἀπῄει τὴν οἴκαδε,
indeed of-all-kinds having-become(-master) goods went-off the(-road) homeward
καὶ πάσῃ χειρὶ καὶ δυνάμει ναυτικὸν ἐξήρτυεν· ὡς δ' ὁ
and with-all hand and force (a)-fleet fitted-out when and the
χειμὼν ἐτετελείωτο καὶ τὸ ἔαρ ὑπέλαμπεν, τεσσαράκοντα
winter was-ended and the spring was-glimmering forty
πληρώσας ναῦς ἀνδρῶν μαχίμων καὶ ἐπιτήδειον ἄνεμον
having-manned ships of-men warlike and (a)-suitable wind
ἐπιτηρήσας τὴν ἐπὶ Κρήτην ἐστέλλετο εὐθυπορῶν, τὰς
having-watched-for the(-route) to Crete set-out going-straight the
ἄλλας τῶν νήσων θέμενος εἰς οὐδέν.
other of-the islands having-set at nothing
ἄρτι γοῦν ἐπλησίαζε, καὶ τῷ ἀκρωτηρίῳ τῷ Χάρακι
just at-any-rate he-approached and at-the cape — Charax
καλουμένῳ κατήγετό τε καὶ προσωρμίζετο. ὡς δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε
called put-in both and anchored when and nothing neither
κατὰ τὴν καταγωγὴν οὔτε κατὰ τὴν ἀπόβασιν ἐφάνη τούτοις
at the landing nor at the disembarking appeared to-them
τῶν ἀπευκτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς λείας χωροῦσι καὶ πρὸς
of-the abominable(-things) but also to booties they-go and to
ἁρπαγὰς εὐχερῶς τὰ τῆς ἐπιβολῆς τε καὶ ἐπιχειρήσεως
plunderings easily the(-things) of-the enterprise both and undertaking
ἐπεραίνετο, τοὺς μὲν ἐπιτηδείους εἰς τὰς συνήθεις
were-accomplished the(-ones) indeed suitable for the customary
προνομὰς ἀπέστελλε δουλαγωγήσοντας τοὺς ἐχθρούς,
foragings he-sent-off going-to-enslave the enemies
αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς λοιποὺς ἔχων, ἄρτι δὴ τοῦ πνεύματος
he but the rest having just indeed the wind
ἐπακμάζοντος κἀκείνων ἅμα πορρωτέρω σταδίων δέκα ἢ
being-at-its-height and-those at-once farther than-stades ten or

δεκαπέντε γενομένων, πῦρ ἐμβαλὼν ταῖς ναυσὶν ἁπάσας
fifteen having-become fire having-thrown-into the ships all
κατέφλεξε, φεισάμενος τὸ παράπαν οὐδεμιᾶς. τέως μὲν οὖν
burned-down having-spared — at-all none for-a-time indeed then
τῷ παραδόξῳ τοῦ πράγματος καταπλαγέντες ἅπας δὴ
by-the strangeness of-the affair having-been-astounded all indeed
ὁ στρατὸς (καὶ γὰρ ἐπαλινόστουν εὐθέως) ἐκδειματούμενοι
the army and for they-came-back at-once being-frightened
τὴν αἰτίαν ἐπυνθάνοντο καὶ εἰς λόγους ἦλθον νεωτερικούς.
the cause they-asked and into words came rebellious
ἐπεὶ δὲ κατήκουσαν ἃ πάλαι ὠδίνοντο, ὡς αὐτοί
when and they-heard what long-ago they-were-in-travail(-with) as yourselves
τε τούτων ὑμεῖς ἀποικίαν ζητοῦντες καὶ γῆν ἀγαθήν, ἐμοί
both of-these you colony seeking and land good to-me
τε ταύτης οὐδετέρα κρείττων νενόμισται, εἰς ταύτην ἦλθον
both than-this not-one better has-been-thought to this I-came
ὁδὸν ὑμῖν τε ἀγαθὰ προξενῶν καὶ ἐμὲ τῆς ἐξ ὑμῶν
road for-you both goods procuring and me from-the from you
ἀπαλλάττων ὀχλήσεως. ὡς δὲ καὶ γυναικῶν ἐμέμνηντο
freeing annoyance when and also of-wives they-made-mention
καὶ παίδων οὐκ ὠλιγώρουν, "καὶ γυναῖκες" ἔφη "ὧδε
and children not they-made-light-of and wives he-said here
ὑμέτεραι αἱ αἰχμαλωτιζόμεναι, καὶ παῖδες οὐ μετὰ
yours the(-women) being-captured and children not after
μικρὸν ἐξ αὐτῶν." ὅθεν τοῖς τοιούτοις κατασιγασθέντες
little from them whence by-the such silenced
λόγοις, καὶ ἀποδοχῆς ἄξια κρίναντες τὰ λεγόμενα,
words and of-acceptance worthy having-judged the(-things) said
τάφρον μὲν ἤγειραν πρῶτον βαθεῖαν, καὶ χάρακα ἐν ταύτῃ
(a)-ditch indeed they-raised first deep and (a)-palisade in it
καταπήξαντες, ἔνθα καὶ νῦν λαβὼν τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ὁ
having-fixed where also now having-taken the name the

τόπος σώζει τὴν προσηγορίαν, Χάνδαξ ὀνομαζόμενος, ἐκεῖσε
place preserves the appellation Chandax being-named there
διενυκτέρευον, φυλακάς τε τὰς προσηκούσας ποιούμενοι
they-passed-the-nights guards both the fitting making
καὶ τὰς ὠφελείας αὐτῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀποθησαυρίζοντες.
and the benefits their there storing-up

22–28 · CRETE, SICILY, AND THE DEATH OF MICHAEL

Photeinos reports the Cretan landing; Damianos is sent and falls at the first onset, and Photeinos escapes to Dia. A monk shows the Arabs the site of Chandax, from which they overrun the island and its neighbors, and Cyril of Gortyn dies a martyr. Michael, widowed, has the senate press him into marrying Euphrosyne, a nun and the daughter of the blinded Constantine, against the laws. Krateros routs the Cretans by day, but while his men feast unguarded a night attack destroys his army, and he is caught and hanged on Kos; Ooryphas, paying forty gold pieces a man, clears the other islands. In Sicily the tourmarch Euphemios abducts a nun, rebels, is proclaimed emperor by the African Arabs, and is killed at Syracuse, and the Arabs take Sicily, Calabria, and Lombardy. Michael dies of a kidney disease after nine years and eight months, still an iconoclast.

22 χρόνος δὲ ἐρρύη πολὺς οὐδαμῶς, καὶ πάντα τὸν βασιλέα
time and flowed much in-no-way and all the emperor
ἡ φήμη ἐδίδαξε. καὶ δὴ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον Φωτεινόν,
the rumor taught and indeed the protospatharios Photeinos
πρόπαππον μὲν Ζωῆς τῆς ἐν μακαρίᾳ τῇ λήξει
great-grandfather indeed of-Zoe the(-one) in blessed the end
θεοστέπτου Αὐγούστης τυγχάνοντα, στρατηγοῦντα δὲ
god-crowned Augusta being commanding and
τηνικαῦτα τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν, τὰ τῆς Κρήτης ἅπαντα
then of-the Anatolikoi the(-affairs) — of-Crete all
διοικεῖν προεβάλετο· ὃς ἐκεῖσε παραγενόμενος, καὶ τῶν
to-administer he-put-forward who there having-arrived and of-some

μὲν γενόμενος θεατὴς τῶν δὲ καὶ ἀκροατής, τρανότερον
indeed having-become spectator of-others and also hearer more-clearly
ἀνεδίδασκε τὸν Μιχαὴλ τὰ πραττόμενα, καὶ δύναμίν τινα
informed — Michael the(-things) being-done and (a)-force some
ἠξίου ἐκπέμπειν τὴν ἐκεῖθεν ἀποσοβήσουσαν τοὺς ἐχθρούς.
he-asked to-send-out the(-one) thence going-to-scare-off the enemies
Δαμιανὸν γοῦν κόμητα ὄντα τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἱπποστασίου
Damianos at-any-rate count being of-the imperial stable
καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον μετὰ πολλῆς δυνάμεως καὶ παρασκευῆς
and protospatharios with much force and equipment
ὁ βασιλεύων ἀπέστειλεν εἰς βοήθειαν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
the reigning(-emperor) sent to (the)-help of-the general
Φωτεινοῦ· οἳ καὶ ἑνωθέντες τὸν μὲν κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν
Photeinos who also having-been-united the indeed against the Hagarenes
πόλεμον ἔστησαν, εἰς οὐδὲν δὲ χρήσιμον τὸ τέλος ἐνέσκηψεν.
war set-up to nothing and useful the end fell
αὐτός τε γὰρ ὁ προρρηθεὶς Δαμιανὸς κατὰ τὴν εἰσβολὴν τῆς
he both for the aforesaid Damianos at the onset of-the
μάχης εὐθὺς τραυματίας πεσὼν καὶ σφαγῇ παραδοθεὶς
battle at-once wounded having-fallen and to-slaughter having-been-handed-over
τοὺς λοιποὺς οὐ νικᾶν καὶ μένειν ἀλλὰ φεύγειν ἐποίησεν
the rest not to-conquer and to-stand but to-flee made
ἡττημένους· καθ' ἣν τροπὴν καὶ ὁ Φωτεινὸς ἐν μονηρίῳ
defeated in which rout also — Photeinos in (a)-single-boat
μόλις διασώζεται πρὸς τὴν Δίαν, καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν
scarcely is-saved to — Dia and to-the emperor of-the(-things)
πραχθέντων αὐτάγγελος γίνεται. ἀλλ' οὗτος μὲν ἐπεὶ
done (his)-own-messenger becomes but this(-man) indeed since
διὰ τιμῆς ἤγετο παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀεί, τὴν τῆς
through honor he-was-held by the emperor always the —
Σικελίας στρατηγίδα αὖθις τῆς Κρήτης ἀλλάσσεται·
of-Sicily generalship in-turn for-the(-one) of-Crete exchanges

23 τοῖς δ' Ἱσπανίοις ἔτι πως ἐν ταραχῇ καὶ μερίμνῃ
to-the and Spaniards still somehow in turmoil and care
διάγουσιν, ἀνήρ τις ἐκ τῶν ὀρέων τῆς νήσου ἐπικαταβὰς
living (a)-man certain from the mountains of-the island having-come-down
μοναστὴς ἄλλον ἔφησεν εἶναι τόπον αὐτοῖς ἐπιτηδειότερον
(a)-monk another he-said to-be place for-them more-suitable
πρός τε πολίσματος κτίσιν καὶ τῆς λοιπῆς διαρκείας καὶ
for both of-(a)-town founding and of-the remaining sufficiency and
ἐπικρατείας αὐτῶν. καὶ ἅμα λαβὼν τὸν Χάνδακα τούτοις
mastery their and at-once having-taken — Chandax to-them
ἐπέδειξεν, ἔνθα καὶ νῦν ἔκτισται ἡ πόλις αὐτῶν· καὶ
showed where also now has-been-founded the city their and
ἡγεμὼν αὐτῆς ὁ Ἀπόχαψ τότε ἐγεγόνει αὐτῆς. ἐκ ταύτης
leader of-it — Apochaps then had-become of-it from this
οὖν οἷόν τινος ἐξ ἀκροπόλεως ὁρμώμενοι πᾶσάν τε
then as-it-were some from citadel setting-out all both
ταύτην τὴν νῆσον κατέτρεχον καί τινας τῶν παρακειμένων
this the island they-overran and some of-the lying-near
οὐκ ἔλαττον, ὡς καὶ ἐν αὐταῖς ἐγκατοικῆσαι, αὐτοὺς τοὺς
not less so-that also in them to-settle themselves the
οἰκήτορας καὶ αὐτόχθονας δουλωσάμενοι. καὶ πόλεις δὲ
inhabitants and natives having-enslaved and cities too
Κρήτης ἐννέα πρὸς ταῖς εἴκοσιν εὔζωνοί τε καὶ πεζοὶ
of-Crete nine in-addition-to the twenty light-armed both and foot(-soldiers)
ᾐχμαλώτευσαν, μιᾶς ἔκτοτε μόνης παραμεινάσης ἀναλώτου
took-captive one from-then only having-remained uncaptured
καὶ ἀπαθοῦς, καὶ λόγῳ μὲν ὑποταγείσης, τὰ ἑαυτῶν δὲ
and unharmed and in-word indeed having-been-subjected the of-their-own but
ἔθιμα καὶ τὸν χριστιανισμὸν φυλαττούσης ἀλώβητον. τότε
customs and the Christianity keeping unmaimed then
καὶ Κύριλλος ὁ Γορτύνης πρόεδρος, ἐπεὶ μὴ τούτοις εἰς
also Cyril the(-one) of-Gortyn president since not with-these to

ἄρνησιν ἐχώρει Χριστοῦ, ὡς ἱερεῖον ἄμωμον ἐσφαγίαστο·
denial went of-Christ as (a)-victim unblemished was-slaughtered
οὗ καὶ τὸ αἷμα βοᾷ μένον ὡς τοῦ Ἄβελ ἢ καὶ
of-whom also the blood cries remaining as (that)-of-the Abel or also
Ζαχαρίου πρὸς τὸν θεὸν ἀναλλοίωτον· καὶ μύρον μὲν
of-Zechariah to — god unchanged and myrrh indeed
ἐκεῖθεν ἔστιν ἀρύσασθαι τοῖς πιστοῖς σπόγγοις τισὶν
from-there it-is(-possible) to-draw for-the faithful with-sponges some
ἐναποματτόμενον, τὴν δὲ βαφὴν τοῦ αἵματος ἀλλοιῶσαι
wiped-up the and dye of-the blood to-change
οὐ πρόσεστιν. προσέτι μὴν αὐτόθι σοροὶ καὶ τάφοι
not is-possible besides indeed there coffins and tombs
ἀνεγήγερται ἄλλων τε πολλῶν τῶν ὑπὲρ Χριστοῦ
have-been-raised of-others both many of-the(-ones) for Christ
τότε μαρτυρησάντων καὶ τῶν δέκα περιωνύμων μαρτύρων.
then having-been-martyred and of-the ten renowned martyrs
τοιούτῳ γοῦν τρόπῳ καὶ κατὰ τοῦτον ἀνηρπάσθησαν
in-such at-any-rate manner and at this were-snatched-away
τὸν καιρὸν ἐκ μέσου τῶν Χριστιανῶν οἱ Κρηταιεῖς.
the time from (the)-midst of-the Christians the Cretans
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὀψὲ καὶ μόλις τοὺς περικυκλοῦντας τοῦτον 24
since and late and scarcely the(-men) encircling him
ἐχθροὺς καὶ περικτυποῦντας ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἀπεσείσατο,
enemies and dinning-around — Michael shook-off
δέον πρὸς θεὸν τραπέσθαι καὶ τοῦτον ἐξευμενίσασθαι,
it-being-needful to god to-turn and him to-propitiate
ἵλεω διὰ τῶν ἔργων ποιῶν, ὁ δὲ τοὐναντίον ἢ ὡς οἱ
gracious through the deeds making(-him) he but the-contrary than as the
πολιτικοὶ θεσμοὶ βούλονται, ὡς οὐ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀφ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ δὲ
civil laws wish as not by him by himself but
σωθείς, ἔπραττέ τε καὶ ἐπεπολίτευτο. τῆς γαμετῆς γοῦν
saved he-acted both and governed the wife at-any-rate

τελευτησάσης αὐτοῦ, καὶ δόξαν θέλοντος κατασχεῖν τῶν
having-died his and (the)-opinion wishing to-hold of-the
πολλῶν ὡς πένθος ἄληστον ἔχει αὐτῆς, τὴν σύγκλητον
many that mourning unforgettable he-has (for)-her the senate
ἐποίει διά τινων μηνυμάτων κρυφίων καὶ μυστικῶν
he-made through some messages secret and mystic
αἱρήσασθαι τοῦτον πεῖσαι γυναικὶ αὖθις ζευχθῆναι,
to-choose this to-persuade(-him) to-(a)-woman again to-be-yoked
καὶ οὐ παρακαλέσαι μόνον πρὸς τοῦτο ἀλλὰ καὶ βιάσασθαι,
and not to-entreat only for this but also to-force(-him)
καὶ εἰς ἐπανάστασιν, εἰ μὴ τοῦτο γένηται, χωρῆσαι αὐτούς·
and to revolt if not this happens to-go they
"οὐ γάρ ἐστιν οἷον γυναικὸς ἄνευ" φάσκειν "βασιλέα τε
not for it-is(-right) possible without (a)-wife saying (an)-emperor both
ζῆν καὶ τὰς ἡμετέρας στερεῖσθαι γαμετὰς δεσποίνης καὶ
to-live and the our to-be-deprived wives of-(a)-mistress and
βασιλίδος." ἐπέπειστο γοῦν ὀψὲ διὰ τῶν ἐπιπλάστων
empress he-was-persuaded at-any-rate late through the fabricated
λόγων, οὓς τῷ χρόνῳ λαθεῖν οὐκ ἦν· καὶ πρῶτον
words which by-the time to-escape-notice not was(-possible) and first
μὲν χειρόγραφα ὑπὲρ τῶν μήτε ὄντων μήτε ἐσομένων
indeed handwritten(-pledges) for the(-things) neither being nor going-to-be
πᾶσαν ἀπήτει χεῖρα, ὡς αὐτήν τε τὴν ἐσομένην
all he-demanded (the)-hand that her both the going-to-be
αὐτῷ γαμετὴν καὶ τὰ ἐκ ταύτης ἔκγονα ὑπερασπίζειν
to-him wife and the from her offspring to-shield
καὶ ὑπερμαχεῖν μετὰ τὸν αὐτοῦ μὴ παύσαιντο θάνατον,
and to-champion after the his not they-would-cease death
ἀλλὰ κἀκείνην τε μετ' ἐκείνους βασιλέας ἔχοιεν καὶ
but and-her both after those(-men) emperors they-would-have and
δέσποιναν, ὡς εἰκός. οὕτως οὐ τοῦ κατ' ἐκεῖνον ἀλλὰ καὶ
mistress as (is)-likely so not of-the in that(-man) but also

τοῦ μετ᾽ αὐτὸν ᾤετο κατακρατήσειν αἰῶνος, δέον
of-the after him he-thought to-master age it-being-needful
πάντα ἐκ θεοῦ ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἐκείνων ἀναρτῆσαι χειρί, δι᾽
all from god but not from-those(-men's) to-hang hand because-of
ὃν βασιλεῖς βασιλεύουσι καὶ τύραννοι κρατοῦσι γῆς.
whom kings reign and tyrants rule (the)-earth
πλὴν ὑπέκυπτεν ὁ πάσης κυριεύων γῆς προστάγματι
but bowed the(-one) of-all ruling earth to-(the)-order
τῷ συγκλητικῷ, καὶ συνάψεσθαι ἄκων ἠνείχετο ὁ
the senatorial and to-be-joined unwilling endured the(-one)
σώφρονα βίον ἀνῃρημένος. ἤγετο οὖν πρὸς γάμον οὐ
(a)-chaste life having-chosen he-was-led then to marriage not
τήνδε ἢ τήνδε, ἀλλὰ γυναῖκά τινα πάλαι τὸν κόσμον καὶ
this(-one) or that but (a)-woman certain long-ago the world and
τὰ αὐτοῦ ἀποστέρξασαν, Χριστῷ δὲ νυμφευθεῖσαν καὶ
the(-things) of-it having-renounced to-Christ but having-been-betrothed and
ἀσκήσεσιν ἐκ παιδὸς κατὰ τὴν ἐν Πριγκίπῳ νήσῳ μονὴν
to-ascetic-exercises from childhood at the on Prinkipos island monastery
σχολάσασαν καὶ προσανέχουσαν τῷ θεῷ· Εὐφροσύνη
having-devoted-herself and adhering — to-god Euphrosyne
ταύτης ἡ κλῆσις, καὶ πατρὸς ἐσεμνύνετο Κωνσταντίνου
of-her the name and of-(a)-father she-prided-herself Constantine
εἶναι, δικαίᾳ κρίσει τὴν τύφλωσιν ὑπομεμενηκότος παρὰ
to-be by-just judgment the blinding having-undergone from
μητρός. ταῦτα μὲν ἐξεπέραινεν, καὶ ἵλεω δι᾽ αὐτῶν
(his)-mother these(-things) indeed he-carried-out and gracious through them
οὐ μόνον οὐκ ἐποιεῖτο ἀλλὰ καὶ παρώργισε τὸν θεόν.
not only not he-made(-god) but also provoked — god
Καὶ κατὰ τῶν τὴν Κρήτην δὲ καταλαβόντων καὶ
and against the(-men) — Crete too having-seized and
λυμαινομένων αὖθις ἐπαποστέλλει στρατόν· Κρατερὸς
ravaging again he-sends (an)-army Krateros

ὄνομα τῷ στρατηγέτῃ, ὃς τηνικαῦτα τὴν τῶν
(the)-name to-the general who then the of-the
Κιβυρραιωτῶν διέπων στρατηγίδα, ἑβδομήκοντα ναῦς
Kibyrrhaiotai administering generalship seventy ships
διήρεις τῶν ὑφ' ἑαυτῷ καὶ πάντων τῶν θεματικῶν
two-banked of-the(-ones) under himself and of-all the thematic(-ones)
λαβών, βρέμων ἅμα καὶ πολλῷ φρονήματι παρενέβαλεν.
having-taken roaring at-once and with-much spirit he-encamped
καὶ ἐπείπερ οὐδ' ἐκείνοις ἐδόκει ὑποστέλλεσθαι ἀλλ' ἐς
and since not-even to-those it-seemed(-good) to-hold-back but to
μάχην χωρεῖν τὴν τὰς ἑαυτῶν δυνάμεις καὶ γενναιότητας
battle to-go the(-one) the their-own forces and nobilities
ἐπιδειξομένην (καὶ γάρ εἰσι τῶν ἄλλων Ἀγαρηνῶν οὗτοι
going-to-show and for are of-the other Hagarenes these
δὴ εὐφυεῖς), συνέβαλλον δὲ τολμηρῶς ἑκάτεροι κατὰ τὸν
indeed well-endowed they-engaged and boldly both-sides into the
ἀγῶνα χωρήσαντες ἄρτι δὴ τοῦ ἡλίου τὰς ἀκτῖνας ὑπὲρ
contest having-gone just indeed the sun the rays over
γῆς ἐφαπλοῦντος, οὐδέτεροι μὲν ἄχρι μεσούσης ἡμέρας
(the)-earth spreading neither(-side) indeed until mid day
ἐνέκλινον, ἀλλὰ γενναίως μαχόμενοι τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἐδείκνυον
gave-way but nobly fighting the their-own showed
ἐμπειρίαν καὶ δύναμιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ πονήσαντες οἱ Κρηταιεῖς
experience and force since but having-toiled the Cretans
ἤδη τοῦ ἡλίου κλίναντος ἐνέδωκαν πρὸς φυγήν, τότε
already the sun having-declined gave-way to flight then
δὴ πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτειναν, πλείους δὲ τὰ ὅπλα
indeed many indeed of-them they-killed more and the arms
ῥίψαντας αἰχμαλώτους ἔλαβον, ἐκ ποδὸς ἑπόμενοι.
having-thrown(-down) (as)-captives they-took from (the)-foot following
τάχα δ' ἂν σπουδάσαντες ἔλαβον τὴν πόλιν
perhaps and — having-hastened they-would-have-taken the city

αὐθημερόν, εἰ μὴ νὺξ ἤδη φαινομένη ἀνέστρεψεν ὡς τὰ
the-same-day if not night already appearing had-turned when the
πράγματα καὶ ἀνάπαυλαν τούτοις ζητοῦσι φόνον ἀλλ᾽ οὐ
affairs and respite for-them seeking slaughter but not
σωτηρίαν ἀπέτεκεν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ ὡς ἤδη νενικηκότες,
safety bore the(-ones) indeed for as already having-conquered
καὶ πάντας αὔριον ἐν βραχεῖ βραχεῖς ὄντας ἐλπίσαντες
and all tomorrow in short(-time) few being hoping
συλλαβεῖν, πρὸς πότους καὶ τρυφάς, ὡς ἐν οἰκείᾳ
to-seize to drinking-bouts and luxuries as in own(-land)
ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἐν ἀλλοτρίᾳ διάγοντες, ἐξεβάκχευον, μήτε τινὸς
but not in another's living reveled neither any
φυλακῆς μήτ᾽ ἄλλης σωτηρίας τῆς κατὰ τὸν πολεμικὸν
guard nor other safety the(-one) according-to the military
νόμον γινομένης φροντίσαντες, ὕπνου δὲ μόνου καὶ τῆς
law happening having-cared-for of-sleep but only and of-the(-thing)
τὰ πάντα ῥᾳδίως ἀνατρεπούσης καὶ ἀπολλυούσης ἀμελείας
the all easily overturning and destroying of-negligence
τε καὶ ῥᾳστώνης. ὅθεν περὶ μέσας νύκτας, ἐπεὶ διὰ
both and slackness whence about mid night when through
τῶν ἑαυτῶν φυλάκων ὡς ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ἀγρυπνοῦντες οἱ
the their-own guards as in perplexity keeping-awake the
Κρηταιεῖς ὕπνῳ καὶ οἴνῳ καθηρῆσθαι τοὺς τῆς
Cretans by-sleep and wine to-have-been-overcome the(-men) of-the
Ῥωμαϊκῆς παρεμβολῆς ἀνέμαθον, αὐθωρὸν ἐξελθόντες
Roman camp learned instantly having-gone-out
μαχαίρᾳ πάντας ἀπώλεσαν, ὡς μηδ᾽ ἄγγελον, τὸ
with-(the)-sword all they-destroyed so-that not-even (a)-messenger the(-thing)
δὴ λεγόμενον, ὑποστρέψαι καὶ ἐκεῖθεν διασωθῆναι, ἢ
indeed said to-return and from-there to-be-saved than
μόνον τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐμπορικοῦ ἐπιβάντα πλοίου καὶ τὴν
only the general (a)-merchant having-boarded ship and the

σωτηρίαν ζητοῦντα. πλὴν καὶ τοῦτον ἐπεὶ πανταχοῦ ὁ
safety seeking but also him since everywhere the
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἡγεμὼν ἀναζητῶν μὲν οὐχ εὕρισκε φεύγειν
of-the Hagarenes leader searching indeed not found to-flee
δὲ διήκουεν, ὁλκάσι τοῦτον μεθ' ἡγεμόνων ἀναζητῆσαι
but he-heard with-merchant-ships him with commanders to-search-for
ἐκέλευσεν· οἳ καὶ καταλαβόντες τοῦτον ἐν Κῷ ἐπὶ ξύλου
he-ordered who also having-caught him at Kos on (a)-wood
κρεμάσαντες διαφθαρῆναι ἐποίησαν. καὶ τὰ μὲν κατὰ
having-hanged to-be-destroyed made(-him) and the(-things) indeed at
τὴν μάχην ἐκείνην καὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα συμβεβηκότα τοιαῦτα,
the battle that and the contest having-happened such
πολλὴν ἐνεγκόντα Ῥωμαίοις συμφοράν, οὐ τὴν ἐξ
much having-brought to-Romans disaster not the(-one) from
ἥττης μόνον ἐκείνης, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἔκτοτε κρατήσασαν
(the)-defeat only that but also the(-one) from-then having-prevailed
καὶ διαμείνασαν πολυκέφαλον ὕδραν, ἐκεῖσε καὶ ἀλλαχοῦ
and having-remained many-headed hydra there and elsewhere
μὲν ἀποτεμνομένην ἀεί, ἀναθάλλουσαν δὲ ἀλλαχοῦ.
indeed being-cut-off always sprouting-again but elsewhere

26 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνήρ τις στρατιωτικῆς πείρας,
after and these(-things) (a)-man certain of-military experience
πρὸς δὲ καὶ φρονήσεως καὶ ἀγχινοίας οὐκ ἄμοιρος,
besides and also of-prudence and of-shrewdness not without-share
οὗ τὸ ἐπώνυμον Ὠορύφας, στρατόν τινα ἀθροίσας
of-whom the surname Ooryphas (an)-army some having-gathered
τὸν τεσσαρακοντάριον τότε καλούμενον βασιλικῆς ἐκ
the forty-man(-corps) then called imperial by
προστάξεως, ἐκ τοῦ διανεμηθῆναι αὐτοῖς ἀνὰ τεσσαράκοντα
order from the to-be-distributed to-them each forty
χρυσίνων, τάς τε ἄλλας νήσους, αἷς ὀλίγιστοι ἐφέροντο,
gold-pieces the both other islands on-which very-few were-borne

κατατρέχων, καὶ τοῖς μὲν λόχους ἐπάγων τοῖς δὲ
overrunning and to-some indeed ambushes bringing to-others and
καὶ φανερῶς πολεμῶν, ἐξωλόθρευσέ τε καὶ ἀπωλείᾳ
also openly warring he-destroyed both and to-destruction
παρέδωκεν· ταύτην δέ, ὡς ἔοικεν, παρέπεμψεν εἰς ἡμᾶς.
handed-over this(-one) but as it-seems he-sent-on to us
ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν περὶ αὐτῆς θεῷ πάντως μελήσει,
but the(-things) indeed about it to-god surely will-be-a-care
μελήσει δὲ καὶ ἡμῖν τοῖς νύκτωρ καὶ μεθ' ἡμέραν τὴν
will-be-a-care and also to-us the(-ones) by-night and by day the
ψυχὴν δαπανῶσιν ὑπὲρ αὐτῆς.
soul spending for it
Κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν Εὐφήμιός τις κατὰ 27
at and the same time Euphemios (a)-certain in
τὴν Σικελίαν τουρμάρχης τελῶν παρθένου τινὸς ἥρα
— Sicily tourmarches being (a)-virgin certain loved
ἀσκητηρίοις ἐνδιαιτωμένης καὶ τὸ μοναχικὸν ἔκπαλαι
in-convents dwelling and the monastic long-ago
ἀναλαβούσης σχῆμα, καὶ διὰ πολλοῦ ἐποιεῖτο τὸν αὐτοῦ
having-taken-on habit and for long he-made the his
ἔρωτα ἐκπληρῶσαι, τὴν παρθένον λαβών πως εἰς
love to-fulfill the virgin having-taken somehow as
γαμετήν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν παράδειγμα οὐ πόρρωθεν εἶχεν οὐ
wife since at-any-rate (an)-example not far-off he-had not
κωλῦον οὐδ' ἀποτρέπον, τοῦτον δὴ τὸν Μιχαὴλ (καὶ
hindering nor turning-away this(-one) indeed — Michael and
γάρ, ὡς εἴρηται, καὶ αὐτὸς τοιοῦτόν τι ἐτόλμησεν),
for as has-been-said also he such something dared
ἀφαρπάζει τὴν παρθένον τοῦ ἀσκητηρίου καὶ πρὸς
he-snatches the virgin from-the convent and to
ἑαυτὸν ἄκουσαν ὑπηγάγετο. ταύτης οὖν οἱ ἀδελφοὶ τῷ
himself unwilling brought her then the brothers —

Μιχαὴλ προσίασι, τὰ τοῦ δράματος διηγούμενοι. ὁ
to-Michael approach the(-things) of-the drama recounting he
δὲ κελεύει τῷ στρατηγῷ, εἰ οὕτως φωράσοι ἔχουσαν τὴν
and he-orders the general if thus he-should-detect being the
ἀλήθειαν, τὴν ῥῖνα τοῦ τετολμηκότος Εὐφημίου ἀποτεμεῖν
truth the nose of-the having-dared Euphemios to-cut-off
κατὰ τὴν τοῦ νόμου ἀκρίβειαν. καὶ ὁ Εὐφήμιος
according-to the of-the law exactness and — Euphemios
μαθὼν δὴ ταῦτα καὶ τὴν εἰς αὐτὸν τοῦ νόμου
having-learned indeed these(-things) and the toward him of-the law
τήρησιν καὶ τὴν βασιλικὴν ἀπειλήν, συνωμότας λαβὼν
observance and the imperial threat conspirators having-taken
τούτους τε τοὺς ὑπὸ τὴν αὐτοῦ χεῖρα καί τινας τῶν
these both the(-men) under the his hand and some of-the
συντουρμαρχῶν, τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τούτῳ παραγινόμενον
fellow-tourmarchai the general for this arriving
παρελαύνει ἐκεῖθεν, καὶ πρὸς τὸν Ἀφρικῆς ἀποδιδράσκει
drives-away from-there and to the of-Africa runs-off
ἀμεραμουνῆ, πᾶσαν τὴν Σικελίαν ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνῳ ποιῆσαι
commander-of-the-faithful all — Sicily under him to-make
καθυποσχόμενος καὶ διδόναι φόρους πολλούς, εἰ μόνον
having-promised and to-give tributes many if only
ἀναγορεύσει τοῦτον βασιλέα καί τινα παράσχοι βοήθειαν.
he-would-proclaim him emperor and some should-provide help
ἀναγορεύει γοῦν τοῦτον βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων, καὶ χεῖρα
he-proclaims at-any-rate him emperor of-Romans and (a)-band
δίδωσι πολλήν, καὶ τῆς Σικελίας ἐγκρατὴς γίνεται,
gives much and — of-Sicily master becomes
παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ τούτου λαβὼν αὐτήν, οὐ τούτου μόνον
from him this(-one) having-received it not of-this(-one) only
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἑτέρων συνδρόμων γενομένων ἐπὶ τῇ τοιούτων
but also of-others concurring happening for the of-such

ἀπωλείᾳ τόπων. δηλοῖ δὲ ταῦτα σαφέστατα καὶ
ruin of-places shows and these(-things) most-clearly and
πλατικώτερον ἡ τότε γραφεῖσα Θεογνώστῳ τῷ
more-broadly the(-letter) then written to-Theognostos the(-one)
περὶ ὀρθογραφίας γεγραφότι καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθοῦσα
about orthography having-written and into hands having-come
ἡμῶν, ἣν ὁ βουλόμενος μεταχειριζόμενος τὰ καθ'
our which the(-one) wishing handling the(-things) in
ἕκαστον ἀναδιδαχθήσεται. πλὴν ὁ μὲν Εὐφήμιος μετ'
particular will-be-taught but — indeed Euphemios after
οὐ πολὺ ἆθλον τῆς ἀποστασίας καὶ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἀνομίας
not long (the)-prize of-the revolt and of-the his-own lawlessness
λαμβάνει τὴν τῆς ἑαυτοῦ στέρησιν κεφαλῆς. σχῆμα γὰρ
takes the of-the his-own deprivation head (the)-guise for
ἔχων βασιλικὸν ἀπῄει καὶ κατὰ τὴν Συράκουσαν, καὶ
having imperial he-went-off and at — Syracuse and
δὴ ἄποθεν γενόμενος τῆς ἑαυτοῦ τάξεως καὶ τῶν
indeed apart having-become from-the his-own rank and of-the
δορυφόρων ὡς ἀπὸ τόξου βολῆς ἐγένετο κατὰ τὴν
bodyguards as-it-were by of-bow shot he-was at the
πόλιν, ὁμιλῶν αὐτοῖς τυραννικῶς τε καὶ βασιλικῶς. τοῦτον
city conversing with-them tyrannically both and imperially him
ὡς προσερχόμενον ἔγνωσαν δύο τινὲς ἀδελφοί, γενόμενοι
when approaching they-recognized two certain brothers having-become
σύμπνοοι καὶ ταὐτὸν φρονήσαντες προσέρχονται τούτῳ
of-one-breath and the-same thinking approach him
εἰρηνικῶς, τὴν προσήκουσαν βασιλεῖ τιμὴν ἀπονέμοντες.
peacefully the fitting for-(an)-emperor honor rendering
ὡς δ' Εὐφήμιος τήν τε παρ' αὐτῶν ἀναγόρευσιν ἀσπαστῶς
when and Euphemios the both from them acclamation gladly
ἐδέξατο καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κατήκουεν αὐτῶν, προσεκαλεῖτο
received and of-the others heard of-them he-called

τούτους φιλοφρόνως ἀποδώσων τὸν ἀσπασμόν· καὶ δὴ
them kindly going-to-return the greeting and indeed
κλίνας τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὸ στόμα προσερείσας τῷ
having-bent the head and the mouth having-pressed to-the
στόματι ταῖς θριξὶ μὲν κατέχεται ἰσχυρῶς πρὸς ἑτέρου
mouth by-the hairs indeed is-held strongly by one
τῶν ἀδελφῶν, ὑπὸ δὲ τοῦ ἑτέρου ἀφαιρεῖται τὴν κεφαλήν.
of-the brothers by and the other is-deprived-of the head
καὶ ὁ μὲν Εὐφήμιος τοιούτῳ τέλει τοῦ βίου ἐχρήσατο.
and — indeed Euphemios with-such end of-the life met

28 Οἱ δ' Ἀγαρηνοὶ οὐ τῆς Σικελίας μόνον ἔκτοτε ἀλλὰ καὶ
the and Hagarenes not — of-Sicily only from-then but also
Καλαβρίας καὶ Λαγγοβαρδίας ἐγένοντο ἐγκρατεῖς, πᾶσαν
of-Calabria and of-Lombardy became masters all
κατατρέχοντες καὶ διαπορθοῦντες καὶ ἐνσκηνοῦντες ἄχρι
overrunning and plundering and encamping until
τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ ἐν μακαρίᾳ τῇ λήξει Βασιλείου τοῦ
the reign of-the(-one) in blessed the end Basil the
βασιλέως. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἡ ἐκείνου δηλώσει ἱστορία·
emperor but these(-things) indeed the of-that(-man) will-show history
ὁ δὲ Μιχαὴλ μῆνας ὀκτὼ καὶ ἔτη τῆς βασιλείας γενόμενος
— and Michael months eight and years of-the empire having-become
ἐγκρατὴς ἐννέα τὸν βίον κατέλυσε, τῷ δυσουρίας νοσήματι
master nine the life ended by-the of-dysuria disease
ἁλούς, ἐκ τῶν νεφρῶν λαβούσης τὴν ἀρχήν, μήτε
having-been-seized from the kidneys having-taken the beginning neither
τὴν πρὸς θεὸν καταλύσας δυσμένειαν, οἷς οὐκ ἤθελε
the toward god having-ended hostility by-which not he-wished
τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μορφὴν δι' ἡμᾶς ἀναλαβόμενον σάρκα
the his-own form because-of us having-taken-on flesh
προσκυνεῖν, μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ τοὺς προσκυνοῦντας καθαιρῶν
to-worship rather but also the(-ones) worshiping deposing

Μεθόδιόν τε καὶ Εὐθύμιον, περὶ ὧν εἰρήκαμεν, καὶ τὸν
Methodios both and Euthymios about whom we-have-spoken and the
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐπαυξήσας ἀκατάλλακτον πόλεμον, τά
of-the Hagarenes having-increased implacable war the(-things)
τε κατὰ Θωμᾶν καὶ τῶν Κρηταίων, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τῶν
both concerning Thomas and of-the Cretans but indeed also of-the
εἰρημένων Ἀφρίκων διὰ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ κακίαν ἀποστείλαντος
said Africans because-of the his-own wickedness having-sent(-them)
τοῦ θεοῦ. ἀλλὰ καὶ πᾶσα ἡ Δαλματία τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
— god but also all — Dalmatia from-the of-the Romans
ἀπέστη τότε βασιλείας, καὶ γεγόνασιν ἅπαντες ἰδιόρυθμοί
revolted then empire and became all of-own-way
τε καὶ αὐτοκέφαλοι μέχρι τῆς τοῦ Βασιλείου τοῦ ἀοιδίμου
both and self-governing until the — of-Basil the celebrated
βασιλείας· τότε γὰρ πάλιν οὗτοι Ῥωμαίοις καθυπετάγησαν.
reign then for again these to-(the)-Romans were-subjected
πεπλήρωτο δὲ καὶ ὁ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ χρησμός, λέγων οὕτω,
had-been-fulfilled and also the about him oracle saying thus

ἀρχὴ κακῶν γε προσπεσεῖται τῇ χθονί,
(a)-beginning of-evils indeed will-fall-upon the earth
ὅταν κατάρξῃ τῆς Βαβυλῶνος δράκων
when should-rule — of-Babylon (a)-dragon
δύσγλωσσος ἄρδην καὶ φιλόχρυσος λίαν.
ill-tongued utterly and gold-loving very

ἐτέθη δὲ ὁ τούτου νεκρὸς ἐν τῷ ναῷ τῶν ἁγίων
was-laid and the his corpse in the church of-the holy
ἀποστόλων, ἐν τῷ ἡρώῳ Ἰουστινιανοῦ, ἐν λάρνακι
apostles in the heroon of-Justinian in (a)-sarcophagus
πρασίνῳ Θετταλικῇ.
green Thessalian

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΑΣ ΘΕΟΦΙΛΟΥ ΥΙΟΥ ΜΙΧΑΗΛ. ΛΟΓΟΣ Γ.

1–6 · THEOPHILOS AND THEODORA

Theophilos succeeds his father and, posing as a lover of justice, gathers the holders of imperial honors in the Magnaura, coaxes out the men who won his father the throne by murdering Leo, and has the eparch put them to death; he sends his stepmother Euphrosyne back to her convent. He clings to the iconoclast heresy, harries the pious, and is always beaten in war. Each week he rides to the Blachernai church to hear the wronged and ask the market prices, and he burns a merchant ship he learns is the empress's. Theodora comes from Paphlagonia, the daughter of Marinos and Theoktiste, venerators of the images. Theoktiste teaches her granddaughters to kiss the icons until the childish Pulcheria prattles of her dolls, and Theophilos curbs their visits. The jester Denderis finds Theodora with images; she tells the raging emperor he saw reflections in her mirror, then has Denderis chastised into silence.

1 Τὰ μὲν δὴ πραχθέντα Μιχαὴλ τῷ Τραυλῷ
the(-things) indeed indeed done by-Michael the Stammerer
βασιλεύσαντι ἐννέα ἔτεσιν πρὸς μησὶν ὀκτὼ ἐν τῷ
having-reigned nine years with months eight in the
πρὸ τούτου βιβλίῳ δεδήλωται· ὁ δὲ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ἤδη
before this book has-been-shown the and son his already
Θεόφιλος ἀνδρὸς ἔχων ἡλικίαν τὴν πατρικὴν ἀρχὴν
Theophilos of-man having (the)-age the paternal rule
καὶ βασιλείαν κατὰ τὸν Ὀκτώβριον μῆνα τῆς ὀγδόης
and empire in the October month of-the eighth
ἰνδικτιῶνος διεδέξατο, λόγῳ μὲν οὖν τῆς δικαιοσύνης
indiction succeeded-to in-word indeed then of-the justice
ὥσπερ ἔμπυρος ἐραστὴς καλεῖσθαι βουλόμενος καὶ νόμων
like (a)-fiery lover to-be-called wishing and of-laws
εἶναι φύλαξ πολιτικῶν ἀκριβής· τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ ἔξωθεν
to-be guardian civil exact in-the but truth out

ἑαυτὸν τῶν ἐπιβουλευόντων διατηρῶν, ὡς ἂν μή τις
himself of-the plotters keeping so-that — not anyone
κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ τι νεανιεύσηται, ταῦτα ὑπεκρίνετο. τὸν
against him anything might-dare-rashly these(-things) he-feigned the
ἐπηρτημένον οὖν κίνδυνον ὑφορῶν, τοὺς τῷ πατρὶ μὲν
hanging-over then danger suspecting the(-men) to-the father indeed
αὐτοῦ ἐκ συνωμοσίας τὴν βασιλείαν παρεσχηκότας, κατὰ
his from conspiracy the empire having-provided against
τοῦ Λέοντος δὲ ἐπαναστάντας, ἅπαντας ἔγνω ὀλέθρῳ
— Leo and having-risen all he-decided to-destruction
παραδοῦναί τε καὶ σφαγῇ. ὅθεν δόγμα ἐξέθετο ἅπαντας
to-hand-over both and to-slaughter whence (a)-decree he-set-out all
τοὺς τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀπολαύοντας φιλοτιμιῶν, προσέτι
the(-men) of-the imperial enjoying honors besides
δὲ καὶ βασιλικῆς τιμῆς μετασχόντας τῆς οἱασοῦν, κατὰ
and also of-imperial dignity having-partaken the whatever-kind at
τὴν Μαγναύραν συναθροισθῆναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγεγόνει
— Magnaura to-be-gathered since and this had-happened
καὶ τοῦ προστάγματος οὐδεὶς ἐτόλμα καταφρονεῖν, τὴν
and the order no-one dared to-despise the
τῆς ψυχῆς τέως ὡς ἐν σκότῳ κρύψας θηριωδίαν,
of-the soul for-a-time as in darkness having-hidden savagery
ἠρέμα πως καὶ πραείᾳ φωνῇ οὕτω πως ἔλεξεν ἐν
quietly somehow and with-gentle voice thus somehow he-spoke in
βραχεῖ, ὡς ἐβούλετο μὲν καὶ δι᾽ ἐπιθυμίας εἶχεν, ὁ
short that wished indeed and through desire had the
λαὸς καὶ κλῆρος ἐμός, τοὺς ἀντιλαβομένους καὶ τῆς
people and clergy my the(-men) having-supported and the
βασιλείας ὑπερμαχήσαντας νεανικῶς ὁ ἐμὸς ἄγαν πατὴρ
empire having-championed vigorously the my very father
πολλῶν μὲν τιμῶν πολλῶν δὲ τούτους ἀγαθῶν ἑτέρων
with-many indeed honors with-many and them goods other

καταξιῶσαί τε καὶ γερῶν· ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεὶ ἔφθασεν ἐξ
to-deem-worthy both and privileges but since he-was-beforehand from
ἀνθρώπων γενέσθαι θᾶττον ἢ εἶχε βουλῆς καὶ πρὸ τοῦ
men to-become quicker than he-had of-counsel and before the
καιροῦ τῆς αὐτοῦ γνώμης ἔξω γέγονε τοῦ καιροῦ, ἵνα
time of-the his purpose out he-went of-the time that
μὴ ἀχάριστος δόξῃ πολλοῖς, ἐμὲ οὐ τῆς βασιλείας
not ungrateful he-might-seem to-many me not of-the empire
μόνον διάδοχον ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ τοιούτου καλοῦ τούτοις
only successor but also of-the such fine(-deed) to-them
ὑπόχρεων ἐγκατέλιπεν. διὸ ἕκαστος ἐκ μέσου ἀγόμενος
indebted he-left wherefore each from (the)-midst being-led
δεικνύτω ἡμῖν ἑαυτόν. τούτοις ὑποκλαπέντες τοῖς λόγοις
let-him-show to-us himself by-these having-been-beguiled the words
καὶ συλαγωγηθέντες τὸν νοῦν ἑαυτὸν ἕκαστος ἀπεγύμνου
and having-been-plundered the mind himself each laid-bare
καὶ πᾶσιν ὡρᾶτο κατάδηλος. εὐθὺς οὖν νόμῳ τῷ πολιτικῷ
and to-all was-seen manifest at-once then with-law the civil
χρῆσθαι τὸν ὕπαρχον ἐγκελεύεται, καὶ "ἄγε δή" φησίν, "ὦ
to-use the eparch he-orders and come indeed he-says O
οὗτος, τούτους κατ᾽ ἀξίαν τῶν βεβιωμένων ἀμείβου,
this(-man) these according-to (the)-worth of-the lived(-deeds) repay
οὐ μόνον οἷς οὐκ ἔδεισαν τὸ θεῖον, αἵματι ἀνθρωπίνῳ
not only because not they-feared the divine with-blood human
μιάναντες δεξιάν, ἀλλὰ καὶ χριστὸν κυρίου βασιλέα
having-defiled (the)-right(-hand) but also (the)-anointed of-(the)-lord (an)-emperor
ἀνελόντες οἱ ἄθλιοι." τούτοις διέλυσε τὸν σύλλογον ἐκεῖνον
having-killed the wretches with-these he-dissolved the assembly that
τὸν πρῶτον δή πως καὶ θαυμαστόν· ὃν εἴπερ τις
the first indeed somehow and wonderful which if-ever anyone
κατὰ νόμους ἔχοιτο ἐπαινεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ οἶδ᾽ εἰ στήσεται
by laws would-hold to-praise but not I-know whether it-will-stand

ἐγγὺς ἡμερωτάτης τε καὶ πραείας ψυχῆς. καὶ τούτους μὲν
near (a)-most-gentle both and mild soul and these indeed
οὕτως πως ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐποίησεν, προσεπιθεὶς τούτοις
thus somehow out-of men he-made having-added to-these
τὸ ἐπαινετὸν ἐκεῖνό γε καὶ καλόν, τὸ ἀπελάσαι
the praiseworthy that at-least and fine the(-thing) to-drive-away
καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἐν ᾗ τὸ πρότερον ἀπεκάρη μονὴν
and to the in which — before she-was-tonsured monastery
Εὐφροσύνην τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μητρυιὰν ποιῆσαι παλινοστῆσαι,
Euphrosyne the his-own stepmother to-make to-return
ἣν ἡ ἱστορία δευτέραν γαμετὴν παρέδωκε τῷ Μιχαήλ,
whom the history (as)-second wife handed-down — to-Michael
ἐκείνων γε τῶν ἡμῖν εἰρημένων ἐκεῖσε χειρογράφων καὶ
those at-least the by-us mentioned there handwritten(-pledges) and
ὅρκων πολλῶν, οὐχ ὁσίως πραχθέντων γε καὶ γενομένων,
oaths many not piously done at-least and having-happened
ὠφελησάντων οὐδέν. τί δήποτε; ὅτι μὴ ἐπὶ κυρίου
having-profited nothing why ever because not on (the)-lord
πεποιθὼς ἠγάγετο γαμετήν (ἦ γὰρ ἂν ἔννομόν τινα, ἀλλ'
trusting he-took (a)-wife truly for — lawful some but
οὐ τὴν ἤδη συνταξαμένην ἠγάγετο τῷ Χριστῷ),
not the(-one) already having-pledged-herself he-would-have-taken — to-Christ
ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ θρασύτητι καὶ τοῖς ὅρκοις ἐκείνοις τοῖς
on but the his-own rashness and the oaths those the
εὐμεγέθεσί τε καὶ θεοῦ πάντας πόρρωθεν ἀποπέμψασι.
very-great both and from-god all far-off having-sent-away
Καὶ τὰ πρῶτα μὲν τούτου τοιαῦτα· τὰ δ' 2
and the(-things) first indeed of-him such the(-things) and
ἑξῆς ἀντεποιεῖτο δικαιοσύνης καὶ ἦν φοβερός τε πᾶσι
next he-laid-claim-to justice and he-was fearsome both to-all
τοῖς πονηροῖς καὶ θαυμαστὸς ἀγαθοῖς, τοῖς μὲν ὅτι
the wicked and admirable to-(the)-good to-the(-ones) indeed because

μισοπόνηρός τε καὶ δίκαιος, τοῖς δ' ὅτι ἐμβριθής τε
evil-hating both and just to-the(-others) and because weighty both
καὶ αὐστηρός. πλὴν οὐκ ἦν τοῦτον πάντων καθαρεύειν
and severe but not was(-it-possible) him of-all to-be-clean
τῶν πονηρῶν. καὶ διὰ τοῦτο εἶχετο μὲν τῆς ἐπὶ θεὸν
the wicked(-things) and because-of this he-held indeed to-the toward god
καὶ τὴν τούτου πάναγνον μητέρα, ὡς ἔλεγε, πίστεως, εἶχετο
and the his all-pure mother as he-said faith he-held
δὲ καὶ τῆς πατροπαραδότου μιαρᾶς τῶν εἰκονομάχων
but also to-the ancestral defiled of-the iconoclasts
αἱρέσεως, καὶ ταύτῃ γε δὴ τὸν εὐσεβῆ καὶ πανάγιον λαὸν
heresy and by-this at-least indeed the pious and all-holy people
ἐτάραττέ τε καὶ πολυειδέσιν ἐδίδου κακώσεσι, πάντα τὸν
he-troubled both and to-manifold gave to-ill-treatments all the
τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ χρόνον ἠρεμῆσαι μὴ συγχωρήσας, οἷς
of-the reign his time to-be-at-rest not having-allowed for-which
οὐδὲ τὰς ἐν πολέμοις ἀνδραγαθίας καταλλήλως ἐλάμβανεν,
not-even the in wars brave-deeds correspondingly he-received
ἀλλ' ἥττητό τε ἀεὶ καὶ οὐ κατὰ βασιλέα ὑπέστρεφεν.
but he-was-worsted both always and not as-befits (an)-emperor returned
3 Τοιγαροῦν ἐχόμενος τῆς δικαιοσύνης, οὐ μὴν δὲ καὶ τῆς
therefore holding to-the justice not indeed but also to-the
πρὸς τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ μητέρα πίστεώς τε καὶ προθυμίας,
toward the — of-god mother faith both and zeal
ἀπῄει ἔφιππος διὰ τῆς κατὰ τὴν μέσην πλατείας καὶ
he-went on-horseback through the along the Mese avenue and
λεωφόρου πρὸς τὸν ἐν Βλαχέρναις θεῖον ναὸν ἑκάστῃ
highway to the at Blachernai divine church each
ἑβδομάδι, ὑπὸ τῶν δορυφόρων παραπεμπόμενος. ἀπῄει δὲ
week by the bodyguards escorted he-went and
πᾶσι μέν, πρὸ παντὸς δὲ τοῖς ἀδικουμένοις διδοὺς ἑαυτόν,
for-all indeed before all and to-the wronged giving himself

ὡς ἂν ἔχοιεν τὰ αὐτῶν ἐκτραγῳδεῖν ἀδικήματα
so-that — they-might-be-able the their to-recount-tragically wrongs
καὶ μὴ παρὰ τινῶν κακοποιῶν κωλύοιντο ὑφορωμένων
and not by some evildoers be-hindered suspecting
τὴν ἔκτισιν, δεύτερον δὲ ἵνα διὰ τὴν ἀγορὰν διερχόμενος
the repayment secondly and that through the market passing
θεατὴς γίνοιτο τῶν ὠνίων· ὅθεν ἑκάστου τῶν
spectator he-might-become of-the wares whence of-each of-the(-things)
πιπρασκομένων ὅσου πωλεῖται κατὰ τὴν ἀγορὰν ἠρώτα,
being-sold for-how-much it-is-sold in the market he-asked
οὐκ ἐν παρέργῳ τοῦτο ποιῶν ἀλλὰ καὶ λίαν ἐνεργῶς τε
not as (a)-by-work this doing but also very actively both
καὶ ἐπιμόνως, οὐδ' ἑνὶ τοῦτο εἴδει ἀλλὰ παντὶ μὲν
and persistently not-even for-one this kind but for-every indeed
τῷ τρέφειν ἄνθρωπον δυναμένῳ, εἴτ' οὖν ἐσθιόμενον
the(-thing) to-nourish (a)-man being-able whether then eaten
εἴτ' οὖν καὶ πινόμενον, παντὶ δὲ τῷ περιθάλπειν καὶ
or then also drunk for-every and the(-thing) to-warm and
εἰς ἀμφίασιν τελοῦντι, καὶ πᾶσιν ἁπλῶς τοῖς κατὰ
for clothing serving and for-all simply the(-things) in
τὴν ἀγορὰν προκειμένοις τῶν βουλομένων ἐξωνήσει.
the market set-out of-the(-ones) wishing for-purchase
διά τοι τοῦτο οὐδὲ ῥᾳδίως ἂν εἶδέν τις αὐτὸν
because-of indeed this not-even easily — would-have-seen anyone him
ἐξεληλυθότα εἰς πρόκενσον, πολλὴν ἐνδεικνύμενον σπουδὴν
having-gone-out in procession much showing zeal
πρὸς τὰ κοινά τε καὶ ἐπιμέλειαν νῦν μὲν ἐν κριτηρίοις,
for the common(-affairs) both and care now indeed in courts
νῦν δέ, ὡς εἴρηται, κατὰ τὰς προόδους τῆς ἑβδομάδος.
now and as has-been-said at the processions of-the week

4 Ὅθεν ἐπεί τινα τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἑστίασιν τὰ πρὸ τῆς
whence since some of-the eyes feast the(-places) before the
πόλεως ἔχοντα ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖστον εἰς ἑαυτὰ καλοῦσι
city having as for the most(-part) to themselves call
τοὺς βασιλεῖς, τὰ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν τοῦ παλατίου τείχη
the emperors the toward the sea of-the palace walls
τῶν ἀρχαίων θεμελίων οὗτος παρεκβαλών, καὶ πρὸς τὰ
from-the ancient foundations he having-thrust-out and toward the
ἡλιακά, ἔνθα πρότερον κιστέρνης οὔσης συνέβη βασιλικὸν
sun-terraces where formerly (a)-cistern being it-happened (an)-imperial
ἀποπνιγῆναι υἱόν, παραδείσους ἐργασάμενος, ἐκεῖθεν τὸ
to-be-drowned son gardens having-made from-there the
λεῖπον ἀνεπλήρου καὶ ἑαυτὸν ἔτερπε τούτοις καὶ ἐψυχαγώγει,
lacking he-filled and himself delighted with-these and refreshed
ὡς τὸ εἰκός. καί ποτε τούτου ἐκεῖσε ἐνδιατρίβοντος, εἴτε
as the likely and once he there spending-time or
δὴ καὶ δειπνοῦντος, ὡς λόγος, συνέβη ναῦν τινὰ
indeed also dining as (the)-story(-goes) it-happened (a)-ship some
μυριοφόρον ἐξ οὐρίας πλέουσαν ἀναπεπταμένοις δὴ
of-ten-thousand-measures with (a)-fair-wind sailing spread indeed
τοῖς ἱστίοις τῷ μεγέθει τὸν λιμένα κατασκιάσαι καὶ τὸν
the sails by-the greatness the harbor to-overshadow and the
βασιλέα εἰς θάμβος ἐπαγαγεῖν. ἐπύθετο οὖν αὐτίκα τίνος
emperor into amazement to-bring he-asked then at-once whose
τε ἡ ὁλκὰς εἴη καὶ ὅ τι φέροι τῶν ἐδωδίμων.
both the merchant-ship might-be and what ever it-carried of-the eatables
ὡς δὲ τῆς Αὐγούστης ἤκουσεν καὶ λαθεῖν τοῦτο οὐκ
when and of-the Augusta he-heard and to-escape-notice this not
ἦν, τότε μὲν ἐφησυχάσαι λέγεται καὶ διαπέμψαι
was(-possible) then indeed to-keep-quiet he-is-said and to-let-pass
τὸν καιρὸν μέχρι τῆς ἧς εἰώθει ἡμέρας κατὰ τὰς
the time until the which he-was-wont day to the

Βλαχέρνας ἰέναι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἥ τε ἡμέρα παρῆν καὶ ὁ τοῦ
Blachernai to-go when and the both day was-present and the of-the
πλοίου ὅρμος δῆλος ὑπῆρχε τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀναμαθόντι διά
ship anchorage clear was to-the emperor having-learned through
τινος, τῆς εἰς τὸ πλοῖον φερούσης ἀπήρχετο ὁδοῦ· ἦν δὲ
some the to the ship leading he-set-out road it-was and
κατὰ τὸν Βόσπορον. καὶ ἐπείπερ παραγενόμενος παρὰ τὴν
at the Bosporus and when having-arrived at the
πρύμναν ἔστη τῆς νεὼς ἀκολουθούσης τῆς τάξεως, ἠρώτα
stern he-stood of-the ship following the order he-asked
τὴν σύγκλητον οὐχ ἅπαξ δὴ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ δὶς καὶ
the senate not once indeed only but also twice and
τρίς, ὅτου δή τις ἔχοι χρείαν τῶν ἐδωδίμων, σίτου ἢ
thrice of-what indeed anyone might-have need of-the eatables grain or
οἴνου ἤ τινος ἄλλου τῶν κατ' οἶκον ἀναλισκομένων. ὡς
wine or something other of-the in house spent when
δὲ πολλάκις ἐρωτηθέντες μόλις ἅπαξ ἀπεκρίθησαν μηδενὸς
and often asked scarcely once they-answered of-nothing
λείπεσθαι μέχρι τῆς σῆς εὐμοιροῦμεν δεσποτείας τε καὶ
to-be-lacking as-long-as the your we-are-well-off lordship both and
βασιλείας, καὶ προστιθέντων μηδὲν εἰδέναι τῶν ὧν
empire and adding nothing to-know of-the(-things) about-which
ἐρωτώμεθα, "ἀλλ' οὐκ ἴστε" ἔφησεν "ὅτι με ὑπὸ θεοῦ
we-are-asked but not you-know he-said that me by god
βασιλέα γενόμενον ἡ Αὐγούστα καὶ σύμβιος ναύκληρόν
emperor having-become the Augusta and consort (a)-shipowner
με εἰργάσατο; καὶ τίς πώποτε, μετὰ πικρίας λέγων τοῦτο
me has-made and who ever with bitterness saying this
ψυχῆς, βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ἢ τὴν αὐτοῦ γαμετὴν ἔμπορον
of-soul (an)-emperor of-Romans or the his wife (a)-merchant
ἐθεάσατο;" καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἀναπολογήτων μενόντων,
saw and upon this without-reply remaining

ἐκέλευσεν αὐθωρὸν μόνους ἐξιόντας τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τὴν
he-ordered instantly alone going-out the men the
ναῦν ἐκείνην παραδοῦναι πυρὶ αὐταῖς ἀγκύραις καὶ
ship that to-hand-over to-fire with-the-very anchors and
ἱστίοις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσιν ἀγωγίμοις, πολλὰ κατειπὼν
sails and the other all cargo much having-denounced
ὕστερον καὶ παντοίαις ὕβρεσι τὴν δέσποιναν περιβαλών,
later and with-all-kinds-of insults the empress having-surrounded
ὡς καὶ αὐτῆς ἐπαπειλῆσαι ἐξαγαγεῖν τῆς ζωῆς, εἴγε
so-that also her to-threaten to-lead-out of-the life if
δὴ ἔκτοτε τοιοῦτόν τι ποιοῦσα φωραθείη.
indeed from-then such something doing she-were-caught
Ἀλλὰ πατρίδα μὲν ἡ Θεοδώρα (τοῦτο γὰρ ὄνομα τῇ
but (as)-fatherland indeed — Theodora this for (the)-name to-the
Αὐγούστῃ) Παφλαγονίαν ἐσέμνυνεν, καὶ χωρίον Ἔβισσαν,
Augusta Paphlagonia boasted and (the)-place Ebissa
γεννήτορα δὲ Μαρῖνον οὐκ ἄσημόν τινα ἢ ἰδιώτην τὴν
(as)-parent and Marinos not obscure some or private-man in-the
τύχην, δρουγγάριον δὲ ἢ τουρμάρχην κατά τινας, καὶ
fortune droungarios but or tourmarches according-to some and
μητέρα Θεοκτίστην τὴν οὕτω Φλωρίναν κατονομαζομένην,
(as)-mother Theoktiste the(-one) thus Phlorina named
ἀμφοτέρους εὐσεβείᾳ ἐντεθραμμένους καὶ τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν
both in-piety reared and the of-the revered
εἰκόνων προσκύνησιν οὐκ ἐξαρνουμένους μέν, ὡς κατ' ἐκεῖνο
images veneration not denying indeed as at that
πάντες καιροῦ, ἀσπαζομένους δὲ καὶ ἐνστερνιζομένους
all of-time embracing and also cherishing
ὑπερφυῶς. ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν Θεοδώρα διαδήματι βασιλείας
exceedingly but — indeed Theodora with-(the)-diadem of-empire
πάλαι δὴ κατέστεπτο, καὶ ἡ αὐτῆς μήτηρ Θεοκτίστη
long-ago indeed had-been-crowned and the her mother Theoktiste

ζωστή τε καὶ πατρικία τετίμητο. αὕτη δὴ οὖν ἡ
zoste both and patrikia had-been-honored she indeed then —
Θεοκτίστη κατὰ τὸν ἑαυτῆς οἶκον, ἔνθα δὴ ἡ τῶν
Theoktiste in the her-own house where indeed the of-the
Γαστρίων μονὴ τὴν πῆξιν ἔχει τὰ νῦν καὶ ἵδρυσιν (ἣν
Gastria monastery the fixing has the now and foundation she-had
δὲ τοῦτον ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ πατρικίου ἐξωνησαμένη Νικήτα),
and it from that the patrician having-bought Niketas
τὰς τῆς Θεοδώρας θυγατέρας μετακαλουμένη (πέντε δὲ
the — of-Theodora daughters summoning five and
ἦσαν τὸν ἀριθμόν, ἥ τε Θέκλα καὶ Ἄννα Ἀναστασία
they-were in-the number — both Thekla and Anna Anastasia
τε καὶ Πουλχερία καὶ ἡ Μαρία) ἄλλαις τε δωρεαῖς
both and Pulcheria and — Maria with-other both gifts
αἷς ὑπάγεσθαι τὸ θῆλυ πέφυκεν ἐδεξιοῦτο, καὶ ἰδίᾳ
by-which to-be-led the female is-wont she-welcomed(-them) and privately
παραλαμβάνουσα οὐ μαλακίζεσθαι οὐδὲ μένειν θηλείας
taking(-them) not to-be-soft nor to-remain females
ὅπερ ἦσαν ἐξελιπάρει καὶ καθικέτευεν, ἀνδρίζεσθαι δὲ καὶ
which they-were she-begged and besought to-play-the-man and also
τῆς μητρῴας θηλῆς ἄξια διανοεῖσθαι καὶ πρέποντα,
of-the maternal breast worthy(-things) to-think and fitting
τὴν πατρῴαν μὲν αἵρεσιν ἀπορριπιζομένας, καταφιλούσας
the paternal indeed heresy fanning-away kissing
δὲ καὶ κατασπαζομένας τὰς τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων μορφάς.
and also embracing the of-the revered images forms
καὶ ἅμα ταύτας εἰς χεῖρας ἐμβάλλουσα (ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ
and at-once these into hands putting they-were-kept and
αὐτῇ ἔν τινι κιβωτίῳ), τῷ προσώπῳ καὶ τοῖς χείλεσιν
by-her in some little-chest to-the face and to-the lips
ἐπιτιθεμένη ἡγίαζέν τε αὐτὰς καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἐκείνων φίλτρον
applying(-them) she-sanctified both them and to the of-those love

διήγειρεν. τοῦτο οὖν ἐνδελεχῶς ποιοῦσα καὶ ταῖς ἐγγόνοις
roused this then continually doing and in-the grandchildren
τὸ περὶ τὰς εἰκόνας φίλτρον ἀναζωπυροῦσα οὐκ ἔλαθε
the for the images love rekindling not escaped-notice
τὸν Θεόφιλον, πυνθανόμενον "ὅ τι τε αὐταῖς παρὰ τῆς
— Theophilos asking what ever both to-them by the
μάμμης δεδώρηται καὶ ὅ τι χάριτος ἐξείργασται ἄξιον.
grandmother has-been-given and what ever of-kindness has-been-done worthy
αἱ μὲν γὰρ ἄλλαι τούτου τὰς πεύσεις ἀγαθὰ φρονοῦσαι
the indeed for others his the questions good thinking
ὥσπερ τινὰς λαβὰς ἐρρωμένως παρέτρεχον· ἡ δὲ Πουλχερία
like some holds stoutly ran-past — but Pulcheria
ἅτε ἡλικίᾳ καὶ νῷ νηπιάζουσα τάς τε φιλοφροσύνας
inasmuch-as in-age and in-mind being-childish the both kindnesses
ἔλεγε καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ὀπωρῶν, συνηρίθμει δὲ καὶ
told and the multitude of-the fruits counted and also
τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων προσκύνησιν, οὕτω δὴ ἁπαλὰ
the of-the revered images veneration thus indeed tenderly
φρονοῦσα καὶ λέγουσα ὡς νινία πολλὰ εἴη αὐτῇ κατὰ
thinking and saying that dollies many there-were for-her in
τὸ κιβώτιον καὶ ταῦτα τῇ κεφαλῇ τε καὶ τοῖς προσώποις
the little-chest and these to-the head both and to-the faces
ἐπιτίθησι μετὰ τὰ φιλήματα. ταῦτα γοῦν τὸν βασιλέα εἰς
she-applies after the kisses these at-any-rate the emperor to
μανίαν ἦγεν ὑπολαλούμενα. ἀλλὰ πρᾶξαι μέν τι τῶν
madness drove being-whispered but to-do indeed something of-the
δριμυτέρων ἢ πικροτέρων εἰς αὐτὴν ἐκώλυε τοῦτον τό τε
sharper or more-bitter(-things) against her hindered him the both
τῆς γυναικὸς αἰδέσιμον καὶ ἡ εὐλάβεια, καὶ ἡ παρρησία δὲ
of-the woman venerable(-age) and the piety and the frankness too
πρὸς τούτοις οὐκ ἔλαττον (καὶ γὰρ ἦν τοῦτον ἀριδήλως
besides these not less and for she-was him openly

σκώπτουσα καὶ διελέγχουσα ἐπί τε τοῖς καθ᾽ ἡμέραν τῶν
mocking and refuting at both the by day of-the
ὁμολογητῶν διωγμοῖς καὶ τῇ δηλωθείσῃ αἱρέσει, καὶ μόνη
confessors persecutions and the shown heresy and alone
μικροῦ φανερὰν ποιοῦσα τὴν πρὸς αὐτὸν τῶν πάντων
almost manifest making the toward him of-the all
ἀπέχθειαν), ἀπέτεμνεν δὲ μόνον τὴν πρὸς αὐτὴν τῶν
hatred he-cut-off but only the to her of-the
τούτου θυγατέρων ἄφιξιν, καὶ διεκώλυε γίνεσθαι συνεχῆ.
his daughters going and prevented to-happen continual
Τούτοις ἀδελφὰ καὶ τῇ βασιλίδι Θεοδώρᾳ συμβέβηκεν. 6
to-these sisterly(-things) also to-the empress Theodora befell
ὑπῆρχέ τι τῷ βασιλεῖ παρακεκομμένον ἀνδράριον,
there-was some for-the emperor (a)-deformed little-man
τοῦ Ὁμηρικοῦ Θερσίτου διενηνοχὸς κατ᾽ οὐδέν· Δένδερις
from-the Homeric Thersites differing in nothing Denderis
ὄνομα τούτῳ, ἄσημά τε φθεγγόμενος καὶ γέλωτας
(the)-name to-him obscure(-things) both uttering and laughs
κινῶν καὶ θυμηδίας ἕνεκεν τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐνδιαιτώμενος.
stirring and of-amusement for-the-sake in-the palace living
οὗτος γοῦν εἰσπηδήσας ποτὲ κατὰ τὸν τῆς βασιλίσσης
this(-one) at-any-rate having-leaped-in once into the of-the empress
κοιτωνίσκον κατέλαβεν αὐτὴν θείας εἰκόνας περιειλημμένην
little-bedchamber found her divine images having-embraced
καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτῆς ὄμμασιν μετὰ σπουδῆς προσάγουσαν.
and to-the her-own eyes with eagerness bringing
ταύτας ὑπ᾽ ὄψιν ἰδὼν οὗτος ὁ παραπαίων τί τε εἰσὶν
them under sight having-seen this the crazy(-one) what both they-are
ἐπυνθάνετο, καὶ πλησιέστερον διέβαινεν. ἡ δὲ “τὰ
asked and nearer went she and the(-things)
καλά μου” ἔφησεν οὕτως ἀγροικικῶς “νινία· καὶ ἀγαπῶ
fine mine she-said thus rustically dollies and I-love

ταῦτα πολλά.” κατὰ τὴν τράπεζαν τηνικαῦτα εἱστιᾶτο ὁ
them much at the table then was-feasting the
βασιλεύς, καὶ δὴ πρὸς αὐτὸν εὐθὺς διαβάντος ἤρετο
emperor and indeed to him at-once (he)-having-gone(-across) asked
αὐτὸν ὅποι ποτὲ ἐτύγχανεν ὤν. ὁ δὲ παρὰ τὴν μάναν
him where ever he-happened being he and with the mama
ἔφησεν εἶναι, τὴν Θεοδώραν οὕτω λέγων, καὶ θεάσασθαι
he-said to-be — Theodora so saying and to-have-seen
ἐν αὐτῇ καλὰ νινία τοῦ προσκεφαλαίου ἐξαίρουσαν.
in her fine dollies from-the pillow taking-out
συνῆκεν οὖν ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ πλήρης ὀργῆς γεγονώς, ὡς
understood then the emperor and full of-anger having-become when
ἐξανέστη τῆς τραπέζης, πρὸς αὐτὴν ἀπῄει, ἄλλαις τε
he-rose-up from-the table to her went with-other both
πολλαῖς ὑβρισίαις αὐτὴν ἐπαντλῶν καὶ εἰδώλων λάτριν
many outrages her drenching and of-idols (a)-worshiper
ἀκολάστῳ γλώττῃ αὐτὴν ἀποκαλῶν, καὶ ἅμα διεξῄει
with-licentious tongue her calling and at-once he-went-through
τοὺς λόγους τοῦ παραπαίοντος. ἡ δὲ τέως μὲν τὸν
the words of-the crazy(-one) she and for-a-time indeed the
θυμὸν καταστορεννύουσα “οὐ τοῦτό ἐστιν” ἐξ ἑτοίμου
anger calming not this is(-it) from readiness
ἔλεγεν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὐ τοῦτο, ὡς ὑπείληφας σύ· τῷ δὲ
she-said O emperor not this as have-supposed you in-the but
κατόπτρῳ μου ἤμην ἀτενίζουσα μετὰ τῶν θεραπαινίδων,
mirror my I-was gazing with the maidservants
καὶ τὰς ἐκεῖσε τικτομένας ἰδὼν ὁ Δένδεριος μορφὰς
and the there being-born having-seen — Denderis forms
ἐλθὼν ἀπήγγειλεν ἀφρόνως τῷ δεσπότῃ καὶ βασιλεῖ.”
having-come reported foolishly to-the master and emperor
οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἐκείνου τέως κατέσβεσε τὸν θυμόν·
so indeed then of-that(-man) for-a-time she-quenched the anger

τὸν Δένδεριν δὲ μετ᾽ οὐ πολλὰς ἡμέρας παιδείᾳ
— *Denderis but after not many days to-chastisement*
καθυποβάλλουσα πέπεικε σωφρονεῖν, οὕτω πως λέγουσα
subjecting(-him) persuaded to-be-discreet thus somehow saying
ὡς μήποτε λέγειν περὶ τῶν καλῶν νινίων τινί. καί
that never to-speak about the fine dollies to-anyone and
ποτε παρὰ πότον ἐγκαυχώμενος καὶ τῆς δεσποίνης
once at drinking boasting and over-the empress
κατεπαιρόμενος ὁ Θεόφιλος ἠρώτα τοῦτον περὶ αὐτῆς,
exulting — Theophilos asked him about her
εἰ πάλιν ἄρα τὰ καλὰ νινία ἡ μάνα ἀσπάζεται. ὁ δὲ
whether again then the fine dollies the mama embraces he and
τοῖς χείλεσι τὴν δεξιὰν χεῖρα ἐπιθεὶς καὶ τῇ ἀριστερᾷ
to-the lips the right hand having-put and with-the left
τῶν ὄπισθεν μερῶν λαβόμενος "σίγα, σίγα περὶ τῶν
of-the hind parts having-taken-hold hush hush about the
νινίων" ἀντέφησεν, "βασιλεῦ." ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω.
dollies retorted emperor these(-things) indeed thus

A general seizes a brave soldier's horse and sends it to the emperor as his own; the soldier, sent to war without it, is killed, and his widow, seeing the emperor ride the horse, catches its bridle. Theophilos makes her and her children heirs to the general's estate and removes him from command. The emperor rebuilds the low walls and turns a brothel into a hostel, though he once seduces a maidservant of Theodora's and swears to her it was a single slip. He sends John the synkellos, his iconoclast tutor, as envoy to the Hagarenes with lavish gifts and a show of imperial wealth, including a golden basin deliberately lost; on John's account he builds the palace of Bryas after the Saracens' model. Toward the images he is harsher than Leo, who forbade their veneration, and Michael, who forbade the word holy to be written on them: Theophilos forbids them to be painted at all, fills the prisons with their venerators, and drives the monks from the cities.

7 Καί τινος δὲ κατὰ πόλεμον ἀνδραγαθιζομένου, χεῖρά
and (when)-someone too in war doing-brave-deeds (a)-hand
τε νεανικὴν καὶ ἵππον ἔχοντος δεξιόν, συνέβη τούτου
both youthful and (a)-horse having clever it-befell his
δὴ τὸν στρατηγόν, ὑφ' ὃν ἐτέλει ὁ στρατιώτης, ἔρωτι
indeed the general under whom served the soldier by-love
κατασχεθῆναι τοῦ ἵππου, ὑφ' οὗ ὁ ἄνθρωπος σέσωστο
to-be-seized of-the horse by which the man had-been-saved
καὶ πολλάκις ἐκ θανάτου ἐρύετο. ἐπεὶ γοῦν τοῦτον
and often from death was-rescued since at-any-rate it
πολλάκις ἐξαιτησάμενος πᾶσί τε τρόποις καὶ χάρισι (καὶ
often having-asked-for by-all both ways and favors and
γὰρ ὑπισχνεῖτο πολλὰ διδόναι τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ) ἀπέτυχε
for he-promised much to-give to-the man he-failed
τῆς αἰτήσεως, ἦγε δὲ καὶ βίαν ὁ στρατηγὸς καὶ οὐδ'
of-the request he-used and also force the general and not-even
οὕτως εἶχε τὸν ὑπακούοντα, διεδέξατο τοῦτον τῆς ἧς
so he-had the(-one) obeying he-relieved him of-the which

εἶχεν ἀρχῆς, πολλὰ καὶ πρὸς τὸν Θεόφιλον κατειπὼν
he-had command much also to — Theophilos having-denounced
τοῦ ἀνδρός. ἦν οὖν ὁ στρατιώτης ἐν ἑαυτῷ, καὶ τὸν
of-the man was then the soldier by himself and the
ἵππον ἔχων ἐντρύφημα. παρῴχετο δὲ καὶ χρόνος ἱκανός,
horse having (as)-delight passed and also time sufficient
ὁ τὸν ἄνδρα πρὸς πόλεμον ἐκ φιλονεικίας καλῶν,
the(-one) the man to war from rivalry calling
ἀλλὰ καὶ καταδαπανῶν αὐτόν, οἷα φιλεῖ τοῖς δυστυχοῦσι
but also consuming him as is-wont for-the unfortunate
δεινῶς. ἐγένετο οὖν ἵππου ἀγαθοῦ ζήτησις παρὰ Θεοφίλου
terribly there-was then of-(a)-horse good (a)-search by Theophilos
κατὰ τὸν τῆς δυστυχίας καιρὸν τοῦ ἀνδρός· διὸ
at the of-the misfortune time of-the man wherefore
καὶ διὰ γραμμάτων πάντας ἐν τέλει καὶ ἀξιώμασιν
also through letters all in office and dignities
ἀνερευνῶν ἐκέλευε τοιόνδε καὶ τοιόνδε ἀποστεῖλαι αὐτῷ.
searching he-ordered such and such to-send to-him
ὅθεν λαβόμενος ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀφορμῆς ἀφείλετο τοῦ
whence having-seized the general (a)-pretext took-away from-the
ἀνδρὸς τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἄκοντος, καὶ πρὸς βασιλέα ὡς
man the horse even unwilling and to (the)-emperor as
οἰκεῖον ἀπέσταλκεν. αὕτη ἡ αἰτία, καὶ τοῦ ἵππου δὲ ἡ
own sent this the cause and of-the horse too the
στέρησις. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατά τινα περιπέτειαν πάντας ἐκέλευσεν
deprivation since and at some reversal all ordered
ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ τοὺς οἱαδήποτε αἰτίᾳ πεπαυμένους,
the emperor even the(-men) for-whatever cause having-been-retired
ἐξιέναι πρὸς πόλεμον, καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐξεληλυθότα
to-go-out to war also the man this having-gone-out
ἵππου στερούμενον ἀγαθοῦ ἀπήγαγε τῆς ζωῆς, γυναῖκα
of-(a)-horse deprived good led-away from-the life (a)-wife

καταλελοιπότα καὶ τέκνα πτωχά. τί οὖν ἡ γυνή; καὶ
having-left and children poor what then the wife and
τὸ φιλήκοον ἀκούουσα τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ φιλοδίκαιον,
the willingness-to-hear hearing of-the emperor and justice-loving
καὶ τῷ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς φίλτρῳ ἐκκαιομένη, καὶ τοῖς τέκνοις
and by-the of-the husband love being-inflamed and for-the children
ὅπως καὶ χορηγοίη οὐκ ἔχουσα τὰ πρὸς ζωήν, τὴν
how also she-might-provide not having the(-things) for life the
βασιλεύουσαν καταλαμβάνει, καὶ τὸν Θεόφιλον, ἐν ᾗ
reigning(-city) reaches and — Theophilos on which
ἡμέρᾳ εἴθιστο πρὸς Βλαχέρνας ἀπιέναι, τοῦτον δὴ τοῦ
day he-was-wont to Blachernai to-go this indeed of-the
ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς ἵππον ἀναβαίνοντα κατιδοῦσα, γονυπετοῦσα
husband her horse mounting having-seen kneeling
καὶ κατολοφυρομένη ἐδέετο τοῦ βασιλέως, τὸν χαλινὸν τοῦ
and lamenting begged of-the emperor the bridle of-the
ἵππου κατέχουσα, καὶ ἀνεδίδασκεν πῶς αὐτῆς τε εἴη
horse holding and informed(-him) how hers both might-be
ὁ ἵππος καὶ οὐκ ἄλλος τις ἀλλ' αὐτὸς αἴτιος τῆς τοῦ
the horse and not other anyone but he (the)-cause of-the of-the
ἀνδρὸς σφαγῆς. ἐκπλαγὴς οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς γενόμενος ἐν
husband slaughter astounded then the emperor having-become at
τῇ παρρησίᾳ τῆς γυναικὸς καὶ περιθαμβής, καὶ τῶν
the frankness of-the woman and amazed and of-the(-things)
λεγομένων εἰδὼς οὐδέν, τέως μὲν αὐτὴν ταμιευθῆναι
said knowing nothing for-a-time indeed her to-be-kept
διωρίσατο τῆς αὐτοῦ ἄχρι ἐπανόδου πρὸς τὰ ἀνάκτορα, καὶ
ordered of-the his until return to the palace and
καλεῖν ταύτην καὶ δὴ ἔφησεν τὴν γυναῖκα μετὰ σπουδῆς
to-call her and indeed he-said the woman with haste
ἐπαναδραμών· καὶ ἥδε παρέστη εὐθέως, ἐκδιδάσκουσά τε
having-run-back and she stood-by at-once informing both

πάντα καὶ διεξιοῦσα σαφῶς. κελεύει οὖν τόν τε ἀφικέσθαι
all and recounting clearly he-orders then the both to-come
τὸν στρατηγὸν ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ περὶ τοῦ ἵππου ζήτησιν
the general the emperor and about the horse search
ποιεῖ νεανικήν. ὡς δ' οἴκοθεν ὁ στρατηγὸς καὶ οὐκ
makes vigorous when and from-home the general and not
ἄλλοθεν, ἀλλ' οὐδ' ἐξ ἁρπαγῆς τὸν ἵππον ἀποσταλῆναι
from-elsewhere but not-even from robbery the horse to-have-been-sent
διεβεβαίου, παρίστησι κατὰ πρόσωπον τὴν ἄνθρωπον
affirmed he-sets to face the woman
ἔλεγχον τῶν λεγομένων καὶ κατήγορον. οὐκ ἔφερεν
(as)-proof of-the(-things) said and accuser not bore
οὖν ὁ στρατηγὸς τῷ ψεύδει καταλαμπρύνεσθαι τὴν ὄψιν
then the general by-the lie to-glory the face
τῆς γυναικὸς ἐνορῶν, καὶ ἅμα ἱκέτης γίνεται ἐλεεινὸς
of-the woman looking-at and at-once suppliant becomes piteous
καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως τοὺς πόδας λαμβάνει μετὰ κλαυθμοῦ.
and of-the emperor the feet takes with weeping
τί οὖν ὁ βασιλεύς; ἐκείνην μὲν τὴν γυναῖκα μετὰ τῶν
what then the emperor that indeed the woman with the
αὐτῆς παίδων ἀδελφοὺς ἐξ ἴσου καὶ κληρονόμους τῆς
her children brothers from equal and heirs of-the
ἐκείνου δείκνυσιν ὑποστάσεως, μεθίστησί τε τῆς ἀρχῆς
of-that(-man) shows estate removes both from-the command
αὐτόν, καὶ πᾶσι κατάδηλος γίνεται ἡ δικαία κρίσις αὐτοῦ
him and to-all manifest becomes the just judgment his
καὶ τὸ πρὸς τοὺς ἅρπαγας φιλαπέχθημον.
and the toward the robbers hostility
Οὐχ ἧττον δέ γε καὶ ταῖς οἰκοδομαῖς ἐγκείμενος 8
not less and at-least also on-the buildings intent
τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἐδείκνυτο ἐπιμέλειαν. τείχη τε γὰρ τὰ
the his-own he-showed care walls both for the

χθαμαλώτερα ἐκ βάθρων ἀναδειμάμενος, τὸ γῆρας ὥσπερ
lower from foundations having-rebuilt the old-age as-it-were
ἀποξύσας καὶ πρὸς ὕψος μετὰ κάλλους ἀπάρας, ἄβατα
having-scraped-off and to height with beauty having-raised impassable
πάντῃ πεποίηκε τοῖς ἐχθροῖς, ἃ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν τὴν
wholly he-made for-the enemies which also until the now the
τούτου προσηγορίαν ἐμφαίνουσιν ἐγγεγραμμένην ἔχοντα
his name show inscribed having
ἐν αὐτοῖς. οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ πόρνας ἀπελάσας
in themselves not indeed and but also harlots having-driven-out
ἐξ οἰκημάτων, καὶ καθάρας ὅλον ἐκεῖνον τὸν χῶρον,
from brothels and having-cleansed whole that the place
ξενῶνα τὴν ἐκείνου φέροντα προσηγορίαν, κάλλει τε
(a)-hostel the his bearing name in-beauty both
κάλλιστον καὶ μεγέθει μέγιστον, εὔπνουν τε καὶ εὔοπτον,
most-beautiful and in-size greatest airy both and with-fine-views
δι᾽ ὧν τὰ φθοροποιὰ μὲν παθήματα ἀποκλύζονται,
through which the destructive indeed sufferings are-washed-away
τὰ σωτηριώδη δὲ ἐπιγίνονται ἀλεξήματα, κατεσκεύασεν.
the saving but come-on remedies he-built
οὕτως εἶχεν ἐκεῖνος πρὸς πόρνας. πλὴν ὅτι γέ
thus was-disposed that(-man) toward harlots except that at-least
φασιν αὐτόν ποτε κάλλει θεραπαινίδος τῆς Θεοδώρας
they-say him once by-(the)-beauty of-(a)-maidservant — of-Theodora
ἁλόντα συμφθαρῆναι αὐτῇ, ῥαθύμως τότε βιοῦντα· ἐπεὶ
caught to-be-corrupted-with her carelessly then living since
γοῦν ἤσθετο τῆς ἐκ τοῦ καλοῦ διαμαρτίας, καὶ ἄλλως
at-any-rate he-perceived of-the from the good failing and otherwise
οὐδὲ τὴν Θεοδώραν τοῦτο λαθοῦσαν, κατηφιῶσαν δὲ
not-even — Theodora this having-escaped-notice downcast but
καὶ αὐχμῶσαν καὶ στυγνάζουσαν, ἔκτοτε ἐξειπεῖν αὐτῇ,
and squalid and gloomy from-then to-declare to-her

ἐπομνύμενον καὶ φρικτῶς τὰς χεῖρας ἐπαίροντα πρὸς
swearing and awfully the hands raising to
θεὸν ἦ μὴν τότε καὶ μόνον διολισθεῖν, καὶ συγγνώμην
god verily indeed then and only to-have-slipped and pardon
ἐπιζητεῖν παρὰ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ γυναικός. πρὸς τούτοις οἰκόν
to-seek from the his-own wife besides these (a)-house
τινα καὶ ἀνάκτορα ταῖς ἑαυτοῦ θυγατράσιν παρὰ τὸν
some and palace for-the his-own daughters at the
οὕτω καλούμενον χῶρον τὰ Καριανοῦ πλουσίᾳ χειρὶ
so called place the(-house) of-Karianos with-rich hand
ἐξανέστησέν τε καὶ ἤγειρεν, ὧν λείψανά τινα καὶ
raised both and erected of-which remains some and
κολωνοὶ τῆς ἐκείνων μνήμης μέχρις ἡμῶν διασώζονται.
mounds of-the of-those memory until us are-preserved
Ἐπεὶ δὲ παλαιῷ ἔθει ἑπόμενος ἐβούλετο τοῖς τῆς 9
since and old custom following he-wished to-the(-men) —
Ἄγαρ τὰ τῆς αὐτοκρατορίας ποιῆσαι κατάδηλα, εἴτε
of-Hagar the(-things) of-the autocracy to-make manifest whether
δὴ κοινωνοὺς εὐφροσύνης λαμβάνων εἴτε μᾶλλον τῷ
indeed partners of-good-cheer taking or rather by-the
φοβερὸς μέλλειν ὁρᾶσθαι αὐτοῖς, πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην ἄξιον
fearsome to-be-going to-be-seen by-them for the such worthy
διακονίαν κρίνει Ἰωάννην τὸν τότε μὲν σύγκελλον,
service he-judges John the(-one) then indeed synkellos
αὐτοῦ δὲ πρότερον, ὡς ἔφθημεν εἰπόντες, διδάσκαλον.
his but formerly as we-anticipated saying teacher
πολιτικῆς γὰρ εὐταξίας τοῦτον πλήρη τυγχάνοντα, οὐ
of-civil for good-order him full being not
μὴν δὲ καὶ τῇ αἱρέσει τούτου συμπαραμένοντα, ἔτι
indeed but also in-the heresy his remaining-with further
γε μὴν καὶ τὸ πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιρρητικοὺς λόγους
at-least indeed and the(-thing) for the polemical words

κεκτημένον δραστήριον, ἠγάπα οὗτος καὶ διαφερόντως
possessing effective(-skill) he-loved this(-man) and especially
τῶν κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ἁπάντων ἐσέμνυνεν· οὗ δὴ χάριν
of-the(-men) of his-time all honored for-whose indeed sake
καὶ πρὸς τὸν τῆς Συρίας ἄρχοντα ἐξαπέστειλεν, ἄλλα τε
also to the — of-Syria ruler he-sent(-him) others both
δοὺς αὐτῷ πολλὰ οἷς θαυμάζεται βασιλεία Ῥωμαίων
having-given him many by-which is-admired (the)-empire of-Romans
καὶ τῶν ἀλλοφύλων γένος ἐπτόηται, προσεπιδοὺς δὲ καὶ
and of-the foreign race is-frightened having-added and also
χρυσίον κεντηναρίων τεσσάρων ὑπερβαῖνον ποσότητα. ἀλλὰ
gold of-centenaria four exceeding (in)-quantity but
τὰ μὲν τῷ ἀμεραμνουνῇ ὡς δῶρα ἀπέσταλκεν,
the(-things) indeed to-the commander-of-the-faithful as gifts he-sent
τὸ χρυσίον δέ, ὡς εἴη τῷ Ἰωάννῃ εἰς φιλοτιμίας
the gold and that it-might-be — for-John for of-munificence
ἐπίδοσιν, ἐπιδείξεώς τε χάριν ἅμα καὶ αὐξήσεως· εἰ γὰρ
giving of-display both for-the-sake at-once and of-increase if for
ἄμμου δίκην ὁ ἀποσταλεὶς τὸ χρυσίον ἔχει σπείρειν ὡς
of-sand like the(-one) sent the gold is-able to-sow as
βούλεται, πολλῷ δή που μᾶλλον τὸν ἀποστείλαντα
he-wishes by-much indeed I-suppose rather the(-one) having-sent
ἐπὶ πλούτου θημῶνας θαυμάζεσθαι χρή. διὸ καὶ σκεύη
for of-wealth heaps to-be-admired (one)-must wherefore also vessels
πρὸς τούτοις δύο ἐκ χρυσοῦ τε καὶ λίθων πολυτελῶν τὴν
besides these two from gold both and stones costly the
σύστασιν ἔχοντα, ἃ ἡ κοινὴ γλῶττα καὶ μὴ καθαρὰ
composition having which the common tongue and not pure
καλεῖ χερνιβόξεστα, αὐτῷ ἐπιδέδωκεν, πάντοθεν ἐξαίρων
calls cherniboxesta to-him he-gave from-everywhere exalting
τὸν ἀπόστολον αὐτοῦ καὶ κοσμῶν. ὃς δὴ ἀφικόμενος καὶ
the envoy his and adorning(-him) who indeed having-come and

τὰ Βαγδὰ ἄρτι καταλαβὼν πολὺς μὲν ἐφαίνετο ἐκ τῆς
the(-city) Baghdad just having-reached great indeed appeared from the
ἔνδον περινοίας καὶ λόγου τοῦ προφητικοῦ, πολὺς δὲ ἐκ
inner intelligence and learning the prophetic great and from
τοῦ ἔξωθεν ἐπανθοῦντος πλούτου αὐτῷ καὶ σεμνότητος,
the from-outside blooming wealth on-him and of-dignity
οὐ μικρά τινα τοῖς ἀποστελλομένοις καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν
not small(-things) some to-the(-men) sent and to him
φοιτῶσι διδούς, μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
coming giving great and also to-the emperor of-the Romans
μόνον κατάλληλα. ἐκ τούτου ἐθαυμάζετό τι, καὶ τὸ
only fitting from this was-admired somewhat also the
αὐτοῦ διαπρύσιον ἐγίγνετο ὄνομα. ἀλλὰ πρῶτον μὲν ἄρτι
his loud became name but first indeed just
τοῖς ὁρίοις τῶν βαρβάρων προσβὰς ἐξέπληξέ τε πάντας,
to-the bounds of-the barbarians having-come he-astounded both all
καὶ τῆς ἐρωτήσεως χάριν αὐτῷ ὑπηντηκόσιν καὶ ὅπως
and of-the inquiry for-the-sake him having-met and how
ἔχοι πυθομένοις μόνον ὁ βασιλεύς, τῇ δαψιλείᾳ τῶν
he-was asking only the emperor by-the abundance of-the
δώρων καὶ τοῦ χρυσίου θαυμάσαι τούτους ἐποίησεν. τότε
gifts and of-the gold to-marvel them made then
δὴ πλησιάσας τῷ Ἰσμαὴλ καὶ κατὰ πρόσωπον στάς,
indeed having-approached — to-Ishmael and to face having-stood
καὶ ἀπαγγείλας τοὺς ἐκ βασιλέως λόγους αὐτῷ, ἐπεὶ
and having-reported the from (the)-emperor words to-him when
ἀπηγγέλκει, ἄπεισι πρὸς τὸ ἀναπαύσεως καταγώγιον.
he-had-reported he-goes-off to the of-rest lodging
μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον βουλόμενος ἐξᾶραι τὰ Ῥωμαίων
more and also more wishing to-exalt the of-Romans
πράγματα, τοὺς ἐφ' οἱαδηποτοῦν αἰτίᾳ πρὸς αὐτὸν
affairs the(-men) for whatever cause to him

φοιτῶντας, μεγάλῃ τε καὶ μικρᾷ, σκεῦός τι ἀργύρεον
coming great both and small vessel some silver
χρυσίου πληρῶν ἑκάστῳ ἐπεδίδου φιλοτιμούμενος. καί
with-gold filling to-each gave being-munificent and
ποτε δὲ τοῖς βαρβάροις συνεστιώμενος τῶν εἰρημένων
once too with-the barbarians feasting of-the said
δύο χειρονίπτρων τοῖς ὑπηρετοῦσι παρήγγειλεν ἀπολέσαι
two hand-basins to-the servants ordered to-lose
τούτων ἑκουσίως τὸ ἕτερον, ὃ εἰς ὑπηρεσίαν ἐκέκτητο.
of-these deliberately the one which for service he-had-acquired
ὡς δὲ θροῦς τις οὐκ ἀγεννὴς ἐπὶ τῇ ἀπωλείᾳ τούτου
when and (a)-murmur some not ignoble at the loss of-it
ἐγένετο, καὶ πάντες οἱ βάρβαροι τῷ κάλλει τούτου καὶ
arose and all the barbarians by-the beauty of-it and
τῇ σεμνότητι, ἔτι γε καὶ τῇ μεγαλοπρεπείᾳ βεβλημένοι
the dignity further at-least also the magnificence struck
τὴν ψυχὴν πολλὴν συζήτησιν ἐποιοῦντο καὶ ἔρευναν, καὶ
the soul much inquiry made and search and
πάντα κάλων, τὸ δὴ λεγόμενον, ἔσειον, ὡς ἂν εἰς
every rope the(-thing) indeed said shook so-that — into
φῶς ἀχθῇ τὸ κλαπέν, τηνικαῦτα οὗτος τὸ ἕτερον
light might-be-brought the stolen(-thing) then this(-man) the other
ἐκβαλεῖν κελεύσας, καὶ "τοῦτο ἔα φθείρεσθαι" ἐπειπών,
to-throw-out having-ordered and this let to-be-destroyed having-added
εἰς θάμβος ἦγε τοὺς Σαρακηνούς, τὴν τοιαύτην ζήτησιν
into amazement led the Saracens the such search
αὐτοῦ καταπαύσαντος. ὅθεν καὶ ὁ ἀμεραμνουνῆς
he having-stopped whence also the commander-of-the-faithful
ἀντιφιλοτιμούμενος, καὶ τούτου δεύτερος ὀφθῆναι μὴ
vying-in-munificence and than-him second to-be-seen not
βουλόμενος, ἄλλοις τε δώροις αὐτὸν ἐθεράπευεν, οἷσπερ
wishing with-other both gifts him courted by-which

αὐτὸς οὐχ ἡλίσκετο ἀλλ᾽ ὡς χοῦν αὐτοῦ κατενώπιον
he not was-caught but like dust him before
ἔρριπτεν, καὶ ἐπεδίδου αἰχμαλώτους ἑκατὸν ἄρτι τῆς
threw and gave captives (a)-hundred just from-the
φρουρᾶς ἐξαγαγὼν καὶ ἀμφιάσεσι κοσμήσας εὐπρεπέσι,
prison having-brought-out and with-clothes having-adorned seemly
τὰ τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας περιελόμενος ῥάκια. ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος
the of-the captivity having-removed rags but also this(-man)
ἐπῄνει μὲν πάνυ καὶ ἀπεδέχετο τοῦ διδόντος τὸ
praised indeed very-much and accepted of-the(-one) giving the
μεγαλόδωρον, ἐλάμβανε δὲ οὐδαμῶς, εἰπὼν τούτους ἐν
munificence took but in-no-way having-said them in
ἀνέσει μὲν τέως καὶ ἐλευθερίᾳ μένειν παρ᾽ ἑαυτοῖς, μέχρις
ease indeed for-a-time and freedom to-remain with themselves until
ἂν τὴν ἀντισήκωσιν ἐξεργάσεται καὶ ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους
— the exchange he-should-accomplish and other captives
Σαρακηνοὺς ἐπιδοὺς ἐκείνοις τοὺς ἡμετέρους ἐκλήψεται.
Saracens having-given to-those the ours he-will-receive
τοῦτο γοῦν γενόμενον ἐξέπληξε τὸν Σαρακηνόν· καὶ
this at-any-rate having-happened astounded the Saracen and
οὐκέτι ὡς ξένον ὡς οἰκεῖον δὲ ἡγούμενος τοῦτον συνεχῶς
no-longer as (a)-stranger as own but considering him continually
μετεκαλεῖτο, καὶ θησαυροὺς ἐδείκνυε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὰ
he-summoned and treasures showed the his-own and the
τῶν οἰκημάτων κάλλη καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σεμνοπρέπειαν,
of-the buildings beauties and the his majesty
καὶ οὕτως δὴ τιμῶν γε τοῦτον ἐφαίνετο, ἄχρις
and thus indeed honoring at-least him he-appeared until
οὗ μεγαλοπρεπῶς πάλιν πρὸς τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν
which(-time) magnificently again to — Constantinople
ἐξαπέσταλκεν. ὃς καὶ πρὸς τὸν Θεόφιλον ἄρτι ἐξεληλυθώς,
he-sent(-him) who also to — Theophilos just having-come

καὶ τὰ τῆς Συρίας πρὸς αὐτὸν διεξερχόμενος, ἔπεισε
and the(-things) — of-Syria to him recounting persuaded
τὰ τοῦ Βρύου ἀνάκτορα πρὸς τὴν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν
the — of-Bryas palace after the of-the Saracens
κατασκευασθῆναι ὁμοίωσιν, ἔν τε σχήμασι καὶ ποικιλίᾳ
to-be-built likeness in both forms and variety
μηδὲν ἐκείνων τὸ σύνολον παραλλάττοντα, ἐκείνοις
in-nothing from-those — at-all differing to-those(-men)
τούτου παρισταμένου καὶ κατὰ τὴν Ἰωάννου ἐξήγησιν
him standing-by and according-to — John's explanation
τὰ τῶν ἔργων ἐκπερατοῦντος, ὃς ὄνομα μὲν Πατρίκης
the(-parts) of-the works carrying-out who (by)-name indeed Patrikes
οὕτω καλούμενος ὠνομάζετο, τῇ τῶν πατρικίων δὲ
so called was-named by-the of-the patricians and
τιμῇ ἐσεμνύνετο, τοῦτο μόνον περιττότερον ἐργασάμενος,
rank was-honored this only more having-done
τὸ κατὰ τὸν κοιτῶνα μὲν ἀνεγεῖραι ναὸν εἰς ὄνομα
the at the bedchamber indeed to-raise (a)-church to (the)-name
ὑπεραγίας δεσποίνης ἡμῶν θεοτόκου, κατὰ δὲ τὸ προαύλιον
of-(the)-all-holy lady our god-bearer in and the forecourt
τῶν τοιούτων παλατίων τὸν τρίκογχον ναὸν κάλλει
of-the such palaces the three-apsed church in-beauty
τε κάλλιστον καὶ μεγέθει πολλῶν διαφέροντα, καὶ τὸ
both most-beautiful and in-size from-many differing and the
μὲν μέσον εἰς ὄνομα τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου, τὰ δὲ
indeed middle to (the)-name of-the archistrategos the(-parts) and
ἑκατέρωθεν τούτου εἰς μαρτύρων γυναικῶν ἁγίων ὀνόματα.
on-either-side of-it to of-martyrs women holy names
10 Καὶ περὶ μὲν τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐδόκει τε καὶ ἐνομίζετο
and about indeed the such(-things) he-seemed both and was-thought
μεγαλοπρεπὴς ὁ Θεόφιλος καὶ θαυμαστός· περὶ δὲ τοὺς
magnificent — Theophilos and admirable about but the

πιστοὺς ἡμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τὰς σεπτὰς καὶ θείας εἰκόνας
faithful us and the(-ones) the revered and divine images
προσκυνοῦντας οἷος! ὡς βάρβαρός τις καὶ αὐστηρός,
venerating such(-was-he) as barbarian some and harsh
πάντας παρελάσαι φιλονεικῶν ἐπὶ τούτῳ δεινούς. οἱ
all to-surpass striving in this terrible(-men) the(-ones)
μὲν γὰρ πρὸ αὐτοῦ (Λέων δὲ ἦσαν καὶ Μιχαὴλ ὁ
indeed for before him Leo and were and Michael the
τούτου πατήρ) ὁ μὲν ἐθέσπισεν μή τινι τῶν
his father the(-one) indeed decreed not on-any of-the
γεγραμμένων εἰκόνων, κἂν εἴ που γραφόμεναι τύχοιεν,
painted images even if anywhere painted they-should-be
τὴν ἅγιος φωνὴν ἐγχαράττεσθαι, ὡς οὐκ ἄλλῳ τινὶ
the holy word to-be-inscribed as not to-other any
ταύτην ἁρμόζει ἐπιγράφεσθαι ἢ τῷ θείῳ οὐκ εὐστόχως
it fits to-be-written-on than to-the divine not with-good-aim
βαλὼν τῷ νῷ· πῶς γάρ, εἴγε καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς
having-cast with-the mind how for if-indeed also the(-very) the
θεός φωνῆς ὑψηλοτέρας οὔσης μεταδοὺς ὁ θεὸς τοῖς
god word higher being having-shared — god with-the
ἀνθρώποις, τοῖς οὐ φύσει, θεοῖς δέ φημι, εἴγε αὐτὸς
men the(-ones) not by-nature gods but I-say if-indeed he
διὰ τοῦ προφήτου ἦν ὁ φθεγξάμενος, τῆς ἅγιος
through the prophet was the(-one) having-uttered(-it) of-the holy
ἀποστερήσει ταπεινοτέρας οὔσης κατὰ πολύ; πλὴν ὁ
will-deprive lower being by much but the(-one)
μὲν τοῦτο, φησί, θεσπίσας ἦν, ἄτερος δὲ ὁ Λέων τὸ
indeed this he-says having-decreed was the-other and — Leo the
μηδὲ προσκυνεῖσθαι· ἐγὼ δὲ τὸ μηδὲ χρώμασι ταύτας
not-even to-be-venerated I and the not-even with-colors them
τυποῦσθαί τε καὶ μορφάζεσθαι, καθὸ χαμαιπετῆ ὄντα
to-be-figured both and to-be-shaped inasmuch-as earthbound being

οὐ χρὴ πρὸς ταῦτα ἐπτοῆσθαι, πρὸς μόνην δὲ τὴν
not must toward these to-be-excited toward only and the
ἀλήθειαν σκοπεῖν. ἐντεῦθεν οὖν καθῃροῦντο μὲν κατὰ
truth to-look from-here then were-taken-down indeed in
πᾶσαν ἐκκλησίαν αἱ θεῖαι μορφαί, θηρία δὲ καὶ ὄρνιθες
every church the divine forms beasts and also birds
ἀντὶ τούτων ἀνεστηλοῦντο καὶ ἐνεγράφοντο, τὴν θηριώδη
instead-of these were-set-up and were-painted the beastlike
καὶ ἀνδραποδώδη τούτου διάνοιαν ἐξελέγχοντα. ἐντεῦθεν
and slavish his mind exposing from-here
βεβήλοις χερσὶ δι' ἀγορᾶς τὰ ἱερὰ κειμήλια ἐφυβρίζοντο
by-profane hands through (the)-market the sacred treasures were-outraged
καὶ ἄλλως ἐρριπτοῦντο κατὰ τῆς γῆς πυρὶ διδόμενα,
and otherwise were-thrown on the ground to-fire being-given
καὶ κοινὰ τὰ τίμια ἐλογίζοντο, ὅσα τὰς θείας
and common the precious(-things) were-reckoned as-many-as the divine
ἔφερον ἐγκεκολαμμένας μορφάς. ἐντεῦθεν πλήρη μὲν τὰ
bore engraved forms from-here full indeed the
πολιτικὰ δεσμωτήρια τῶν διὰ τιμῆς ἀγόντων αὐτάς,
civil prisons of-the(-men) in honor holding them
τῶν γραφόντων, τῶν μοναζόντων, τῶν ἐπισκόπων, τῶν
of-the(-men) painting of-the monks of-the bishops of-the
ποιμένων, τῶν ποιμαινομένων, πλήρη δὲ τὰ ὄρη
shepherds of-the(-ones) being-shepherded full and the mountains
τε καὶ τὰ σπήλαια τῶν ὡς κακούργων ἀναιρεθέντων
both and the caves of-the(-men) as evildoers destroyed
λιμῷ τε καὶ δίψει, καὶ τῶν ἐκ πολιορκίας δεινῆς
by-famine both and by-thirst and of-the(-men) from siege terrible
οὐκ ἐπ' ἔλαττον. ἄρτι γὰρ ἀβάτους τηρεῖσθαι τοῖς
not in less just for impassable to-be-kept for-the
μοναχοῖς τὰς πόλεις ἐγκελευσάμενος, καὶ πάντῃ τούτους
monks the cities having-ordered and wholly them

ὡς ἀποτρόπαιον ἀπελαύνεσθαι θεσπίσας, ἀλλὰ μηδὲ
as (an)-abomination to-be-driven-away having-decreed but not-even
κατὰ χώραν ὁρᾶσθαι τολμᾶν, εἰργάσατο τούτων τὰ
in (the)-country to-be-seen to-dare he-made(-it) their the
μοναστήρια καὶ ἡσυχαστήρια περιφανῶς πολυάνδρια καὶ
monasteries and hermitages conspicuously burial-places and
κοσμικὰ καταγώγια. τινὲς μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν προδοῦναι
worldly lodgings some indeed for of-them to-betray
τὴν ἀρετὴν καὶ τὸ ἱερὸν ἔνδυμα οὐμενοῦν θέλοντες
the virtue and the sacred garment by-no-means wishing
λιμῷ τακέντες καὶ κακουχίαις ἐξέλιπον· οἱ δὲ
by-famine having-wasted and by-ill-treatments died the(-others) and
πρὸς τοσοῦτον ἀγῶνα μηδ' ἀντοφθαλμεῖν δυνάμενοι τῶν
to so-great contest not-even to-look-in-the-face being-able the
ἐνδυμάτων μὲν κατωλιγώρησαν, τὴν ἑαυτῶν δὲ σωτηρίαν
garments indeed despised the their-own but safety
πως ᾠκονόμησαν· ἕτεροι δὲ ῥαθυμότερον διαζῶντες τὸν
somehow arranged others and more-carelessly living the
ἄνετον καὶ ἐκλελυμένον ἠσπάσαντο βίον, τῶν θείων ὕμνων
relaxed and loose welcomed life of-the divine hymns
καὶ ᾠδῶν καὶ ἐσθήματος ἀφειδήσαντες, τὸ μηδὲ τούτους
and songs and garment having-neglected the not-even these
τελεῖσθαι τοὺς συλλόγους τὸν τύραννον βούλεσθαι, ἃ
to-be-held the assemblies the tyrant wishing which
πολλάκις καὶ μόνα δύνανται τηρεῖν καὶ οἷον χαλινός τις
often also alone are-able to-keep and as-it-were (a)-bridle some
εἶναι τοῖς πρὸς τὰ πάθη ἀτάκτως κατολισθαίνουσιν.
to-be for-the(-ones) toward the passions disorderly slipping-down

Abrahamite monks who defend their way of life and the images before Theophilos are driven out and die under the lash at the Phoberos chapel, their bodies lying unburied but uncorrupted. Another monk silences John, the emperor's tutor, and escapes. The painter-monk Lazaros has his palms burned for painting and, freed at the empress's plea, lives to set up Christ's image on the Chalke. The brothers Theophanes and Theodore prove the emperor wrong over a text of Isaiah and are beaten and tattooed with his verses; Michael the synkellos of Jerusalem is imprisoned. Theophilos composes hymns for the Great Church and, being bald, decrees that every Roman cut his hair short.

11 Πλὴν οὐκ ἦν πάντῃ τὴν παρρησίαν καὶ ἐλευθερίαν
but not was(-it-possible) wholly the frankness and freedom
ἰδεῖν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἀποφοιτήσασαν, ἀλλὰ τῶν
to-see from-the men having-departed but of-the
θερμοτέρων τινὲς μὲν καθ' εἷς τινὲς δὲ συστάδην,
warmer some indeed one-by one some and in-a-body
ὡς οἱ τῆς τῶν Ἀβραμιτῶν μονῆς ὁρμώμενοι,
as the(-men) of-the of-the Abrahamites monastery hailing
αὐτῷ λογικῶς ἔκ τε τῶν εἰρημένων τοῖς πατράσιν
to-him reasonably from both the(-things) said by-the fathers
ἡμῶν Διονυσίῳ τε τῷ θείῳ καὶ Ἱεροθέῳ καὶ Εἰρηναίῳ
our Dionysios both the divine and Hierotheos and Irenaeus
ἀπεδείκνυον ὡς οὐ χθὲς καὶ πρώην ἡ τῶν μοναχῶν
showed that not yesterday and the-day-before the of-the monks
πολιτεία τε καὶ κατάστασις ἐπινενόηται, παλαιὰ δέ τις
way-of-life both and establishment has-been-devised old but some
καὶ ἀρχέγονος καὶ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐπέραστος. οὐ μὴν
and original and to-the men lovely not indeed
δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων ἐκτύπωσιν σύντροφόν
and but also of-the divine images (the)-representation nurtured-with

τε τῶν ἀποστόλων καὶ ὁμοδίαιτον ἀπεδείκνυον, εἴγε
both the apostles and of-the-same-way-of-life they-showed if-indeed
Λουκᾶς μὲν ὁ θεῖος τὴν τῆς θεοτόκου μορφὴν ἐνετύπωσεν,
Luke indeed the divine the of-the god-bearer form imprinted
αὐτὸς δὲ Χριστὸς ὁ δεσπότης ἡμῶν καὶ θεὸς τὴν
himself and Christ the master our and god the
ἑαυτοῦ ἐπί τινος ὀθόνης ἀπομαξάμενος ἀχειρότευκτον ἡμῖν
his-own on some linen having-wiped-off not-made-by-hands to-us
ἐγκατέλιπεν. οὗτοι γοῦν οἱ θειότατοι ἄνδρες τὴν τοῦ
left these at-any-rate the most-divine men the of-the
τυράννου μανίαν καὶ θηριωδίαν ἐκκαλεσάμενοι τῷ σφόδρα
tyrant madness and savagery having-provoked by-the exceedingly
παρρησιασθῆναι μετὰ πολλὰς ἑτέρας βασάνους τῆς
to-speak-freely after many other tortures from-the
πόλεως ἐξώσθησαν, πρὸς δὲ εὐκτήριον προδρόμου τὸ
city were-thrust-out to and (the)-chapel of-(the)-forerunner the(-one)
οὕτω καλούμενον τοῦ Φοβεροῦ κατὰ τὸν Εὔξεινον πόντον
so called — of-Phoberos on — Euxine sea
πεφευγότες, καὶ ταῖς τῶν μαστίγων ἀφορήτοις φοραῖς
having-fled and by-the of-the whips unbearable strokes
τελείως καταπονηθέντες, τῆς ἄνω λήξεως ἠξιώθησαν·
completely worn-out of-the upper lot were-deemed-worthy
ὧν καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ σώματα ἐπὶ πολὺ ἄλλως ἐρριμμένα
of-whom also the sacred bodies for long carelessly thrown
πρὸς τοὔδαφος, μηδὲ τῆς ταφῆς εὐμοιρηκότα, σῶα
on the-ground not-even of-the burial having-had-share safe
διετηρήθησαν καὶ ἀλώβητα, μέχρις ὅτου τοῖς πιστοῖς
were-preserved and unharmed until — to-the faithful
γενόμενα φανερὰ ἐκηδεύθησάν τε καὶ καταλλήλως
having-become manifest they-were-buried both and fittingly
τοῖς ὑπὲρ Χριστοῦ μαρτυρήσασιν ἐτιμήθησαν.
like-the(-ones) for Christ having-borne-witness were-honored

12 Τούτοις ἐφάμιλλος καί τις γενόμενος μοναχός, ἄρτι δὲ πρὸς
to-these (a)-rival also some having-become monk just and to
ἀρχὴν τῆς ἱερωσύνης ἀναδραμὼν καὶ ζήλου πλησθείς,
(the)-beginning of-the priesthood having-advanced and with-zeal filled
τὸν τύραννον ἐλέγξαι διέγνωκε καὶ περὶ τῶν ἁγίων
the tyrant to-refute decided and about the holy
εἰκόνων πεῖσαι, εἰ δυνατόν. καὶ δὴ κατὰ πρόσωπον αὐτοῦ
images to-persuade if possible and indeed to face his
στὰς ἄλλα τε διεξῄει πολλὰ καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἀποστόλου
having-stood other(-things) both recounted many and the of-the apostle
Παύλου ῥητόν, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ φάσκον "εἴ τις ὑμῖν
Paul saying this indeed the(-one) declaring if anyone to-you
εὐαγγελίζεται παρ' ὃ παρελάβετε, ἀνάθεμα ἔστω." ἀλλὰ
preaches beside what you-received accursed let-him-be but
καὶ τούτῳ πληγὰς ἐπιθεὶς οὐκ ὀλίγας, ἐπεὶ σοφώτερα
also on-him blows having-laid not few since wiser(-things)
λέγειν διέγνωκεν αὐτοῦ τε δυνατώτερα εἰπεῖν, πρὸς τὸν
to-say he-judged than-himself and more-powerful to-speak to —
Ἰωάννην ἐξαπέσταλκεν, καθηγητὴν αὐτοῦ γεγονότα τε καὶ
John sent(-him) teacher his having-been both and
διδάσκαλον, διαλεκτικαῖς ἀποδείξεσι χρώμενον καταβαλεῖν
instructor with-dialectical proofs using to-overthrow
αὐτὸν ἐγκελευσάμενος. ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦτον ὁ γενναῖος
him having-ordered but also him the noble
ἀγωνιστὴς οὐ ταῖς σοφιστικαῖς καὶ διαλεκτικαῖς ἀποδείξεσι,
contestant not by-the sophistic and dialectical proofs
τοῖς ἀποστολικοῖς δὲ καὶ εὐαγγελικοῖς ῥήμασιν ἀφωνότερον
by-the apostolic but and evangelical words more-voiceless
ἰχθύων ἀποδείξας τέως μὲν ἀπὸ τούτου ἐγένετο, ὕστερον
than-fish having-shown for-a-time indeed from this(-matter) got-away later
δὲ πρὸς τὸ Καλὸν οὕτω λεγόμενον ἀποδημήσας ὄρος,
but to the Kalon so called having-traveled mountain

Ἰγνάτιόν τινα θεοφόρον ἄνδρα καταλαβὼν χειροτονίας
Ignatius (a)-certain god-bearing man having-found of-ordination
τε ἠξίωσεν, καὶ περὶ τῶν μελλόντων πραγμάτων τε καὶ
both deemed-worthy and about the future affairs both and
βασιλέων ἀναδιδάξας, ἄχρι καὶ τοῦ φιλοχρίστου Λέοντος
emperors having-taught until even the Christ-loving Leo
καὶ τῶν τέκνων αὐτοῦ διαμείνας, πρὸς κύριον ἐξεδήμησεν.
and the children his having-remained to (the)-lord departed
Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντας τοὺς τὰς θείας ἐκτυποῦντας μορφὰς 13
since and all the(-men) the divine depicting forms
ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ποιεῖν ὁ τύραννος ἐνενόησεν ἢ τὸ ζῆν
out-of men to-make the tyrant devised or the to-live
αἱρουμένους ἐμπτύειν τε καὶ ὡς βέβηλά τινα ἐπ᾽
choosing to-spit-on both and as profane some(-things) on
ἐδάφους ῥιπτεῖν καὶ καταπατεῖν καὶ οὕτω σώζεσθαι, καὶ
(the)-ground to-throw and to-trample and thus to-be-saved also
τὸν μοναχὸν Λάζαρον (περιβόητος δὲ τηνικαῦτα κατὰ τὴν
the monk Lazaros famous and then in the
ζῷα γράφουσαν ὑπῆρχε τέχνην) βιάζεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα
living-things painting he-was art to-force the man
διέγνωκεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦτον κρείττω μὲν τῶν θωπειῶν
he-decided but also him superior indeed to-the flatteries
κρείττω δὲ καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ γνώμης εὑρίσκων, οὐχ ἅπαξ ἢ
superior and also to-the his purpose finding not once or
δὶς ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλάκις ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐλεγχόμενος, τοσοῦτον
twice but also often by him being-refuted so-much
ταῖς βασάνοις κατῄκισεν ὡς πρῶτον μὲν συναπορρέειν
with-the tortures he-maltreated that first indeed to-flow-away-with
τὰς σάρκας τῷ αἵματι καὶ μηδὲ ζῆν ὅλως ὑπονοεῖσθαι
the flesh with-the blood and not-even to-live at-all to-be-supposed
παρὰ πολλῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ τοῦτον αὖθις
by many since and in-the prison him again

ἐγκαθειργμένον μόλις τε ἀναρραΐσαντα διήκουσε, καὶ τῇ
shut-in scarcely both having-recovered he-heard and in-the
ἑαυτοῦ τέχνῃ ἐνασχολούμενον τὰς τῶν ἁγίων ἐν πίναξιν
his-own art occupied the of-the saints on panels
ἀναστηλοῦν μορφάς, πέταλα σιδηρᾶ ἀπανθρακωθέντα ταῖς
setting-up forms plates iron red-hot to-the
παλάμαις αὐτοῦ τεθῆναι προσέταξεν. ἐβόσκετο οὖν τὸ πῦρ
palms his to-be-put he-ordered fed-on then the fire
τὰς σάρκας αὐτοῦ καὶ κατενέμετο, ἄχρι ποτὲ ἀπαγορεύσας
the flesh his and consumed(-it) until once having-given-up
ἔκειτο ἡμιθνής. ἀλλ᾽ ἔδει τοῦτον ὑπὸ τῆς χάριτος
he-lay half-dead but it-was-needful him by the grace
διατηρεῖσθαι καὶ τοῖς ὕστερον ἔνυσμα· ὅθεν ἐπεὶ τὰ
to-be-preserved and for-the(-ones) later (a)-spark whence when the
τελευταῖα πνεῖν τὸν ὅσιον ἀνεμάνθανεν, ἱκετείαις τῆς
last to-breathe the holy(-man) he-learned by-supplications of-the
Αὐγούστης καί τινων ἄλλων οἰκειοτέρων τῆς εἱρκτῆς
Augusta and of-some other closer from-the prison
μὲν ἀπέλυσεν, ὁ δὲ πρὸς τὸν ναὸν τοῦ προδρόμου τὸν
indeed he-released(-him) he and to the church of-the forerunner the(-one)
οὕτω καλούμενον τοῦ Φοβεροῦ ἐναπεκρύβη, ἔνθα καὶ τῶν
so called — of-Phoberos was-hidden where also the
πληγῶν συνουσῶν αὐτῷ εἰκόνα διέγραψε τοῦ προδρόμου
wounds being-with him (an)-image he-painted of-the forerunner
τὴν καὶ μέχρις ἡμῶν διασωζομένην τε καὶ ἰάσεις
the(-one) also until us preserved both and cures
ἐπιτελοῦσαν πολλάς. καὶ τότε μὲν ταῦτα, μετὰ δὲ τὴν
accomplishing many and then indeed these(-things) after and the
τοῦ τυράννου ἀποβίωσιν, τῆς ὀρθοδοξίας ἀναλαμψάσης,
of-the tyrant death the orthodoxy having-shone-forth
τὴν ἐν τῇ Χαλκῇ εἰκόνα τοῦ θεανθρώπου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ
the on — Chalke image of-the god-man Jesus Christ

οἰκείαις οὗτος χερσὶν ἀνεστήλωσεν. ὃς καὶ καλούμενος
with-own he hands set-up who also being-called
ὑπὸ τῆς περιφανοῦς Θεοδώρας συγγνώμην δοῦναί τε καὶ
by the illustrious Theodora pardon to-give both and
αἰτήσασθαι τῷ ταύτης ἀνδρί, "οὐκ ἄδικος ὁ θεός" ἔφη,
to-ask for-the her husband not unjust — god he-said
"ὦ βασίλισσα, ἐπιλαθέσθαι τῆς ἡμῶν ἀγάπης καὶ τῶν πρὸς
O empress to-forget the our love and the for
αὐτὸν κόπων, ἐκείνου δὲ τὸ μῖσος καὶ τὴν ὑπερβάλλουσαν
him toils that(-man's) but the hatred and the exceeding
μανίαν καὶ προτιμῆσαι." ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὕστερον.
madness and to-prefer but these(-things) indeed later
Καί ποτε δὲ τὸν ὁμολογητὴν Θεοφάνην καὶ Θεόδωρον τὸν 14
and once too the confessor Theophanes and Theodore the
αὐτοῦ ἀδελφόν, ἐπείπερ λογιότητι διαφέροντας ἀνεγίνωσκε
his brother since in-learning surpassing he-knew
τῶν πολλῶν, κατὰ τὸν τοῦ Λαυσιακοῦ τρίκλινον ἐξεκάλει
of-the many in the of-the Lausiakos triclinium he-summoned
δημοσίᾳ διαλεξομένους περὶ τῆς πίστεως· καὶ "ἄγε δή"
publicly going-to-dispute about the faith and come indeed
φησίν, "ὑμεῖς ὦ κατάρατοι, τίσι πειθόμενοι ῥήσεσι
he-says you O accursed by-what being-persuaded sayings
τῆς γραφῆς καὶ τεθαρρηκότες τὰ εἴδωλα" ἀφέτῳ
of-the scripture and having-taken-courage the idols with-unbridled
δὴ γλώσσῃ καὶ μιαρᾷ τὰς ἁγίας εἰκόνας οὕτω καλῶν
indeed tongue and defiled the holy images so calling
"προσκυνεῖτε, καὶ τοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ ἀκεραίους καλῶς ἔχειν
do-you-venerate and the many and simple well to-be(-it)
οὕτω ποιεῖν διαβεβαιοῦσθε;" καὶ ἄλλ' ἄττα προσετίθει
thus to-do you-affirm and other some(-things) added
βλάσφημα καὶ ἀπηχῆ κατὰ τῆς εἰκόνος Χριστοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ
blasphemous and discordant against the image of-Christ — god

γεγωνοτέρᾳ φωνῇ. καὶ οὗτοι δὴ μακάριοι, "ἐμφραχθείη
with-louder voice and these indeed blessed(-men) may-be-stopped
τὸ στόμα" εἰπόντες "τὸ κατὰ τοῦ θεοῦ λαλοῦν ἄνομα,"
the mouth having-said the(-one) against — god speaking lawless(-things)
καὶ τούτῳ δὴ τὸ θράσος αὐτοῦ καταβαλόντες (οὐ φέρει
and by-this indeed the boldness his having-thrown-down not bears
γὰρ βασιλεὺς ἄδικος κατὰ πρόσωπον ἐλεγχόμενος), τὸν
for (an)-emperor unjust to (the)-face being-refuted the
θῶπα τέως ὑποκρίνεται, καὶ παρὰ τῶν προφητῶν ἐζήτει
flatterer for-a-time he-feigns and from the prophets sought
μαρτυρίας εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἐναγούσας, τὸ προσκυνεῖσθαι
testimonies for itself this leading the to-be-venerated
αὐτάς. τοῦ δὲ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους ῥῆσίν τινα ἐκ τῆς τοῦ
them — and blessed Theophanes (a)-saying some from the —
Ἡσαΐου προσάγοντος προφητείας, οὐκ ἔχειν οὕτως ταύτην ὁ
of-Isaiah bringing-forward prophecy not to-be thus it —
Θεόφιλος ἀντέλεγεν, καὶ ἅμα τὴν ἑαυτοῦ βίβλον ἀνελίττων
Theophilos contradicted and at-once the his-own book unrolling
ἐδείκνυε τοὺς λόγους πιστούς. ὡς δὲ νενοθεῦσθαι ὑπ'
showed the words trustworthy when and to-have-been-corrupted by
αὐτοῦ οὐ ταύτην δὴ μόνον ὁ ἅγιος ἐπεβόα, ἀλλὰ καὶ
him not this indeed only the saint cried-out but also
πάσας τὰς εἰς αὐτοῦ χεῖρα βίβλους ἐληλακυίας, ἐκείνην
all the into his hand books having-come that(-one)
ἔλεγε προστιθεὶς τὴν βίβλον ἰέναι πρὸς αὐτὸν τὴν
he-said adding the book to-go to him the(-one)
κατὰ τὴν πατριαρχικὴν ἐν τῷ Θωμαΐτῃ κατὰ τήνδε
in the patriarchal in — Thomaites in this
τὴν θέσιν κειμένην βιβλιοθήκην εἰς τῶν λεγομένων
the position lying library for of-the(-things) said
βεβαίωσιν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἀπέσταλτό τις καὶ θᾶττον ἢ
confirmation since at-any-rate was-sent someone and quicker than

λόγος ἤγαγεν, ἑκὼν μὲν ὁ βασιλεὺς περὶ τὴν τοῦ ῥητοῦ
word brought(-it) willingly indeed the emperor about the of-the saying
εὕρεσιν ἡμάρτανεν καὶ ἀλλαχοῦ ἀνείλιττεν αἰσχυνόμενος·
finding erred and elsewhere unrolled being-ashamed
ὡς δ' ὑπὸ τοῦ μακαρίτου Θεοφάνους ἀνεδιδάσκετο,
when and by the blessed Theophanes he-was-taught
δακτυλοδεικτοῦντος ὡς ἔτι τρία φύλλα διαβιβάσας τὸ
pointing-with-the-finger that further three leaves having-turned the(-thing)
ζητούμενον καταλάβοις, τότε δὴ μὴ φέρων τὴν ἐκ τῶν
sought you-would-find then indeed not bearing the from the
ἀνδρῶν παρρησίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἀλήθειαν ἔχειν οὕτως
men frankness but also the truth to-be thus
εἰδώς, τὸ τῆς μακροθυμίας μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἐπίπλαστον
knowing the(-mask) of-the long-suffering until the now feigned
ἀπορρίψας καὶ τὸν θῆρα ἀνακαλύψας "οὐ δίκαιον"
having-thrown-off and the beast having-uncovered not just
ἔφησε "βασιλέα ὑπὸ τοιούτων ἀνδρῶν ἐνυβρίζεσθαι." ὅθεν
he-said (an)-emperor by such men to-be-insulted whence
προσέταξεν ἐν τῷ τοῦ Λαυσιακοῦ μεσοκηπίῳ ἀπαχθέντας
he-ordered in the of-the Lausiakos garden-court led-away
ἀνὰ διακοσίων ῥάβδων τυφθῆναι, καὶ τῷ μετώπῳ αὐτῶν
by two-hundred rods to-be-beaten and on-the forehead their
ἐπιγραφῆναι βαρβαρικῶς ἐγκεντηθέντας οὓς συνέθηκε
to-be-inscribed barbarously tattooed which he-composed
λήρους ἰαμβικούς. εἰσὶ δὲ οὗτοι.
nonsense-verses iambic they-are and these

πάντων ποθούντων προστρέχειν πρὸς τὴν πόλιν
all longing to-run-to toward the city
ὅπου πάναγνοι τοῦ θεοῦ λόγου πόδες
where all-pure — of-god word feet

ἔστησαν εἰς σύστημα τῆς οἰκουμένης,
stood for (the)-establishment of-the inhabited-world
ὤφθησαν οὗτοι τῷ σεβασμίῳ τόπῳ
were-seen these in-the venerable place
σκεύη πονηρὰ δεισιδαίμονος πλάνης.
vessels wicked of-superstitious error
ἐκεῖσε πολλὰ λοιπὸν ἐξ ἀπιστίας
there many thereafter from unbelief
πράξαντες αἰσχρὰ δεινὰ δυσσεβοφρόνως,
having-done shameful terrible(-things) impiously-minded
ἐκεῖθεν ἠλάθησαν ὡς ἀποστάται.
thence were-driven as apostates
πρὸς τὴν πόλιν δὲ τοῦ κράτους πεφευγότες
to the city and of-the power having-fled
οὐκ ἐξαφῆκαν τὰς ἀθέσμους μωρίας.
not let-go the lawless follies
ὅθεν γραφέντες ὡς κακοῦργοι τὴν θέαν
whence written(-on) as evildoers on-the face
κατακρίνονται καὶ διώκονται πάλιν.
they-are-condemned and are-pursued again

τούτου δὲ θᾶττον γενομένου ἐκεῖνοι μὲν τὸν τῆς ὁμολογίας
this and quicker having-happened those(-men) indeed the of-the confession
καὶ μαρτυρίας ἀνεδήσαντο στέφανον, οὗτος δὲ ὁ σοβαρὸς
and martyrdom bound-on crown this(-man) and the arrogant
καὶ πάντων ἀθλίων ἀθλιώτερος πᾶσιν ἐδείχθη βλάσφημος
and of-all wretches more-wretched to-all was-shown blasphemer
καὶ διώκτης καὶ τῶν πώποτε κακοδόξων κακοδοξότερος.
and persecutor and of-the ever heretics more-heretical

Πρὸς τούτοις δὲ καὶ Μιχαὴλ τὸν σύγκελλον τῆς κατὰ 15
besides these and also Michael the synkellos of-the in
τὴν ἁγίαν πόλιν ἐκκλησίας σὺν ἑτέροις πολλοῖς ἀσκηταῖς
the holy city church with other many ascetics
κατὰ τὴν φυλακὴν ἐγκαθεῖρξεν, τῇ πολυχρονίῳ κακώσει
in the prison he-shut-in to-the long-lasting ill-treatment
ὑπάξαι μηχανώμενος.
to-subject contriving
Τὰ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τῶν πιστῶν καὶ ἁγίων τοιαῦτα
the(-things) indeed indeed against the faithful and holy such
αὐτοῦ τὰ νεανιεύματα· καὶ τὸν μὲν δι᾽ ἡμᾶς ὀφθέντα
his the youthful-outrages and the(-one) indeed because-of us seen
ἄνθρωπον, θεὸν ὄντα ἀληθινόν, οὕτως ὕβριζέ τε καὶ
(as)-man god being true thus he-outraged both and
τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἁγίους θεράποντας οὐχ οὕτω βραχεῖ χρόνῳ
the his-own holy servants not so for-(a)-short time
καὶ περιωρισμένῳ κατὰ πάντα δὲ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ χρόνον τῆς
and limited but in all the his-own time of-the
ζωῆς ἐκάκου καὶ ἀνηκέστοις ὑπεβάλλετο συμφοραῖς.
life he-maltreated and to-incurable subjected misfortunes
ὕμνους δέ τινας ποιῶν καὶ στιχηρὰ μελίζων ᾄδεσθαι 16
hymns and some making and stichera setting-to-music to-be-sung
προετρέπετο· μεθ᾽ ὧν καὶ τὸ τοῦ τετάρτου ἦχου
he-urged with which also the(-one) of-the fourth mode
“εὐλογεῖτε,” ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν ὀγδόην “ἄκουε κόρη”
bless-ye from the(-hymn) in the eighth listen maiden
ᾠδὴν μεθαρμοσάμενος καὶ ῥυθμὸν παρασχών, ἐν τῇ τοῦ
ode having-adapted and rhythm having-provided in the —
θεοῦ ἐκκλησίᾳ εἰς πάντων ἐπήκοον ᾄδεσθαι διωρίσατο.
of-god church for all's hearing to-be-sung he-decreed
φέρεται δὴ καὶ λόγος τις ὡς αὐτὸς οὗτος ὁ Θεόφιλος
is-current indeed also (a)-story some that himself this — Theophilos

ἔρωτι τοῦ μέλους βαλλόμενος, καθάπερ πατέρες περὶ τὰ
by-love of-the song struck as fathers about the
ἔκγονα, κατὰ τὴν μεγάλην ἐκκλησίαν ἐν φαιδρᾷ πανηγύρει
offspring in the great church at (a)-bright festival
οὐ παρῃτήσατο τὸ χειρονομεῖν, δοὺς τῷ κλήρῳ αὐτῆς
not declined the to-conduct having-given to-the clergy its
λίτρας ὑπὲρ τούτου χρυσίου ἑκατόν. καὶ τὸ στιχηρὸν δὲ
pounds for this of-gold hundred and the sticheron too
τὸ κατὰ τὴν βαϊοφόρον, "ἐξέλθετε ἔθνη, ἐξέλθετε καὶ
the(-one) for the palm-bearing come-out nations come-out and
λαοί," τῆς ἐκείνου φασὶν εἶναι τόκον ψυχῆς.
peoples of-the that(-man) they-say to-be (the)-offspring soul

17 Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὸν τῆς κεφαλῆς κόσμον ὀλίγον πως ἐκ
since and also the of-the head adornment little somehow from
φύσεως ἔφερε καὶ ψιλὸς τὰς τρίχας ὑπῆν, ἐθέσπισεν
nature he-bore and bare (in)-the hairs he-was he-decreed
ἀπανταχῇ ἐν χρῷ ταύτας ἀποκείρειν καὶ μή τινα
everywhere to (the)-skin them to-cut and not any
Ῥωμαῖον ὄντα τοῦ τραχήλου περαιτέρω φέρειν συγχωρεῖν·
Roman being of-the neck farther to-wear(-it) to-allow
εἰ δέ τις φωραθῇ, πολλαῖς αἰκιζόμενον μάστιξι πρὸς
if and anyone should-be-caught by-many being-tormented whips to
τὴν τῶν προγόνων Ῥωμαίων ἐπανάγεσθαι ἀρετήν· τούτῳ
the of-the ancestors Romans to-be-brought-back virtue in-this
γὰρ καὶ οὗτοι τριχώματι ἐσεμνύνοντο. ὅθεν καὶ νόμον
for also these hair prided-themselves whence also (a)-law
ἐξέθετο τοῦ μή τινα διόλου κατατολμᾶν περαιτέρω τοῦ
he-set-out of-the not anyone at-all to-dare farther than-the
αὐχένος προβαίνειν ἐᾶν.
neck to-go to-let(-it)

Theophilos marries his youngest daughter Maria to the Armenian Alexios Mousele and raises him to Caesar; slandered as aiming at the throne, Alexios is refused leave to become a monk, and after Maria's death takes the habit. When Ibrahim's Hagarenes invade, the emperor takes the field with Manuel and Theophobos, a Persian of royal blood whose origin the writer gives in two accounts. Babek's Persians come over at Sinope, and Theophobos is made a patrician and given the emperor's sister. Against Manuel's advice and Theophobos' plan of a night attack, Theophilos gives battle by day; the scholae break, and he holds a hill with Theophobos and his Persians until they slip away by night. The next year he wins at Charsianon, and at his triumph a eunuch, Theodore Krateros, unhorses a captive Saracen champion.

ἜΕδει δὲ ἄρα καὶ τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ 18
it-was-needful and then also the(-things) concerning him and the his
συγγένειαν προνοήσασθαί τε καὶ διοικῆσαι κατὰ τὸ
kinship to-provide-for both and to-arrange according-to the(-thing)
τούτῳ δοκοῦν· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο, ἐπεὶ πέντε μὲν ἔτυχε
to-him seeming(-good) and because-of this since five indeed he-happened
τηνικαῦτα θυγατέρων ὑπάρχειν πατήρ, ἔρημος δὲ ἀρρενικῆς
then of-daughters to-be father bereft and of-male
ὡρᾶτο γονῆς, τὴν πασῶν ἐσχάτην Μαρίαν ὑπερβαλλόντως
he-was-seen offspring the of-all last Maria exceedingly
ἠγαπημένην οὖσαν τῶν ἄλλων ᾠήθη δεῖν συζεῦξαι
beloved being than-the others he-thought it-needful to-yoke
ἀνδρί. ὁ δ᾽ ἀνὴρ τῆς τῶν Κρηνιτῶν κατήγετο
to-(a)-husband the and husband from-the of-the Krenitai descended
γενεᾶς, χώρας τῆς τῶν Ἀρμενίων, Ἀλέξιος τοὔνομα,
family of-(the)-land the(-one) of-the Armenians Alexios by-name
Μουσελὲ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν, τῷ εἴδει ὡραῖος, ἀκμάζων τὴν
Mousele the surname in-the form handsome in-his-prime the

ἡλικίαν, οἰκῶν κατὰ τὸ τῆς ἀκροπόλεως μέρος, κατὰ τὰς
age dwelling in the of-the acropolis part at the
οὕτω καλουμένας τῆς Κρηνιτίσσης οἰκίας· ὃν πρῶτον μὲν
so called — of-Krenitissa houses whom first indeed
τῇ τῶν πατρικίων καὶ τῶν ἀνθυπάτων τιμήσας ἀξίᾳ
with-the of-the patricians and of-the anthypatoi having-honored rank
διὰ τὸ πρὸς τὴν θυγατέρα τούτου φιλόστοργον, ἔπειτα
because-of the toward the daughter his affection then
δὲ καὶ μάγιστρον καὶ Καίσαρα τὸ ἔσχατον ἀνηγόρευσεν,
and also magistros and Caesar the last proclaimed
στρατεύματά τε δοὺς ἱκανὰ πρὸς τὴν Λογγοβαρδίαν
armies both having-given sufficient to — Lombardy
ἐξέπεμψεν, χρείας τηνικαῦτα κατεπειγούσης τινός. καὶ ὁ
sent-out need then pressing some and he
μὲν ἀπήει καλῶς τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀνύων, καὶ
indeed went-off well the(-things) concerning him accomplishing and
ὡς ἐδόκει τῷ βασιλεῖ· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἤκμαζε μὲν
as seemed(-good) to-the emperor and because-of this flourished indeed
ὁ πρὸς αὐτὸν πόθος τοῦ βασιλέως, συνήκμαζε δὲ καὶ
the toward him longing of-the emperor flourished-together and also
ὁ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων φθόνος αὐτῷ, καί τινες ἐλοιδόρουν
the from men envy to-him and some reviled
καὶ βλάσφημά τινα ἔφασκον κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ, ὡς τῆς τε
and blasphemous(-things) some said against him that the both
βασιλείας ἐπιθυμεῖ καὶ δεῖ ποτὲ τὸ ἄλφα τοῦ θῆτα
empire he-desires and it-is-needful some-day the alpha the theta
κατακυριεῦσαι. ὅθεν ἐπεὶ τὰς κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ συρραφείσας
to-master whence when the against him stitched-together
διαβολὰς ὁ Καῖσαρ Ἀλέξιος διακήκοεν, τὸν φθόνον ὥσπερ
slanders the Caesar Alexios heard the envy as-it-were
κατευλαβούμενος πολλὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐδέετο οἰκτεῖραι
being-wary much the emperor begged to-pity

τοῦτον καὶ συγχωρῆσαι πρὸς τὸν μονήρη βίον μετατάξασθαι.
him and to-allow to the solitary life to-change
ἀλλὰ τότε μὲν οὔτ' ἐκεῖνος συνεχώρησεν, τὴν χηρείαν
but then indeed neither that(-man) allowed the widowhood
τῆς θυγατρὸς προβαλλόμενος, καὶ ὁ ῥηθεὶς Καῖσαρ
of-the daughter putting-forward and the said Caesar
ἔμενεν ἐφ' ἡσυχίας πολλῆς τοῖς δημοσίοις ἐνασχολούμενος
remained in quiet much in-the public occupied
πράγμασιν. ὡς δὲ τὸν Μιχαὴλ ἐγέννησεν ὁ Θεόφιλος,
affairs when and — Michael begot — Theophilos
καὶ ἡ τούτου μὲν θυγάτηρ τοῦ Καίσαρος δὲ γαμετὴ
and the his indeed daughter of-the Caesar and wife
τὸν βίον μετήλλαξεν, ταύτην μὲν τοσοῦτον τετίμηκεν ὡς
the life changed her indeed so-much he-honored that
καὶ τὸν χοῦν αὐτῆς ἐν λάρνακι θεῖναι περιηργυρωμένῃ
also the dust her in (a)-sarcophagus to-place silvered
καὶ προνόμιον δοῦναι διὰ λελαξευμένων ἐν αὐτῇ ἰάμβων
and (a)-privilege to-give through carved on it iambics
ἀσυλίας τοῖς ἐφ' οἵοις δήποτε ἐγκλήμασιν ἀνθρώποις
of-asylum to-the(-men) on whatever ever charges men
ἁλοῦσιν καὶ προσφυγοῦσιν ἐκεῖ· τὸν Ἀλέξιον δὲ λάθρα
convicted and having-fled there — Alexios and secretly
μεταταξάμενον καὶ τὸ μοναχικὸν μεταμφιασάμενον ἔσθημα,
having-changed and the monastic having-put-on garment
ἐπεὶ μὴ ἠδύνατο πεῖσαι τοῦ πάλιν αὐτὸ ἀποβαλεῖν, μόλις
since not he-could to-persuade of-the again it to-throw-off scarcely
συγχωρῆσαι, πολλοῖς ὀνείδεσι περιβαλὼν οἷς οὐ μετ'
to-allow(-it) with-many reproaches having-surrounded(-him) by-which not with
αὐτοῦ ἔκρινεν εἶναι ἀλλ' ἐν παραβύστῳ που καὶ γωνίᾳ.
him he-decided to-be but in (a)-corner somewhere and nook
ὅθεν ἐδίδου τούτῳ δωρεὰν τό τε κατὰ Χρυσόπολιν
whence he-gave him (as)-gift the(-monastery) both at Chrysopolis

βασιλικὸν μοναστήριον, προσέτι μὴν καὶ τὸ τοῦ
imperial monastery besides indeed also the(-one) —
Βυρσέως καὶ τὸ τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Ἐλαίαν. ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνος
of-Byrseus and the(-one) of-the(-one) at — Elaia but he
τῷ κατὰ τὴν Χρυσόπολιν ὄντι ἐνδιαιτώμενος, ἐπεί ποτε
in-the at — Chrysopolis being dwelling when once
περιπάτου ἐδεήθη καὶ κατὰ τὸν Ἀνθεμίου τόπον ἐγένετο,
of-(a)-walk he-needed and at — Anthemios's place came
βασιλικῶν τηνικαῦτα τυγχάνοντα τῶν μαγγάνων, ἔλεγεν
of-imperial then being — mangana he-said
δὲ ὡς ἕκαστον τῶν σεμνείων τῶν οἰκοδομούντων
and that each of-the shrines of-the(-men) building(-them)
φέρει τὴν κλῆσιν ἀθάνατον, εἵλετο τοῦτον διὰ βασιλικῆς
bears the name immortal he-chose it through imperial
προστάξεως ἐξωνήσασθαι καὶ ἴδιον κατασκευάσαι. ὃ
order to-buy and own to-make which
καὶ διὰ τῆς βασιλίδος Θεοδώρας ἐγένετο, τῆς αὐτοῦ
also through the empress Theodora happened the his
πενθερᾶς. ὅθεν καλῶς ἐποικοδομήσας καὶ εἰς μοναχικὴν
mother-in-law whence well having-built-on and to monastic
τάξιν ἀγαγὼν ἐκεῖσε τὸν βίον ἐκλιμπάνων ἐτέθη, τὸν
order having-brought there the life leaving he-was-laid the
τάφον καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἄνωθεν ἐπιγεγραμμένην εἰκόνα
tomb and the his above inscribed image
μάρτυρα ἔχων τῶν λεγομένων. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ
(as)-witness having of-the(-things) said not indeed but also
ὁ τούτου ἀδελφὸς Θεοδόσιος πλησίον τέθειται αὐτοῦ,
the his brother Theodosios near is-laid him
πατρικίων τιμῇ ἐγκαταλεγείς, πολλὰ γνωρίσματα τῆς
with-patricians' rank enrolled many tokens of-the
αὐτοῦ ἀρίστης βιώσεως ἐν τῷ μοναστηρίῳ καταλιπών.
his best life in the monastery having-left

Ἐγκειμένων δὲ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν καὶ μετὰ πολλῶν μυριάδων 19
pressing and the Hagarenes and with many ten-thousands
τοῦ Ἰβραὴμ κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεύοντος, καὶ ὁ
— Ibrahim against Romans campaigning also —
Θεόφιλος ἔρωτι φιλοτιμίας καὶ γενναιότητος ἐπὶ πόλεμον
Theophilos by-love of-honor and nobility to war
ἔξεισιν, ἄνανδρον οὐδὲν οὐδὲ μαλακὸν ἐννοῶν· εἰ γάρ
goes-out unmanly nothing nor soft thinking if for
τι καὶ δέος προσῆν, ἀλλ᾽ ἡ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ἀνδρῶν
any also fear was-present yet the of-the with him men
κατὰ πολέμους πεῖρά τε καὶ γενναιότης ἀπέτρεπε τοῦτο
in wars experience both and nobility turned-away it
καὶ πόρρω ποι ἐναπέπεμπε. Θεόφοβος οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ
and far somewhere sent-off Theophobos the men and
Μανουὴλ ἐκαλοῦντο. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ Μανουὴλ δεινὸς ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρείᾳ,
Manuel were-called but — Manuel terrible in courage
καὶ τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἅπασι γνώριμος· ἐξ Ἀρμενίων γὰρ τὴν
and to-the opponents all known from Armenians for the
γένεσιν ἦν, καὶ τοῦ στρατοῦ τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ
birth he-was and of-the army of-the Anatolikoi under —
Λέοντος προηγούμενος, καὶ τοῦ πρὸ αὐτοῦ Μιχαὴλ
Leo leading and of-the(-one) before him Michael
ἱπποκόμων ὁ πρῶτος· πρωτοστράτορα τοῦτόν φασιν.
of-grooms the first protostrator him they-say
δηλώσει δὲ καὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον ὁ λόγος, ὅθεν τε καὶ ὅπως
will-show and also — Theophobos the account whence both and how
ἐκ Περσῶν καταγόμενος τῷ βασιλεῖ γέγονε γνώριμος
from Persians descended to-the emperor he-became known
καὶ τὴν ἀδελφὴν αὐτοῦ εἰς γάμον ἡρμόσατο. εἰς πρεσβείαν
and the sister his in marriage he-joined on embassy
τίς ποτε τῶν ἐκ βασιλικῆς σειρᾶς Περσῶν ἀφικόμενος
someone once of-the from (the)-royal line of-Persians having-come

πρὸς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου, οὐκ ἐκ νομίμου συναφείας
to the(-city) of-Constantine not from lawful union
κρυφίου δὲ καὶ λαθραίας τοῦτον γεννηθῆναι ποιήσας
secret but and clandestine him to-be-born having-made
ἐξαπεδήμησεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ νόμος τοῖς Πέρσαις ἀπαράβατος
departed since and (a)-law for-the Persians inviolable
μή τινα τῆς παρ᾽ αὐτῶν ἀρχῆς ἐγκρατῆ γενέσθαι, εἰ
not any of-the among them rule master to-become if
μὴ τῆς βασιλικῆς μετέχῃ σειρᾶς, ἐξέλιπον δὲ ἐκ τῶν
not of-the royal he-shares line had-died-out and from the
συνεχῶν πολέμων καὶ τῇδε κἀκεῖσε μετασκηνώσεων ὑπὸ
continual wars and here and-there migrations by
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐλαυνόμενοι οἱ τῆς βασιλικῆς φυλῆς,
the Hagarenes being-driven the(-men) of-the royal tribe
ἀλλὰ καὶ λόγος ἐφέρετο πολὺς περὶ αὐτοῦ παρὰ τῶν
but also (a)-report was-current much about him from the(-men)
ἐν Περσίδι μενόντων, ὡς ᾖ τις κατὰ τὸ Βυζάντιον
in Persia remaining that was (a)-certain in the Byzantium
ὠνομασμένος Θεόφοβος (καὶ γὰρ ἦν δοθεὶς ὑπὸ τοῦ
named Theophobos and for he-was given by the
τηνικαῦτα σπείραντος τοῦτον πατρός), ἔδοξε τοῖς
then having-sown him father it-seemed(-good) to-the
ἀρίστοις τῶν Περσῶν κρύφα τινὰς ἐκπέμψαι τοῦ
best(-men) of-the Persians secretly some to-send-out of-the(-one)
ζητουμένου εἰς ἔρευναν. καὶ δὴ καταλαβόντες τὴν
sought for search and indeed having-reached the
ἡμετέραν μόγις τοῦτόν ποτε τῇ μητρὶ συνόντα καὶ κατὰ
our(-land) scarcely him at-last with-the mother being-with and in
τὴν Ὀξεῖαν ἐνδιαιτώμενον προσεφεύρισκον. ἐπεὶ γοῦν
— Oxeia dwelling they-found since at-any-rate
οὐκ ἔκ τινων μόνον ἰνδαλμάτων ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτῶν
not from some only likenesses but also of-the(-very)

τῆς ψυχῆς καὶ σώματος γνωρισμάτων ὁ ζητούμενος
of-the soul and body tokens the(-one) sought
ἐδηλοῦτο τότε καὶ ἐγνωρίζετο, προσέτι μὴν καὶ τῶν
was-made-clear then and was-recognized besides indeed also of-the(-ones)
ἐκ γειτόνων ἐμαρτύρει τις τὴν γενομένην τῇ γυναικὶ
from (the)-neighbors testified one the having-happened to-the woman
πρὸς τὸν Πέρσην συνάφειαν (οὐ γάρ τι κρυπτὸν
with the Persian union not for anything hidden
ὃ τοῖς πολλοῖς οὐ γνωσθήσεται), δήλους ἑαυτοὺς
which to-the many not will-be-known plain themselves
οἱ ἀπεσταλμένοι ποιοῦσι τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ τοῦ
the(-men) sent make to-the emperor and the(-things) of-the
δράματος σαφηνίζουσιν, εἰρήνην καὶ σπονδὰς καὶ παντὸς
drama make-clear peace and treaties and of-all
τοῦ ἔθνους ὑποταγὴν καθυπισχνούμενοι, εἰ τοῦτον αὐτοῖς
the nation subjection promising if him to-them
ἐπιδοῦναι οὐ παραιτήσεται. ἐγεγήθει γοῦν τοῖς
to-give not he-will-decline rejoiced at-any-rate at-the(-things)
ὑποσχεθεῖσιν ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ ἐπείπερ οὕτως ἔχουσαν
promised the emperor and since thus being
εὕρισκε τὴν ἀλήθειαν, ἐν βασιλείοις τοῦτον αὐλίζεσθαι καὶ
he-found the truth in (the)-palace him to-lodge and
κατασκηνοῦν ποιεῖ, μαθήμασί τε καὶ παιδείᾳ ἐπιμελούμενον.
to-dwell makes in-studies both and education being-cared-for
Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλος λόγος περὶ τοῦ Θεοφόβου (καλὸν 20
there-is and also another account about — Theophobos fine
γὰρ ἀμφοτέρους εἰρῆσθαι), μικρὸν μὲν κατὰ τὴν
for both to-have-been-told (a)-little indeed in the
ἀρχὴν διενηνοχέναι δοκῶν, τἆλλα δὲ ὅμοια σώζων τῶν
beginning to-have-differed seeming the-rest but alike keeping to-the
γεγραμμένων καὶ πάρισα· ἔστιν δὲ ὃς οὐκ ἀπὸ
written(-things) and equal there-is and (one)-who not from

πρέσβεώς τινος τὴν νόθον σποράν δέξασθαι τοῦτόν
(an)-envoy some the bastard seed to-have-received him
φησιν, ἀλλὰ κατά τινα περιπέτειαν τῶν ἐν πολέμοις
says but by some reversal of-the(-things) in wars
συμβαινόντων καὶ τὸν τούτου πατέρα, εἴτε βασιλεύοντα
happening also the his father whether reigning
εἴτε καὶ βασιλέως ἐγγὺς ὄντα κατὰ συγγένειαν, φυγεῖν ἐκ
or also to-(the)-king near being by kinship to-have-fled from
Περσίδος καὶ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν πένητα διαθλοῦντα
Persia and to the reigning(-city) (a)-poor struggling-through
βίον προσρυῆναι, κἀκεῖσε καπηλίδι τινὶ γυναικῶν
life to-have-drifted and-there to-(a)-tavern-keeper certain of-women
δουλεύοντα ὀψέ ποτε τῷ ταύτης ἔρωτι καὶ νομίμῳ
serving late at-last by-the of-her love and by-lawful
συναφείᾳ τοῦτον ἐναποτεκεῖν. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ μὲν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
union him to-have-begotten but he indeed out-of men
ἐγένετο, ἀστρονομίᾳ δέ τινι καὶ μαντείᾳ (καὶ γάρ
went by-astronomy and some and divination and for
φασι ταύτας τὰς ἐπιστήμας ἀκμάζειν ἔτι παρὰ Πέρσαις)
they-say these the sciences to-flourish still among Persians
μαθεῖν περὶ τοῦ Θεοφόβου, ζητοῦσιν αὐτοῖς εἰ ἔστι
to-have-learned about — Theophobos (for-them)-seeking to-them whether there-is
πού τις ἐκ βασιλικῆς φυλῆς καταγόμενος, καὶ ἐπείπερ
somewhere anyone from royal tribe descended and since
ἔμαθον, σπουδῇ ἐπὶ τὴν Κωνσταντίνου θεῖν εἰς τὴν τοῦ
they-learned in-haste to the (city)-of-Constantine to-run for the of-the(-one)
ζητουμένου ἔρευναν. γνωστὸν οὕτως γενέσθαι τῷ βασιλεῖ,
sought search known thus to-have-become to-the emperor
καταληφθέντος αὐτοῦ. ἐπείπερ οὖν ἡ τούτου ἐμφάνεια καὶ
having-been-found him since then the his appearance and
κατὰ τὸν βίον παρουσία ἅπασιν ἐγνώσθη τοῖς κατὰ τὴν
in the life presence to-all became-known the(-ones) in —

Περσίδα διὰ τῶν ὑποστρεψάντων ἀποστόλων, ἡδὺ πᾶσιν
Persia through the having-returned envoys sweet to-all
ἐφάνη καὶ ἐφετὸν τοῦ ἀπόστασίν τινα ἐννοῆσαι ἀπὸ
it-appeared and desirable the(-thing) (a)-revolt some to-devise from
τῶν τῆς Ἄγαρ, τῇ δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ προσχωρῆσαι,
the(-men) — of-Hagar to-the and of-the Romans rule to-go-over
ὡς ἂν τοῦ κατὰ γένος ἀρχηγοῦ εὐμοιρήσειαν.
so-that — of-the by race leader they-might-have-good-fortune
ἔτυχε δὲ ἄλλως ὁ τῶν Περσῶν ἀρχηγὸς Βάβεκ ἤδη 21
it-happened and besides the of-the Persians leader Babek already
πενταετίαν ἔχων ἐξ ἀμεραμνουνῆ ἀποστὰς καὶ
five-years having from (the)-commander-of-the-faithful having-revolted and
πτέρναν ἐπάρας κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐν χιλιάσιν ἑπτά· ὃς καὶ
(the)-heel having-raised against him in thousands seven who also
πόθῳ πρὸς τὸν Θεόφοβον καὶ φόβῳ τῷ ἐξ οὗ
by-longing for — Theophobos and by-fear the(-one) from whom
ἀπέστη Ἀγαρηνοῦ πρὸς τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἐπικράτειαν κατὰ
he-revolted Hagarene to the Roman dominion at
πόλιν Σινώπην ἔρχεται, καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ ἑαυτόν τε καὶ
(the)-city Sinope comes and to-the emperor himself both and
τὸ ὅλον ἔθνος ὑπήκοον τέθεικεν. διά τοι τοῦτο τόν
the whole nation subject made because-of indeed this —
τε Θεόφοβον ὁ Θεόφιλος τιμῇ τῇ πατρικίων
both Theophobos — Theophilos with-(the)-rank the(-one) of-patricians
ἐναριθμεῖ, καὶ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφῇ πρὸς γάμον ἐκδίδωσι,
numbers and to-the his-own sister in marriage gives(-him)
συναρμόζεσθαί τε ἕκαστον τῶν Περσῶν νομοθετεῖ τοῖς
to-be-joined both each of-the Persians he-legislates to-the
Ῥωμαίοις καὶ κατ᾽ ἐπιγαμίαν ἅπτεσθαί τε καὶ συνείρεσθαι,
Romans and by intermarriage to-be-attached both and to-be-linked
πολλοὺς τούτων τοῖς βασιλικοῖς ἐμπρέπειν ἀξιώμασι
many of-them in-the imperial to-be-distinguished dignities

πεποιηκώς. ἀλλὰ καὶ κώδιξι στρατιωτικοῖς αὐτοὺς
having-made but also in-registers military them
ἀναγράφεται, καὶ τάγμα οὕτως καλούμενον Περσικὸν
he-writes-down and (a)-regiment so called Persian
ἐγκατέστησε, καὶ τοῖς κατὰ πόλεμον ἐξιοῦσι Ῥωμαίοις
he-established and with-the(-men) to war going-out Romans
κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐναριθμεῖσθαι προσέταξε.
against the Hagarenes to-be-numbered ordered

22 Τούτοις γοῦν τεθαρρηκὼς ὁ Θεόφιλος, ἐπεὶ καὶ
in-these at-any-rate having-taken-courage — Theophilos since also
ἄλλως ἤδει τούτους ἀνδραγαθιζομένους, εἰς πόλεμον κατὰ
otherwise he-knew them doing-brave-deeds to war against
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἔξεισι καὶ τοῦ Ἰβραὴμ καθ' ἡμῶν, ὡς
the Hagarenes goes-out and — Ibrahim against us as
εἴρηται, ἐκστρατεύσαντος. ἐπείπερ γοῦν ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων
has-been-said having-campaigned since at-any-rate near one-another
ὅ τε τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἀρχηγὸς ἐγεγόνει καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος,
the both of-the Saracens leader had-come and — Theophilos
ἔδει δὲ καὶ βουλῆς, ὁ μὲν Μανουὴλ οὐ δίκαιον
it-was-needful and also of-counsel — indeed Manuel not right
ἔφησε βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων πρὸς ἀμεραμνουνῆ πολεμεῖν,
he-said (an)-emperor of-Romans against commander-of-the-faithful to-war
ἀλλά τινα μέρος λαβόντα τῶν στρατιωτικῶν ἐξιέναι κατὰ
but someone part having-taken of-the military(-forces) to-go-out to
πρόσωπον τῶν ἐχθρῶν, καὶ ἅμα μεθ' ἡμέραν τοῦτο ποιεῖν,
face of-the enemies and at-once by day this to-do
ὁ Θεόφοβος δὲ εἶναι μὲν ἐπὶ παρατάξεως τὸν βασιλέα
— Theophobos but to-be indeed in battle-line the emperor
ἐβούλετο, νύκτωρ δὲ ἐπιτεθῆναι αὐτοῖς μετὰ τοῦ τῶν
wished by-night and to-attack them with the of-the
Περσῶν πεζικοῦ, καὶ ὅτε πάλιν δεήσειεν, ἐπικυκλῶσαι
Persians infantry and when again it-should-be-needful to-encircle

τὸ ἱππικόν. ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἔπεισε τὸν βασιλέα, εἰπόντων
the cavalry but not he-persuaded the emperor many
πολλῶν, σφετεριζομένου τοῦ Θεοφόβου τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
saying appropriating — Theophobos the of-the Romans
δόξαν καὶ διὰ τοῦτο βουλομένου ἐν νυκτὶ πολεμεῖν· πλὴν
glory and because-of this wishing at night to-fight but
ἔδοξεν εἰς τοὐμφανὲς μεθ᾽ ἡμέραν συρρῆξαι τὸν πόλεμον.
it-seemed(-good) in the-open by day to-break-into the battle
καὶ ὁ μὲν Ἰβραήμ, εἴτ᾽ ἄλλως καταλαζονευόμενος εἴτε
and — indeed Ibrahim whether otherwise boasting or
δὴ καὶ φόβῳ βασιλέως περιστοιχιζόμενος, μέρος λαβὼν
indeed also by-fear of-(the)-emperor being-surrounded part having-taken
τοῦ στρατοῦ ἀνεχώρησεν, Ἀβουχάζαρ δὲ πρὸς τὸν κατὰ
of-the army withdrew Abu-Chazar and to the against
βασιλέως πόλεμον μετὰ μυριάδων ὀκτὼ ἐξαπέστειλεν,
(the)-emperor war with ten-thousands eight sent-out
οἳ καὶ καρτερῶς ἄγαν ἀνδρισαμένων ἀμφοτέρων ἐπὶ
who also stoutly very having-played-the-man both for
πολύ, τέλος ἐνδοῦναι τὰς σχολὰς μετὰ τοῦ δομεστίκου
long finally to-give-way the scholae with the domestic
καὶ πρὸς φυγὴν τραπῆναι ἐξεβιάσαντο. ὅθεν ὁ βασιλεὺς
and to flight to-turn forced whence the emperor
μετὰ τῆς βασιλικῆς φάλαγγος καὶ δύο χιλιάδων Περσῶν,
with the imperial phalanx and two thousands of-Persians
προσόντος τούτοις καὶ τοῦ Θεοφόβου, ἐπί τινος βουνοῦ
being-with these also — Theophobos on some hill
σέσωστο, τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς κίνδυνον ὑφορώμενος. καὶ ἄχρι
was-saved the about (his)-life danger suspecting and until
μὲν ἑσπέρας πολὺς ἦν ὁ περὶ αὐτὸν πόλεμος, τῶν
indeed evening great was the around him battle of-some
μὲν ἐλπιζόντων τοῦτον ἐπὶ χεῖρας λαβεῖν, τῶν δὲ
indeed hoping him into hands to-take of-others and

ἀνταμυνόντων καὶ μὴ προδοῦναι τοῦτον διακαρτερούντων.
defending and not to-betray him persevering
διὸ νυκτὸς ἄρτι γενομένης κρότοις χειρῶν τε καὶ
wherefore night just having-come with-clappings of-hands both and
ἀλαλαγμοῖς ἐχρῶντο οἱ μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, χαίρειν
with-shouts used the(-men) with the emperor to-rejoice
προσποιούμενοι, κιννύραις τε καὶ χορδαῖς καὶ ἄλλως
pretending with-lyres both and with-strings and otherwise
βουκίνων φωναῖς τὸν αἰθέρα περιεδόνουν, ἐλπίδας οὐ
of-trumpets with-sounds the air they-whirled hopes not
τὰς τυχούσας τοῖς ἐχθροῖς θέλοντες περιποιῆσαι. ὃ
the chance(-ones) for-the enemies wishing to-create which
καὶ συνέβη· μίλια γὰρ ἓξ ὑποχωρῆσαι τούτους εἰς
also happened miles for six to-withdraw them to
τοὐπίσω τινὰ κατορρωδοῦσι προσβολήν τε καὶ κύκλωσιν
the-rear some dreading attack both and encirclement
προσεγένετο. ὅθεν ἀδείας τυχόντες μικρᾶς οἱ περὶ
it-happened whence respite having-obtained small the(-men) about
τὸν βασιλέα, πόρρω που νυκτῶν φυγῇ χρησάμενοι τὴν
the emperor far somewhere by-night flight having-used the
σωτηρίαν ἐπραγματεύσαντο, καὶ πρὸς τῷ καταπροδόντι
safety procured and to the having-betrayed
τοῦτον στρατεύματι καὶ τὰ νῶτα δόντι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς
him army and the backs having-given to-the enemies
διεσώθησαν. μέμψεσι μὲν οὖν πολλαῖς ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸ
were-saved with-reproaches indeed then many the emperor the
προδεδωκὸς στράτευμα καθυπέβαλεν, χάρισι δὲ καὶ τιμαῖς
having-betrayed army subjected with-favors but and honors
διαφερόντως τοὺς περὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον ἐγέραιρεν. ὅθεν οἱ
especially the(-men) about — Theophobos he-rewarded whence the
Πέρσαι ἔρωτι διαπύρῳ πρὸς τὸν Θεόφοβον ἐξεκαίοντο, καὶ
Persians with-love fiery for — Theophobos were-kindled and

θυμηδίᾳ τινὶ ἀρρήτῳ ἀναθαρρυνόμενοι μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ τὸν κατ᾽
with-joy some unspeakable taking-courage with him the against
Ἀγαρηνῶν ὑποδύεσθαι πόλεμον ἐλιτάνευον, καὶ τρέπειν
Hagarenes to-undertake war they-begged and to-rout
τούτους ἐξ ἀηττήτου δυνάμεως ἐβεβαίουν· διὸ καὶ ὁ
them from unconquered power they-affirmed wherefore also the
βασιλεὺς ἡγεμονεύειν αὐτῶν ἐβούλετο τὸν Θεόφοβον.
emperor to-lead them wished — Theophobos
Τῷ δ᾽ ἐπιόντι ἐνιαυτῷ ἔξεισι πάλιν μετὰ δυνάμεως 23
in-the and following year goes-out again with force
ὁ Θεόφιλος, καὶ κατὰ τὸ Χαρσιανὸν πολλὰ ἐκ τῆς
— Theophilos and at the Charsianon much from the
προτέρας νίκης τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν ἀπαυθαδιαζομένων καὶ
former victory the Ishmaelites being-insolent and
ἀλαζονευομένων, τούτοις συμπλακεὶς πολλούς τε χειροῦται
boasting with-them having-engaged many both he-subdues
τούτων, καὶ λείαν λαμβάνει ὡς τῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι
of-them and booty takes about of-the five and twenty
ἄχρι χιλιάδων, καὶ μετὰ νίκης λαμπρᾶς πρὸς τὴν
up-to thousands and with victory brilliant to the
βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέρχεται. ἔτυχε γοῦν τις τῶν
reigning(-city) returns it-happened at-any-rate someone of-the
ἐπὶ χειρῶν εὐφυΐᾳ ὀνομαστῶν αἰχμάλωτον ληφθῆναι
in hands skill famous captive to-be-taken
Ἀγαρηνῶν. τούτῳ μεγάλας τὰς κατὰ πόλεμον ἀρετὰς
of-Hagarenes to-him great the in war virtues
δι᾽ ἐγγράφων ἐγκωμίων ὁ τῶν σχολῶν προεστὼς
through written encomia the of-the scholae chief
ἐμαρτύρει, καὶ ἐβεβαίου ὡς εἴη τε δεξιὸς περὶ τὴν
testified and affirmed that he-was both clever at the
ἱππασίαν καὶ τὴν τοῦ σώματος ῥώμην γενναῖος, καὶ ὅτι
horsemanship and in-the of-the body strength noble and that

δυσὶ δόρασι χρώμενος περὶ τὴν ἱππασίαν [μὲν] ἐντέχνως
two spears using in the horsemanship indeed skillfully
ἄγαν καὶ εὐφυῶς πρὸς τοὺς κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ διαβαίνει. ἐπεὶ
very and cleverly against the(-ones) against him he-passes since
γοῦν ἐν τῷ τῶν ἵππων ἀμιλλητηρίῳ ὁ τοῦ δομεστίκου
at-any-rate in the of-the horses racecourse the of-the domestic
θρίαμβος ἐτελεῖτο, προηγεῖτο δὲ οὗτος τῷ τοῦ σώματος
triumph was-being-held led and this(-man) by-the of-the body
μεγέθει καὶ τῷ τῆς ψυχῆς ἀναστήματι τοὺς περὶ αὐτοῦ
size and by-the of-the soul stature the about him
λόγους ἐπισφραγίζων, ἐκέλευσέ πως ἰδὼν ὁ
words sealing ordered somehow having-seen(-him) the
βασιλεύς, καὶ τοῖς ἐπαίνοις κλαπείς, ἵππον τε τὸν ἄνδρα
emperor and by-the praises beguiled (a)-horse both the man
ἐπιβῆναι καὶ δόρατα λαβόντα δύο τὴν εὐφυΐαν τούτου καὶ
to-mount and spears having-taken two the skill his and
ἀριστείαν ἁπάσῃ τῇ πόλει ἐνδείξασθαι. καὶ δὴ τούτου
prowess to-all the city to-display and indeed this
γενομένου καὶ τοῖς ἀπειροτέροις τέρψιν παρέχοντος τῇ
having-happened and to-the less-experienced delight providing to-the
ὁράσει, Θεόδωρος ὁ Κρατερὸς οὕτω λεγόμενος, ὁ
sight Theodore the Krateros so called the(-one)
καὶ μετὰ βραχὺ ἀρχηγὸς τῆς τῶν ἁγίων μβ΄ μαρτύρων
also after (a)-little leader of-the of-the holy 42 martyrs
φάλαγγος γεγονώς, πλησιάζων τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐξεμυκτήριζε
phalanx having-become approaching the emperor sneered-at
τὸν Ἀγαρηνόν, ἀνδρεῖον οὐδὲν φάσκων οὐδὲ καταπληκτικὸν
the Hagarene manly nothing saying nor astounding
ἐνδεικνύμενον. ᾧ καὶ χαλεπήνας ὁ βασιλεὺς "ἀλλὰ
showing to-whom also having-been-angered the emperor but
δι᾽ ἰσχύος ἔχεις αὐτός, ὦ θηλυδρία καὶ ἄνανδρε, τοιοῦτόν
by strength can you O effeminate(-one) and unmanly such

τι ἐργάσασθαι;" καὶ ὃς αὐτίκα "δύο μέν, βασιλεῦ,
something to-do and he at-once two indeed emperor
μὴ μαθὼν οὐδὲ μεταχειρίσασθαι δόρατα δύναμαι· οὐδὲ
not having-learned not-even to-handle spears am-I-able nor
γὰρ ἐν πολέμῳ τοιαύτης χρεία ἀδολεσχίας· ἑνὶ δὲ
for in war of-such need(-is-there) idle-chatter with-one but
δόρατι χρώμενος τὴν εἰς θεὸν πεποίθησιν ἔχω βεβαίαν
spear using the in god trust I-have firm
ὡς κρημνίσω τε τοῦτον καὶ τοῦ ἵππου καταβαλῶ."
that I-will-throw-down both him and from-the horse cast(-him)
τὴν παρρησίαν γοῦν μὴ φέρων ὁ βασιλεὺς ἦ μὴν
the frankness at-any-rate not bearing the emperor verily indeed
ἔφησε, κατὰ τῆς κεφαλῆς αὐτοῦ τὸν ὅρκον ἐπαγαγών,
he-said on the head his the oath having-brought
θανάτῳ παραδοῦναι τὸν ἅγιον, εἰ μὴ τοὺς λόγους ὄντως
to-death to-hand-over the holy(-man) if not the words really
εἰς ἔργον ἀγάγοιεν. ἵππον οὖν ἀναβὰς ὁ Θεόδωρος
into deed they-should-bring (a)-horse then having-mounted — Theodore
καὶ δόρυ λαβὼν ἐν χεροῖν θᾶττον ἢ λόγος ἐν
and (a)-spear having-taken in (both)-hands quicker than word in
οὐ πολλαῖς περιόδοις τὸν Σαρακηνὸν κατεκρήμνισε, καὶ
not many rounds the Saracen threw-down and
μέγα τούτῳ φρονεῖν δέδωκεν οὐδαμῶς. ὁ μὲν οὖν
great on-this to-think gave in-no-way the indeed then
βασιλεὺς ᾐσχύνθη ἅτε δὴ καταβεβλημένον ἰδὼν
emperor was-ashamed inasmuch-as indeed thrown-down having-seen
τὸν Σαρακηνὸν ὑπ' ἀνδρὸς εὐνούχου καὶ οὐ γενναίου τινός,
the Saracen by (a)-man eunuch and not noble some
πανοῦργος δὲ τέως ὢν καὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν αἰδούμενος τοῦ
knavish but for-a-time being and the virtue respecting of-the

ἀνδρὸς ἐφιλοφρονήσατο μὲν λόγοις αὐτόν, στολάς τε
man treated-kindly indeed with-words him robes both
καὶ περιβολὰς αὐτῷ τὴν πολιτείαν αἰδούμενος ἐδωρήσατο.
and garments to-him the way-of-life respecting gave

24–29 · MANUEL, JOHN THE GRAMMARIAN, AND SOZOPETRA

Manuel the general rescues Theophilos when the Ishmaelites surround him in battle, and is honored as his savior. Envy then turns against him, and, warned by his former slave, now the emperor's cupbearer, that Theophilos means to blind him, he flees to the Hagarenes and wins victories for them. Regretting it, Theophilos sends the monk Jannes in disguise to Baghdad with his pectoral cross and a chrysobull of amnesty; Manuel gets the caliph to send him to the frontier with his son, sends the boy home, and is made magistros and domestic of the scholae. Jannes is ordained patriarch as the prize of impiety. A captive woman possessed by a spirit foretells that the emperor's son and wife will reign, Jannes' fall, and the restoration of the images, and Theophilos tonsures Martinakes. The Khazars ask for a fortress, and Petronas builds Sarkel on the Tanais and goes out as Cherson's first general. Theophilos destroys Sozopetra, the caliph's birthplace; the Persians at Sinope proclaim Theophobos emperor against his will, and Theophilos pardons them, disperses them among the themes, and soon has Theophobos killed.

24 Ἄρτι δὲ πάλιν τοῦ ἔαρος ἱσταμένου καὶ τοὺς μαχητὰς
just and again the spring beginning and the fighters
κατ' ἀλλήλων ὁπλίζοντος, ὁ Θεόφιλος δύναμιν πολλὴν
against one-another arming — Theophilos force much
ἠθροικὼς κατὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἔξεισι, καὶ τὸν ὅσιον
having-gathered against the Saracens goes-out and the holy
Μεθόδιον τῆς εἱρκτῆς ἀναρρυσάμενος καὶ μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ
Methodios from-the prison having-rescued and with himself
ἐπαγόμενος, οὐ νῦν μόνον καὶ πρῶτον ἀλλ' ἀεὶ τοῦτο

ποιῶν καὶ πλησίον που ἔχων αὐτόν, εἴτε τοῦ
doing and near somewhere having him whether of-the(-things)
ἀσαφῆ ἕνεκεν καὶ πολλοῖς ἄγνωστα διαλύειν καὶ γνώριμα
obscure for-the-sake and to-many unknown to-solve and known
τούτῳ ποιεῖν διὰ τὴν ἐνυπάρχουσαν αὐτῷ σοφίαν
for-him to-make because-of the indwelling in-him wisdom
(καὶ γὰρ ἐτύγχανε τῶν ἀποκρυφῶν ἄγαν ζητητικὸς ὁ
and for he-was of-the hidden(-things) very inquisitive —
Θεόφιλος), εἴτε δή τινας ἐπαναστάσεις φυλαττόμενος
Theophilos or indeed some uprisings guarding-against
παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ παθεῖν διὰ τὸν κατὰ τῶν ἁγίων καὶ
from him to-suffer because-of the against the holy and
σεπτῶν εἰκόνων πόλεμον. οὐ μικρῶς γὰρ ἐδόκει τιμᾶν
revered images war not slightly for he-seemed to-honor
τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ σέβεσθαι τὸ τῆς πολιτείας ἔκκριτον καὶ
the man and to-revere the of-the way-of-life choice and
φιλόθεον· διά τοι τοῦτο ἄγειν μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ ἀλλ᾽
god-loving because-of indeed this to-take(-him) with himself but
οὐ κατόπιν ἀπολιμπάνειν ἐφαίνετο τούτῳ σεμνόν. καὶ
not behind to-leave appeared to-him dignified and
δῆτα προσπεσόντων ἀλλήλοις τῶν στρατευμάτων, καὶ τῶν
indeed having-fallen-upon one-another the armies and the
Ἰσμαηλιτῶν καθυπερτερούντων, συνέβη τὸν βασιλέα πως
Ishmaelites prevailing it-happened the emperor somehow
περικυκλωθέντα ὑπὸ τῶν ἐχθρῶν κινδυνεύειν περὶ ψυχῆς,
surrounded by the enemies to-be-endangered about (his)-life
ὅτε δὴ καὶ Μανουὴλ ὁ στρατηγέτης δεινὸν ἡγησάμενος
when indeed also Manuel the general terrible having-thought(-it)
καὶ πέρα τοῦτο δεινὸν δορυάλωτον βασιλέα γενέσθαι,
and beyond this terrible spear-captured (an)-emperor to-become
τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀναθαρρύνας καὶ "ὦ ἄνδρες" εἰπών,
the(-men) about him having-encouraged and O men having-said

"τὰς μελίσσας αἰδεῖσθε, αἳ τοῦ βασιλέως κατόπιν τῷ
the bees respect which of-the king behind by-the
φίλτρῳ βαλλόμεναι πέτανται," εἰσῄει ὥσπερ τις λέων
love struck fly went-in like some lion
περὶ τῶν τέκνων βαλλόμενος, τὸν βασιλέα ζητῶν. ὡς δ'
about the cubs struck the emperor seeking when and
εὗρεν ἀποκαμόντα καὶ τὴν σωτηρίαν μὲν ὑπὸ δειλίας
he-found(-him) worn-out and the safety indeed from cowardice
ἀπογνόντα, προφασιζόμενον δὲ ὡς μὴ βούλεσθαι τὸν
having-despaired pretending and that not to-wish the
λαὸν λιπόντα διαφυγεῖν, "ἄγε δή" ἔφησεν, "ὦ βασιλεῦ,
people having-left to-escape come indeed he-said O emperor
ἀκολούθει μοι εὐρεῖαν τὴν φάλαγγα ποιοῦντι καὶ πολλοὺς
follow me wide the phalanx making and many
ἀποσφάττοντι." ὡς δ' ὁ Μανουὴλ ἐξῄει καὶ τὸν ἑπόμενον
slaughtering when and — Manuel went-out and the following
δεδιότα πολλὰ καὶ κατεπτηχότα βασιλέα οὐκ εἶχεν, αὖθις
fearing much and cowering emperor not he-had again
ἐρρήγνυ μετὰ πολλῶν τὴν φάλαγγα, τοῦτον ἐξελέσθαι
he-broke with many the phalanx him to-rescue
βουλόμενος. ὡς δ' ἡμάρτανεν αὖθις, καὶ τρίτον δὲ
wishing when and he-failed again also (a)-third(-time) and
ἐκ στερροτέρας ψυχῆς τὴν συνέχουσαν φάλαγγα τὸν
from (a)-firmer soul the surrounding phalanx the
βασιλέα διέκοψεν, καὶ πλησίον ἐγεγόνει τούτου, ὡς καὶ
emperor he-cut-through and near had-come to-him so-that also
ἱμᾶσι τὸν ἐπιφέροντα τοῦτον ἐπιδῆσαι ἵππον καὶ αὖθις
with-thongs the carrying him to-bind horse and again
ὑπεξερύσασθαι ἐτύγχανεν. ἐτρώθη τὴν ψυχὴν ὁ ἀνήρ,
to-drag-him-out he-happened was-wounded in-the soul the man
βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων αἰχμάλωτον γενέσθαι φοβούμενος καὶ
(an)-emperor of-Romans captive to-become fearing and

τῶν ἐχθρῶν ὑποπόδιον· ὅθεν ταχυτέραν ἅμα καὶ δεξιωτέραν
of-the enemies footstool whence quicker at-once and more-clever
τὴν ὑποστροφὴν ποιήσας, καὶ θάνατον ἀπειλήσας αὐτῷ
the return having-made and death having-threatened to-him
εἰ μὴ τούτῳ συνακολουθήσειεν, ὀψὲ καὶ μόλις τοῦ
if not him he-would-follow late and scarcely from-the
κινδύνου διέσωσεν, ὀλίγων τινῶν κατόπιν διακρουόντων
danger he-saved(-him) few some behind beating-off
τὸν πόλεμον, καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἐγκατέλεξε. διὸ τιμαῖς
the battle and to-the his-own(-men) enrolled(-him) wherefore with-honors
τε τοῦτον ἐφαμίλλως ἐδεξιοῦτο καὶ πρεπούσαις δωρεαῖς
both him emulously he-welcomed and fitting gifts
ἐθεράπευεν, εὐεργέτην καὶ σωτῆρα πολλάκις ἀποκαλῶν.
courted benefactor and savior often calling(-him)
Ἀλλ' ὁ φθόνος ἴσχυσε κατ' αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὁ κατὰ πολλῶν 25
but the envy prevailed against him and the(-one) against many
καὶ τοσούτων μυριάδων ἀνδραγαθήσας καὶ τῶν ἐχθρῶν
and so-many ten-thousands having-done-brave-deeds and from-the enemies
διασώσας τὸν βασιλέα ὑπ' ὀλίγων οἰκείων κατεπαλαίετο.
having-saved the emperor by few intimates was-thrown
ὅθεν εἰς καθοσίωσιν καὶ ἐπιβουλὴν παραλόγως ἐκ
whence for treason and plotting unreasonably from
λοιδορίας ἐγκληθείς, καὶ πολὺν εἶναι τὸν φθόνον τὸν
slander having-been-charged and great to-be the envy the
κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐνιδών, ἐπεὶ διά τινος πιστοῦ ἀνεμάνθανεν,
against him having-seen when through some faithful(-man) he-learned
δούλου μὲν πρότερον ὄντος τοῦ Μανουήλ, τότε δὲ ἐκ
(a)-slave indeed before being — of-Manuel then but from
χαρίσματος οἰνοχοοῦντος τῷ Θεοφίλῳ καὶ ἐξυπηρετοῦντος,
favor pouring-wine — for-Theophilos and serving
ὡς μέλλοι τοῦτον ἀποτυφλοῦν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν ποιῆσαι
that he-was-about him to-blind and of-eyes to-make

χωρίς, ἀποστασίαν τολμᾷ καὶ πρὸς Ἀγαρηνοὺς μετατίθεται,
without revolt dares and to Hagarenes goes-over
μέγας παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς ὀφθεὶς καὶ τιμαῖς ταῖς μεγάλαις
great among them seen and with-honors the great
τιμώμενος. ἐνέκειτο γοῦν κατὰ τῶν πλησιαζόντων αὐτοῖς
honored he-pressed at-any-rate against the neighboring them
ἐχθρῶν, οἳ οὕτω δὴ Κορμάτοι καλοῦνται, πολύς, καὶ
enemies who so indeed Khurramites are-called great(-ly) and
νίκας οὐ τὰς τυχούσας ἐποίει ἅτε δὴ καὶ πείρᾳ καὶ
victories not the chance(-ones) made inasmuch-as indeed also in-experience and
συνέσει διαφέρων πολλῶν. καὶ τὸ δὴ κρεῖττον λόγου,
intelligence surpassing many and the(-thing) indeed beyond word
ὅτι μετὰ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων Ῥωμαίων καὶ καθειργνυμένων
that with the captives Romans and shut-in
ἐν φυλακαῖς ταῦτα εἰργάζετο, πίστιν αὐτοῖς δοὺς
in prisons these(-things) he-worked pledge to-them having-given
ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν ὡς οὐ φεύξονται· ὅτε καὶ τὸ Χορασὰν
on-behalf-of them that not they-will-flee when also the Khorasan
λέγεται κατασχεῖν καὶ τῷ ἀμεραμνουνῇ ὑποτάξαι οὐ
he-is-said to-have-seized and to-the commander-of-the-faithful to-have-subjected not
τῷ διαφέρειν μόνον εἰς ἀνδρίαν αὐτοῖς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ
by-the to-excel only in courage them but also by-the
καινῶς πως καὶ παρηλλαγμένως ὀφθῆναι αὐτοῖς· ἥ τε
newly somehow and in-altered(-guise) to-be-seen by-them the both
γὰρ τῶν σχημάτων μεταβολὴ καὶ ἡ τῶν φωνῶν παρὰ
for of-the forms change and the of-the voices contrary-to
δόξαν μεταλλαγὴ εἰς δειλίαν ἐμπίπτειν ἠνάγκαζε τοὺς
expectation alteration into cowardice to-fall compelled the
πολεμίους. οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλῶν ἀτιθάσσων θηρίων
enemies not indeed and but also from-many untamed beasts
κατασινομένων αὐτοὺς καὶ βλαπτόντων ἐλευθερώσας, καὶ
ravaging them and harming having-freed(-them) and

μεγάλων αἴτιος καλῶν αὐτοῖς γεγονώς, διαφερόντως
of-great cause good(-things) for-them having-become especially
ἠγαπήθη αὐτῷ τε τῷ ἄρχοντι καὶ τῇ γερουσίᾳ αὐτοῦ.
was-loved by-(the)-very both — ruler and by-the council his
Ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεὶ μετάμελον τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐνεποίησε ταῦτα 26
but since regret in-the emperor produced these(-things)
διακούοντι καὶ λύπης αἴτιος κατέστη πολλῆς, πάντα κάλων
(him)-hearing and of-grief (a)-cause became much every rope
ἐδόκει τούτῳ κινεῖν ὡς ἂν τὸν ἄνδρα μετακαλέσοιτο
seemed(-good) to-him to-move so-that — the man he-might-recall
καὶ παλινδρομῆσαι ποιήσειεν. ὅθεν οἱ μὲν εἰρηνικὰς
and to-run-back make whence some indeed peaceful
σπονδὰς διὰ τοῦ μοναχοῦ ποιῆσαι τοῦτόν φασιν Ἰαννοῦ,
treaties through the monk to-make him say Jannes
πρὸς καιρὸν τοῦ κατὰ τὰς φυλακὰς διαλλαγίου, καὶ πρὸς
at (the)-time of-the at the prisons exchange and to
τὰ ἴδια μεταγαγεῖν, ὅτε καὶ χρυσοβούλλιον τούτῳ καὶ
the own to-bring-back when also (a)-chrysobull to-him and
ὅρκους ἀπαθείας δι᾽ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ ἑτέρων προτέρων
oaths of-impunity through him both and other former
πολλῶν ἐξαπέστειλεν. οἱ δὲ δι᾽ αὐτοῦ μὲν τοῦ Ἰαννοῦ,
many he-sent-out others and through himself indeed — Jannes
οὐ μὴν οὕτως διὰ φανερᾶς ἐντεύξεως καὶ συντυχίας,
not indeed thus through open meeting and encounter
κρυπτῆς δὲ καὶ ἀδήλου πολλοῖς, ἣ τὸν Ἰαννὴν γνώμῃ
secret but and unclear to-many which — Jannes by-(the)-purpose
τοῦ Θεοφίλου ἀφ᾽ ἡμῶν μεταστήσασα καὶ μεταμφιάσασα
— of-Theophilos from us having-removed and having-disguised
καὶ τοῖς ῥακοδυτοῦσιν Ἴβηρσι καὶ μοναχοῖς τοῖς πρὸς
and to-the rag-wearing Iberians and monks the(-ones) to
τὰ Ἱεροσόλυμα μετὰ λιτῆς φοιτῶσιν ἐξομοιώσασά τε καὶ
the Jerusalem with litany going having-likened both and

συγκαταμίξασα τῷ ἐν ᾧ διητᾶτο οἴκῳ ὁ Μανουὴλ κατὰ
having-mixed to-the in which lived house — Manuel in
τὸ Βαγδᾶ ἐγκατέστησεν ἐπαιτεῖν τε προσποιησάμενον
— Baghdad established(-him) to-beg both pretending
καὶ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως μετάνοιαν ἀναδιδάσκοντα. καὶ
and the of-the emperor repentance informing and
μάρτυρας τῶν εἰρημένων τό τε τοῦ βασιλέως ἐγκόλπιον
witnesses of-the (things)-said the both of-the emperor pectoral-cross
καὶ τὸ χρυσοβούλλιον ἐδίδου, συμπάθειάν τε καὶ παντελῆ
and the chrysobull he-gave sympathy both and complete
τῶν κακῶν ἀμνηστίαν εὐαγγελιζόμενα· ἃ καὶ λαβὼν
of-the evils amnesty announcing which also having-taken
εἰς χεῖρας ὁ Μανουήλ, καὶ οἱονεὶ τὴν ψυχὴν ἀνακαείς,
into hands — Manuel and as-it-were the soul rekindled
τὴν οἴκαδε ἐμελέτα ἐπάνοδον. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἔκ τε τοῦ
the homeward he-planned return since at-any-rate from both the
χρόνου καὶ τῶν πρότερον ἡμῖν εἰρημένων αὐτοῦ κατὰ τῶν
time and of-the before by-us mentioned his against the
πολεμίων ἔργων ἡ πρὸς αὐτὸν πίστις οὐ μείωσιν αὔξησιν δέ
enemies deeds the toward him trust not diminution increase but
τινα καθ' ἑκάστην ἐλάμβανεν, μηνύει τῷ ἀμεραμνουνῆ
some by each(-day) received he-informs to-the commander-of-the-faithful
ὡς ἐφέσεως ἔχοι καὶ κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατεῦσαι,
that of-desire he-might-have also against the Romans to-campaign
καὶ τοὺς ἐχθρούς, οἳ κατεῖπον αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα,
and the enemies who denounced him to the emperor
ἀμύνασθαι, καὶ κατὰ τὴν Καππαδοκίαν τὰς οἰκήσεις
to-avenge-himself-on and in — Cappadocia the dwellings
ἔχοντας· καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ καὶ τὸν υἱὸν ἠξίου πέμπεσθαι
having and with him also the son he-asked to-be-sent
τὸν ἀμεραμνουνῆ εἰς πλείονα τῶν ὑπονοουμένων
the commander-of-the-faithful for greater of-the(-things) suspected

ἀσφάλειαν. κατανεύει τοῖς αἰτηθεῖσιν ὁ Ἰσμαήλ, καὶ
security nods-assent to-the(-things) asked — Ishmael and
κατὰ τῶν ὧν ἐπεθύμει ἐξέπεμπεν. ὡς δὲ πλησίον
against the(-ones) which he-desired sent(-him)-out when and near
που τοῖς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὁρίοις ἐγίνοντο, δῆλα ποιεῖται
somewhere to-the of-the Romans bounds they-came clear he-makes
τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν τῷ Καππαδοκίας στρατηγῷ καὶ
the(-things) concerning him to-the of-Cappadocia general and
τὴν εἰσαῦθις πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ἐπάνοδον, καὶ ἅμα ἐδίδασκεν
the again to Romans return and at-once he-taught
ὡς χρὴ κατὰ τὸν δεῖνα τόπον λόχον τινὰ καὶ
that (one)-must at the such-and-such place ambush some and
ἐνέδραν γενέσθαι, ἵν᾽ ὅταν ἐκεῖσε δὴ γένωμαι, τὰ μὲν
trap to-be(-set) that when there indeed I-come the indeed
Σαρακηνῶν κοῦρσα ἐπ᾽ ἄλλον δή τινα τόπον ἐξελαύνειν
of-Saracens raids to another indeed some place to-drive-off
ποιήσας μετὰ τοῦ λόχου δὴ γένωμαι καὶ πρὸς τὰ
having-made with the ambush indeed I-may-be and to the
Ῥωμαίων ἤθη ἐπαναδράμω αὐτός. ὃ καὶ γέγονεν· ἄρτι
of-Romans haunts may-run-back myself which also happened just
γὰρ ἐκεῖσε δή που ἐπλησίαζεν, καὶ πολλὰ τὸν τοῦ
for there indeed somewhere he-approached and much the —
Ἰσμαὴλ υἱὸν κατασπασάμενος "ἄπιθι" ἔφη "ὑγιής, ἄπιθι,
of-Ishmael son having-embraced go-away he-said healthy go-away
τέκνον πρὸς τὸν πατέρα σου· ἐμὲ δὲ ἴσθι πορευόμενον
child to the father your me but know going
οὐ πρὸς ἄλλον, πρὸς δὲ τὸν ἐμὸν ὄντως βασιλέα καὶ
not to another to but the my truly emperor and
κύριον." διασωθεὶς δ᾽ ἐκεῖθεν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἰς
lord having-been-saved and thence to the reigning(-city) to
τὸν ἐν Βλαχέρναις θεῖον ἐπεφοιτήκει ναόν, τὸν Θεόφιλον
the at Blachernai divine had-gone church — Theophilos

εἰδὼς οὐ τὴν τυχοῦσαν ἔχοντα πίστιν εἰς αὐτόν. ὅθεν
knowing not the chance having trust toward him whence
καὶ μάγιστρος τιμᾶται, καὶ σύντεκνος ἔκτοτε χρηματίζει
also magistros he-is-honored and fellow-godparent from-then is-styled
αὐτοῦ, καὶ δομέστικος προβιβάζεται τῶν σχολῶν. εἰσὶ
his and domestic is-promoted of-the scholae there-are
μὲν δ' οἳ φυγῇ μὲν χρήσασθαι τὸν Μανουήλ φασι πρὸς
indeed and who flight indeed to-have-used — Manuel say to
τοὺς ἐξ Ἄγαρ, καὶ διὰ τὴν Θεοφίλου, ὡς εἴρηται,
the(-men) from Hagar and because-of — of-Theophilos as has-been-said
ἐπανελθόντα σπουδήν, οὐ μὴν καθοσίωσιν ἐγκληθέντα
having-returned zeal not indeed treason having-been-charged
ἐπὶ Θεοφίλου φυγεῖν, ἐπὶ Μιχαὴλ δὲ τοῦ Τραυλοῦ τοῦ
under Theophilos to-have-fled under Michael but the Stammerer the
τούτου πατρός, εἴτε καὶ μίσει τῷ πρὸς αὐτὸν φερόμενον,
his father whether also by-hatred the toward him being-carried
εἴτε δὴ καὶ παλαιὰν δεδοικότα μῆνιν αὐτοῦ.
or indeed also old fearing wrath his
Χειροτονεῖται δὲ καὶ Ἰαννὴς ἐπίσκοπος Κωνσταντινουπόλεως
is-ordained and also Jannes bishop of-Constantinople
κατὰ τὴν εἰκάδα πρώτην τοῦ Ἀπριλλίου μηνός, ἡμέρᾳ
on the twentieth first of-the April month on-day
πρώτῃ, ἆθλον ἀσεβείας καὶ ἀπιστίας καὶ τοῦ μὴ τὰς
first (as)-prize of-impiety and of-unbelief and of-the not the
θείας εἰκόνας προσκυνεῖν τὴν ἱερωσύνην ἀπενεγκάμενος.
divine images to-venerate the priesthood having-carried-off
27 Ζητητικῷ δὲ τῷ Θεοφίλῳ τυγχάνοντι καὶ ἄγαν ἐγκειμένῳ
inquisitive and — Theophilos being and very intent
περὶ γνώσεως τῶν μελλόντων βασιλεύειν ἀνδρῶν, γύναιόν
about knowledge of-the being-about to-reign men (a)-little-woman
τι ληφθὲν ἐκ τῶν Ἄγαρ κατὰ τοὺς πολέμους τούτους
some taken from the(-men) of-Hagar in the wars these

Πύθωνος κατεχόμενον πνεύματι παρά τινων ἀνεμάνθανε.
of-Python possessed by-spirit from some he-learned-of
τοῦτο οὖν ἤγαγέ τε παρ᾽ ἑαυτῷ ὁ Θεόφιλος, καὶ τίνες εἶεν
this then brought both to himself — Theophilos and who might-be
ὧν ἡ βασιλεία διαρκέσει ἐπὶ πολὺ ἐπυνθάνετο. ὡς δὲ
of-whom the empire will-last for long he-inquired when and
σοῦ μὲν διάδοχον τὸν σὸν υἱὸν καὶ γαμετὴν ἀπεφοίβασέ τε
of-you indeed (as)-successor the your son and wife she-prophesied both
γενέσθαι καὶ ἐμαντεύσατο, μετέπειτα δὲ τοὺς Μαρτινακίους
to-become and divined afterward and the Martinakioi
ἐπὶ πολὺ τῆς βασιλείας κατασχεῖν, αὐτίκα τοῦτον τὸν
for long the empire to-hold at-once this —
Μαρτινάκην, καί τοί γε προσῳκειωμένον αὐτῷ πως
Martinakes and yet at-least related to-him somehow
κατὰ συγγένειαν, πρὸς τὸ μονάζειν ἀπέκειρεν, καὶ τὸν
by kinship for the to-be-a-monk he-tonsured and the
ἑαυτοῦ οἶκον θεοῦ καὶ μοναχῶν ἐναπέδειξεν ἐνδιαίτημα. οὐ
his-own house of-god and of-monks he-declared dwelling not
τοῦτο δὲ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ πολλὰ τῶν μελλόντων τὸ γύναιον
this and only but also many of-the future(-things) the little-woman
ἀπεθέσπισεν· τόν τε γὰρ Ἰαννὴν τοῦ πατριαρχικοῦ
prophesied — both for Jannes from-the patriarchal
θρόνου πόρρω που γενέσθαι ἐνεσήμανεν, καὶ τὴν τῶν
throne far somewhere to-be she-indicated and the of-the
σεπτῶν εἰκόνων ἀναστήλωσιν κατεσάφησεν. οἷς τὴν
revered images restoration she-made-clear at-which the
ψυχὴν ὁ Θεόφιλος ἐπώδυνος γεγονὼς καὶ δυσαπόνιπτα
soul — Theophilos pained having-become and hard-to-wash-off
ταῦτα φέρων ἀεὶ πολλὰ πολλάκις ἐπῇδε τῇ ἑαυτοῦ
these(-things) bearing always much often he-chanted to-the his-own
γαμετῇ, πρὸς δὲ καὶ λογοθέτῃ Θεοκτίστῳ παρῄνει
wife besides and also to-(the)-logothete Theoktistos he-exhorted

καὶ πλήθει κατεδέσμει ὅρκων τοῦ μήτε τὸν Ἰαννὴν
and by-(a)-multitude bound of-oaths of-the neither — Jannes
ὑπερορίας τυχεῖν μήτε μὴν τὰς εἰκόνας προσκυνήσεως.
exile to-obtain nor indeed the images veneration
τοσοῦτον δὲ ἄρα τὰ περὶ τῆς βασιλείας ἠρεύνα τε
so-much and then the(-things) about the empire he-searched both
καὶ ἐξιχνίαζεν ὡς καὶ παρὰ τοῦ Ἰαννοῦ ἐν λεκανομαντείᾳ
and tracked-out so-that also by — Jannes in lecanomancy
τὸν μέλλοντα Βασίλειον τὴν τοιαύτην ὑπειληφέναι ἀρχὴν
the future Basil the such to-have-taken-up rule
καθαρῶς ἐνιδεῖν. οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν
clearly to-see not indeed and but also Constantine the(-one)
κατὰ τὸν Τριφύλιον τὰ αὐτῷ συμβησόμενα διετράνου
of — Triphylios the(-things) to-him going-to-happen declared
τὸ γύναιον, πολλὰ λιπαροῦντα καὶ πυνθανόμενον· αὐτόν
the little-woman much entreating and inquiring him
τε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς αὐτοῦ υἱεῖς κληρικοῦ σχῆμα ἐπὶ τοῦ
both for and the his sons of-(a)-cleric (the)-guise under —
Βασιλείου διαμειφθῆναι· ὃ καὶ γέγονεν. καὶ Γεώργιον
Basil to-be-changed which also happened and George
δὲ τὸν τὰς στρατιωτικὰς δέλτους ἐπειλημμένον ἐπὶ
too the(-one) the military registers having-taken-hold at
σφενδόνῃ τῇ κατὰ τὸν ἱππόδρομον ἀποκτανθῆναι, καὶ
(the)-sphendone the at the hippodrome to-be-killed and
τὴν ὕπαρξιν αὐτοῦ τῷ βασιλικῷ ἀνειλῆφθαι ταμείῳ. καὶ
the property his to-the imperial to-have-been-taken treasury and
ταῦτα μὲν ὧδέ πῃ κατὰ Πλάτωνα. ***
these(-things) indeed thus somehow according-to Plato (lacuna)
28 Τῷ δ' ἐπιόντι ἔτει πρὸς τὸν κατ' ἀλλήλων πόλεμον
in-the and following year to the against one-another war
οἵ τ' Ἀγαρηνοὶ καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος ἐξελθόντες ἔμειναν
the both Hagarenes and — Theophilos having-gone-out remained

ἄπρακτοι παντελῶς ἀλλήλους καταπτοούμενοι, καὶ πρὸς
unsuccessful altogether one-another cowering-before and to
τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἐπανέστρεφον. κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν
the their-own(-lands) returned at and the same time
ὅ τε χαγάνος Χαζαρίας καὶ ὁ Πὲχ πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
the both khagan of-Khazaria and — Bek to the autocrat
Θεόφιλον ἔπεμπον πρεσβευτάς, τὸ κάστρον ὅπερ οὕτω
Theophilos sent envoys the fortress which so
Σάρκελ κατονομάζεται αὐτοῖς κτισθῆναι ἐξαιτούμενοι,
Sarkel is-named for-them to-be-built asking
ὅπερ ἑρμηνεύεται μὲν Λευκὸν οἴκημα, ἔστι δὲ καὶ
which is-interpreted indeed White dwelling it-is and also
κατὰ τὸν Τάναϊν ποταμόν, ὃς τούς τε Πατζινακίτας
at — Tanais river which the both Pechenegs
ἐντεῦθεν καὶ αὐτοὺς διείργει τοὺς Χαζάρους ἐκεῖθεν,
from-here and the(-very) separates the Khazars from-there
ἔνθα καὶ Χαζάρων ταξεῶται καθέζονται τριακόσιοι κατὰ
where also of-Khazars officers sit three-hundred by
χρόνον ἐναλλασσόμενοι. ὧν τῇ αἰτήσει καὶ παρακλήσει
time being-changed of-whom by-the request and entreaty
πεισθεὶς ὁ Θεόφιλος τὸν σπαθαροκανδιδάτον Πετρωνᾶν
persuaded — Theophilos the spatharokandidatos Petronas
τοῦ ἐπονομαζομένου Καματεροῦ, μετὰ χελανδίων
of-the(-one) surnamed Kamateros with chelandia
βασιλικοπλωΐμων καὶ τοῦ Κατεπάνω τῆς Παφλαγονίας
imperial-navy and the Katepano of-the Paphlagonia
ἀπέστειλεν, εἰς πέρας τὴν τούτων αἴτησιν κελεύσας
sent to (the)-end the their request having-ordered
ὑπαγαγεῖν. ὃς ἅμα τῷ τὴν Χερσῶνα καταλαβεῖν τὰς
to-bring who at-once with-the — Cherson to-reach the
μὲν μακρὰς νῆας ἐκεῖσέ που προσορμίσας ἐπὶ τῆς
indeed long ships there somewhere having-moored on the

χέρσου κατέλιπεν, τὸν δὲ λαὸν ἐν στρογγύλαις εἰσαγαγὼν
land left the and people in round having-put
ναυσὶ μέχρι τοῦ Τανάϊδος διεβιβάσθη, ἔνθα καὶ τὴν πόλιν
ships up-to — Tanais was-carried-across where also the city
ἔδει τούτοις οἰκοδομεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ λίθων ὁ τόπος ἠπόρει,
it-was-needful for-them to-build since and of-stones the place was-lacking
ἐκ μὲν τῶν μικρῶν καχλήκων τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄσβεστον,
from indeed the small pebbles of-the river lime
ἐκ δὲ τῆς ὑποκειμένης γῆς πηλὸν ἐγκαύσας διὰ καμίνων,
from and the underlying earth clay having-burned through kilns
καὶ βίσαλον ἐργασάμενος, τὴν ὁρισθεῖσαν αὐτῷ δουλείαν
and brick having-made the assigned to-him service
μόγις μέν, ἐπεραίου δὲ διὰ πολυχειρίας λαμπρῶς, καὶ
scarcely indeed he-accomplished but through many-hands brilliantly and
πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέστρεφεν. ἐδίδου δὲ καὶ περὶ
to the reigning(-city) returned he-gave and also about
τοῦ Χερσῶνος τῷ βασιλεῖ γνώμην τε καὶ βουλήν, οἷς
— Cherson to-the emperor opinion both and counsel in-which
εἰς πεῖραν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἦλθεν καὶ τῶν τόπων ὁμοῦ, καὶ
into experience of-the men he-came and of-the places together and
"οὐκ ἄλλως ἄρξεις τῆς χώρας καὶ τῶν τόπων ὁλοσχερῶς
not otherwise you-will-rule the land and the places wholly
ἢ στρατηγὸν προχειριζόμενος ἴδιον, ἀλλ' οὐ τοῖς ἐκείνων
than (a)-general appointing own but not to-the their
ἄρχουσί τε καὶ πρωτεύουσι καταπιστεύων σαυτόν." οὐδὲ γὰρ
rulers both and leading(-men) entrusting yourself not for
οὐδ' ἡμέτερός πω τῆς ἐκείνων προνοούμενος ἐξαπεστέλλετο
not-even ours ever of-the their caring was-sent
στρατηγός, ἀλλ' ὁ λεγόμενος πρωτεύων μετὰ καὶ τῶν
general but the(-one) called proteuon with also the
πατέρων τῆς πόλεως τὰ πάντα ἦν διοικῶν. ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ
fathers of-the city the all was administering for this the

βασιλεὺς Θεόφιλος οὐκ ἄλλον ἀλλὰ τὸν εἰρημένον Πετρωνᾶν,
emperor Theophilos not another but the said Petronas
ὡς ἔμπειρον κρίνας τοῦ τόπου, πρωτοσπαθάριόν τε
as experienced having-judged of-the place protospatharios both
ἐτίμησεν καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐξαπέστειλεν, τόν τε πρωτεύοντα
honored and (as)-general sent-out the both proteuon
καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους θεσπίσας ὑπείκειν ἀνενδοιάστως αὐτῷ·
and the others having-decreed to-yield unhesitatingly to-him
ἐξ ὅτουπερ καὶ μέχρι ἡμῶν ἐκράτησεν ἀπὸ τῶν
from which-very(-time) also until us has-prevailed from the(-men)
ἐντεῦθεν εἰς Χερσῶνα προβάλλεσθαι στρατηγούς. οὕτω
here to Cherson to-be-appointed generals thus
μὲν οὖν ἥ τε τοῦ Σάρκελ οἰκοδομὴ ἐγένετο καὶ ἡ πρὸς
indeed then the both — of-Sarkel building happened and the to
τοὺς Χερσωνίτας τῶν ἐντεῦθεν ἀποστολὴ στρατηγῶν.
the Chersonites of-the(-men) from-here sending of-generals
Ἔξεισι δὲ πάλιν ὁ Θεόφιλος κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν 29
goes-out and again — Theophilos against the Hagarenes
ἐμβριθέστερος, τῆς πατρικῆς ἡττᾶσθαι τόλμης ἀνέραστος
weightier than-the paternal to-be-worsted daring unloving
ὤν. ὅθεν καὶ πορρωτέρω πρόεισι τῆς Συρίας, ὁμοῦ μὲν
being whence also farther advances — into-Syria at-once indeed
κείρων τὴν γῆν καὶ πορθῶν, ὁμοῦ δὲ λαφυραγωγῶν
shearing the land and ravaging at-once and plundering
αὐτὴν καὶ αἰχμαλωτίζων, καὶ πόλεις παραλαμβάνων
it and taking-captive and cities taking-over
ἄλλας τε δύο καὶ μέχρις ἐδάφους καταστρεφόμενος,
others both two and to (the)-ground overturning
καὶ αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν Σωζόπετραν ἐκπολιορκήσας πατρίδα
and itself too — Sozopetra having-taken-by-siege fatherland
τυγχάνουσαν τοῦ ἀμεραμνουνῆ, ὑπὲρ ἧς ἐγένετο
being of-the commander-of-the-faithful for which it-happened

ἐκεῖθεν διὰ γραμμάτων προτρέψασθαι ἀναχωρεῖν τὸν
thence through letters to-urge to-withdraw —
Θεόφιλον ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος αὐτοῦ, κἂν οὐκ εἶχέ πως
Theophilos from the fatherland his even-if not he-had somehow
τὸν ἀκούοντα. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν διοικησάμενος πρὸς
the(-one) listening and these(-things) indeed having-arranged to
τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπάνεισιν ὁ Θεόφιλος, τῷ Θεοφόβῳ
the reigning(-city) returns — Theophilos — to-Theophobos
τὰ τῶν Περσῶν ἐνδιαθέσθαι προτρεψάμενος καὶ αὖθις
the(-affairs) of-the Persians to-settle having-urged and again
διὰ ταχέων ἐπαναδραμεῖν πρὸς αὐτόν. ἀλλ' οἱ Πέρσαι
in haste to-run-back to him but the Persians
συσχόντες αὐτὸν κατὰ τὴν Σινώπην βασιλέα καὶ ἄκοντα
having-seized him at — Sinope (as)-emperor even unwilling
ἀνεκήρυξαν· ὃς αἰδοῖ τε καὶ φόβῳ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
proclaimed who by-shame both and by-fear toward the emperor
βαλλόμενος ἀνένευέ τε καὶ δεινὰ πείσεσθαι τούτους
struck refused both and terrible(-things) to-suffer them
ἔλεγεν ἐπὶ τῷ τολμήματι. ὅθεν πλέον κατορρωδοῦντες
he-said for the daring whence more dreading
αὐτοὶ τὰς ἐκ βασιλέως ἀπειλὰς εἶχοντο μὲν τῆς γνώμης
they the from (the)-emperor threats held indeed to-the purpose
αὐτῶν, εἶχον δὲ καὶ αὐτὸν ἐν μέσῳ παραθαρρύνοντες.
their had and also him in (the)-midst encouraging
ἀλλ' ὁ Θεόφοβος λάθρα τὰ τελεσθέντα δηλοῖ τῷ
but — Theophobos secretly the(-things) done makes-clear to-the
βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἐνωμότως πληροφορεῖ ὡς οὐκ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖνοι
emperor and on-oath assures that not he those
δὲ τῶν τολμηθέντων ὑπαίτιοι. ἀλλ' ἐκείνου τε
but of-the(-things) dared responsible(-were) but of-that(-man) both
ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀσμένως ἀποδέχεται τὴν προαίρεσιν καὶ πρὸς
the emperor gladly accepts the choice and to

τὰ βασίλεια εἰσκαλεῖ, τὴν ἀρχαίαν εὐκληρίαν ἀποδιδούς·
the palace summons the ancient good-fortune restoring
συγγνώμην τε ἅπασι τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ ἀμνηστίαν κακῶν
pardon both to-all the others and amnesty of-evils
δοὺς τῆς Σινώπης, εἴτε δὴ καὶ Ἀμάστριδος, ποιεῖ
having-given — from-Sinope or indeed also from-Amastris makes(-them)
ἐκδημεῖν. καὶ ἐπείπερ εἰς πολυπληθίαν ἐνέδωκάν τε καὶ
to-depart and since into great-multitude they-had-grown both and
ηὔξησαν ὡς εἰς τρεῖς μυριάδας ἐληλακέναι, οὐ συμφέρον
increased so-that to three ten-thousands to-have-reached not advantageous
ἐδόκει τῷ βασιλεῖ τούτους ἐλευθέρους εἶναι καὶ ἀνειμένους,
seemed to-the emperor them free to-be and loose
ἀλλὰ καλῶς σκεψάμενος ἑκάστῳ θέματι χιλιάδας δύο
but well having-considered to-each theme thousands two
ἀπέσταλκεν, ὑπὸ χεῖρα τελεῖν τοῖς εἰς στρατηγίαν
he-sent under hand to-serve to-the(-men) to generalship
τεταγμένοις· ἐφ᾽ ὧν καὶ τουρμάρχας ἐπιστατεῖν ἐξετίθετο.
assigned over whom also tourmarchai to-preside he-set-out
ὅθεν ἄχρις ἡμῶν τὴν προσηγορίαν Περσῶν αἱ τῶν
whence until us the name of-Persians the(-ones) of-the
θεμάτων τοῦρμαι κεκλήρωνται, ἐφ᾽ οἷς διεσπάρησαν. τοῦτο
themes tourmai have-been-allotted in which they-were-scattered this
γοῦν τὸ τόλμημα θρασύτερόν πως καὶ ἰταμώτερον
at-any-rate the daring bolder somehow and more-reckless
δόξαν τῷ Θεοφίλῳ αὐτούς τε διασπαρῆναι καὶ
having-seemed — to-Theophilos them both to-be-scattered and
διανεμηθῆναι ἐποίησεν καὶ τὸν Θεόφοβον μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ
to-be-distributed made and — Theophobos after not long
ἀπήγαγε τῆς ζωῆς. ἐγένετο δέ τι καὶ δεύτερον αἴτιον,
led-away from-the life there-was and some also second cause
ὃ δηλώσει πάντως ὁ λόγος κατὰ τὸν οἰκεῖον καιρόν.
which will-show surely the account at the proper time

Stung by the sack of his birthplace, the caliph gathers all his peoples and marches on Amorion. His son defeats Theophilos at Anzen, and Manuel, overhearing the Persians plot by night to betray the emperor, gets him away. The caliph besieges Amorion; it holds until Boiditzes betrays a weak tower, and the city falls with great slaughter. The caliph mocks Theophilos' ransom offers, and the emperor, burning with grief, drinks snow water and contracts dysentery. The captive leaders are kept seven years, and the forty-two martyrs are executed by the Euphrates. Theophilos asks the king of the Franks for troops, but his envoy Theodosios Baboutzikos dies and no army comes.

30 Ὁ δὲ ἀμεραμουνὴς τοσοῦτον ἐτρώθη τὴν ψυχὴν ἐπὶ
the and commander-of-the-faithful so-much was-wounded in-the soul at
τῇ καταλήψει τε καὶ πορθήσει τῆς πατρίδος αὐτοῦ ὡς
the capture both and ravaging of-the fatherland his that
πανταχοῦ θεσπίσαι τε καὶ κηρῦξαι πᾶσαν ἡλικίαν ἔκ τε
everywhere to-decree both and to-proclaim every age from both
Βαβυλωνίας καὶ Φοινίκης καὶ Κοίλης Συρίας Παλαιστίνης
Babylonia and Phoenicia and Hollow Syria Palestine
τε καὶ τῆς κάτω Λιβύης συναθροιζομένην ἐπὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσιν
both and of-the lower Libya gathering on the shields
αὐτῶν ἐγγράψαι Ἀμόριον, τὴν κατ' αὐτοῦ διάβασιν μετὰ
their to-inscribe Amorion the against him crossing with
θρασύτητος αἰνιττόμενος. συνήγετο γοῦν καὶ κατὰ τὴν
boldness hinting was-gathered at-any-rate and at —
Ταρσὸν πολὺς ἐξ ὀλίγων ἐγένετο, μανίᾳ ἐπὶ τῇ τῆς
Tarsus great from few he-became with-madness at the of-the
πατρίδος αἰσχύνῃ πυρπολούμενος τὴν ψυχήν. ἀντεπεξήει
fatherland shame burned the soul went-out-against(-him)
δὲ καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος κατὰ τὸ Δορύλαιον, τριῶν ἡμεροδρομιῶν
and also — Theophilos at the Dorylaion three days'-runs

πόρρω που τοῦ Ἀμορίου διακείμενον. πολλῶν οὖν
far somewhere — from-Amorion lying many then
συμβουλευόντων μετοικῆσαι τὸν ἐν Ἀμορίῳ οἰκοῦντα λαὸν
advising to-remove the in Amorion dwelling people
καὶ τέως ὑπεκδραμεῖν τὴν ἄσχετον φορὰν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν
and for-a-time to-escape the unchecked onrush of-the Saracens
(πολὺς γὰρ ηὔξητο καὶ λαὸν ἐπήγετο ἄληκτον), ἄτοπον
great for it-had-grown and (a)-people brought unceasing absurd
μὲν ἐφαίνετο τοῦτο τῷ Θεοφίλῳ καὶ ἄνανδρον, καλὸν δὲ
indeed appeared this — to-Theophilos and unmanly fine but
καὶ πρὸς ἀνδρίαν εὔοδον τὸ μᾶλλον ἐποχυρῶσαι αὐτὸ καὶ
and for courage well-suited the rather to-fortify it and
στρατηγοῦ γενναίου διασῶσαι βουλαῖς. Ἀέτιος ἦν οὗτος
of-(a)-general noble to-save by-counsels Aetios was this(-man)
ὁ πατρίκιος καὶ τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν στρατηγός. ἐπεὶ δὲ
the patrician and of-the Anatolikoi general since and
καί τινος πολυχειρίας ἐδέετο, καὶ ταύτην ἀπέσταλκεν ὁ
also some many-handedness it-needed also this sent —
Θεόφιλος ὡς πανταχόθεν ἀντιστησομένου καὶ τὸν ἐχθρὸν
Theophilos as from-everywhere going-to-resist and the enemy
ἐκνικήσοντος. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐδίδου δὴ ἡγεμόνας καὶ
going-to-overcome in-addition-to these he-gave indeed commanders and
ἄρχοντας τοὺς μετὰ βραχὺ μαρτυρήσοντας, Θεόδωρόν
officers the(-men) after (a)-little going-to-be-martyred Theodore
τε τὸν Κρατερὸν καὶ Θεόφιλον καὶ τὸν Βαβούτζικον·
both — Krateros and Theophilos and — Baboutzikos
οἵτινες οὐ μόνον ἐκείνου τοῦ λαοῦ ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς φάλαγγος
who not only of-that the people but also of-the phalanx
τῶν τεσσαράκοντα δύο μαρτύρων γεγόνασιν ἀρχηγοί.
of-the forty two martyrs became leaders

31 Ἐπεὶ γοῦν κατὰ τὴν Ταρσὸν ὁ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἐπέστη
since at-any-rate at — Tarsus the of-the Saracens stood
μετὰ φρονήματος καὶ λαοῦ ἡγεμών, οὐκ ἀθρόως τούτῳ
with spirit and people leader not all-at-once to-him
μαντευομένῳ καὶ συμβουλευομένῳ ἐφαίνετο καλὸν χωρεῖν
divining and taking-counsel it-seemed fine to-go
πρὸς Ἀμόριον, ἀπόπειραν δὲ πρότερον λαβεῖν τῆς τῶν
to Amorion (a)-trial but first to-take of-the of-the
Ῥωμαίων δυνάμεως διὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ μέρος λαβόντος
Romans force through the son his (a)-part having-taken
τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως χωρήσαντος. "εἰ γὰρ
of-the army and against the emperor having-gone if for
οὗτος" φησί "νικήσειεν, ἕψεται πάντως ἡ νίκη καὶ τῷ
this(-one) he-says should-conquer will-follow surely the victory also to-the
πατρί· εἰ δὲ μή, καλὸν ἡσυχάζειν, οὐκ ἐπακολουθούσης
father if but not fine to-keep-quiet not following
μοι τῆς νίκης." λαβόντος γοῦν αὐτοῦ Ἄμερα τὸν
me the victory having-taken at-any-rate he Amer the(-one)
τηνικαῦτα διέποντα τὴν Μελιτηνὴν καὶ Τούρκους ὡσεὶ
then governing — Melitene and Turks about
χιλιάδας δέκα, μετὰ πάσης τῆς ἐξ Ἀρμενίων στρατιᾶς
thousands ten with all the from Armenians army
καὶ τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, κατὰ τὸν Δαζημόνα
and of-the ruler of-the rulers at — Dazimon
προσέβαλεν. ἀπήει καὶ ὁ Θεόφιλος κατ' αὐτοῦ στρατόπεδον
attacked went also — Theophilos against him (an)-army
ἔχων οὐκ ἀγεννές, ἔκ τε Περσῶν καὶ τῶν δυτικῶν
having not ignoble from both Persians and the western(-forces)
καὶ τῶν πρὸς τὸν ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον συνιστάμενον. ὡς
and the(-ones) toward the rising sun composed when
δὲ κατὰ τὸν Ἀνζὴν οὕτω χῶρον καλούμενον ἐγίνετο, ἰδεῖν
and at — Anzen so place called he-was to-see

ἐπεθύμει τὸ τῶν ἐναντίων ἄθροισμα πρὸ τῆς προσβολῆς.
he-desired the of-the opponents gathering before the attack
ἐπί τινα γοῦν λόφον καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὑπερβεβηκότα
on some at-any-rate hill and the others surpassing
χῶρον ὁ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν λαβὼν ἀνήνεγκεν
place the domestic of-the scholae having-taken(-him) brought-up
Μανουήλ, καί πως ἐκ στοχασμοῦ βραχύτερον ἐδόκει τὸ
Manuel and somehow by guess smaller seemed the
τῶν Σαρακηνῶν πλῆθος· οὐ μὴν πρὸς τοῦτο συντιθεμένου
of-the Saracens multitude not indeed with this agreeing
τοῦ Μανουὴλ ὁ τῶν δοράτων ἴσος ἐδόκει ἐσμός. "ἀλλ' ὦ"
— *Manuel the of-the spears equal seemed swarm but O*
φησί "βασιλεῦ, τὸ καρτερὸν στοχαζόμενος, τὸν ἐκ δοράτων
he-says emperor the strength guessing the of spears
καλαμῶνα ἀμφοτέρων διάθρει." ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἰσχυρότερός
reed-bed of-both consider since at-any-rate stronger
πως οὐχ ὁ ἴδιος ἀλλ' ὁ τῶν ἐναντίων ἐδόκει στρατός,
somehow not the own but the of-the opponents seemed army
βουλὴν ἐδέοντο ἀρτύειν νεανικήν· ἡ δὲ ἦν ἔκ τε
counsel they-needed to-devise youthful the(-counsel) and was from both
Μανουὴλ συνισταμένη καὶ Θεοφόβου, νυκτὸς ἐπιτεθῆναι
Manuel composed and Theophobos by-night to-fall-upon
τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἀλλ' ἕτεροι κρεῖττον εἶναι τὴν ἡμέραν
the enemies but others better to-be the day
ἀντέφησαν, οἷς καὶ ὁ βασιλεύων ἐπέπειστο. ὡς δ'
retorted by-whom also the reigning(-emperor) was-persuaded when and
οὖν ἔλαμψεν ἡ ἡμέρα, μάχης καρτερᾶς γενομένης, ἐκθύμως
then shone the day of-battle fierce having-happened spiritedly
τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀγωνισαμένων ταγμάτων, οἱ Ἰσμαηλῖται
the imperial having-fought regiments the Ishmaelites
ἐνέκλιναν εἰς φυγήν, ἀφέντες τὸ πολεμεῖν. ἀλλ' οἱ
inclined to flight having-left-off the to-fight but the

Τοῦρκοι ἐπιμόνῳ χρώμενοι τοξείᾳ, καὶ τὸ καταδιῶκον τῶν
Turks with-persistent using archery and the pursuing(-force) of-the
Ῥωμαίων ἀνακεκρουκότες, ἱστάναι ἀλλ᾽ οὐ φεύγειν ἔπεισαν
Romans having-driven-back to-stand but not to-flee persuaded
τοὺς Σαρακηνούς· ὅθεν ἑαυτοὺς πάλιν συστησάμενοι, καὶ
the Saracens whence themselves again having-rallied and
τοῖς τόξοις δὴ γενναίως πόρρωθεν βάλλοντες, ἑτεραλκῆ
with-the bows indeed nobly from-afar shooting turned
τὴν μάχην ἐποίησαν. οἷς μὴ δυνάμενος ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
the battle made whom not being-able the of-the Romans
προσεγγίσαι στρατός, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ πόρρωθεν κατιδεῖν
to-approach army but not-even from-afar to-see
τῷ βάλλεσθαι καρτερῶς, νῶτα κλίναντες τὸν βασιλέα
by-the to-be-shot fiercely backs having-turned the emperor
κατέλιπον. οὐ μὴν οἱ τῶν βασιλικῶν ταγμάτων ἔξαρχοι
left not indeed the(-men) of-the imperial regiments leaders
μετὰ τῶν Περσῶν τοῦτο δρᾶσαι ἢ ἐννοῆσαι τετολμήκασιν,
with the Persians this to-do or to-think dared
ἀλλὰ περιστάντες τῷ βασιλεῖ σώζειν ἐβούλοντο, κύκλῳ
but having-stood-around the emperor to-save they-wished in-(a)-circle
τῶν ἐχθρῶν πάντοθεν περιστοιχησάντων αὐτοὺς καὶ
the enemies from-everywhere having-surrounded them and
βαλλόντων αὐτούς. κἂν ἀπώλοντο πανδημεί, εἰ μὴ
shooting them and they-would-have-perished in-full-force if not
νὺξ ἐλθοῦσα καὶ βραχύς τις ὄμβρος ἐπιγενόμενος τὰς μὲν
night having-come and short some rain having-come-on the indeed
νευρὰς χαλαρὰς εἰργάσατο αἷς ἠμύνοντο καὶ τὸ
bowstrings slack made with-which they-defended(-themselves) and the
κράτος εἶχον οἱ ἐναντίοι, αὐτοῖς δὲ ἄνεσιν τὴν ἐκ βελῶν
mastery had the opponents to-them and respite the from missiles
περιεποίησεν καὶ σωτηρίας μόλις ἐνέδωκεν ἀφορμάς.
provided and of-safety scarcely gave occasions

βαθείας γὰρ ἤδη τῆς νυκτὸς γενομένης, ὡς ἠσχόλητο περὶ 32
deep for already the night having-become while was-busied about
τὰς φυλακὰς ὁ Μανουήλ, γλώττῃ πως τῇ Σαρακηνῶν
the guards — Manuel by-tongue somehow the of-Saracens
τὸν Περσῶν ὅμιλον σπένδεσθαί πως πρὸς αὐτοὺς διήκουσε,
the of-Persians band to-make-treaty somehow with them he-heard
καὶ συνθέσθαι τούτους αὖθις τὸ στράτευμα τῶν Ῥωμαίων
and to-agree them again the army of-the Romans
καταπροδοῦναι καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἐξ ἧς ἀπέστησαν χωρεῖν
to-betray and to the from which they-had-revolted to-go
κεφαλήν. δῆλα γοῦν τῷ βασιλεῖ λάθρα ποιεῖ, καὶ ἑαυτὸν
head plain at-any-rate to-the emperor secretly he-makes and himself
σώζειν μετὰ λογάδων ἠξίου καὶ μὴ περιμένειν τὴν ἅλωσιν.
to-save with picked(-men) he-asked and not to-wait-for the capture
καὶ "πῶς ἔσται τοῦ τοσούτου λαοῦ" ἐπερωτήσαντος τοῦ
and how will-be of-the so-great people having-asked the
βασιλέως "ἡ σωτηρία, ἐμοὶ προσμεινάντων;" "σοί" φησί
emperor the safety (with)-me remaining for-you he-says
"μόνον ἔστω, βασιλεῦ, τὸ σώζεσθαι ἐκ θεοῦ· οὗτοι δὲ
only let-be emperor the to-be-saved from god these but
ταχέως τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς διοικήσουσιν." ὀψὲ γοῦν
quickly the(-things) concerning them will-arrange late at-any-rate
κατὰ τὸ περίορθρον τοῦ βασιλέως φυγῇ χρησαμένου
at the dawn the emperor flight having-used
καὶ πρὸς τὸ Χιλιόκωμον διασωθέντος, οἱ λειποτάκται
and to the Chiliokomon having-been-saved the deserters
τῶν στρατηγῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ προσαπαντήσαντες ἀναξίους
of-the generals the emperor having-met unworthy
ἔφασκον εἶναι τῆς ζωῆς, βασιλέα ἐν πολέμῳ καταπροέντας,
they-said to-be of-the life (the)-emperor in war having-betrayed
καὶ ἅμα τοῖς ἑαυτῶν ἐγυμνοῦντο ξίφεσι καὶ τοῖς ποσὶν
and at-once with-the their-own bared(-themselves) swords and at-the feet

ὑπετίθουν αὐτοῦ, δάκρυσι βρεχόμενοι παρειάς. ἀλλ' ὁ
placed(-them) his with-tears wetted (in)-cheeks but —
Θεόφιλος τρωθεὶς ἐκείνων μᾶλλον αὐτοῦ τὴν ψυχὴν τῷ
Theophilos wounded than-those more his in-the soul by-the
παραδόξῳ τοῦ πράγματος, "εἰ ἐγώ" φησί "σέσωσμαι ἐκ
strangeness of-the affair if I he-says have-been-saved by
θεοῦ, σωθήσεσθε καὶ ὑμεῖς ἀγωνιζόμενοι κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν."
god you-will-be-saved also you contending against the enemies
Τοῦτο οὖν τὸ παρὰ ἐχθρῶν στρατήγημα καὶ ἡ νυκτερινή
this then the from enemies stratagem and the nocturnal
πως λαλιὰ τῶν Περσῶν, ταὐτὸν δὲ καὶ σπονδὴ εἰπεῖν, τοῖς
somehow talk of-the Persians the-same and also treaty to-say for-the
μὲν Θεοφόβου ἐχθροῖς καὶ θάνατον ψηφιζομένοις αὐτοῖς
indeed of-Theophobos enemies and death voting for-them
δευτέρα τις γέγονεν αἰτία καὶ ἀφορμὴ εὔκαιρος εἰς διαβολήν,
(a)-second some became cause and occasion timely for slander
33 τῷ δ' ἀμεραμνουνῇ ἀκηκοότι νίκης οὐ μικρᾶς καὶ
to-the and commander-of-the-faithful having-heard of-victory not small also
κατὰ τοῦ Ἀμορίου καταδρομή. ἤνωτο γοῦν κατὰ
against — Amorion (the)-raid was-united at-any-rate at
τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως πατρίδα ἀμφότερα τὰ στρατόπεδα,
the of-the emperor fatherland both the armies
αὐτοῦ τε τοῦ ἀμεραμνουνῆ καὶ τοῦτο δὴ τὸ
of-him both the commander-of-the-faithful and this indeed the(-army)
προπολεμῆσαν σφοδρῶς τοῦ υἱοῦ, καὶ χάρακα περιέβαλλον
having-fought-in-front strongly of-the son and (a)-palisade they-threw-around
καὶ τῆς πολιορκίας ἀπήρχοντο. καὶ τέως ἀπόπειραν
and the siege began and for-a-time (a)-trial
ἐποίει ἀποστραφεὶς κατὰ Δορύλαιον ὁ Θεόφιλος τοῦ
made having-turned-back at Dorylaion — Theophilos of-the
δώροις αὐτὸν ἐκεῖθεν ἀποστῆσαι καὶ πρὸς τὰ οἰκεῖα
with-gifts him from-there to-detach and to the own

ποιῆσαι παλινοστῆσαι. ἀλλ᾽ οὐ πείθεται, ἐνδομυχοῦσαν
to-make to-return but not is-persuaded deep-seated
φέρων τὴν τῆς πατρίδος αὐτοῦ ἅλωσίν τε καὶ πόρθησιν.
bearing the of-the fatherland his capture both and ravaging
μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν ἐξουθένει καὶ ἀνδράποδον ἐκάλει τε
rather indeed then he-set-at-naught and slave called(-him) both
καὶ δειλόν, μυκτηρίζων καὶ διακωμῳδῶν οἷς οὐ πρὸ
and coward sneering and lampooning because not before
τούτου τούτῳ ἀλλὰ νῦν ἐπὶ ξυροῦ ἑστῶτι ἐπείθετο. εἶχε
this by-him but now on (a)-razor standing he-was-persuaded had
μὲν οὖν καὶ τοὺς ἀποσταλέντας πρέσβεις αὐτόθι που,
indeed then also the sent envoys there somewhere
τῶν δρωμένων ἐπόπτας καὶ μάρτυρας.
of-the(-things) done overseers and witnesses
καὶ δὴ χρόνου παρῳχηκότος διέφυγεν ἂν ἡ πόλις 34
and indeed time having-passed would-have-escaped — the city
τὸν ὄλεθρον, τῷ πᾶσαν ἰδέαν πολιορκίας τῶν μὲν
the destruction by-the every form of-siege some indeed
ἐνδεικνύντων τῶν δὲ καταβαλλόντων, καὶ πολλῶν
displaying the(-others) and throwing-down and many
ἀνῃρημένων ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων ἀνδρῶν, τῶν μὲν ἀμυνομένων
having-been-killed from both men some indeed defending
τῶν δὲ πολιορκούντων, ἀπράκτων δὲ τέως μενόντων
the(-others) and besieging unsuccessful and for-a-time remaining
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν καὶ τῆς πολλῆς ὀφρύος κατασπωμένων
the Hagarenes and from-the much haughtiness being-pulled-down
τῷ πλῆθος ἀνῃρῆσθαι λαοῦ. καὶ γὰρ ὡσεὶ χιλιάδες
by-the (a)-multitude to-have-been-killed of-people and for about thousands
ἑβδομήκοντα ἐκλελοιπότες εὑρέθησαν μετὰ τὴν ἅλωσιν
seventy having-perished were-found after the capture
ἀριθμούμενοι. ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἦν παρελθεῖν τὴν ἐκ θεοῦ
being-counted but not was(-it-possible) to-pass-by the from god

μάχαιραν ἠπειλημένην ἄνωθεν, οἷς ὑβρίζετο τὸ θεῖον
sword threatened from-above for-which was-outraged the divine
αὐξανομένης δὴ τῆς αἱρέσεως. διὰ τοῦτο ἀνήρ τις
increasing indeed the heresy because-of this (a)-man certain
τῶν ὑποβεβηκότων (Βοϊδίτζης οὗτος ἐκαλεῖτο ὁ ἄθλιος)
of-the subordinates Boiditzes this(-one) was-called the wretch
μέλλουσιν ἤδη πως ἀναχωρεῖν καὶ πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν
to-(men)-being-about already somehow to-withdraw and to the own
μετ' αἰσχύνης παλινοστεῖν "τί" φησίν, "ὦ οὗτοι," γράμματα
with shame to-return why he-says O these(-men) letters
διὰ βελῶν πεπομφώς, "τοσοῦτον τεταλαιπωρηκότες
through arrows having-sent so-much having-suffered
μέλλετε ἀποφοιτᾶν, κεκμηκότες ἄπρακτα καὶ πεπονηκότες;
are-you-about to-depart wearied unsuccessful and having-toiled
ἔλθετε τοιγαροῦν κατὰ τοὺς πύργους ἐκείνους, ἔνθα μὲν
come therefore to the towers those where indeed
βοΐδιον ἄνωθεν λίθινον ἔξωθεν δὲ λέων ἐκ μαρμάρου
(a)-little-ox above stone outside and (a)-lion of marble
ἐφίσταται· κἀκεῖσέ μοι περιτυχόντες, τὰ ὑμέτερα δηλαδὴ
stands and-there me having-met the yours clearly
φρονοῦντά τε καὶ διευθετοῦντα, καὶ ἄλλως ἀσθενεστέρων
thinking both and arranging and otherwise weaker
πεφυκότων ἔνθα δὴ τῶν ἐπάλξεων, ἐγκρατεῖς τε τῶν
being where indeed of-the battlements masters both of-the(-things)
ἔσω γενήσεσθε καὶ ἐμὲ πολλοῦ ἄξιον κρίνετε." ἦλθον κατὰ
within you-will-become and me of-much worthy judge they-came according-to
τὸν λόγον ἐκείνου, καὶ εἰσῆλθον ἅμα τῇ προσβολῇ,
the word of-that(-man) and entered at-once with-the attack
παίοντες καὶ τιτρώσκοντες τοὺς καταλαμβανομένους.
striking and wounding the(-ones) being-caught
οὐκ ἦν δὲ ὅστις τῶν ἀποθνησκόντων οὐκ ἦν.
not there-was and anyone of-the(-ones) dying not was(-it)

πάντες δὲ ἀνῃροῦντο καὶ ἔπιπτον ποταμοὺς κινοῦντες ἐξ
all but were-killed and fell rivers moving of
αἵματος. οὕτω μὲν οὖν αἱρεῖται τὸ Ἀμόριον καὶ χερσὶν
blood thus indeed then is-taken the Amorion and into-hands
ἀνόμων ἀνομωτέρως προδίδοται, ἐκείνων μόνον ζώντων
of-lawless(-men) more-lawlessly is-betrayed those only living
τῶν μέχρι τοῦ Βαγδὰδ παραπεμφθέντων, τῶν κατὰ
the(-ones) as-far-as — Baghdad sent-on of-the in
τὰ θέματα τελούντων μεγιστάνων τε καὶ κραταιοτέρων
the themes serving magnates both and more-powerful
ἀνδρῶν, οἷς καὶ οἱ μβ′ μάρτυρες συνηρίθμηντο. οἱ
men with-whom also the 42 martyrs were-numbered the
δ’ ἄλλοι ἅπαντες μαχαίρας πολεμικῆς ἐγίνοντο τρόπαιον.
and others all of-sword warlike became (a)-trophy
οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ’ οὕτως ἔπεισε τὸν ἐχθρὸν ὁ Θεόφιλος
not for not-even so persuaded the enemy — Theophilos
πρέσβεις δευτέρους ἀποστείλας, ἐπὶ κεντηναρίοις διακοσίοις
envoys second having-sent for centenaria two-hundred
ἐξωνήσασθαί τε καὶ τῶν ἐχθρῶν λυτρώσασθαι τὸν
to-buy-off both and from-the enemies to-ransom the
αἰχμάλωτον λαόν, εἰ δ’ οὖν, ἀλλὰ τούς γε τέως
captive people if but then but the(-ones) at-least for-a-time
πρὸς γένος αὐτῷ πλησιάζοντας καὶ ἐπὶ συμμαχίαν αὐτῷ
in race to-him near and for alliance to-him
ἀποσταλέντας ἐκεῖ. ἀλλὰ μέγα μὲν οὖν γαυριῶν μέγα δέ
sent there but greatly indeed then exulting greatly and
γε φυσῶν ἐκείνους τε τοὺς πρώτους καὶ τοὺς δευτέρους
at-least puffing those both the first(-envoys) and the second
τούτους ἀνταπέστειλε πρέσβεις, καταμωκώμενός τε καὶ
these he-sent-back envoys mocking both and
πλύνων ὕβρεσι, “τοσούτοις μόνοις” φάσκων “ἐξωνήσασθαι
washing with-insults for-so-many only saying to-buy-off

βούλεσθε κεντηναρίοις, ἔνθα τῶν χιλίων μέχρι φιλοτιμίας
you-wish centenaria where of-the thousand up-to of-munificence
ἕνεκα καὶ δωρεᾶς ὑμῖν κατανάλωται;" οἷς καὶ τὴν
for-the-sake and gift for-you has-been-spent by-which also the
καρδίαν παθὼν ὁ Θεόφιλος, καὶ ὥσπερ ὑπὸ πυρός
heart having-suffered — Theophilos and as-if by fire
τινος ἀναζέων ἢ ἐλαυνόμενος, ἐδεῖτο τοῦ περιψύχοντος
some boiling or being-driven he-asked-for the cooling
ὕδατος ἐκ χιόνος προσφερομένου. χλιαροῦ δέ πως τῷ
water from snow brought lukewarm but somehow to-the
τῆς καρδίας καύσωνι δοκοῦντος, συνέβη κἀκεῖνον ἐξ
of-the heart heat seeming it-happened also-him from
ἐκείνης τῆς πόσεως δυσεντερίας νόσῳ περιληφθῆναι καὶ
that the drinking of-dysentery by-disease to-be-seized and
ἄκοντα, καὶ τῇ νόσῳ ταύτῃ τοῦ γενέσθαι ἐκτός. καὶ
unwillingly also by-the disease this of-the to-be out(-of-life) and
τὰ μὲν κατὰ τὸ Ἀμόριον οὕτως.
the(-things) indeed at the Amorion thus

35 Κατὰ δὲ τὴν οἰκείαν χώραν παλινδρομήσας ὁ Ἀγαρηνὸς
to and the own land having-run-back the Hagarene
τοὺς εἰρημένους ἀρχηγοὺς ἐν φρουρᾷ τινὶ σκοτεινῇ τῷ
the said leaders in prison some dark with-the
ξύλῳ ἀσφαλισάμενος καθεῖρξεν, βραχεῖ τινὶ ὕδατι καὶ
wood having-secured shut-in with-short some water and
ἄρτῳ τούτους ἐντειλάμενος ἀποζῆν. ἐν τοσούτῳ δὲ σκότει
bread them having-ordered to-live in so-great and darkness
ἀσφαλείᾳ κατείχοντο ὡς μήτε κατὰ τὴν σταθερὰν
with-security they-were-held so-that neither at the steady
μεσημβρίαν μικρόν τι αὐγάζεσθαι, ἀλλ᾽ ἢ τῇ ἀλλήλων
midday little anything to-see but or by-the one-another's
φωνῇ γινώσκεσθαί τε μόνῃ καὶ μόνων τῶν φυλάκων
voice to-be-recognized both only and of-only the guards

ἀπολαύειν, τῶν ἄλλων στερουμένους ἀνθρώπων, καὶ ὡς
to-have-benefit of-the other being-deprived men and as
ἐν ἐρημίᾳ βαθυτάτῃ διάγειν. τούτοις τοῖς δεινοῖς ἐπὶ
in desert deepest to-live in-these the terrible(-things) for
ἑπτὰ ὅλοις ἔτεσι προσεκαρτέρησαν. ἄρτι δὲ κατὰ τὴν
seven whole years they-endured just and on the
πέμπτην τοῦ Μαρτίου μηνὸς ὁ τὸ Ἀμόριόν τε
fifth of-the March month the(-one) the Amorion both
προδοὺς καὶ τὸν Χριστὸν ἀρνησάμενος Βοϊδίτζης κατὰ
having-betrayed and — Christ having-denied Boiditzes at
τὴν φυλακὴν γενόμενος, Κωνσταντῖνον ἄνδρα φρόνιμον
the prison having-come Constantine (a)-man prudent
καὶ σοφίᾳ ἐντεθραμμένον φωνήσας (Κωνσταντῖνος δὲ
and in-wisdom reared having-called Constantine and
οὗτος ἦν ὑπηρετῶν τῷ πατρικίῳ κατὰ τὴν ἐν λόγῳ
this(-one) was serving the patrician in the in word
γραφήν), οὐ χρῄζειν ἔφη τινὰ τῶν ἐντὸς παρεῖναί
writing not to-need he-said anyone of-the(-ones) within to-be-present
σοι καὶ τῶν ἐμῶν τυγχάνειν μυστηρίων ἀκροατήν. ὡς δ'
for-you and of-the my to-be mysteries hearer when and
οὐδένα παρεῖναι ὁ Κωνσταντῖνος καθωμολόγει, "ἄγε μοι"
no-one to-be-present — Constantine agreed come to-me
ἔφησεν, "ὦ φιλτάτη καὶ γλυκεῖα ψυχή (γινώσκεις γὰρ
he-said O dearest and sweet soul you-know for
τὸν ἀρχῆθεν πόθον σου συμφυέντα μοι), βουλήθητι
the from-the-beginning longing your grown-together with-me be-willing
μετὰ τοῦ πατρικίου τῷ πρωτοσυμβούλῳ συνεύξασθαι
with the patrician to-the chief-counselor to-pray-with
καὶ μαγαρίσαι τὴν αὔριον, ἵνα μὴ παρανάλωμα γίνησθε
and to-become-Muslim the morrow that not (a)-waste you-become
μαχαίρας καὶ αἰκισμῶν. τοῦτο γὰρ αὐτῷ διὰ σπουδῆς
of-sword and of-tortures this for to-him with eagerness

ἔχοντι καὶ μελετῶντι συμφέρον ἡγησάμην σοι ὡς φίλῳ
having and planning advantageous I-thought for-you as friend
δηλοποιῆσαι πιστῷ. θέλησον γοῦν αὐτῷ μὲν κατὰ τὸ
to-make-clear faithful be-willing at-any-rate with-him indeed in the
φανερὸν συνεύξασθαι, θεῷ δὲ τὰ κρυπτὰ ἐτάζοντι πίστευε
open to-pray-with in-god and the hidden(-things) examining believe
κατὰ ψυχήν, καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ οὐχ ἁμαρτήσετε αἰωνίου
in soul and of-the his not you-will-fail eternal
ζωῆς." τούτοις οὐ μαλακισθεὶς μηδὲ φρεναπατηθεὶς ὁ
of-life to-these not having-softened nor having-been-deceived the
ἀήττητος "ἀπόστηθι" ἔφη "ἀπ' ἐμοῦ, ἐργάτα τῆς ἀνομίας,
unconquered stand-off he-said from me worker of-the lawlessness
ἀπόστηθι." καὶ ἅμα τῷ λόγῳ ἀπεφοίτησεν, διηγησάμενος
stand-off and at-once with-the word went-off having-recounted
ἰδίᾳ τῷ πατρικίῳ τῶν λεχθέντων μὲν οὐδὲν φανερόν,
privately to-the patrician of-the (things)-said indeed nothing plain
ἵνα μή τις δειλανδρίας ἐναποτεχθῇ αὐτῷ λογισμός, μόνον
that not any of-cowardice be-engendered in-him thought only
δὲ ὅτι θανάτου ψῆφος ἐς αὔριον καθ' ἡμῶν ἐξενήνεκται.
but that of-death (a)-vote for tomorrow against us has-been-brought-out
εὐχαρίστησεν ἐπὶ τούτοις τῷ θεῷ ὁ πατρίκιος, καὶ
gave-thanks at these(-things) — to-god the patrician and
διαθέμενος τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν διὰ Κωνσταντίνου τοὺς
having-arranged the(-things) concerning him through Constantine the(-men)
συμπαρόντας ἅπαντας εἰς πάννυχον ὑμνῳδίαν ἀνίστησιν.
present all to all-night hymnody raises
36 ἕωθεν δὲ μετὰ σοβαρᾶς τις φαντασίας ἄρχων ἐξεληλυθὼς
at-dawn and with pompous some show (a)-ruler having-come-out
τοὺς προεξάρχοντας μόνους τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελθεῖν ἐπιτρέπει.
the leading(-men) alone of-the others to-come-out permits
καὶ δὴ ἐξίασιν ἄνδρες δύο καὶ τεσσαράκοντα, καὶ εὐθὺς
and indeed come-out men two and forty and at-once

κλεισθῆναι προστάττει τὴν φυλακήν. ἠρώτα γοῦν πόσον
to-be-shut orders the prison he-asked at-any-rate what
ἔτος αὐτοῖς ἐστὶν κατὰ τὴν φρουράν, καὶ ἄλλας ἐκίνει
year for-them is in the prison and other moved
βαττολογίας, κατηκόους τούτους βουλόμενος τῶν αὐτοῦ
babblings hearers them wishing of-the his
ποιῆσαι φλυαριῶν. ἀλλ᾽ οὗτοι τό τε ἔτος ἀποκριθέντες,
to-make nonsense but these the both year having-answered
ὡς ἕβδομον, καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνων ἐκ τῆς θείας γραφῆς
as (the)-seventh and against the their from the divine scripture
ῥωμαλέως καὶ μετὰ γενναίας ψυχῆς ἀντιταχθέντες λόγους,
vigorously and with noble soul having-been-arrayed words
τὴν ἐπὶ θάνατον φέρουσαν κατεκρίθησαν. ὡς δὲ κατὰ
the(-road) to death leading were-condemned when and at
τὸν Εὐφράτην ἐγένοντο, καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ἡ πόλις αὐτῶν
the Euphrates they-came and about it the city their
ᾠκοδόμηται Σάμαρα, ἐλέγχειν ἐπειρᾶτο τὸν Κρατερὸν
has-been-built Samarra to-refute tried — Krateros
Θεόδωρον ὁ ἀλιτήριος, εἴ πως ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε
Theodore the wicked(-one) if somehow but by-this at-least
πείσει τὸν θάνατον ἐξαρνήσασθαι. καὶ “πῶς”
he-will-persuade(-him) the death to-deny and how
ἔφη “σὺ Θεόδωρε παρρησιαζόμενος διὰ θανάτου φοιτῶν
he-said you Theodore speaking-freely through death going
ἐλπίζεις πρὸς θεόν, οὗ τὰς σωτηρίας, ὡς φατέ, οὐκ
do-you-hope to god whose the saving as you-say not
ἠγάπησας ἐντολάς; οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν ἐξ ἱερατικοῦ κλήρου,
you-loved commandments not for — from (the)-priestly clergy
ᾧ σὺ πάλαι ἐγκατελέξω, πρὸς σχῆμα ἦλθες
to-which you long-ago were-enrolled to (the)-guise you-would-have-come
τῶν λαϊκῶν· οὐδὲ χεῖρας ἀθώους οὔσας αἱμάτων σου νῦν
of-the laymen nor hands innocent being of-blood your now

ἐν πολέμοις ἐπλήρους πάλιν αὐτὰς τῶν μολυσμάτων τε
in wars would-you-fill again them with-the defilements both
καὶ μιασμάτων." καὶ ὁ Θεόδωρος οὐκ ἐμβραδύνας, μηδέ
and pollutions and — Theodore not having-delayed nor
τινα χρόνον ἀναβαλλόμενος, "διὰ τοῦτο" ἔφη "καὶ τὸ
any time putting-off because-of this he-said also the
ἐμὸν ἐκχέαι αἷμα οὐ κατοκνήσω, ἵνα μοι λύτρον τε καὶ
my to-shed blood not I-will-shrink that to-me ransom both and
λουτρὸν τῶν πεπλημμεληκότων ἀναφανὲν τὴν βασιλείαν
bath of-the (sins)-committed having-appeared the kingdom
δώῃ αὐτοῦ, ἢ ἀποδράσας τίς σου τῶν οἰκετῶν
he-may-give his as having-run-away some(-one) your of-the servants
καὶ αὖθις ἐπανακάμψας τήν σοι φίλην λειτουργίαν
and again having-returned the to-you dear service
ἐκτελοίη, εἰς τὴν συγγνώμης χώραν ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀγνωμοσύνης
might-perform to the of-pardon place but not of-ingratitude
χωροίη." καὶ ἅμα εἰς τὸ τῆς ἀθλήσεως εἰσήει ὥσπερ
he-would-come and at-once into the of-the contest he-went-in like
τις Ὀλυμπιονίκης στάδιον, καὶ πρὸς τὸν πατρίκιον
some Olympic-victor stadium and to the patrician
Κωνσταντῖνόν φησι, τὴν ὑφέρπουσαν ὥσπερ αὐτοῦ δειλίαν
Constantine he-says the creeping-in as-it-were his cowardice
καὶ φόβον ἀποσοβῶν, "ἄγε δή, ὦ στρατιῶτα Χριστοῦ, τὸ
and fear driving-off come indeed O soldier of-Christ the
πρόκριτος εἶναι πάντων ἡμῶν πρὸς τὸν ἐπὶ γῆς βασιλέα
preeminent to-be of-all us before the on earth emperor
λαχών, πρῶτος καὶ τὸν τοῦ μαρτυρίου ἀναλάμβανε
having-obtained first also the of-the martyrdom take-up
στέφανον." ὁ δ' ἱερὸς Κωνσταντῖνος "σοὶ μᾶλλον ὡς
crown — and holy Constantine to-you rather as
γενναίῳ καὶ κρατερῷ" ἔφη "τὸ τοιοῦτον προσῆκεν
noble and mighty he-said the such befits

ἀξίωμα, ὅθεν ἀκόλουθον ἕξεις με, σαυτὸν πρῶτον εἰς
honor whence follower you-will-have me yourself first to
θάνατον παραδιδούς." ἐπιρρώσαντες οὖν ἀλλήλους τοῖς
death handing-over having-strengthened then one-another with-the
παρακλητικοῖς, κατὰ τὰς κοσμικὰς ἀξίας πρὸς τὸν
exhortations according-to the worldly ranks to the
διὰ μαρτυρίου ἕκαστος ἐχώρει δὴ θάνατον, πάντων
through martyrdom each went indeed death all
θαυμαζόντων τὴν μετὰ πεποιθήσεως καὶ γενναίας τούτων
marveling-at the with confidence and noble their
ψυχῆς ἄθλησιν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὕστερον.
soul contest but these(-things) indeed later

Τότε δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόφιλος οὐ φέρων τὴν ἐκ τῶν 37
then and the emperor Theophilos not bearing the from the
Ἀγαρηνῶν ἧτταν καὶ ἀδοξίαν, πατρίκιον Θεοδόσιον,
Hagarenes defeat and ingloriousness (the)-patrician Theodosios
ὃς οὕτως ἐλέγετο ὁ Βαβούτζικος, πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα
who thus was-called — Baboutzikos to the king
Φραγγίας ἐξαποστέλλει, στρατεύματα ἐκεῖ αἰτῶν γενναῖά
of-Francia sends-out armies there asking noble
τε καὶ πολυάνθρωπα. οὐδὲ γὰρ χειρῶν ἀσθενείᾳ ἢ ψυχῆς
both and populous not for of-hands by-weakness or of-soul
μαλακότητι τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ κέκρικεν ἡττᾶσθαι ποτέ, φυγομαχίᾳ
by-softness the his-own he-judged to-be-worsted ever by-shunning-battle
δὲ καὶ ταὐτὸν εἰπεῖν προδοσίᾳ τοῦτο πάσχειν ἀεί. ἀλλὰ καὶ
but and the-same to-say by-betrayal this to-suffer always but also
ἂν ἔλαβεν πεῖραν καὶ τῶν ὧν προσεκαλεῖτο ἐθνῶν
— he-would-have-taken (a)-trial and of-the which he-called nations
δύναμιν καὶ ἰσχὺν [ᾔσθετο] (μετ' εὐφροσύνης γὰρ τὴν πρὸς
force and strength he-perceived with joy for the to
βασιλέα ἐπικουρίαν ὁ ῥὴξ ἀπεδέδεκτο) καὶ αὖθις κατὰ τῶν
(the)-emperor aid the king had-accepted and again against the

Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐστράτευσεν ὁ δυστυχὴς Θεόφιλος (ταύτην δὲ
Hagarenes would-have-campaigned the unfortunate Theophilos this and
τὴν προσηγορίαν ἐκ τοῦ ἀεί πως ἡττᾶσθαι κατὰ πόλεμον
the appellation from the always somehow to-be-worsted in war
ἐπληρώσατο), εἰ μὴ ὁ ἀποσταλεὶς Θεοδόσιος ἐκ τοῦ βίου
he-filled if not the sent Theodosios out-of the life
γενέσθαι προέφθασεν. ἐκείνου τε γὰρ ἡ ἀποβίωσις τὸν
to-be anticipated of-that(-man) both for the death the
στρατὸν ἐκεῖνον πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐλθεῖν οὐ πεποίηκε,
army that to the reigning(-city) to-come not made
καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπικρατήσασα ἡ τῆς δυσεντερίας νόσος
and the emperor having-prevailed-over the of-the dysentery disease
θανατεῖν ἐποίει ἀλλ᾽ οὐ πρὸς ὅπλα χωρεῖν.
to-die made but not to arms to-go

38–44 · THEOPHOBOS, THE DEATH OF THEOPHILOS, AND HIS BUILDINGS

Suspected of treason, Theophobos flees to Amastris, surrenders on oaths, and is imprisoned; Theophilos, dying, has him beheaded and holds the head by the nose: now neither is he Theophobos nor Theophilos himself. Cretan raiders reach Latros and are destroyed; the fleet is lost off Thasos, an army in Abasgia fails, and famines and earthquakes follow. Theophilos commends his wife and son to the senate in the Magnaura and dies after twelve years and three months, a persecutor of the Orthodox who never won a victory in eighteen wars. The writer describes his palace buildings: the Karianos, the Trikonchos with its Sigma and Mysterion, the Margarites, the Kamilas, the Mousikos, and others, and the chamber his daughter Thekla built at Blachernai.

38 Ὥρα δὲ καὶ τὰ τοῦ Θεοφόβου εἰς μέσον θεῖναι καὶ
(it-is)-time and also the(-things) — of-Theophobos into (the)-midst to-put and
πᾶσι καταστῆσαι σαφῆ. ἔκ τε γὰρ τῆς εἰρημένης ἤδη
to-all to-make clear from both for the said already

κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐν νυκτὶ τὸν πόλεμον συστήσεσθαι
against the Hagarenes at night the war to-set-up
αἰτίας, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς κατὰ τὴν νύκτα γενομένης λαθραίας
cause but also of-the during the night having-happened secret
ὁμιλίας πρὸς τοὺς Σαρακηνούς, ὡς ἔφαμεν, καὶ ἄλλοθεν
conversation with the Saracens as we-said and from-elsewhere
δέ ποθεν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ λοιδορίαι καθοσιώσεως ἐπιφυεῖσαι
too from-somewhere against him slanders of-treason having-grown-up
καὶ αὐξηθεῖσαι μισητὸν εἰργάζοντο τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ φοβερόν.
and having-increased made hated the man and fearsome
καὶ ἐπεὶ μὴ οἷός τε ἦν ἀντισχεῖν, εὐεξαπάτητον ὄντα
and since not able — he-was to-hold-out easily-deceived being
εἰδὼς τὸν Θεόφιλον, φυγαδείᾳ χρησάμενος πρὸς τὴν
knowing — Theophilos flight having-used to —
Ἄμαστριν (πόλις δὲ αὐτὴ Ποντικὴ) μετὰ τέκνων ὁμοῦ
Amastris (a)-city and it Pontic with children together
χωρεῖ τε καὶ γυναικῶν καί τινων ἐκκρίτων ἀνδρῶν.
goes both and wives and some chosen men
ἀνήγετο οὖν στόλος εὐθὺς κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ, καὶ πόλεμος σφοδρὸς
was-launched then (a)-fleet at-once against him and war fierce
ἐξηρτύετο ὡς πρὸς ἐχθρὸν τοῦ βασιλέως κατάδηλον, καὶ
was-prepared as against (an)-enemy of-the emperor manifest and
τοῦ τοιούτου στόλου ἀρχηγὸς ὁ τῆς βίγλης δρουγγάριος
of-the such fleet leader the of-the Vigla droungarios
οὕτως Ὠορύφας λεγόμενος. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ Θεόφοβος τὸν τοῦ
so Ooryphas called but — Theophobos the —
θεοῦ φόβον ἐν ἑαυτῷ συλλαβὼν οὐκ ἔφησε δίκαιον εἶναι
of-god fear in himself having-conceived not he-said right to-be
Χριστιανὸν ὄντα αἵμασιν ἀνθρώπων χαίρειν πιστῶν· ὅθεν
(a)-Christian being with-bloods of-men to-rejoice of-faithful whence
ὑπείκει τῷ βασιλεῖ ὅρκοις δελεασθείς, καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν
he-yields to-the emperor by-oaths having-been-baited and to him

ἐπανάγεται τοῖς ὅρκοις θαρρῶν. ἀλλ' ὁ Θεόφιλος τούτους
returns in-the oaths trusting but — Theophilos them
θέμενος εἰς οὐδὲν νῦν μὲν εἱρκτῇ τινὶ καὶ φρουρᾷ
having-set at nothing now indeed in-prison some and custody
τῇ κατὰ τὸν Βουκολέοντα τοῦτον τίθησι, φρουρεῖσθαι
the(-one) at — Boukoleon him places to-be-guarded
προστάξας· μιᾷ δέ τινι τῶν ἡμερῶν, ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ἑαυτὸν
having-ordered on-one and some of-the days when he-knew himself
ἤδη ἀποβιοῦντα καὶ τὰ ἔσχατα πνέοντα, κελεύει ἐν νυκτὶ
already dying and the last(-breaths) breathing he-orders at night
ἐξ αὐθεντίας ἀποτμηθῆναι οἱόν τι πικρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐντάφιον
by authority to-be-beheaded(-him) like some bitter his burial-gift
καὶ λυπηρόν, καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τὴν ἐκείνου ἀχθῆναι
and grievous and to himself the of-that(-man) to-be-brought
κεφαλήν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἤχθη κατὰ τὸ πρόσταγμα,
head when at-any-rate it-was-brought according-to the order
τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ τὴν ἐκείνου ῥῖνα λαβὼν "νῦν γε"
with-the his-own hand the his nose having-taken now at-least
ἔφησεν "οὐδὲ σὺ Θεόφοβος οὐδ' ἐγὼ Θεόφιλος." εἰσὶ δὲ
he-said neither you (are)-Theophobos nor I Theophilos there-are and
οἱ τὸν θάνατον τοῦ Θεοφόβου τῷ Ὡορύφᾳ ἀλλ' οὐ
(some)-who the death — of-Theophobos to-the Ooryphas but not
τῷ βασιλεῖ διδόασιν, φάσκοντες ὡς ἅμα τῷ πιστεῦσαι
to-the emperor give saying that at-once with-the to-trust
τούτῳ αὐτόν, τὴν κεφαλικὴν ἐπαγαγεῖν τιμωρίαν αὐτῷ
him him the capital to-have-brought punishment on-him
λάθρα διὰ νυκτός. ἐκεῖθεν οὖν διαβεβόηται μέχρι τοῦδε
secretly through (the)-night thence then has-been-noised-abroad until this(-day)
παρὰ Πέρσαις μὴ ὄψεσθαι θάνατον τὸν Θεόφοβον ἀλλ'
among Persians not to-see death — Theophobos but

ἐν ἀφθαρσίᾳ διαζῆν, τῷ κρύβδην ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἀναφανδὸν
in incorruption to-live-on by-the secretly but not openly
τὸν ἐκείνου θάνατον γενέσθαι ποτέ.
the his death to-have-happened ever
Κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν Κρῆτες παντὶ στόλῳ ἀράμενοι 39
at and the same time (the)-Cretans with-all (the)-fleet having-set-out
τὴν παράλιον ἐδῄουν τῶν Θρακησίων καὶ ἠχμαλώτιζον.
the coast ravaged of-the Thrakesioi and took-captives
παρὰ τοσοῦτον δὲ αὐτῶν ἐχώρουν τὰ νεανιεύματα καὶ
to so-much and their went the youthful-outrages and
τὰ στρατηγήματα παρ᾽ ὅσον οὐ τὴν αἰγιαλῖτιν μόνον
the stratagems to as-much(-as) not the coast only
ἐπειρῶντο καταδραμεῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰ τῶν ἐν τῷ
they-tried to-overrun but also against the(-men) in the
ὄρει, ὅπερ οὕτω καλεῖται Λάτρος, ἐνσκηνούντων καὶ
mountain which so is-called Latros dwelling and
τῶν μοναύλιον βίον ἀσπαζομένων γυμνῷ τῷ ξίφει χωρεῖν
the(-ones) solitary life embracing with-bare the sword to-go
καὶ Μυσῶν λείαν τὰ ἐκεῖσε ποιεῖν. ἀλλὰ Κωνσταντῖνος
and of-Mysians plunder the(-things) there to-make but Constantine
ὁ κατὰ τὸν Κοντομύτην τηνικαῦτα τὴν πρόνοιαν τοῦ
the(-one) at — Kontomytes then the oversight of-the
θέματος τούτου ποιῶν, ἐπείπερ ἔξω πρὸς τὴν χέρσον
theme this making when outside to the land
ἐγένοντο, ὡς δελφῖνας τούτους ἀπέσφαξε καὶ γενναίᾳ
they-came like dolphins them slaughtered and with-noble
χειρὶ τῇ ἀφανείᾳ πάντας παρέδωκεν. καὶ κατὰ τὸν τῆς
hand to-the obliteration all handed-over and at the of-the
αὐτοκρατορίας δὲ χρόνον αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸν Ὀκτώβριον μῆνα,
autocracy too time his and the October month
εἰς ἰνδικτιῶνα ὀγδόην, ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στόλος ἐν τῇ νήσῳ
in indiction eighth the of-the Romans fleet at the island

τῇ Θάσῳ καταναυμαχηθεὶς ἄρδην ἅπας ἀπώλετο. καὶ κατὰ
— Thasos defeated-at-sea utterly whole perished and in
τὸ ἑξῆς δὲ τὰς Κυκλάδας νήσους, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τὰς ἄλλας
the next too the Cyclades islands but indeed also the other
ἁπάσας, ὁ τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν κατασύρων στρατὸς οὐκ
all the of-the Ishmaelites sweeping army not
ἐπαύετο. καὶ αὖθις ἐν Ἀβασγίᾳ ὅ τε Θεόφοβος καὶ ὁ τῆς
ceased and again in Abasgia the both Theophobos and the —
Θεοδώρας ἀδελφὸς Βάρδας ἀποσταλέντες μετὰ στρατιᾶς
of-Theodora brother Bardas sent with army
ἰσχυρῶς ἐδυστύχησαν, ὀλίγων ἄγαν ἐκεῖθεν ὑποστρεψάντων.
badly were-unfortunate few very from-there having-returned
ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐχμοὶ καὶ πάλιν χειμῶνες ἐξαίσιοι καὶ ὅλως
but also droughts and again storms extraordinary and wholly
ἀνωμαλίαι καὶ δυσκρασίαι κατὰ τὸν ἀέρα γινόμεναι ἐκάκουν
irregularities and intemperances in the air happening harmed
τὴν γῆν καὶ τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ, ἐξ ὧν σιτοδεῖαι καὶ λιμοὶ
the earth and the(-ones) in it from which famines and hungers
καὶ γῆς ἐκ σεισμῶν ἀνατιναγμοὶ οὐκ ἦν ὅτε μὴ
and of-earth from earthquakes upheavals not was(-a-time) when not
ἐγίνοντο κατὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἅπασαν τῆς βασιλείας ἡμέραν.
they-happened in the his whole of-the reign day
40 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὅλην ἐκκενώσας τὴν τοῦ σώματος οὐσίαν τῇ
since and whole having-emptied the of-the body substance by-the
τῆς γαστρὸς διαρροίᾳ καὶ φθόῃ, ὡς μηδαμοῦ στῆναι
of-the belly flux and wasting so-that nowhere to-stand
τῆς ψυχῆς ἔτι δυναμένης ἀλλ᾽ ἀποπτῆναι αὐτῆς ζητούσης
the soul still being-able but to-fly-away from-it seeking
καὶ ἀποστῆναι, ἐδεδίει [δὲ] περὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ
and to-depart he-feared and about the son and the his
γαμετῆς, ἐν τῇ Μαγναύρᾳ πάντας ἐκκλησιάσας [ὅτε] καὶ
wife in — Magnaura all having-assembled when also

μόγις κλίνης ὑπὸ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων κουφισθεὶς καὶ ἀρθείς,
scarcely from-(the)-bed by the attendants lightened and lifted
καὶ πολὺ ἀθροίσας πνεῦμα ἐν στεναγμῷ, "ἄλλος μὲν"
and much having-gathered breath in groaning another indeed
ἔφη "ἀπολοφυρόμενος ἐν τοιαύτῃ νόσῳ καὶ καταιγίδι
he-said lamenting in such disease and storm
τὸ τῆς νεότητος ἄνθος ἐξετραγῴδησε καὶ τὴν τοσούτην
the of-the youth flower would-have-bewailed and the so-great
εὐδαιμονίαν, αἷς ὁ ἐξ ἀρχῆς φθόνος ἐπιβασκαίνων
prosperity at-which the from (the)-beginning envy bewitching
με δεινῶς τὰ νῦν ἐποφθαλμίζει καὶ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων με ποιεῖ.
me terribly the now eyes-enviously and from men me makes
ἐγὼ δὲ τὴν τῆς γαμετῆς μου χηρείαν προορῶν καὶ τὴν
I and the of-the wife my widowhood foreseeing and the
τοῦ υἱοῦ δυσποτμίαν καὶ ὀρφανίαν, πρὸς δὲ καὶ διακόνων
of-the son ill-fortune and orphanhood besides and also of-servants
ἤθεσι καλοῖς ἐντραφέντων καὶ θεραπείαις καὶ τῆς ἐμῆς
in-habits fine reared and in-services and of-the my
συγκλήτου καὶ γερουσίας τὴν στέρησιν, ἀνακλαίομαι, ὦ
senate and council the loss I-bewail O(-you)
παρόντες, καὶ ἀποδύρομαι οἷς τε ὑμᾶς χειροήθεις
present and lament for-which both you tame
ὄντας καὶ πραεῖς καταλιμπάνων πρὸς ὃν οὐκ οἶδα
being and gentle leaving to which(-life) not I-know
πορεύομαι βίον, καὶ ἀλλάσσομαι δόξαν ἀνθ' ἧς οὐδ'
I-go life and I-exchange glory instead-of which not
ὅλως ὅ τι μοι προσαπαντήσεται ἔγνωκα. ἀλλὰ μέμνησθέ
at-all what ever to-me will-meet I-know but remember
μου τέως τῆς ἧς οὐκέτι γλώττης ἀκούσεσθε καὶ ἣν
me for-a-time of-the which no-longer tongue you-will-hear and which
ὅτε πικρὰ τοῦ πρέποντος ἕνεκεν καὶ συμφέροντος·
when bitter(-things) of-the fitting for-the-sake and advantageous

καὶ τὴν μετὰ θάνατον εὔνοιαν εἴς τε υἱὸν καὶ γυναῖκα
and the after death goodwill to both son and wife
διαβαίνουσαν ταμιεύσασθε, ἐκεῖνο πάντως προσενθυμούμενοι,
passing-over keep that surely bearing-in-mind
ὡς ὁποῖόσπερ ἕκαστος τῷ πέλας τούτου γενήσεται,
that of-what-sort each to-the neighbor of-this will-become
τοιοῦτον καὶ αὐτῷ τὸ πρὸς τὸ μέλλον συμβήσεται.”
such also to-him the(-thing) for the future will-happen
τοιούτοις ῥήμασι τῆς βασιλικῆς πάντας κατακηλούσης
with-such words the imperial all charming
γλώττης καὶ ἡμερούσης, οὐκ ἦν ὅστις ἀδάκρυτος ἦν, οὐδ’
tongue and taming not was (one)-who tearless was nor
ἦν εἰκάσαι τὸν ἀναπεμφθέντα ἐκ τῶν παρόντων
was(-it-possible) to-guess the sent-up from the(-men) present
στεναγμόν τε καὶ ὀδυρμόν.
groaning both and lamentation

41 Μικρὸν οὖν ἔτι ἐπιβιώσας κατὰ τὴν εἰκάδα τοῦ Ἰανουαρίου
(a)-little then still having-lived-on on the twentieth of-the January
μηνὸς τὸν βίον μετήλλαξεν, τῆς βασιλείας γενόμενος
month the life changed of-the empire having-become
ἐγκρατὴς μῆνας τρεῖς ἐπὶ δώδεκα ἔτεσιν, πολλὰ τοὺς τῆς
master months three with twelve years much the(-ones) of-the
ὀρθοδόξου πίστεως περιεχομένους παρ’ ὅλον αὐτοῦ τὸν βίον
orthodox faith holding through whole his the life
μυσαττόμενός τε καὶ χειμῶνα πάντα κατὰ πᾶσαν ὥραν
loathing both and storm every at every hour
καιροῦ ἐπάγων αὐτοῖς ἀφειδῶς, ἀνθ’ ὧν ἕνεκεν καὶ τὸ
of-time bringing on-them unsparingly for which for-the-sake also the
δυστυχὴς ὄνομα παρὰ παντὸς ἀνθρώπου ὥσπερ τινὰ κλῆρον
unfortunate name from every man as-it-were some lot
ἐπήγετο, μηδέποτε τρόπαιον στήσας κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν
brought-on never trophy having-set-up against the enemies

βασιλικόν τε καὶ ἀξιέπαινον, μήτε μὴν τὴν προτέραν ἧτταν
imperial both and praiseworthy nor indeed the former defeat
ἀναμάχεσθαι δυνηθείς, καίτοι γε ὀκτωκαίδεκα πολέμους
to-retrieve having-been-able although at-least eighteen wars
παρ᾽ ὅλην αὐτοῦ τὴν ζωὴν κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν συστήσας, καὶ
through whole his the life against the enemies having-set-up and
τοσαυτάκις αὐτοῖς συμπλακεὶς καὶ πρὸς παρατάξεις χωρήσας
so-many-times with-them having-engaged and to battle-lines having-gone
οὐκ ἀγεννεῖς. ἀλλὰ τοῦτον μὲν οὕτω καταστρέψαντα τὸν
not ignoble but him indeed thus having-ended the
βίον ἐνταῦθα καταλιπόντες ἐπὶ τὰς καταλοίπους οἰκοδομὰς
life here leaving to the remaining buildings
αὐτοῦ που περὶ τὰ ἀνάκτορα οὔσας βαδιούμεθα,
his somewhere about the palace being we-will-go
ἀξιολογωτάτας οὔσας καὶ μνήμης τυχεῖν ἱκανάς.
most-noteworthy being and of-memory to-obtain sufficient
Εὐθὺς γοῦν ἀπὸ τοῦ Κυρίου εἰσιὼν κατὰ τὸ πρόσωπον 42
at-once at-any-rate from the Kyrios going-in at the face
ὑπαντώσας εὑρήσεις αὐτάς. ὅ τε γὰρ Καριανός, ὃς οὕτω
meeting(-you) you-will-find them the both for Karianos which so
φέρει τὴν κλῆσιν διὰ τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς γραδώσεως ἔχειν
bears the name because-of the from the stairway to-have
ἀπὸ λίθου Καριανοῦ οἷόν τινα πλατὺν ποταμόν, ὃ καὶ
from stone Karian as-it-were some broad river which also
χρηματίζων σήμερον βεστιάριον τῶν ἀποθησαυριζομένων
being-styled today wardrobe of-the stored
πέπλων [ἐκ] σηρικῶν, τῆς ἐκείνου προνοίας ἔργον ἐστίν,
robes of silk of-the his forethought (a)-work is
οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ γείτων αὐτοῦ κεχρυσωμένην ἔχων
not indeed and but also the neighbor its gilded having
ὀροφὴν Τρίκογχος, ἐκ τοῦ σχήματος τὴν κλῆσιν λαχών·
(a)-roof Trikonchos from the shape the name having-obtained

τρισὶ γὰρ κόγχαις μετεωρίζεται, μιᾷ μὲν κατὰ τὴν
by-three for apses it-is-raised-aloft by-one indeed on the
ἀνατολὴν συνοικοδομούμενος, ἣ καὶ ἐκ τεσσάρων κιόνων
east built-together which also by four columns
Ῥωμαίων ὑποστηρίζεται, δυσὶ δὲ ἐγκαρσίαις, κατὰ ἄρκτον
Roman is-supported by-two and transverse on north
καὶ μεσημβρίαν φημί. τὸ πρὸς δύσιν δὲ τοῦ οἴκου μέρος
and south I-mean the(-part) toward west and of-the house part
ὑπὸ δύο μὲν κιόνων ἀνέχεται, τριῶν δὲ πυλῶν τὴν ἔξοδον
by two indeed columns is-held-up of-three and of-gates the exit
δίδωσιν. τούτων ἡ μέση μὲν ἐξ ἀργύρου κατεσκεύασται,
gives of-these the middle indeed of silver has-been-made
αἱ ταύτης δὲ ἑκατέρωθεν ἐκ γεγανωμένου χαλκοῦ. ἡ
the(-ones) of-it and on-either-side of polished bronze the
ἔξοδος εἰς τὸ καλούμενον οὕτω Σίγμα ἐξάγει, ἐκ τῆς πρὸς
exit into the called so Sigma leads from the to
τὸ στοιχεῖον ὁμοιότητος τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν λαβόν, ὃ ἴσην τε
the letter likeness the name having-taken which equal both
καὶ ὁμοίαν τοῦ Τρικόγχου τὴν εἰς τοὺς τοίχους ἐπανθοῦσαν
and like of-the Trikonchos the on the walls blooming
ὡραιότητα φέρει· ἐκ γὰρ λακαρικῶν παμποικίλων τοῦτό
beauty bears from for slabs much-variegated this
τε κἀκεῖνο μαρμάρωται. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν τὴν ὀροφὴν ἔχει
both and-that is-marbled but this indeed the roof has
στερράν τε καὶ λαμπράν, ὅτι καὶ πεντεκαίδεκα κίοσιν
firm both and bright because also on-fifteen columns
ἥδρασται ἐκ λίθου δοκιμίνου· διὰ στύρακος δὲ πρὸς τὸν
it-is-set of stone Dokimian through (a)-stairway and to the
θεμέλιον αὐτοῦ κατιὼν τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχοντα τοῦ σχήματος
foundation its going-down the same having of-the shape
εἰκόνα τε καὶ ὁμοίωσιν εὑρήσεις, ἐννέα πρὸς ταῖς
image both and likeness you-will-find nine with the

δέκα κίοσιν διαβασταζόμενον, καὶ τὸν περίπατον ἔχοντα
ten columns borne-up and the walk having
κατεστρωμένον ἐκ λίθου πιπεράτου. τούτου δὲ πλησίον
paved of stone peppered of-this and near
τοῦ περιπάτου, ἐνδότερόν που καὶ ἀνατολικώτερον,
the walk farther-in somewhere and more-to-the-east
Τετράσερόν τι ὁ τεχνίτης ἐξήγειρεν, τρισὶ καὶ αὐτὸ
Tetraseron (a)-certain the craftsman raised by-three also it
κόγχαις διειλημμένον κατὰ τὴν εἰκόνα τοῦ ἐπικειμένου αὐτῷ
apses divided after the image of-the lying-on it
Τρικόγχου. ἀλλὰ τὴν μὲν μίαν πρὸς τὴν ἀνατολήν, τὰς
Trikonchos but the indeed one toward the east the
ἑτέρας δὲ δύο μίαν μὲν πρὸς τὴν δύσιν θατέραν δὲ πρὸς
others and two one indeed toward the west the-other and toward
τὴν μεσημβρίαν συμπεριείληφεν. τὸ δὲ ἀρκτῷον μέρος ἐκ
the south it-comprised the and northern part of
δύο κιόνων ἀληθινοπιπέρων ἔχει διανειργόμενον Μυστήριον·
two columns true-peppered has partitioned Mysterion
οὕτω τὴν κλῆσιν ἔχει τοῦτο κατάλληλον. καὶ ἡ αἰτία ὅτι
so the name has this fitting and the cause (is)-that
καθάπερ τὰ ἄντρα συνεπηχῶν ἀβλαβῆ τὴν ἠχὼ διαπέμπει
like the caves echoing unharmed the echo it-sends-across
πρὸς τοὺς ἀκούοντας· καὶ εἴ τις τῷ τοίχῳ πλησιάσας
to the(-ones) hearing and if anyone to-the wall having-approached
τῆς ἀνατολικῆς κόγχης εἴτε δὴ καὶ δυτικῆς ἐν μυστηρίῳ
of-the eastern apse or indeed also western in secret
τι εἴπῃ καὶ καθ' ἑαυτόν, ἐκ διαμέτρου τε καὶ
something should-say and by himself from diameter both and
ἀντιπέρας ἱστάμενος ἕτερος, εἰ τὸ οὖς τῷ τοίχῳ ἐπιθῆται,
opposite standing another if the ear to-the wall should-put

τῆς ἐν μυστηρίῳ λαλουμένης ἐκείνης φωνῆς αὐτήκοός
of-the in secret spoken that voice ear-witness
πως γενήσεται. τοιοῦτόν τι περὶ αὐτὸ θαῦμα ἐγγίνεται.
somehow will-become such some about it wonder happens
43 Τούτῳ δὴ τῷ οἴκῳ παρεπεπήγει πως καὶ
to-this indeed the house had-been-fixed-beside somehow and
συγκατεσκεύασται ὁ τοῦ Σίγμα περίστυλος, ὁ
built-together the of-the Sigma peristyle the(-one)
πρότερον ἡμῖν εἰρημένος. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ὕπαιθρόν
before by-us mentioned from and this (an)-open-air(-space)
τι καὶ ἐξάερον κέχυται, μέσον μὲν φιάλην ἔχον
some and airy is-spread (in)-the-middle indeed (a)-basin having
χαλκῆν, ἐξ ἀργύρου τὸ χεῖλος ἔχουσαν ἐστεμμένον· ἣ
bronze of silver the rim having crowned which
διάχρυσον στροβίλιον ἔχουσα οὕτω κατωνόμασται, μυστικὴ
gilded pine-cone having so has-been-named mystic
τοῦ Τρικόγχου φιάλη, ἔκ τε τοῦ πλησίον ᾠκοδομημένου
of-the Trikonchos basin from both the near built
Μυστηρίου καὶ τοῦ τρικόγχου οἰκήματος ἐπωνυμίαν
Mysterion and the three-apsed building (the)-name
λαβοῦσα. ἐκ δὲ ταύτης αὐτοῦ που πλησίον καὶ
having-taken from and this right-there somewhere near also
ἀναβάθραι ἑστήκασιν ἐκ Προικοννησίου λίθου λευκοῦ, καὶ
steps stand of Proconnesian stone white and
μέσον τῶν εἰρημένων ἀναβαθμῶν τροπικὴ ἐκ μαρμάρων,
in-the-middle of-the said steps (a)-tropike of marbles
ὑπὸ δύο λεπτοκαλάμων κιόνων ἐστηριγμένη. αὐτοῦ που
by two slender-reeded columns supported right-there somewhere
παρὰ τὴν πλευρὰν τοῦ πρὸς τὸ εὖρος Σίγμα καὶ δύο
at the side of-the toward the breadth Sigma also two
χαλκᾶ λεοντοχάσματα ἐπεπήγεισαν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὕδωρ
bronze lion-mouths had-been-fixed but these indeed water

ἐκφέροντα τὸ κοῖλον ἅπαν τοῦ Σίγμα ἐπλήρουν τοῦ
pouring-out the hollow whole of-the Sigma filled with-the
νάματος, τέρψιν οὐ μικρὰν παρέχοντα· ἡ δὲ δὴ φιάλη
stream delight not small providing the and indeed basin
κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν τῶν δυξίμων, πιστακίων καὶ ἀμυγδάλων,
at the time of-the receptions with-pistachios and almonds
ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ κουναρίων πεπληρωμένη, κονδίτου ἐκ
but indeed also with-pine-kernels filled spiced-wine from
στροβιλίου ἐκδιδομένου, πᾶσιν ἐκίρνα καὶ παρεῖχε τρυφᾶν
(the)-pine-cone given-out for-all mixed and provided to-enjoy
τοῖς ὅσοι δι᾽ ἐφέσεως εἶχον τῶν ἑστηκότων
to-the(-ones) as-many-as through desire had of-the(-ones) standing
ἐκεῖ, πᾶσι μὲν ἀναντιρρήτως τοῖς ἐκ θυμέλης, πλέον
there for-all indeed indisputably the(-ones) from (the)-stage more
δὲ τοῖς ἐξ ὀργάνων ψάλλουσι καὶ τὸ σύντονον. κατὰ
and the(-ones) from instruments playing and the strain at
μὲν δὴ τὰς ἀναβάθρας ὁ δῆμος ἅπας ἱστάμενος καὶ
indeed indeed the steps the people whole standing and
τὸ πολίτευμα μετὰ τῶν περατικῶν ταγμάτων τὴν τάξιν
the citizenry with the of-the-other-side regiments the order
ἐπλήρουν τὴν βασιλικήν, μέσον αὐτῶν δηλαδὴ κατὰ
filled the imperial (in)-the-middle of-them clearly at
τὴν εἰρημένην μαρμάρινον τροπικήν, εἰ μὲν τύχοιεν,
the said marble tropike if indeed they-should-happen
ἔχοντες καὶ τὸν δομέστικον τῶν σχολῶν μετὰ τοῦ
having also the domestic of-the scholae with the
ἐσκουβίτου καὶ τῶν δύο δημάρχων, τοῦ τε πρασίνου
exkoubitos and the two demarchs of-the both Green
τοῦ τε βενέτου, πλησίον μὲν τοῦ δομεστίκου ἱσταμένου
of-the both Blue near indeed the domestic standing
τοῦ τῶν βενέτων δημάρχου, πλησίον δὲ τοῦ ἐσκουβίτου
the(-one) of-the Blues demarch near and the exkoubitos

τοῦ τῶν πρασίνων, εἰ δὲ μὴ τύχοι ἐνίοτε δομέστικος
the(-one) of-the Greens if but not should-happen at-times (the)-domestic
καὶ ὁ ἐσκούβιτος, ἀλλὰ τέως τούς γε δημάρχους
and the exkoubitos but meanwhile the at-least demarchs
ἔχοντες. τούτων ἔφορος ἦν ἁπάντων ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ
having of-these overseer was of-all the emperor and
θυμηδίας ἁπάσης πληρούμενος, ἐν χρυσῷ διαλίθῳ θρόνῳ
of-delight all being-filled on (a)-golden jeweled throne
καθήμενος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον ἐξανιστάμενος, ὡς καὶ τακτικὰ
sitting and not before rising as also tactical
βιβλία καὶ βασιλικὰ διαγορεύουσιν, ἢ τῶν σκιρτημάτων
books and imperial declare than of-the leapings
ἐκείνων ἐπαπολαῦσαι διὰ τῆς θέας καὶ τῶν πολιτικῶν
those to-have-enjoyed through the sight and of-the civil
ἐξαλμάτων. οὕτω μὲν ταῦτα καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τῷ
leaps thus indeed these(-things) and because-of this —
Θεοφίλῳ κατεσκευάσθησαν, τοσοῦτος δὲ ἔρως ἦν τούτων
for-Theophilos were-built so-great and love was of-these
αὐτῷ ὡς καὶ τὰς συνήθεις τῶν πραγμάτων ἀντιλήψεις καὶ
to-him that also the customary of-the affairs undertakings and
καθ' ἡμέραν προελεύσεις ἐν αὐτῷ δὴ Τρικόγχῳ ἐκτελεῖν.
by day processions in the(-very) indeed Trikonchos to-perform
οὗ καὶ κατὰ πρόσωπον τῆς ἐξ ἀργύρου κατεσκευασμένης
where also to face of-the of silver made
τῶν πυλῶν ἀνεστηκυῖά ἐστιν ὀροφὴ τέσσαρσι κίοσι
of-the gates standing is (a)-canopy by-four columns
μετεωριζομένη ἐκ Θετταλικοῦ, τοῦ καὶ πρασίνου, λίθου.
raised-aloft of Thessalian the(-stone) also green stone
ἀντικρὺ δὲ ταύτης καὶ κατὰ μέτωπον, πλησίον δὴ τῶν
opposite and this and at front near indeed the
εἰρημένων ἀναβαθμῶν, κατὰ τὸ πρὸς δυσμὰς μέρος τοῦ
said steps at the toward west part of-the

Σίγμα τρίκλινοι πεφυκότες τῷ Θεοφίλῳ ἐξῳκοδόμηνται·
Sigma triclinia being — by-Theophilos have-been-built
Πυξίτης ὄνομα τῷ ἑνί τε καὶ κατωτέρῳ, ἄτερος δὲ
Pyxites (the)-name to-the one both and lower the-other and
ἀνώνυμος μὲν ἀνώτερος δέ, καὶ αὐτοῦ τὸν βασίλειον
nameless indeed higher but also of-it the imperial
κλῆρον ἐν ἑαυτῷ διαιτᾶσθαι λαχών. τούτου δὴ Πυξίτου
clergy in itself to-live having-obtained of-this indeed Pyxites
κατὰ τὴν πλευρὰν στίχοι λελατόμηνται, ἀσηκρῆτις ὄντες
at the side verses have-been-carved of-(an)-asekretis being
γεννήματα Στεφάνου μὲν ἔχοντος τοὔνομα, οὕτω δὲ
offspring of-Stephen indeed having the-name so and
τοῦ Καπετωλίτου προσαγορευομένου. οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸν
the Capitolite called the(-ones) and on the
τοῦ Σίγμα περίδρομον ἐγκολαφθέντες τοῦ οἰκουμενικοῦ
of-the Sigma circuit engraved of-the ecumenical
διδασκάλου (Ἰγνάτιος οὗτος ἐκαλεῖτο) τυγχάνουσιν. κατὰ
teacher Ignatius this(-one) was-called they-are on
τὸ εὐώνυμον δὲ μέρος, ὡς πρὸς ἀνατολὰς τοῦ Σίγμα,
the left and part as toward (the)-east of-the Sigma
ἕτερός τις τρίκλινος ἐξήρτηται, ὃς Ἔρως μὲν ἐπικέκληται,
other some triclinium is-attached which Eros indeed is-called
ὁπλοθήκη δὲ αὐτῷ ἐχρημάτιζεν. ἐντεῦθεν οὐκ ἄλλο τι
armory and to-him served from-there not other anything
ἢ ἱστορημένας ἀσπίδας καὶ ὅπλα παντοῖα ἴδοι τις ἐν
than painted shields and weapons of-all-kinds would-see one in
αὐτῷ, καὶ ταύταις τοὺς τοίχους διαμορφουμένας, ὡς τὸ
it and with-these the walls formed as the
εἰκός. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Τρικόγχου ἄχρι
likely and the(-things) indeed from itself the Trikonchos as-far-as
δὴ τῶν δυσμῶν οὕτως ἔνεστιν ἰδεῖν τοὺς ἀνεγηγερμένους
indeed the west thus it-is-possible to-see the raised

οἴκους ἐκεῖ· κατὰ δὲ τὸ πρὸς ἀνατολὰς μέρος ἴδοις
houses there at and the toward east part you-would-see
μὲν καὶ τὸν Μαργαρίτην προσαγορευόμενον. τρίκλινος
indeed also — Margarites called triclinium
οὗτος ἐκ βάθρων τῷ Θεοφίλῳ ἀνεστηκώς, ὃς ὀκτὼ μὲν
this from foundations — for-Theophilos raised which eight indeed
κίοσιν ῥοδοποικίλοις τὸν ὄροφον στηρίζεται, τοὺς τοίχους
on-columns rose-variegated the roof is-supported the walls
δὲ ζῴοις πεποικιλμένους παντοδαπῶς καὶ τὸ ἔδαφος ἔχει
and with-animals adorned variously and the floor has
ἐκ Προικοννησίου λίθου καὶ συγκοπῆς ἅπαν κατεστρωμένον.
of Proconnesian stone and of-cut-work all paved
ἴδοις δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἐν αὐτῷ κοιτῶνος ἐκ τεσσάρων
you-would-see and also of-the in it bedchamber from four
μὲν κιόνων Βαθυΐνων τὸν χρυσῷ κατάστικτον κύκλον
indeed columns Bathyinian the with-gold spangled circle
τῆς ὀροφῆς ἀνεχόμενον, ἐκ τεσσάρων δὲ Θετταλικῶν τὰς
of-the roof held-up from four and Thessalian the
στοὰς ἀνεγηγερμένας καὶ βασταζομένας, τοῦ τε ἀνατολικοῦ
stoas raised and borne of-the both eastern
μέρους καὶ τοῦ μεσημβρινοῦ, τοὺς τοίχους δὲ καὶ τὸ ἔδαφος
part and of-the southern the walls and also the floor
ὁμοίως τοῖς Μαργαρίτου κατεστρωμένα λαμπρῶς. οὗτος
likewise to-the(-parts) of-Margarites paved brilliantly this
μὲν ὁ κοιτὼν εἶχεν ἐν ἑαυτῷ διαιτώμενον τὸν Θεόφιλον
indeed the bedchamber had in itself living — Theophilos
ἀπὸ τῆς ἐαρινῆς μεσημερίας μέχρι τῆς μετοπωρινῆς καὶ
from the vernal equinox until the autumnal and
αὖθις· ἄρτι δὲ τῆς χειμερινῆς γειτνιαζούσης τροπῆς κατὰ
again just and the winter being-near solstice at
τὸν ἄλλον μετῳκίζετο κοιτῶνα τὸν κατὰ τὸν Καριανὸν
the other he-moved bedchamber the(-one) at — Karianos

τρίκλινον, καὶ αὐτὸν ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνου ᾠκοδομημένον διὰ
triclinium also it by that(-man) built because-of
τὰς τῶν νότων ἰσχυροτέρας καὶ βιαιοτέρας πνοάς· ὃ
the of-the south-winds stronger and more-violent blasts which
καὶ νῦν τοῦ παππίου ἔστιν ἰδεῖν καταγώγιον.
also now of-the papias it-is(-possible) to-see lodging
οὐχ ἧττον δὲ κατόψει καὶ τὸ ἐκεῖσε δὴ ἡλιακὸν ὑπ᾽
not less and you-will-see also the there indeed sun-terrace by
ἐκείνου καταβεβλημένον κατὰ πρόσωπον τοῦ βορρᾶ, ἐξ
that(-man) laid-down at face of-the north from
οὗ δὴ ὡρᾶτο καὶ τὸ παλαιὸν τζουκανιστήριον, ἐκεῖσε
which indeed was-seen also the old polo-ground there
τηνικαῦτα τυγχάνον, ἔνθα καὶ ἡ νέα ἔκτισται ἐκκλησία
then being where also the New has-been-founded church
καὶ αἱ δύο φιάλαι εἰσὶν καὶ τὸ μεσοκήπιον ὑπὸ Βασιλείου
and the two basins are and the middle-garden by Basil
τοῦ ἀοιδίμου γενόμενα βασιλέως. καὶ πρὸς μὲν τὸ
the celebrated having-been-made emperor and toward indeed the
ἀνατολικὸν μέρος αὗται αὐτοῦ αἱ οἰκοδομαί· πρὸς δὲ
eastern part these his the buildings toward and
τὸν νότον πρῶτον μὲν αὐτὰ τὰ ἡλιακὰ προτείνας,
the south first indeed the(-very) the sun-terraces having-extended
ὡς ἡμῖν πρότερον εἴρηται, καὶ τοὺς νῦν ὄντας κήπους
as by-us before has-been-said and the now being gardens
ποιήσας κουβούκλεια προσεδείματο, τόν τε Καμιλᾶν οὕτω
having-made chambers he-built-besides — both Kamilas so
λεγόμενον καὶ τὸ πλησίον ἐκείνου κουβούκλειον δεύτερον
called and the(-one) near that chamber second
καὶ τὸ τούτου πάλιν κατὰ τάξιν πλησίον τρίτον, ὃ
and the(-one) of-this again in order near third which
καὶ νῦν τῆς Αὐγούστης ἐστὶ βεστιάριον. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ μὲν
also now of-the Augusta is wardrobe but — indeed

Καμιλᾶς ἓξ κίοσιν ἐκ Θετταλικοῦ λίθου, τοῦ καὶ
Kamilas on-six columns of Thessalian stone the(-one) also
πρασίνου, τὴν χρυσοκατάστικτον ὀροφὴν μετεωριζόμενος,
green the gold-spangled roof raising
τῶν δὲ τοίχων τὰ κάτω μὲν ἔχων ἐξ ὁμοίων
of-the and walls the(-parts) below indeed having of like
κατεστρωμένα πλακῶν, τὰ δ' ἄνω ἐκ χρυσοαυγῶν
paved slabs the(-parts) and above of gold-gleaming
ψηφίδων ἀγάλματά τινα τρυγῶντα καρπούς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ
mosaics images some gathering fruits further and also
τοὔδαφος ἐκ λίθων Προικοννησίων, συνῳκοδομημένον ἔχει
the-floor of stones Proconnesian built-together has
καὶ εὐκτήριον, δύο περιέχον βήματα, ἓν μὲν εἰς ὄνομα τῆς
and (a)-chapel two containing sanctuaries one indeed to (the)-name of-the
ὑπεραγίας δεσποίνης θεοτόκου, θάτερον δὲ εἰς ὄνομα τοῦ
all-holy lady god-bearer the-other and to (the)-name of-the
ἀρχιστρατήγου Μιχαήλ. ὑποβεβηκὸς δὲ τούτου μεσόπατόν
archistrategos Michael under and this (a)-mesopaton
ἐστιν, ὃ τὴν μὲν σκοπιὰν διὰ μαρμαρίνου κλουβίου
is which the indeed view through (a)-marble lattice
πρὸς τὸν Χρυσοτρίκλινον ἔχον εἰς βιβλιοθήκην ἀφώρισται
toward — Chrysotriklinos having for (a)-library has-been-set-apart
παρὰ Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ φιλοχρίστου πορφυρογεννήτου
by Constantine the Christ-loving porphyrogennetos
βασιλέως· οὗπερ τὸ ἀριστητήριον αὖθίς ἐστιν ἐκ λίθων
emperor whose the dining-room again is of stones
μὲν Βαθυΐνων τοὺς τοίχους ἔχον λελαμπρυσμένους, ἐκ
indeed Bathyinian the walls having made-brilliant of
συγκοπῶν δὲ καὶ διαφόρων χροιῶν τὸ ἔδαφος πᾶν. τὸ
cut-work and also various colors the floor all the
δὲ μετὰ τὸν Καμιλᾶν κουβούκλειον δεύτερον, τὴν ὀροφὴν
and after — Kamilas chamber second the roof

ὁμοίαν τῷ προτέρῳ ἔχον καὶ ὑπὸ τεσσάρων κιόνων
like to-the first having and by four columns
ἐστηριγμένον δοκιμίνων, τὸ ἔδαφος ἐκ Προικοννησίου λίθου
supported Dokimian the floor of Proconnesian stone
κατέστρωται, τῶν τοίχων, ὡς τὸ πρότερον, τὸν μὲν
is-paved of-the walls as the first(-one) the indeed
ἀέρα ἐκ χρυσοειδῶν ψηφίδων ὅλως κατηγλαϊσμένον
upper(-part) of gold-like mosaics wholly made-splendid
φέρον, δένδρα δέ τινα καὶ ποικίλματα ἐκ πρασίνων ἔχοντα
bearing trees and some and ornaments of green having
τὸ λεῖπον ψηφίδων ἀναπληρούμενον. τὸ τούτῳ δὲ
the remainder of-mosaics being-filled the(-room) to-this and
ὑποβεβηκός, ὃ καὶ Μεσόπατος λέγεται, εἰς οἴκησιν τῶν
under which also Mesopatos is-called for (the)-dwelling of-the
τὴν γυναικωνῖτιν πεπιστευμένων καρτζιμάδων ἐστίν. τὸ δὲ
the women's-quarters entrusted kartzimades is the and
τρίτον μετὰ τοῦ κουβουκλείου, τὸ καὶ νῦν τῆς Αὐγούστης
third after the chamber the(-one) also now of-the Augusta
βεστιάριον χρηματίζον, ὁμοίαν ἔχει τούτοις τὴν ὀροφὴν καὶ
wardrobe being-styled like has to-these the roof and
τοὔδαφος ἐκ λευκοῦ λίθου Προικοννησίου κατεστρωμένον,
the-floor of white stone Proconnesian paved
τοὺς τοίχους δὲ ἅπαντας ὑπὸ εἰκόνων ὕστερον ἀλλ' οὐ
the walls and all by images later but not
τότε καταγλαϊσθέντας ὑπὸ τοῦ υἱοῦ Μιχαήλ.
then made-splendid by the son Michael
τὸ τούτῳ δὲ ἡνωμένον καὶ συμπεφυκὸς κατώγεον
the(-chamber) to-this and united and grown-together ground-floor-room
ἑπτὰ μὲν κίοσι Καριανοῖς τὴν ὀροφὴν στηρίζεται, πέντε
on-seven indeed columns Karian the roof is-supported five
μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν δύο δὲ πρὸς ἀνατολήν, τοίχοις δὲ
indeed toward south two and toward east by-walls and

δύο ὠχύρωται, ἐκ πλακῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ Πηγανουσίων
two it-is-fortified of slabs Roman and Peganousian
καὶ Καριανῶν, πρὸς δὲ καὶ πρασίνων καλλωπιζομένοις
and Karian besides and also green adorned
ποταμίων Θετταλικῶν· Μουσικὸς οὗτος κατονομάζεται
river Thessalian Mousikos this(-one) is-named
διὰ τὴν τῶν μαρμάρων ἀκριβῆ συγκοπήν, ὅθεν καὶ τὴν
because-of the of-the marbles exact cut-work whence also the
τοῦ ἐδάφους λείωσιν ἐκ διαφόρων μὲν σχημάτων ἐκ
of-the floor smoothness from various indeed shapes from
διαφόρων δὲ καὶ ὡραίων λίθων ἐξηρτυμένην ἔχει. εἴποις
various and also beautiful stones fitted-out it-has you-would-say
ἂν αὐτὸ ἰδὼν λειμῶνα εἶναι διαφόροις ἄνθεσι βρύοντα.
— it having-seen (a)-meadow to-be with-various flowers abounding
τούτῳ πρὸς μὲν δύσιν κατὰ πλευρὰν κουβούκλειον ἥνωται
to-this toward indeed west at (the)-side (a)-chamber is-united
τὴν τῶν μαρμάρων ὡραιότητα κατὰ πάντα φέρον ἐφόμοιον,
the of-the marbles beauty in all bearing like
ἔτι δὲ καὶ κίοσι πέντε Καριανοῖς, τρισὶ μὲν πρὸς
further and also on-columns five Karian three indeed toward
μεσημβρίαν δύο δὲ πρὸς δυσμάς, τὴν ὀροφὴν βαστάζουσιν.
south two and toward west the roof bear
ἕτερον δὲ πρὸς πόδας τούτου ἐστίν, εἰς δύο μὲν δόμους
another and at (the)-feet of-this is into two indeed rooms
διῃρημένον, τῷ Αὐγουστιακῷ δὲ πλησιάζον κοιτῶνι· ἔνθα καὶ
divided — to-Augoustiakos and near bedchamber where also
Λέων ὁ φιλόχριστος βασιλεὺς εὐκτήριον τῆς ἁγίας Ἄννης
Leo the Christ-loving emperor (a)-chapel of-the holy Anna
ἐδείματο καὶ αὐτὸ ἐκ τεσσάρων μὲν κιόνων Βαθυΐνων
built also it from four indeed columns Bathyinian
τὴν ὀροφὴν ἀνεγειρόμενον, τὸ ἔδαφος δὲ ἐκ λίθου λευκοῦ
the roof raising the floor and of stone white

Προικοννησίου, πρὸς τοὺς τοίχους ἐκ Βαθυΐνων πλακῶν
Proconnesian toward the walls of Bathyinian slabs
διαμορφούμενον. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν τῷ τῆς Αὐγούστης
formed but this indeed to-the of-the Augusta
πλησιάζει κοιτῶνι, ὡς ἔφαμεν· ἐκεῖνο δὲ τὸ πρὸς δύσιν
is-near bedchamber as we-said that but the(-one) toward west
τοῦ Μουσικοῦ τὴν μὲν κάθοδον ἐν τῷ προρρηθέντι ἔχει
— of-Mousikos the indeed descent in the aforesaid has
κοιτῶνι διὰ κλίμακος, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τὴν εἴσοδον· εἰσάγει
bedchamber through (a)-stairway likewise and also the entrance it-leads
δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὸ καινούργιον, κοιτῶνα καὶ τρίκλινον ὂν
and also to the new bedchamber and triclinium which
Βασίλειος ὁ ἀοίδιμος ἔκτισε βασιλεύς, καὶ πρὸς τὸν πόρτικα
Basil the celebrated built emperor and to the portico
τοῦ πέμπτου κουβουκλείου, ἐν ᾧ τὸ τοῦ ἁγίου Παύλου
of-the fifth chamber in which the of-the holy Paul
εὐκτήριον ὑπὸ Βασιλείου τοῦ ἀοιδίμου ἵδρυται βασιλέως.
chapel by Basil the celebrated has-been-founded emperor
Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐν τοῖς ἀνακτόροις κατά τε βορρᾶν καὶ 44
these(-things) indeed then in the palace on both north and
νότον ὑπὸ Θεοφίλου μὲν ἀνῳκοδόμηνται, ὑφ' ἡμῶν δὲ
south by Theophilos indeed have-been-built by us and
ἱστορίᾳ παραδίδονται, ὅτι μὴ βουλόμεθα τὰ ἐκείνου
to-history are-handed-down because not we-wish the(-things) of-that(-man)
ἔργα, ὁποῖά ποτ' ἂν ᾖ, λήθῃ παραδίδοσθαι, εἰς
works of-what-sort ever — may-be to-forgetfulness to-be-handed-over for
διάγνωσιν τῆς ἐκείνου περὶ τὸν βίον προαιρέσεως. ἀλλὰ καὶ
(the)-discernment of-the his about the life choice but also
τοὺς τρικλίνους, τόν τε οὕτω καλούμενον Λαυσιακόν, προσέτι
the triclinia the both so called Lausiakos besides
δὲ μὴν καὶ τὸν Ἰουστινιανοῦ, ἐκεῖνος τοῖς χρυσοειδέσι
and indeed also the(-one) of-Justinian he with-the gold-like

ψήφοις ἐκόσμησε· καὶ τὴν καλάθωσιν ἐκ τῶν Βασιλίσκου
mosaics adorned and the coffering from the of-Basiliskos
τοῦ τυράννου παλατίων μεταγαγὼν τῷ Λαυσιακῷ
the usurper palaces having-transferred to-the Lausiakos
περιέθηκεν. καὶ ἕτερον δὲ τρίκλινον μετὰ τεσσάρων
he-put-around and another too triclinium with four
κουβουκλείων σεμνῶν τε καὶ λαμπρῶν, ὧν τὰ δύο μὲν
chambers majestic both and bright of-which the two indeed
πρὸς τὸ μεσόπατον τοῦ δευτέρου κουβουκλείου τοῦ μετὰ
toward the mesopaton of-the second chamber the(-one) after
τὸν Καμιλᾶν, ὑπὸ τεσσάρων ἀψίδων τὴν χρυσοειδῆ ὀροφὴν
— Kamilas under four arches the gold-like roof
ἔχοντα, πρὸς τὴν Πορφύραν εἰσίν, ἥτις οὕτω λέγεται
having toward — Porphyra are which so is-called
διὰ τὸ τὴν δέσποιναν ἐκεῖσε ἔκπαλαι διανέμειν τὸ
because-of the the empress there of-old to-distribute the
ὀξὺ ταῖς ἀρχοντίσσαις κατὰ τὸν τῶν βρουμαλίων καιρόν·
purple to-the noblewomen at the of-the Brumalia time
ἕτερα δὲ δύο πρὸς τὸ μέρος τοῦ Λαυσιακοῦ, ἐξ ὧν καὶ
other and two toward the part of-the Lausiakos from which also
τὴν πρὸς αὐτὸν ἔχει κατασκοπήν, εἰργάσατο μέν, ἐκ λίθου
the toward it it-has view he-made indeed of stone
Προικοννησίου τὰ ἐδάφη καταστρώσας αὐτῶν, καὶ ἐκ
Proconnesian the floors having-paved their and with
χρωμάτων ἀλλ᾽ οὐ μαρμάρων τοὺς τοίχους ὡραΐσας, ὑπὸ
colors but not marbles the walls having-beautified by
ἐμπρησμοῦ δὲ ὅμως ἀφανείᾳ παρεδόθησαν. καὶ Θέκλα
fire but nevertheless to-obliteration they-were-handed-over and Thekla
δὲ ἡ τούτου πρώτη θυγάτηρ τὸ κατὰ τὰς Βλαχέρνας
too the his first daughter the at the Blachernai
κουβούκλειον, ἔνθα καὶ τὸ τῆς πρωτομάρτυρος Θέκλης
chamber where also the of-the protomartyr Thekla

εὐκτήριον ἵδρυται, ἐκ τοῦ μὴ ὄντος ἤγαγεν εὐμορφότατον·
chapel is-founded from the not being brought most-beautiful
ἐκεῖσε δὲ καὶ τὸν βίον οὖσα κλινοπετὴς ἐξέλιπεν.
there and also the life being bedridden left

BOOK IV · MICHAEL III

ΠΕΡΙ ΤΗΣ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙΑΣ ΜΙΧΑΗΛ ΤΟΥ ΥΙΟΥ ΘΕΟΦΙΛΟΥ. ΛΟΓΟΣ Δ.

1–6 · THE RESTORATION OF THE IMAGES

The child Michael succeeds with his mother Theodora under the guardians Theoktistos, Bardas, and Manuel. Manuel, healed after Stoudite monks promise recovery if he restores the images, wins over his colleagues and the empress, whom the senate, the bishops, and above all the patriarch John have held back. Ordered to agree or withdraw, John cuts his belly's veins, and word spreads that the empress has killed him; Bardas exposes the fraud, and John is confined to his suburb while Methodios becomes patriarch. Theodora asks the clergy to pardon Theophilos; they cannot absolve the unrepentant dead, but she swears he repented, and they agree in writing. The Orthodox keep a vigil at Blachernai and a procession to the Great Church.

Τοιούτῳ μὲν τέλει βίου ὁ Θεόφιλος ἐχρήσατο, τὴν δὲ 1
such indeed (an)-end of-life — Theophilos met the and
βασιλείαν Μιχαὴλ ὁ τούτου υἱὸς διεδέξατο, τρίτον ἔτος
empire Michael the his son succeeded third year
διανύων ἀφ' οὗ εἰς τὸν βίον προήχθη τῇ μητρὶ
completing since which(-time) into the life he-was-brought-forth with-the mother
αὐτοῦ Θεοδώρᾳ. τῶν δὲ πραγμάτων ὑπῆρχον φροντισταὶ
his Theodora of-the and affairs were caretakers
καὶ ἐπίτροποι οὓς ὁ Θεόφιλος κατέλιπεν, ὅ τε Θεόκτιστος
and guardians whom — Theophilos left — both Theoktistos

ὁ εὐνοῦχος, τηνικαῦτα κανίκλειος καὶ λογοθέτης τοῦ
the eunuch then kanikleios and logothete of-the
δρόμου τυγχάνων, καὶ ὁ πατρίκιος Βάρδας ὁ τῆς
dromos being and the patrician Bardas the(-one) of-the
Αὐγούστης ἀδελφός, καὶ Μανουὴλ ὁ μάγιστρος ἐκ τῶν
Augusta brother and Manuel the magistros from the
Ἀρμενίων καταγόμενος, ὃς καὶ θεῖος ἀπὸ πατρὸς
Armenians descended who also uncle on (the)-father's(-side)
τῆς δεσποίνης ὑπῆρχεν. ἐπεπήγει μὲν οὖν τὰ πολιτικά,
of-the empress was were-fixed indeed then the civil(-affairs)
καὶ καλῶς τέως τὰ πράγματα διηυθύνετο, ἔμελλε δὲ
and well for-a-time the affairs were-steered was-about and
καὶ ἡ τῶν θείων εἰκόνων προσκύνησις ἀνακαινίζεσθαί τε
also the of-the divine images veneration to-be-renewed both
καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἀρχαίαν παλινδρομεῖν αὖθις τιμήν. καὶ δὴ
and to the ancient to-run-back again honor and indeed
Μανουὴλ νόσῳ πιέζεται δεινῇ καὶ χαλεπῇ· πρὸς ὃν
Manuel by-disease is-oppressed terrible and grievous to whom
εἰσρέοντες μοναχοὶ τοῦ Στουδίου (καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ
flowing-in monks — of-Stoudios and for there-was to-him
πίστις οὐκ ἀγεννὴς πρὸς αὐτούς) ἀνάκλησιν τῆς ὑγιείας
trust not ignoble toward them recovery of-the health
ὑπισχνοῦντο ῥᾳδίαν τε καὶ ταχεῖαν γενέσθαι, ἢν μόνον
they-promised easy both and quick to-happen if only
τὴν τῶν ἁγίων προσκύνησιν εἰκόνων αὐτός τε θελήσῃ καὶ
the of-the holy veneration images he both should-wish and
τοὺς κρατοῦντας πείσοι θεσπίσαι ἁπανταχοῦ. οὐ μὴν
the(-ones) ruling should-persuade to-decree everywhere not indeed
δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων ὀρῶν πολλοὶ τῶν θεοφόρων
and but also from the other mountains many of-the god-bearing
πατέρων προσφιλεῖς τούτῳ τυγχάνοντες, ἐκεῖθεν τὰς ἀρχὰς
fathers dear to-him being from-there the beginnings

πρὸς αὐτὸν λαβόντες ὅτε τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν ἐστρατήγει,
toward him having-taken when of-the Armeniakoi he-was-general
προσφοιτῶντες καὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς ὁμοίοις παρακαλοῦντες
visiting and for the like(-things) exhorting
ἔπεισαν ὀρθὰ φρονῆσαί ποτε καὶ τὸ ποθούμενον
persuaded right to-think at-last and the(-thing) longed-for
ὑποσχέσθαι αὐτοῖς, εἰ μόνον ῥᾴων γένοιτο· ὃ καὶ
to-promise to-them if only better he-should-become which also
γέγονε τῇ αὐτῶν πρὸς τὸν θεὸν εὐχῇ καὶ σπουδῇ.
happened by-the their to — god prayer and zeal
ἐπεὶ γοῦν οὗτος τῆς νόσου ἀπήλλακτο καὶ οἱ 2
since at-any-rate he from-the disease had-been-freed and the
μοναχοὶ τῆς πρὸς τὸ πρᾶγμα σπουδῆς οὐκ ἠμέλουν, ἀλλὰ
monks of-the toward the matter zeal not neglected but
παρακλήσεσι χρώμενοι τῶν πρὸς θεὸν ὑποσχέσεων ἠξίουν
exhortations using of-the to god promises they-asked
μεμνῆσθαι, πλήρη τοῦτον τοῦ θείου ζήλου εἰργάσαντο·
to-remember full him of-the divine zeal they-made
καὶ δὴ τοῖς συνεπιτρόποις ἀνακοινώσας τὰ τῆς
and indeed to-the fellow-guardians having-communicated the(-things) of-the
βουλῆς, καὶ πείσας ὡς ἔστι καλὸν ἀρχὴν δεξιὰν
counsel and having-persuaded that it-is fine (a)-beginning right
τοῖς πράγμασιν ἐπιθεῖναι, καὶ μεταρρυθμίσας αὐτοὺς καὶ
to-the affairs to-set and having-reformed them and
πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ βούλημα ἀγαγών, πρὸς τὴν Θεοδώραν
to the his-own will having-brought to — Theodora
εἰσῄει τὰ περὶ τῆς ὑποθέσεως κοινολογησόμενος. καὶ
he-went-in the(-things) about the subject going-to-confer and
ἐκείνη μὲν θεοφιλὴς καὶ ὄντως βασίλεια, ἐπεὶ περὶ τῆς
she indeed god-loving and truly empress when about the
ὀρθοδοξίας ἤκουσε, "τοῦτο" ἔφη "καὶ δι' ἐπιθυμίας
orthodoxy she-heard this she-said also through desire

ἦγον ἀεὶ καὶ μελετῶσα διέλειπον οὐδαμῶς· ἀλλ' ἡ
I-held always and planning(-it) I-ceased in-no-way but the
τῶν πολλῶν συγκλητικῶν καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει τῇ
of-the many senators and of-the(-men) in office to-the
τοιαύτῃ προσανακειμένων αἱρέσει πληθὺς ἐκώλυεν ἄχρι
such devoted heresy multitude prevented(-it) until
τῆς σήμερον, οὐχ ἧττον δὲ καὶ οἱ τῆς ἐκκλησίας
the today not less and also the(-ones) for-the church
ὑπερμαχοῦντες μητροπολῖται, καὶ μάλιστα ὁ πατριάρχης,
championing metropolitans and especially the patriarch
ὃς μικρὰν ἔχοντα τῆς τοιαύτης αἱρέσεως τὸν ἐμὸν ἄνδρα
who (a)-small having of-the such heresy the my husband
τὴν ῥίζαν ἐκ τῶν γονέων ἐπὶ πλεῖον ηὔξησέ τε καὶ
the root from the parents for more increased both and
στερεωτέραν εἰργάσατο ταῖς αὐτοῦ εἰσηγήσεσί τε καὶ
firmer made by-the his proposals both and
πυκναῖς παραινέσεσιν, εἰς χαλεπὰς αἰκίας καὶ βασάνους
frequent exhortations into grievous outrages and tortures
ἐκτραπῆναι τοῦτον ποιήσας, ἃς ἐκεῖνος ὁσημέραι κατὰ
to-turn him having-made which that(-man) daily against
τῶν ἁγίων εὕρηκεν, ἀλείπτης τε καὶ διδάσκαλος τῶν
the saints devised trainer both and teacher of-the
τοιούτων κακῶν ὁ ἄθλιος γεγονώς." "καὶ τί γοῦν
such evils the wretch having-become and what at-any-rate
οὕτω, δέσποινα, φρονοῦσάν σε καὶ βουλευομένην τὰ
thus O-lady thinking you and counseling the
κάλλιστα τὸ κωλῦον ἐστίν" ἀντέφησαν "μὴ καὶ εἰς
finest(-things) the hindering(-thing) is they-retorted not also into
ἔργον ταῦτα ἀχθῆναι καὶ τὴν πάνδημον ταύτην κελεῦσαι
deed these(-things) to-be-brought and the public this to-order
εἰς πέρας ἐλθεῖν ἑορτήν;" εὐθὺς γοῦν μετακαλεσαμένη
to (the)-end to-come feast at-once at-any-rate having-summoned

τὸν τῆς βίγλης δρουγγάριον (Κωνσταντῖνος δὲ οὗτος
the of-the Vigla droungarios Constantine and this(-man)
ἦν, ὁ τοῦ πατρικίου Θωμᾶ καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα γεγονότος
was the of-the patrician Thomas and after these(-things) having-become
λογοθέτου τοῦ δρόμου πατήρ) δηλοῖ τῷ πατριάρχῃ
logothete of-the dromos father she-makes-known to-the patriarch
ὡς πολλοὶ πολλαχόθεν συνεληλυθότες εὐλαβεῖς τε καὶ
that many from-many-places having-come-together pious both and
μοναχοὶ δέησιν ἐποιήσαντο πρὸς τὴν βασιλείαν ἡμῶν τοῦ
monks petition made to the majesty our of-the
τὰς πανσέπτους κελεῦσαι ἀναστηλωθῆναι εἰκόνας. εἰ μὲν
the all-revered to-order to-be-restored images if indeed
οὖν ὁμόλογος εἶ τούτοις καὶ σύμφωνος, καὶ δὴ τὸν
then agreeing you-are with-them and concordant then indeed the
παλαιὸν κόσμον ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκκλησία ἀπολαμβανέτω· εἰ δ᾽
ancient adornment the — of-god church let-receive-back if but
ἀμφίβολος καὶ τὴν γνώμην οὐκ ἔχων εὐθῆ, τοῦ μὲν θρόνου
doubtful and the mind not having straight of-the indeed throne
ἔξω γενοῦ καὶ τῆς πόλεως, κατὰ δὲ τὸ προάστειόν σου
out be and of-the city to and the suburb your
μικρὸν διάβηθι, μέχρις ἂν σύλλογος τῶν ἁγίων πατέρων
(a)-little go-over until — (a)-council of-the holy fathers
γένηται μετὰ σοῦ· οἶδε γὰρ ἕτοιμοι διαδικάζεσθαί τε καὶ
happens with you these for (are)-ready to-dispute both and
διαλέγεσθαι καὶ πείθειν σε περὶ τούτων κακῶς λέγοντα.”
to-discuss and to-persuade you about these(-things) wrongly speaking
κατὰ τὸν ἐν τῷ πατριαρχείῳ Θετταλὸν (τρίκλινος δὲ 3
in the in the patriarchate Thessalos triclinium and
οὕτω κατονομαζόμενος) τηνικαῦτα ἀνέκειτο ἐπὶ σκίμποδος,
so being-named then he-lay on (a)-couch
τὰς βασιλικὰς ἀγγελίας δεχόμενος· ὃς ἅμα τῇ ἀκοῇ
the imperial messages receiving who at-once with-the hearing

τῶν λόγων βληθεὶς τὴν ψυχὴν τὸν μὲν ἀποκομιστὴν
of-the words struck the soul the indeed bearer
τούτων, οὐδὲν ἕτερον φήσας ἢ βουλεύεσθαι περὶ τούτων
of-them nothing other having-said than to-take-counsel about these(-things)
καλῶς, ἅμα τῷ λόγῳ ἀπέσταλκεν, καὶ θᾶττον ἢ
well at-once with-the word sent-off and quicker than
λόγος ἐγχειρίδιόν τι λαβὼν τὰς κατὰ γαστέρα φλέβας
word (a)-dagger some having-taken the in (the)-belly veins
ἀπέτεμεν, ἃς ᾔδει δειλίαν μὲν καὶ οἶκτον ἐκ τῆς τοῦ
cut which he-knew cowardice indeed and pity from the of-the
αἵματος δαψιλοῦς ἐκχύσεως ἀποτεκεῖν τοῖς πολλοῖς, θάνατον
blood abundant pouring to-engender in-the many death
δὲ ἤ τινα κίνδυνον οὐδαμῶς. θροῦς οὖν καὶ βοὴ εὐθύς
but or some danger in-no-way (a)-murmur then and (a)-shout at-once
τις περιήχει τὴν ἐκκλησίαν, οὐ μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς
some resounded-through the church not indeed and but also the
βασιλικὰς ἀκοάς, προφθάνουσα τὸν δρουγγάριον, ὡς ἡ
imperial ears reaching-first the droungarios that the
δέσποινα ἐκ κελεύσεως τὸν πατριάρχην κατέσφαξεν. τῶν
empress by command the patriarch had-slaughtered of-the
γοῦν λεγομένων ἐταστὴς ἀκριβὴς ὁ πατρίκιος Βάρδας
at-any-rate said examiner exact the patrician Bardas
ἀποσταλεὶς αὐτάς τε τὰς πληγὰς ἐκ προνοίας γενομένας
sent (the)-very both the wounds from forethought made
ἠρέμα πως κατεφώρασεν, καὶ τὸ δρᾶμα τὸν ἔλεγχον οὐ
quietly somehow detected and the drama the refutation not
διέφυγεν, αὐτῶν τῶν θεραπόντων κατειπόντων αὐτοῦ, καὶ
escaped of-the(-very) the servants having-denounced him and
τὰ τῆς τομῆς ὄργανα (φλεβοτόμα δὲ ἦν) εἰς μέσον
the of-the cutting instruments lancets and they-were into (the)-midst
καθυποβαλλόμενα. ἔκτοτε οὖν οὐδενὸς ***, ὡς ἐπὶ τοιαύτῃ
being-laid-before from-then then of-no-one (lacuna) as for such

αἰτίᾳ καὶ γνώμῃ αὐτοφόνῳ ἐπειλημμένος, ἀπηλαύνετο
cause and purpose self-murdering caught was-driven-away
μὲν καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἐξωθεῖτο ὁ ἀλιτήριος, κατὰ
indeed and from-the church was-thrust-out the wicked(-one) at
τὸ προάστειον αὐτοῦ τὸ οὕτω λεγόμενον περιορισθεὶς
the suburb his the(-one) so called confined
τὰ Ψιχά, εἰσήγετο δὲ ὁ πολλοῖς πόνοις καὶ κόποις
the Psicha was-brought-in and the(-one) by-many pains and toils
τὰ τῆς ἀρετῆς σώσας ἀδιαλώβητα, καὶ τῆς ἐγχρονίου
the(-things) of-the virtue having-kept unharmed and of-the long
μὲν καθείρξεως, καὶ ταύτης σαπρώσης, ὡς ἔοικεν, τὴν
indeed imprisonment and this rotting as it-seems the
τῶν τριχῶν ἀπόρροιαν κληρωσάμενος, παρὰ θεοῦ δὲ καὶ
of-the hairs falling having-received by god and also
τῆς βασιλίδος Θεοδώρας τὴν τῆς ἐκκλησίας κυβέρνησίν
by-the empress Theodora the of-the church governance
τε καὶ πηδαλιούχησιν· Μεθόδιος οὗτος ἦν ὁ μέγας καὶ
both and steering Methodios this(-one) was the great and
τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀήττητος πρόμαχος.
of-the church unconquered champion
Σκόπει δὲ καὶ ὅπως ἐν ταὐτῷ συναγαγούσης τῆς 4
consider and also how in the-same(-place) having-gathered the(-woman)
γενναίας καὶ τῷ ὄντι βοηθοῦ γεγονυίας τῷ ἀνδρί, ἀλλ' οὐκ
noble and in-the being (a)-helper having-become to-the husband but not
ἐναντίας, τοὺς ὅποι ποτὲ γῆς ὄντας ὀρθοδόξους, καὶ τὴν
opposed the(-ones) wherever ever on-earth being orthodox and the
παρρησίαν ἀναλαβέσθαι θεσπίσασα "ἄγε δὴ" ἔφησεν, "ὦ
freedom-of-speech to-take-up having-decreed come indeed she-said O
κλῆρος θεοῦ καὶ πατέρες, ἐμοῦ τὴν τῶν ἱερῶν καὶ πανσέπτων
clergy of-god and fathers me the of-the holy and all-revered
ἀναστήλωσιν εἰκόνων ὑμῖν χορηγούσης καὶ διδούσης ὅτι
restoration images for-you supplying and giving that

μάλιστά μου μετ᾽ εὐμενείας, ἀντεπιθεῖναί μοι δικαίαν χάριν
most me with goodwill to-render-in-return to-me just favor
καὶ αὐτῇ δεσποίνῃ οὔσῃ βουλήθητε, οὐ ταπεινήν τινα καὶ
also to-myself mistress being be-willing not lowly some and
μικράν, ἵνα μηδὲ χάρις νομίζοιτο, οὐδὲ τοῖς διδοῦσιν ὑμῖν
small that not-even (a)-favor it-should-be-thought nor to-the giving you
ἢ ἐμοὶ αἰτουμένῃ ἀνάρμοστόν τε καὶ ἀσύμφορον, ἐπιτηδείου
or to-me asking unfitting both and unprofitable suitable
δὲ καὶ μονίμου καὶ παρὰ θεῷ εὐαποδέκτου καθεστώσης καὶ
but and lasting and with god well-accepted being-established and
νομιζομένης. ἡ δέ ἐστιν ἡ εἰς τὸν ἐμὸν ἄνδρα τε καὶ βασιλέα
being-thought it and is the to the my husband both and emperor
περὶ τούτων διαβαίνουσα συγγνώμη τε καὶ συγχώρησις
about these(-things) passing-over pardon both and forgiveness
καὶ ἀμνηστία παρὰ θεοῦ τῆς τοιαύτης διαμαρτίας· ὡς
and amnesty from god of-the such error since
εἰ μὴ τοῦτο γένηται, οὔτ᾽ ἐμὲ σχοίητε ἐπακολουθοῦσαν
if not this happens neither me you-would-have following
ὑμῖν οὔτε τὴν τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων προσκύνησιν καὶ
you nor the of-the revered images veneration and
ἀνάρρησιν, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ τὴν τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀνάληψιν.᾽᾽
proclamation but not-even the of-the church recovery
καὶ ἅμα τὸν λόγον κατέπαυσεν. ᾽᾽ὅτι μὲν οὖν δίκαια,᾽᾽
and at-once the speech she-stopped that indeed then just(-things)
ἡ ὀρθόδοξος ἐκκλησία καὶ ὁ ταύτης ἐξάρχων Μεθόδιος
the orthodox church and the of-it leader Methodios
ἔφασαν, ᾽᾽δέσποινα, ἐξαιτῇ, οὐδ᾽ ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν ἀπαναίνεσθαι·
they-said O-lady you-ask not-even we have to-refuse
δίκαιον γὰρ τοῖς εὐεργέταις καὶ ἄρχουσι τὰς προσηκούσας
just for for-the benefactors and rulers the fitting
χάριτας ἀντεπιτίθεσθαι δαψιλῶς, ὅταν μὴ τυραννὶς ἄρχῃ
favors to-render-in-return abundantly when not tyrannical rules

χείρ, ἀλλ᾽ ἔστι γνώμη θεοφιλής. ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω θεοῦ δίκην
hand but is (a)-mind god-loving but not-yet of-god (from)-justice
ἡμεῖς τὸν πρὸς ἄλλον βίον διαβεβηκότα δυνατοὶ
we the(-one) to another life having-passed able
ἐξαιρεῖσθαι, τὰ ὑπὲρ ἡμᾶς φανταζόμενοι. δυνατοὶ μὲν
to-rescue the(-things) beyond us imagining able indeed
ἡμεῖς, καὶ κλεῖς οὐρανῶν πιστευθέντες παρὰ θεοῦ, τοῖς
we also (the)-keys of-heavens entrusted by god to-the
βουλομένοις πᾶσιν ἀνοιγνύναι αὐτάς· ἀλλὰ τοῖς κατὰ
willing all to-open them but to-the(-ones) in
βίον τοῦτον ἔτι οἰκονομουμένοις, πρὶν ἀλλαχοῦ μεταστῶσιν·
life this still being-managed before elsewhere they-depart
ἔστιν δ᾽ ὅτε καὶ τοῖς μεθισταμένοις, ὅταν τε μικρὰ τὰ
there-is and when also to-the(-ones) departing when both small the
σφάλματα ᾖ καὶ μετάνοια τούτοις προσῆν. τοῖς δ᾽ ἤδη
faults are and repentance to-them was-present to-the(-ones) but already
μετὰ πονηρῶν ἐλπίδων ἀπάρασι καὶ πρόδηλον φέρουσι τὴν
with evil hopes having-set-out and manifest bearing the
κατάγνωσιν οὐχ οἷοί τε τὰς εὐθύνας διαλύειν τούτοις ἡμεῖς.”
condemnation not able — the accounts to-dissolve for-these we
καὶ ἡ δέσποινα, εἴτ᾽ ἀληθῶς εἴτε καὶ ἄλλως τῷ 6
and the empress whether truly or also otherwise by-the
τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἀναθερμανθεῖσα φίλτρῳ (ὅπερ ἔστι, καὶ
of-the husband warmed love which is also
ἡμεῖς συγκατατιθέμεθα), ἦ μὴν ἐνωμότως τὸν ἱερὸν
we agree truly indeed on-oath the holy
ἐκεῖνον θίασον ἐβεβαίου ὡς μεγάλα τραγῳδούσης καὶ
that company she-assured that greatly(-me) lamenting and
κατολοφυρομένης καὶ πάντα ἐκτραγῳδούσης κατὰ τὸν τῆς
bewailing and all(-things) bewailing-aloud at the of-the
ἐξόδου τούτου καιρόν, καὶ διαγραφούσης ὡς οἷα
departure his time and describing how what-sort-of(-things)

ἐπακολουθήσει ἡμῖν μεμισημένοις ἐν τηλικαύτῃ πόλει
will-follow for-us hated in so-great (a)-city
περὶ τῆς τοιαύτης αἱρέσεως, εὐχῶν στέρησις, ἀρῶν
concerning the such heresy of-prayers deprivation of-curses
ἐπέκτασις, λαοῦ ἐπανάστασις, εἰσήει τούτῳ μετάμελος
extension of-people uprising there-came-into him regret
τῆς αἱρέσεως. καὶ ταύτας ἅμα αἰτησάμενός τε
of-the heresy and these(-images) at-once having-asked both
καὶ κατασπασάμενος ζεούσῃ ψυχῇ, ἐμοῦ ἐν χερσὶ
and having-kissed with-boiling soul me in hands
καθυποβαλούσης, τοῖς ἀπάγουσιν ἀγγέλοις τὸ πνεῦμα
having-put-before(-them) to-the leading-away angels the spirit
παρέδωκεν. ταύτης ἐκεῖνοι ἀκηκοότες δὴ τῆς φωνῆς,
he-gave-up this those having-heard indeed the voice
καὶ τὸν τρόπον τῆς Αὐγούστης εὐλαβηθέντες (ἦν γάρ,
and the manner of-the Augusta having-revered she-was for
εἰ καί τις, φιλόχριστος), καὶ ἅμα τὴν τῶν ἁγίων
if also any(-one) Christ-loving and at-once the of-the holy
εἰκόνων ζητοῦντες τιμήν, κοινῇ ψήφῳ καὶ γνώμῃ τῆς
images seeking honor by-common vote and mind of-the
μὲν ἁμαρτίας ταύτης, εἰ οὕτως τοῦτ' ἔστιν, συγγνώμην
indeed sin this if thus this is pardon
ἔφασαν εὑρήσειν παρὰ θεῷ, καὶ ἅμα δι' ἐγγράφου
they-said to-find with god and at-once through written
ἀσφαλείας τὴν πίστιν τούτου τῇ δεσποίνῃ ἐδίδοσαν. ἐφ'
security the pledge of-this to-the empress they-gave on
οἷς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ἀπολαβόντες, καὶ τῷ Μεθοδίῳ
which(-terms) the church having-received-back and — to-Methodios
ἁγιωτάτῳ τὴν τῆς ἀρχιερωσύνης ἀποδεδωκότες τιμήν,
most-holy the of-the high-priesthood having-given-back honor
τῇ πρώτῃ τῶν ἁγίων νηστειῶν κυριακῇ σὺν αὐτῇ τῇ
on-the first of-the holy fasts Sunday with her(-very) the

δεσποίνῃ πάννυχον ὑμνῳδίαν ἐν τῷ κατὰ τὰς Βλαχέρνας
empress all-night hymnody in the at the Blachernai
ἱερῷ τεμένει τῆς ὑπεραγίας ἡμῶν δεσποίνης καὶ θεοτόκου
holy precinct of-the all-holy our lady and god-bearer
τετελεκότες, τῇ ἕωθεν μετὰ λιτῆς τῷ μεγάλῳ τοῦ θεοῦ
having-completed at-the dawn with procession the great — of-god
λόγου τεμένει καταλαμβάνουσι· καὶ τὸν κόσμον αὐτῆς
word precinct they-reach and the adornment its
αὖθις ἀναλαμβάνει ἡ ἐκκλησία, τῆς ἁγίας μυσταγωγίας
again takes-up the church of-the holy mystagogy
τελειωθείσης ἁγνῶς. καὶ ἡ μὲν ὀρθόδοξος οὕτω
having-been-completed purely and the indeed orthodox thus
προέκοπτεν ἐκκλησία, ἀνακαινιζομένη ὡς ἀετός, τὸ
advanced church being-renewed like (an)-eagle the(-word)
τῆς γραφῆς, πάντων τῶν αἱρεσιωτῶν ἐν πάσῃ τῇ ὑφ᾽
of-the scripture all the heretics in all the under
ἡλίῳ καθαιρέσει ὑποβληθέντων καὶ τοῦ ἀρχιερέως αὐτῶν·
(the)-sun deposition having-been-subjected and the high-priest their
Ἰωάννης οὗτος ἦν, ὁ διὰ τὴν οἰκείαν ἀσέβειαν
John this(-one) was the(-one) because-of the own impiety
Ἰαννὴς παρὰ τῶν εὐσεβῶν ὀνομασθείς, οὐκ ἐπηλύτης καὶ
Iannes by the pious named not (an)-incomer and
ξένος, αὐτόχθων δὲ καὶ τῆς βασιλίδος ταύτης τῶν πόλεων
stranger native but and of-the queen this of-the cities
βλάστημα (φύεσθαι δὲ καὶ ἐν ἀμπέλῳ βάτον ἠκούσαμεν),
(a)-shoot to-grow and also in (a)-vine (a)-bramble we-have-heard
οὐδ᾽ ἐξ ἀσήμου τινὸς ἀλλὰ καὶ λίαν εὐγενοῦς καταγόμενος
nor from obscure some but also very noble descended
σειρᾶς, τῆς οὕτω τῶν Μοροχαρζαμίων λεγομένης.
line the(-one) so of-the Morocharzamioi called

John, abbot of Sergios and Bakchos, Theophilos' tutor and patriarch, practices lecanomancy: three men strike a three-headed bronze statue in the hippodrome, felling two heads and bending the third, and of an enemy's three chiefs two fall in civil strife while the third survives, broken. His brother Arsaber's villa hides his underground den. In exile he has an icon's eyes gouged and is flogged. The iconoclasts bribe a woman to accuse Methodios; he shows that a miracle has left him impotent, she confesses, and at his plea the slanderers are spared all but a yearly anathema. At Theodora's feast for the confessors, Theophanes vows to sue Theophilos at God's court for the letters on his forehead, and the clergy assure the empress their pardon stands. The Zelix heresy is reconciled.

7 Οὗτος οὖν, ἵνα καὶ τὰ κατ' αὐτὸν ἡ ἱστορία
this(-man) then that also the(-things) concerning him the history
δηλώσῃ, τῆς μονῆς τῶν μαρτύρων Σεργίου καὶ Βάκχου
may-make-clear of-the monastery of-the martyrs Sergios and Bakchos
τῆς ἐν τοῖς Ὁρμίσδου διακειμένης ἡγούμενος ἄνωθεν καὶ
the(-one) in the of-Hormisdas situated abbot from-of-old and
τῷ βασιλικῷ κλήρῳ καταριθμούμενος, διαφερόντως παρὰ
in-the imperial clergy numbered especially by
Μιχαὴλ ἠγάπητο τοῦ Τραυλοῦ, εἴτε μόνῳ τούτῳ τῷ
Michael was-loved the Stammerer whether by-only this the
κοινωνὸς εἶναι τῆς τούτου αἱρέσεως, εἴτε καὶ τῷ διαφέρειν
partner to-be of-the his heresy or also by-the excelling
ἐπὶ λογιότητι δόξαν τινὰ ἐσχηκώς. πλὴν ἠγάπητο καὶ τοῦ
in learning reputation some having-had but he-was-loved and —
Θεοφίλου διδάσκαλος ἐγκαθίστατο. καὶ οὗτος ἐπεὶ τὰς τῆς
of-Theophilos teacher was-installed and this(-one) when the of-the
βασιλείας ἔσχεν ἡνίας, σύγκελλον μὲν πρότερον τοῦτον τιμᾷ,
empire he-had reins synkellos indeed first him honors
εἶθ' ὕστερον καὶ πατριάρχην καθίστησι Κωνσταντινουπόλεως,
then later also patriarch makes of-Constantinople

προγνώσεις τινὰς διὰ λεκανομαντείας καὶ γοητείας αὐτῷ
foreknowledges some through lecanomancy and sorcery to-him
ἀπαγγέλλοντα. καὶ ἡ γοητεία τοιαύτη. ἔθνους ποτὲ
announcing and the sorcery such of-(a)-nation once
τρισὶν ὑφ' ἡγεμόσι στρατηγουμένου ἀπίστου τε καὶ
three under leaders led faithless both and
σκληροῦ τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων χώραν κατατρέχοντός τε καὶ
hard the of-the Romans land overrunning both and
καταληϊζομένου, καὶ ὡς εἰκὸς ἀθυμοῦντος ἐπὶ τούτῳ τοῦ
plundering and as likely despondent at this —
Θεοφίλου καὶ τοῦ ὑπηκόου παντός, ἀποσκευάζεσθαί που
Theophilos and the subject(-people) all to-cast-off somehow
τὴν ἀθυμίαν οὗτος συμβουλεύει καὶ θάρρους πληρωθῆναί
the despondency this(-man) advises and with-courage to-be-filled
τε καὶ χαρᾶς, εἴγε μόνον τῇ τούτου ἐπακολουθοίη βουλῇ.
both and joy if only to-the his he-should-follow counsel
ἡ δὲ ἦν τοιαύτη. ἐν τοῖς εἰς τὸν εὔριπον τοῦ ἱπποδρομίου
it and was such among the in the euripus of-the hippodrome
ἱδρυμένοις χαλκοῖς ἀνδριᾶσιν ἐλέγετό τις εἶναι ἀνδριὰς
set-up bronze statues was-said some to-be (a)-statue
τρισὶ διαμορφούμενος κεφαλαῖς, ἃς κατά τινα στοιχείωσιν
by-three formed heads which by some talismanic-binding
πρὸς τοὺς τοῦ ἔθνους ἀρχηγοὺς ἀνῆγεν. σφύρας οὖν
to the of-the nation leaders he-referred hammers then
μεγίστας σιδηρᾶς ἰσαρίθμους ταῖς κεφαλαῖς προσέταττε
very-great iron equal-in-number to-the heads he-ordered
γενέσθαι, καὶ ἀνδράσιν ἐγχειρισθῆναι αὐτὰς τρισίν, ἐπὶ
to-be-made and to-men to-be-entrusted them three in
χειρῶν γενναιότητι διαφέροντας· κατὰ δέ τινα ὥραν
of-hands strength excelling at and some hour
νυκτερινὴν πρὸς τὸν εἰρημένον ἀνδριάντα πλησίον στάντας
of-night to the said statue near standing

αὐτοῦ, καὶ τὰς σφύρας ἐπὶ χεῖρας ἐν μετεώρῳ ἔχοντας,
it and the hammers on hands in (the)-air having
ἡνίκα τούτοις κελεύσειεν, μεθ' ὑπερβαλλούσης δυνάμεως
when to-them he-should-order with surpassing force
ὁμοῦ ταύτας κατενεγκεῖν, ὡς ἐξ ἑνὸς κρούσματός τε
together them to-bring-down so-that from one blow both
καὶ πλήξεως τὰς τοιαύτας ἀποτεμεῖν κεφαλάς. τούτοις
and stroke the such to-cut-off heads by-these
τοῖς λόγοις εὐφρανθείς τε ἅμα καὶ ἐκπλαγεὶς ὁ Θεόφιλος
the words gladdened both at-once and astonished — Theophilos
ἐκέλευσε τὸ ἔργον ἐπαγαγεῖν. ὡς οὖν παρῆσαν πόρρω
ordered the work to-bring-on when then they-were-present far-on
δὴ τῶν νυκτῶν οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες τὰς σφύρας κατέχοντες,
indeed in-the nights the indeed men the hammers holding
ὁ δὲ Ἰωάννης διὰ λαϊκοῦ ἐνδύματος ἑαυτὸν περικρύπτων,
— and John by lay garment himself concealing
ὡς ἂν μὴ κατάδηλος γένηται, καθ' ἑαυτὸν ὁ Ἰωάννης
so-that — not manifest he-might-become by himself — John
τοὺς στοιχειωτικοὺς λόγους ὑπειπὼν καὶ τὴν ἐνοῦσαν
the talismanic words having-uttered-softly and the residing
τοῖς ἄρχουσι δύναμιν εἰς τὸν ἀνδριάντα μεταγαγών,
in-the rulers power into the statue having-transferred
ἢ μᾶλλον τὴν οὖσαν πρότερον ἐν τῷ ἀνδριάντι
or rather the(-power) being before in the statue
καταβαλὼν ἐκ τῆς τῶν στοιχειωσάντων δυνάμεως, παίειν
having-overthrown by the of-the binders power to-strike
ἕκαστον προστάττει νεανικῶς τε καὶ ἰσχυρῶς. καὶ οἱ μὲν
each he-orders vigorously both and strongly and the indeed
δύο ἰσχυροτάταις χρησάμενοι καταφοραῖς τὰς δύο τοῦ
two most-mighty having-used down-strokes the two of-the
ἀνδριάντος κεφαλὰς ἀπέκοψαν· ὁ δ' ἕτερος μαλακώτερον
statue heads cut-off the but other more-softly

ποιήσας τὴν πληγὴν μικρὸν μὲν κατέκλινεν, οὐ μὴν καὶ
having-made the blow (a)-little indeed bent(-it) not indeed also
ὅλην τοῦ σώματος ἀπέτεμεν τὴν κεφαλήν. τούτοις οὖν
whole of-the body cut-off the head on-these then
καὶ τὰ κατὰ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας ἐπηκολούθει. ἔριδος γάρ
also the(-things) concerning the leaders followed strife for
τινος κραταιᾶς ἐπεισπεσούσης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐμφυλίου μάχης,
some mighty having-fallen-upon them and civil battle
ὑπὸ τοῦ ἑνὸς οἱ δύο τῶν ἡγεμόνων πίπτουσι κατὰ τὴν
by the one the two of-the leaders fall according-to the
κεφαλῶν ἐκτομήν, τοῦ τρίτου μόνου διασωθέντος μέν, οὐχ
of-heads cutting-off the third alone having-been-saved indeed not
ὑγιῶς δέ. οὕτως εἰς τὸ μηδὲν εἶναι τὸ ἔθνος χωρῆσαν
soundly but thus to the nothing to-be the nation having-come
πρὸς τὰ οἰκεῖα αὖθις μετὰ φυγῆς ἀφώρμα καὶ συμφορᾶς.
to the own again with flight set-off and calamity
ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν τῆς γοητείας οὕτως,
but the(-things) indeed of-the sorcery thus
τῷ δὲ γόητι τούτῳ ἀδελφὸς ἦν σαρκικός, ὄνομα 8
to-the and sorcerer this (a)-brother was carnal (by)-name
Ἀρσαβήρ, τὴν τύχην πατρίκιος παρὰ Θεοφίλου τιμηθείς.
Arsaber the rank patrician by Theophilos honored
τούτῳ γοῦν προάστειον κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον μέρος τοῦ
to-him at-any-rate (a)-suburb on the left part of-the
ἐκπλεομένου Εὐξείνου ἐν τῇ μονῇ τοῦ ἁγίου Φωκᾶ
sailing-out(-into) Euxine at the monastery of-the holy Phokas
προσῆν, οἰκοδομὰς μεγίστας ἔχον καὶ πολυτελεῖς στοάς
belonged buildings very-great having and costly stoas
τε καὶ βαλανεῖον καὶ πρὸς τούτοις δεξαμενάς. ἐκεῖσε
both and (a)-bath and besides these cisterns there
δὴ ὁ πατριάρχης συχνὰς ποιῶν καταγωγὰς λέγεταί
indeed the patriarch frequent making stays is-said

τι ὑπόγειον κατασκευάσαι ἐνδιαίτημα τῶν Τροφωνίου
some underground to-have-built dwelling to-the(-ones) of-Trophonios
παρόμοιον, ὄπισθεν δὲ τῆς ἀνοιγομένης θύρας κατὰ τὸ
like behind and the opening door at the
πρόχειρον πυλίδα εἶναί τινα διὰ βαθμίδων οὐκ ὀλίγων
ready (a)-little-gate to-be some through steps not few
ἐκεῖσε δὴ τοὺς θέλοντας παραπέμπουσαν. ἐκεῖνο γοῦν
there indeed the(-ones) wishing conducting that at-any-rate
αὐτοῦ πονηρὸν ἐργαστήριον. ἐκεῖσε δὴ τούτῳ τινὲς νῦν
his wicked workshop there indeed for-him some now
μὲν ἐταμιεύοντο θαλαμηπολούμεναι, μονάζουσαί τε καὶ
indeed were-kept serving-in-the-chamber nuns both and
ἄλλως τὸ κάλλος γυναῖκες μὴ διαφθείρουσαι, αἷς
otherwise the beauty women not corrupting(-it) with-whom
συνεφθείρετο· νῦν δὲ μαντεῖαι δι' ἡπατοσκοπίας καὶ
he-was-corrupted now and divinations through liver-inspection and
λεκανομαντείας καὶ γοητείας καὶ νεκυομαντείας ἐνηργοῦντο,
lecanomancy and sorcery and necromancy were-practiced
ταύταις προσχρωμένου κοινωνοῖς τε καὶ βοηθοῖς. ὅθεν
these using(-as) partners both and helpers whence
πολλάκις καί τινα προλέγειν τούτῳ συνέβαινε τῇ
often also some(-things) to-foretell to-him it-happened by-the
τῶν δαιμόνων συνεργείᾳ ἀληθῆ, οὐ τῷ Θεοφίλῳ μόνῳ
of-the demons cooperation true not — to-Theophilos only
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἑτέροις τοῖς τούτου ὁμόφροσιν. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν
but also to-others the his like-minded but this indeed
τούτου τὸ μιαρὸν ἐνδιαίτημα ὀψέ ποτε πρὸς Βασίλειον
his the foul dwelling late at-some-time to Basil
τὸν τηνικαῦτα παρακοιμώμενον ἀπεμποληθὲν παρὰ τοῦ
the then parakoimomenos having-been-sold by the
ἀδελφοῦ εἰς ἱερὸν μετηνέχθη φροντιστήριον, οὐκ ἐκεῖνο
brother into (a)-holy was-transferred monastery not that

μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ λοιπά, καθὼς αὐτῷ διαφέροντα ἦν· καὶ
only but also the rest as to-him belonging was and
ἐκ βάθρων ἡ τοῦ ἁγίου μεγαλομάρτυρος ἀνιδρύθη μονή.
from foundations the of-the holy great-martyr was-founded monastery
Τότε δὲ οὗτος καὶ πᾶσα ἡ αὐτοῦ, ὡς εἴρηται, συμμορία 9
then and this(-man) and all the his as has-been-said faction
τῇ καθαιρέσει ὑποβληθέντες οὐχ ἡσυχῇ παραπέμπειν
to-the deposition subjected not quietly to-conduct
τὸν ἑαυτῶν βίον ἐδοκίμαζον, ἀλλ᾽ ἔτι καὶ κατὰ τῶν
the their-own life thought-fit but still even against the
ἁγίων εἰκόνων ἐνεανιεύοντο. μετὰ γοῦν τὴν καθαίρεσιν
holy images acted-insolently after at-any-rate the deposition
ὑπερορίας ἔν τινι μονῇ γεγονώς, εἰκόνος μιᾶς κατὰ τὸν
of-exile in some monastery having-been of-image one on the
ὄροφον ἱστορημένης καὶ ἀτενῶς οἷον ἀτενιζούσης αὐτῷ,
ceiling painted and fixedly as-it-were gazing at-him
μὴ φέρων οὗτος ὁρᾶν τὴν ἐκείνης πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐπικατιοῦσαν
not bearing this(-man) to-see the its toward him coming-down
θέαν, καθαιρεῖσθαι ταύτην διά τινος οἰκέτου προστάττει
gaze to-be-taken-down it through some servant orders
καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς κατορύττεσθαι, τοῦτο μόνον ἐπιλέγων,
and the eyes to-be-dug-out this only adding
ὡς τὴν ταύτης οὐ δύναμαι μορφὴν ἐνορᾶν. ἤκουστο
that the its not I-can form to-look-on had-been-heard
γοῦν ταῦτα τῇ δεσποίνῃ, καὶ τῇ προσηκούσῃ
at-any-rate these(-things) by-the empress and to-the fitting
μάστιγι καὶ παιδείᾳ διὰ σκυτάλης καθυποβέβλητο.
scourge and discipline through (the)-whip he-had-been-subjected
ἀλλ᾽ οὐδ᾽ οὕτως ἦν ἀγαπητὸν αὐτῷ τῆς ἡσυχίας ἐρᾶν, 10
but not-even so was (it)-satisfying to-him the quiet to-love
μῶμον δέ τινα καὶ ὡς ἐπειρῶντο τῷ ἐν ἁγίοις
blame and some even thus they-tried to-the(-one) among (the)-saints

Μεθοδίῳ προσάπτειν, καὶ μῶμον εἰς γυναικὸς φθορὰν
Methodios to-fasten and blame for of-(a)-woman corruption
παῖδα κεκτημένης μονογενῆ (Μητροφάνης οὗτος ἦν, ὁ
(a)-child having only-begotten Metrophanes this(-one) was the(-one)
μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ τῆς Σμύρνης καθηγησάμενος), ἣν καὶ
after not long — Smyrna having-led which(-woman) also
χρυσίων ἱκανῶν ἐξωνησάμενοι καὶ ἅμα καθυποσχόμενοι εἰ
with-gold sufficient having-bought and at-once having-promised if
μόνον τούτοις συμφήσειεν, πολλὰ κατελέγοντο πρὸς τὴν
only with-them she-should-agree many(-things) they-recounted to the
δέσποιναν καὶ τοὺς ἐπιτροπεύοντας τοῦ παιδὸς αὐτῆς.
empress and the(-ones) acting-as-guardians of-the child her
βῆμα γοῦν εὐθέως καὶ κριτήριον φρίκης γέμον ἐκ
(a)-tribunal at-any-rate at-once and (a)-court of-dread full from
πολιτικῶν ἀνδρῶν συγκροτούμενον καὶ ἐκκλησιαστικῶν. οὐ
civil men assembled and ecclesiastical not
τῶν εὐσεβῶν τις ἀπῆν, οὐ τῶν ἀσεβῶν, οὐ τῶν
of-the pious anyone was-absent not of-the impious not of-the(-ones)
μονήρη βίον ἐπειλημμένων, οὐκ ἄλλος τις τῶν ἀκούειν
solitary life having-taken-up not other anyone of-the(-ones) to-hear
ἢ λαλεῖν δυναμένων· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ ἡ πρὸς τὸ ξένον τῆς
or to-speak able the(-ones) indeed for the at the strangeness of-the
λοιδορίας κατηφιῶντας οἷον ἐνῆγεν αἰδώς, τοὺς δ᾽ ἡ
slander downcast as-it-were led shame the(-others) but the
τοῦ κροτεῖν καὶ χαίρειν ὑπ᾽ ἀκρασίας ἡδονή. ἤγοντο γοῦν
of-the to-clap and to-rejoice from incontinence pleasure were-brought at-any-rate
οἱ κατηγοροῦντες εἰς μέσον, καὶ τῶν λεγομένων
the(-ones) accusing into (the)-midst and of-the(-things) said
ἡ ἄνθρωπος ἔλεγχος. ὁ δὲ ἅμα τῇ παραστάσει τῆς
the woman (the)-proof he and at-once with-the presence of-the
γυναικός, οὐδὲν ὑποστειλάμενος οὐδαμῶς, ὅπως τε ἔχεις
woman nothing having-held-back in-no-way how both you-are

κυρία, ταύτην ἐπηρώτα εἰς ἐπήκοον (καὶ γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ
lady her he-asked in (the)-hearing also for she-was to-him
γνώριμος ἐκ πολλοῦ δι᾽ ἀρετήν), καὶ ὅπως ὁ δεῖνα καὶ
known from long(-ago) because-of virtue and how the such-a-one and
ὁ δεῖνα, περὶ τοῦ ταύτης ἀνδρὸς καὶ τῶν προσηκόντων
the such-a-one about the her husband and the(-ones) related
αὐτῇ· οὕτως τούτῳ ἐπήνθει τὸ ἄπλαστον. οἱ δὲ μᾶλλον
to-her thus in-him bloomed the unfeigned they but rather
ἐκβοήσαντες ἐγαυρίων ὑφ᾽ ἡδονῆς, τὰ τῆς κατηγορίας
having-cried-out exulted from pleasure the(-things) of-the accusation
ἐπαύξοντες καὶ σαφῆ τὸν ἔλεγχον δόντες λοιπόν. ὡς δ᾽
increasing and plain the proof having-given henceforth when and
οὗτος μόλις τῆς κατηγορίας ἐπήσθετο, ζήλῳ πυρωθείς,
he scarcely the accusation perceived with-zeal fired
ὡς ἂν μὴ δι᾽ αὐτοῦ τὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας κινδυνεύοι
so-that — not through him the(-things) of-the church should-be-endangered
καὶ τοῦ Χριστοῦ, ἄλλον μὲν εἶναι καιρὸν αἰδοῦς ἄλλον
and — of-Christ another indeed to-be (the)-time of-modesty another
δὲ ὑποστολῆς καὶ σεμνότητος, μικρὸν ἐκ τοῦ θρόνου
and of-reserve and dignity (a)-little from the throne
μετεωρίσας αὐτὸν καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τὸν κόλπον συναγαγὼν
having-raised himself and to himself the fold having-gathered
γυμνὴν ἐδείκνυεν τὴν αἰδῶ, τεθαυματουργημένην ἔχων καὶ
bare he-showed the privy-parts miraculously-wrought having and
οὐ κατ᾽ ἄνθρωπον, καὶ ἅμα διηγεῖτο τὴν θαυματουργίαν,
not according-to man and at-once he-recounted the miracle
ὡς πρὸ πολλοῦ κατὰ τὴν πρεσβυτέραν Ῥώμην γενόμενος,
that before much in the elder Rome having-been
σφριγώντων ἔτι καὶ ἐνακμαζόντων τῶν παθῶν, ἔρως τις
swelling still and being-in-their-prime the passions love some
αὐτὸν ἐξέκαιεν θερμότερον ἢ καὶ κατὰ πάθους ὁρμήν.
him burned-up hotter than even according-to of-passion impulse

ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἐκινδύνευεν καὶ περιγενέσθαι τούτου οὐκ ἦν
when at-any-rate he-was-in-danger and to-overcome it not he-was
οἷός τε, τὸν κορυφαῖον Πέτρον τῶ χεῖρε πρὸς τὸν ναὸν
able — the chief Peter the two-hands toward the church
ἐκπετάσας ἐξελιπάρει τυχεῖν τινὸς ἐπικουρίας καὶ ἀρωγῆς.
having-spread-out he-entreated to-obtain some help and aid
καὶ δὴ τῷ κόπῳ τῆς εὐχῆς ὀψὲ πρὸς ὕπνον
and indeed with-the toil of-the prayer late to sleep
κλιθείς, φανῆναί οἱ τὸν ἀπόστολον ἐκείνου τοῦ
having-lain-down to-have-appeared to-him the apostle that the
μέρους ἁπτόμενον καὶ τὰς ὁρμὰς σβεννύοντα τῶν παθῶν,
part touching and the impulses quenching of-the passions
τοῦτο μόνον προσεπιλέγοντα τὸ "ἀπολέλυσαι δὴ τῆς
this only adding the you-have-been-released indeed from-the
τῶν παθῶν ἐπικρατείας, Μεθόδιε." τούτοις ἐκεῖνος τὸν
of-the passions mastery Methodios by-these he the
μακρὸν ἐκεῖνον πέπεικε σύλλογον, αἰσχύνης πλήσας τοὺς
long that persuaded assembly with-shame having-filled the
τῆς ἀληθείας ἐχθρούς. οὐ μὴν ὁ μάγιστρος Μανουὴλ
of-the truth enemies not indeed the magistros Manuel
τούτοις ἠξίου λύεσθαι τὰς κατηγορίας, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῇ
by-these thought-fit to-be-dissolved the accusations but also to-the
γυναικὶ ἠπείλει ἢ μὴν ἀπαγαγεῖν τῆς ζωῆς, εἰ μὴ τὴν
woman he-threatened truly indeed to-lead-away from-the life if not the
πᾶσαν διδάξῃ ἀλήθειαν. καὶ ἥ γ' εὐθέως ἔκπυστον
all she-should-teach truth and she at-least at-once known
καὶ σαφῆ τὴν πᾶσαν δραματουργίαν ποιεῖ, τόσου καὶ
and plain the all play-acting makes for-so-much and
τόσου λέγουσα χρυσίου ἐξωνηθῆναι, καὶ ἔτι ἔν τινί μου
so-much saying gold to-have-been-bought and still in some my
τῶν κιβωτίων, οὕτως ὡς ἐδόθη, σεσημασμένον ἐστὶ καὶ
of-the chests so as it-was-given sealed it-is and

πεφύλακται σφραγῖδι αὐτῶν. αὐθωρὸν οὖν ἀποστείλαντες
has-been-kept by-(the)-seal their at-once then having-sent
ἐκεῖνό τε, ὡς ἔφησεν ἡ γυνή, εὗρον τὸ χρυσίον κατὰ
both that as said the woman they-found the gold in
τὴν κιβωτὸν καὶ ἤγαγον. καὶ οὗτοι τῇ τοῦ πατριάρχου
the chest and brought(-it) and these by-the of-the patriarch
συμπαθείᾳ καὶ παρακλήσει πρὸς τοὺς κρατοῦντας οὐ
compassion and entreaty with the(-ones) ruling not
ποινῶν καὶ βασάνων, ὧν ἦσαν ἄξιοι, ἀλλὰ συγγνώμης
of-penalties and tortures of-which they-were worthy but of-pardon
ἠξίωντο, τοῦτο μόνον εἰς ἔκτισιν λαβόντες καὶ
were-thought-worthy this only for payment having-received and
τιμωρίαν τὸ ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος ἐν τῇ τῆς ὀρθοδοξίας
punishment the(-thing) through every year at the of-the orthodoxy
πανηγύρει μετὰ λαμπάδων ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν Βλαχέρναις
festival with torches from the in Blachernai
σεβασμίου σηκοῦ τῆς θεομήτορος πρὸς τὸν θεῖον καὶ
revered shrine of-the Mother-of-God to the divine and
περιώνυμον τῆς σοφίας ἀφικνεῖσθαι νεὼν καὶ τὸ οἰκεῖον
renowned of-the Wisdom to-come church and the own(-anathema)
ἐνηχεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς ὠσὶν ἀνάθεμα διὰ τὴν πρὸς τὰς θείας
to-ring-in for-them in-ears anathema because-of the toward the divine
εἰκόνας ἀπέχθειαν· ὃ καὶ τηρούμενον ἐφάνη ἐπὶ πολὺ
images hatred which also being-kept appeared for long
καὶ τῆς αὐτῶν μέχρις ἐταμιεύθη ζωῆς. καὶ ἡ μὲν ἐφ᾽
and of-the their until was-dispensed life and the indeed for
ἱκανὸν αὐξηθεῖσα τοιαύτη αἵρεσις τοιοῦτον δὴ εἶχε καὶ
sufficient(-time) increased such heresy such indeed had also
τὸ πέρας ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ· ἀνέλαμψαν δὲ αἱ θεῖαι τῶν ἁγίων
the end from — god shone-forth and the divine of-the holy
εἰκόνων μορφαί, οὐ θεϊκῶς ἡμῖν λατρευόμεναί τε καὶ
images forms not divinely by-us worshiped both and

τυπούμεναι, σχετικῶς δὲ καὶ σεβασμίως τὴν δι᾽ αὐτῶν
figured relatively but and reverently the through them
πρὸς τὰ πρωτότυπα ἡμῖν τιμήν πως διαπορθμεύουσαι.
to the prototypes from-us honor somehow ferrying
11 Ταύτην ἄγουσα τὴν ἑορτὴν ἡ Θεοδώρα δι᾽ ἡδονῆς εἱστία
this keeping the feast — Theodora with pleasure feasted
ποτὲ ἐν ταὐτῷ τὸ τῆς ἐκκλησίας πλήρωμα πᾶν κατὰ
once in the-same(-place) the of-the church fullness all at
τὰ ἐν τοῖς Καριανοῦ ἀνάκτορα, ἅ, ὡς εἴρηται πρότερον
the in the of-Karianos palace which as has-been-said before
ἡμῖν, τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἕνεκεν θυγατέρων ὁ Θεόφιλος ἐνεδείματο.
by-us of-the his-own for-the-sake daughters — Theophilos built
οὐκ ἦν γοῦν ὅστις οὐ παρῆν ἐκεῖ τῶν ἱερέων καὶ
not was at-any-rate (one)-who not was-present there of-the priests and
ὁμολογητῶν. τούτοις ἐναρίθμιοι Θεοφάνης τε ὁ τῆς
confessors with-these numbered(-were) Theophanes both the(-one) —
Σμύρνης καὶ ὁ αὐτοῦ Θεόδωρος ἀδελφός. ὡς οὖν τὰ
of-Smyrna and the his Theodore brother when then the(-things)
τῆς εὐωχίας παρήκμασεν καὶ εἰς βρῶσιν τὰ τραγήματα
of-the feast passed-its-prime and for eating the sweetmeats
μετὰ τῶν πλακούντων παρέκειντο, συνεχῶς ἀτενιζούσης
with the cakes were-set-out continually gazing
τῆς βασιλίδος καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ μετώπῳ γράμματα
the empress and the(-letters) on the forehead letters
τῶν πατέρων καθορώσης καὶ στεναζούσης συνέβη πως
of-the fathers looking-at and groaning it-happened somehow
τούτους ὡς ἐξ ὁμολόγου ἀντοφθαλμῆσαι καὶ ταύτην
them as from agreement to-look-back and her
ἐνιδεῖν ἀτενιζούσης αὐτοῖς. φησάντων γοῦν ὡς τίς ἄρα,
to-see gazing at-them having-said at-any-rate that what then
δέσποινα, ἡ αἰτία τῆς πρὸς ἡμᾶς σου ὁράσεως ἀτενοῦς;
O-lady the cause of-the toward us your gaze intent

τὴν ἐκ τῶν γραμμάτων ἔφη θαυμάζειν καρτερίαν ὑμῶν
the from the letters she-said to-wonder-at endurance your
καὶ τὴν τοῦ ταῦτα δράσαντος ἀπήνειαν εἰς ὑμᾶς. καὶ
and the of-the these(-things) having-done cruelty toward you and
ὁ μακαρίτης Θεοφάνης μηδὲν εὐλαβηθείς τε καὶ τῶν
the blessed Theophanes nothing having-feared both and of-the(-things)
προησφαλισμένων διανοηθεὶς "ὑπὲρ ταύτης" ἔφησε "τῆς
secured-beforehand having-thought for this he-said the
γραφῆς εὖ μάλα τρανῶς ἐν τῷ τοῦ θεοῦ ἀδεκάστῳ
writing well very clearly in the — of-god impartial
δικαστηρίῳ διαδικάσομαι σὺν τῷ ἀνδρί σου καὶ βασιλεῖ."
court I-will-go-to-law with the husband your and emperor
τούτῳ περίλυπος γενομένη, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ σύνδακρυς, "καὶ
at-this deeply-grieved having-become but indeed also tearful also
ταῦτα" ἔφησεν ἡ βασίλεια "ἡ ὑπόσχεσις καὶ αἱ δι'
these(-things) said the empress the promise and the through
ἐγγράφων ὁμολογίαι ὑμῶν, ὡς μὴ μόνον συγκεχωρηκέναι
writings agreements your that not only to-have-pardoned
ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς ἀγῶνας ἐνάγειν καὶ καλεῖν;" "οὔ" φησιν
but also to contests to-bring and to-summon no says
ὁ πατριάρχης αὐθωρὸν ἀναστὰς καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ τῶν
the patriarch at-once having-stood-up and the rest of-the
ἱερέων, "βασίλεια, οὔ· ἀλλ' ἕξει βεβαίως τὰ ἡμέτερα,
priests O-empress no but will-have surely the our(-promises)
τῆς ὀλιγωρίας τούτων λογιζομένης οὐδέν." οὕτω μὲν οὖν
of-the neglect of-these being-reckoned nothing thus indeed then
ἐσιγάσθη ταῦτα, καὶ τὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἔθη ἀκύμαντα.
were-silenced these(-things) and the of-the church customs unruffled
Καὶ ἑτέρα δέ τις αἵρεσις οὕτω τῶν Ζηλίκων λεγομένη 12
and another too some heresy so of-the Zelikoi called
ἀναφανεῖσα, σὺν τῷ ἑαυτῆς ἀρχηγῷ Ζῆλι ὀνομαζομένῳ,
having-appeared with the its-own leader Zelix named

φέροντι δὲ τὴν τῶν ἀσηκρήτων ἐν πρώτοις τιμήν,
bearing and the of-the asekretis among (the)-first honor
ἐθεραπεύθη τε καὶ πρὸς θεοσέβειαν μετηνέχθη ἐν προόδῳ
was-healed both and to piety was-transferred in (a)-procession
βασιλικῇ, τῆς τοῦ μύρου μόνου μετὰ καινῶν ἐμφωτίων
imperial of-the of-the chrism alone with new baptismal-robes
τε καὶ ἐσθημάτων καταξιωθέντων χρίσεως τῶν
both and garments having-been-deemed-worthy of-anointing the(-ones)
ἀντιποιουμένων αὐτῆς, καὶ τελειωθέντων λαμπρῶς.
laying-claim-to it and having-been-perfected brilliantly

13–16 · BULGARIA AND THE PAULICIANS

Bogoris threatens war, but Theodora's answer shames him into renewing the peace. She ransoms the monk Theodore Kouphara for Bogoris' sister, who has become a Christian; a famine drives Bogoris to baptism as Michael, and, as is also told, a monk's painting of the Last Judgment brings him to it. He puts down a revolt and is given the empty land from Sidera to Develtos, which the Bulgarians call Zagora. Theodora's generals kill some hundred thousand Paulicians; Karbeas, whose father was hanged, flees with five thousand to Amer of Melitene, and they found Tephrike. Amer, after a civil war with Skleros, joins Karbeas against the Romans, and Petronas, acting as domestic for Bardas, takes the field against them.

13 Ὅ γε μὴν ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας (Βώγωρις οὗτος ἦν)
the at-least indeed ruler of-Bulgaria Bogoris this(-one) was
θρασύτερον ἐξεφέρετο γυναῖκα τῆς βασιλείας κρατεῖν
more-boldly was-carried-away (a)-woman the empire to-rule
διακηκοώς· ὅθεν καί τινας ἀγγέλους ἀπέσταλκεν πρὸς
having-heard whence also some messengers he-sent to
αὐτήν, τὰς συνθήκας λέγων καταλύειν καὶ κατὰ τῆς
her the treaties saying to-dissolve and against the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεύειν γῆς. ἀλλ' αὐτὴ μηδὲν
of-the Romans to-march land but she nothing

θῆλυ ἐννοοῦσα ἢ ἄνανδρον "καὶ ἐμὲ" αὐτῷ κατεμήνυεν
female thinking or unmanly also me to-him she-informed
"κατ' αὐτοῦ εὑρήσεις ἀντιστρατεύουσαν. καὶ ἐλπίζω μὲν
against him you-will-find campaigning and I-hope indeed
κυριεῦσαί σου· εἰ δὲ μὴ γένηται καὶ ἐκνικήσεις με, καὶ
to-master you if but not it-happens and you-will-conquer me also
οὕτω σου περιέσομαι, τὴν νίκην ἀρίδηλον ἔχουσα· γυναῖκα
so you I-will-overcome the victory manifest having (a)-woman
γὰρ ἀλλ' οὐκ ἄνδρα ἕξεις ἡττηθέντα σοι." διὰ
for but not (a)-man you-will-have defeated by-you because-of
τοῦτο μὲν οὖν καὶ ἐφ' ἡσυχίας ἔμεινεν, μηδὲν τολμήσας
this indeed then also in quiet he-remained nothing having-dared
νεανιεύεσθαι, καὶ τὰς τῆς ἀγάπης αὖθις ἀνενέου σπονδάς.
to-act-insolently and the of-the love again renewed treaties
καὶ δὴ ζήτησίν τινα καὶ πολλὴν ἔρευναν περί τινος 14
and indeed search some and much inquiry about some
μοναχοῦ, οὕτω καλουμένου Θεοδώρου τοῦ ἐπίκλην
monk so called Theodore the(-one) surnamed
Κουφαρᾶ, εἴτε ἔκ τινων ὀνειράτων καὶ ὄψεως εἴτε ἄλλως
Kouphara whether from some dreams and vision or otherwise
πως, πρὸ πολλοῦ αἰχμαλωτισθέντος ἡ Θεοδώρα πρὸς
somehow before much having-been-taken-captive — Theodora to
τὸν ἄρχοντα Βουλγαρίας ἐποίει, καὶ αὐτὸν ἠξίου διὰ
the ruler of-Bulgaria made and him she-asked through
γραμμάτων ἀνερευνῆσαι καὶ τιμῆς ὅσης καὶ βούλοιτο
letters to-search-out and at-price as-much-as also he-might-wish
ἀπολυτρώσασθαι τοῦτον αὐτῇ. ἠξίου δὲ καὶ οὗτος,
to-ransom him for-her asked and also this(-man)
ἀφορμὴν ἐκ τούτου λαβών, περὶ οἰκείας αὐτοῦ πρεσβεύειν
(a)-pretext from this having-taken about own his to-negotiate
ἀδελφῆς παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων μὲν αἰχμαλωτισθείσης ποτέ,
sister by the Romans indeed taken-captive once

κατεχομένης δὲ νῦν ἐν τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως αὐλῇ. αὕτη δὴ
held and now in the of-the emperor court she indeed
οὖν πρὸς τὴν πίστιν καλῶς μετενεχθεῖσα, καὶ γράμματα
then to the faith well having-been-transferred and letters
κατὰ τὸν τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας παιδευθεῖσα καιρόν, καὶ ἄλλως
during the of-the captivity having-been-taught time and otherwise
τὴν τῶν Χριστιανῶν τάξιν τε καὶ περὶ τὸ θεῖον αἰδῶ
the of-the Christians order both and about the divine reverence
τε καὶ δόξαν, ὡς ἔστι, θαυμάζουσα διαφερόντως, ἐπεὶ
both and glory as it-is admiring especially when
τῆς ἐπανόδου τῆς πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν τετύχηκεν, οὐ
the return the(-one) to the brother she-obtained not
διέλιπεν ἐκθειάζουσά τε καὶ παρακαλοῦσα καὶ σπέρματα
she-ceased extolling both and exhorting and seeds
καταβάλλουσα τῆς πίστεως πρὸς αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ (ἦν γὰρ
throwing-down of-the faith toward him he and was for
παρὰ τοῦ εἰρημένου Κουφαρᾶ μικρά τινα παιδευθεὶς
by the said Kouphara little some(-things) taught
καὶ τῶν μυστηρίων κατηχηθείς) τοῦτον μὲν ἀποστείλας
and in-the mysteries catechized him indeed having-sent(-off)
τὴν οἰκείαν ἐλάμβανε μισθὸν ἀδελφήν· πλὴν ἔμενεν
the own he-received (as)-wage sister but he-remained
ὅπερ ἦν, ἀπιστίᾳ κατισχημένος καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ θρησκείαν
what he-was in-unbelief held-fast and the his religion
τιμῶν. ἀλλά τις πληγὴ περιπεσοῦσα θεήλατος (λιμὸς δὲ
honoring but some blow having-fallen-upon god-sent famine and
ἦν, οὕτω μᾶλλον τῶν παχυτέρων καὶ γαιωδεστέρων, ὡς
it-was thus rather the thicker and earthier as
ἔοικεν, μεταπαιδευομένων καὶ τὰ κακὰ μεταμανθανόντων)
it-seems being-reeducated and the evils unlearning
τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐπολιόρκει καὶ κατέτρυχεν γῆν. καὶ ὃς
the his besieged and wore-down land and he

θεὸν ἐκεῖνον ἠνάγκαζεν ἐπικαλεῖσθαι πρὸς ἄμυναν τῶν
god that(-one) compelled to-call-upon for defense of-the
δεινῶν, τὸν ὑπὸ τοῦ Θεοδώρου μὲν πολλάκις καὶ
terrors the(-one) by — Theodore indeed often and
τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀδελφῆς θαυμαζόμενόν τε καὶ σεβόμενον, ὡς
the his sister marveled-at both and revered as
εἰκός. τυχόντες οὖν τῆς ἀπαλλαγῆς τῶν δεινῶν, οὕτω
likely having-obtained then the release from-the terrors thus
δὴ πρὸς θεοσέβειαν μετατίθεται, καὶ τῆς τοῦ λουτροῦ
indeed to piety he-is-changed and of-the of-the bath
παλιγγενεσίας καταξιοῦται, καὶ Μιχαὴλ κατονομάζεται
rebirth is-deemed-worthy and Michael is-named
κατὰ τὸ ὄνομα τοῦ βασιλέως, παρὰ τοῦ πρὸς ἐκεῖνον
after the name of-the emperor by the to him
ἀποσταλέντος ἀρχιερέως ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν πόλεων.
sent high-priest from the queen of-the cities
καί τι δὲ τοιοῦτον ἐπισυμβῆναι φασίν, ὡς ἔρωτα 15
and something too such to-have-happened-besides they-say that love
δεινὸν περὶ τὴν κυνηγεσίαν τὸν Βώγωριν ἄρχοντα κεκτημένον
terrible for the hunting — Bogoris ruler possessing
ταῦτα καὶ κατά τινα οἶκον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ, ἐν ᾧ συνεχῶς
these(-things) also in some house of-the his-own in which continually
ἀφικνεῖτο, θελῆσαι ἐξιστορῆσαι, νύκτωρ ὡς ἂν ἔχοι
he-came to-have-wished to-paint by-night so-that — he-might-have
καὶ μεθ' ἡμέραν τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐντρυφήματα.
also by day the such of-the eyes delights
ὡς γοῦν ὁ τοιοῦτος αὐτὸν ἔρως ἐπεισῆλθεν, μετακαλεῖται
when at-any-rate the such him love came-upon he-summons
μοναχόν τινα τῶν καθ' ἡμᾶς Ῥωμαίων ζωγράφον· Μεθόδιος
(a)-monk certain of-the among us Romans (a)-painter Methodios
ὄνομα τῷ ἀνδρί. τοῦτον οὖν στάντα κατὰ πρόσωπον
(was-the)-name to-the man him then standing to face

ἔκ τινος θείας προνοίας οὐ τὰς ἐν πολέμῳ ἀνδροκτασίας ἢ
from some divine providence not the in war man-slayings or
τὰς ζῴων καὶ θηρίων ἐπικελεῦσαι γράψειν σφαγάς, ἀλλ' ἃ
the of-animals and beasts to-have-bidden to-paint slaughters but what
βούλοιτο, τοῦτο μόνον ἐπειπὼν ὡς εἰς φόβον τοὺς ὁρῶντας
he-would this only having-said that into fear the(-ones) seeing
ἐκ τῆς θέας ἐνάγεσθαι βούλοιτο καὶ ἅμα παρακαλεῖσθαι
from the sight to-be-led he-wished and at-once to-be-moved
πρὸς ἔκπληξιν ἀπὸ τῆς γραφῆς. μηδὲν γοῦν οὗτος
to astonishment from the painting nothing at-any-rate this(-man)
πρὸς φόβον ἕτερον ἐνάγειν ἢ τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ δευτέραν
to fear other to-lead than the — of-god second
εἰδὼς παρουσίαν, ταύτην ἐκεῖσε καθυπέγραψεν, καὶ τοὺς
knowing coming this there painted and the
δικαίους ἐντεῦθεν τὰ βραβεῖα τῶν πόνων ἀπολαμβάνοντας,
just here the prizes of-the labors receiving
ἐκεῖθεν δὲ τοὺς πεπλημμεληκότας τοὺς τῶν βεβιωμένων
there and the(-ones) having-offended the of-the lived(-deeds)
δρεπομένους καρποὺς καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἠπειλημένην κόλασιν
reaping fruits and to the threatened punishment
ἀπελαυνομένους τε καὶ ἀποπεμπομένους σφοδρῶς. ταῦτ'
being-driven both and being-sent-off vehemently these(-things)
οὖν, ἐπειδὴ πέρας εἶχεν ἡ γραφή, κατιδών, καὶ δι'
then when (an)-end had the painting having-looked-at and through
αὐτῶν τὸν τοῦ θεοῦ φόβον ἐν ἑαυτῷ συλλαβών, καὶ
them the — of-god fear in himself having-conceived and
κατηχηθεὶς τὰ καθ' ἡμᾶς θεῖα μυστήρια, νυκτῶν ἀωρὶ
having-been-catechized the among us divine mysteries of-nights untimely
τοῦ θείου μεταλαγχάνει βαπτίσματος. ἐφ' ᾧ καταφανὴς
the divine partakes baptism on which manifest
γεγονὼς τὴν ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ ἔθνους αὐτοῦ καθυφίσταται
having-become the from all the nation his undergoes

ἐπανάστασιν, οὓς καὶ μετά τινων ὀλίγων καταπολεμήσας,
uprising whom also with some few having-defeated
τὸν τοῦ θείου τύπον σταυροῦ ἐν κόλποις περιάγων αὐτοῦ,
the of-the divine figure cross in bosom carrying-about his
τοὺς καταλοίπους οὐκέτι κρύφα, πάντα δὲ ἀναφανδὸν
the remaining no-longer secretly all but openly
ἐποίησε καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐπιθυμοῦντας Χριστιανούς. ἐπεὶ γοῦν
he-made also them desiring Christians when at-any-rate
μετετέθη πρὸς θεοσέβειαν, γράφει δὴ πρὸς τὴν δέσποιναν
he-was-changed to piety he-writes indeed to the empress
περὶ γῆς, πλήθει στενούμενος τῷ ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ ἀξιοῖ
about land by-the-multitude straitened the his-own and asks
παρὰ ταύτης παρρησιαστικώτερον ὡς ἤδη ἓν ἀλλ᾽ οὐ
from her more-freely as already one but not
δύο ὄντων αὐτῶν, πίστει τε καὶ φιλίᾳ συνδεθέντων τῇ
two being they in-faith both and friendship bound with-the
ἀρραγεῖ, καὶ ἑαυτὸν ὑποθήσειν καθυπισχνεῖτο καὶ εἰρήνην
unbreakable and himself to-submit he-promised and peace
ἐργάσασθαι ἀΐδιόν τε καὶ ἀδιάπτωτον. ἡ δὲ εὐμενῶς
to-make everlasting both and unfailing she and graciously
τε ἤκουσεν αὐτοῦ, καὶ δέδωκεν ἐρήμην οὖσαν τηνικαῦτα
both heard him and gave desolate being then
τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς Σιδηρᾶς, ταύτης δὴ τότε ὅριον
the(-land) from — Sidera this indeed then (the)-boundary
τυγχανούσης Ῥωμαίων τε καὶ αὐτῶν, ἄχρι τῆς Δεβελτοῦ,
being of-Romans both and them up-to — Develtos
ἥτις οὕτω καλεῖται Ζάγορα παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς. οὕτω μὲν οὖν
which thus is-called Zagora among them thus indeed then
ἅπασα ἡ Βουλγαρία πρὸς εὐσέβειαν μετερρυθμίσθη, θεοῦ
all — Bulgaria to piety was-reformed god
πρὸς τὴν οἰκείαν μετακαλεσαμένου γνῶσιν αὐτούς, καὶ
to the own having-summoned knowledge them and

οὕτως ἐκ μικρῶν σπινθήρων τε καὶ πληγῶν· καὶ οὕτω
thus from small sparks both and blows and thus
γῆς τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὡς ἄλλης τινὸς ἐπαγγελίας
of-land the of-the Romans as of-other some promise
ἀξιωθέντες πρὸς κοινωνίαν ἄρρηκτον καθυπέβαλον ἑαυτούς.
deemed-worthy to communion unbreakable they-submitted themselves
16 Εἶχε μὲν οὖν οὕτω τὰ κατὰ τὴν δύσιν λαμπρῶς τε
were indeed then thus the(-things) in the west brilliantly both
καὶ ἐτεθρύλητο πανταχοῦ. ἐφ' οἷς ἀγαλλομένη ἐκείνη, καὶ
and had-been-noised everywhere at which exulting she and
οἷον τρόπαια ἐπιθεῖναι μείζω δι' ἐφέσεως ἔχουσα, καὶ
as-it-were trophies to-set-up greater with desire having also
τοὺς κατὰ τὴν ἀνατολὴν Παυλικιανοὺς ἐπειρᾶτο μετάγειν
the(-ones) in the east Paulicians she-tried to-bring-over
ὡς βούλοιτο πρὸς εὐσέβειαν ἢ ἐξαιρεῖν καὶ ἀπ' ἀνθρώπων
as she-wished to piety or to-remove and from men
ποιεῖν· ὃ καὶ πολλῶν κακῶν τὴν ἡμετέραν ἐνέπλησεν.
to-make which also with-many evils the our(-land) filled
ἡ μὲν γὰρ πέμψασά τινας τῶν ἐπ' ἐξουσίας (ὁ τοῦ
she indeed for having-sent some of-the in authority the(-one) —
Ἀργυροῦ καὶ ὁ τοῦ Δουκὸς καὶ ὁ Σουδάλης οἱ
of-Argyros and the(-one) — of-Doux and — Soudales the(-ones)
ἀποσταλέντες ἐλέγοντο) τοὺς μὲν ξύλῳ ἀνήρτων, τοὺς δὲ
sent were-called some indeed on-wood hanged others and
ξίφει παρεδίδουν, τοὺς δὲ τῷ τῆς θαλάσσης βυθῷ. ὡσεὶ
to-sword handed-over others and to-the of-the sea depth about
δέκα μυριάδες ὁ οὕτως ἀπολλύμενος ἠριθμεῖτο λαός, καὶ
ten myriads the thus perishing was-counted people and
ἡ ὕπαρξις αὐτῶν τῷ βασιλικῷ ταμείῳ *** ἤγετο καὶ
the property their to-the imperial treasury (lacuna) was-brought and
εἰσεκομίζετο. ὑπῆρχεν οὖν τῷ στρατηγῷ τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν
was-carried-in there-was then to-the general of-the Anatolikoi

(Θεόδοτος οὗτος ἦν ὁ κατὰ τὸν Μελισσηνὸν) ἀνήρ
Theodotos this(-one) was the(-one) at — Melissenos (a)-man
τις εἰς τὴν ὑπηρεσίαν καταριθμούμενος, Καρβέας ὀνόματι,
some in the service numbered Karbeas by-name
τὴν τοῦ πρωτομανδάτωρος πληρῶν ἀρχήν, τῇ πίστει
the of-the protomandator filling office in-the faith
τῶν εἰρημένων τούτων Παυλικιανῶν ἐγκαυχώμενός τε καὶ
of-the said these Paulicians boasting both and
σεμνυνόμενος. ὡς οὖν τὸν ἑαυτοῦ οὗτος ἀκήκοε πατέρα
priding-himself when then the his-own this(-man) heard father
ἀνηρτῆσθαι τῷ ξύλῳ, πέρα δεινῶν τοῦθ' ἡγησάμενος καὶ
to-have-been-hanged on-the wood beyond terrible this having-thought and
τὰ ἑαυτοῦ προσοικονομῶν φυγὰς μετὰ καὶ ἑτέρων
the(-things) his-own arranging (a)-fugitive with also other
πέντε χιλιάδων τῆς τοιαύτης κεκοινωνηκότων αἱρέσεως
five thousand the such having-shared heresy
πρὸς τὸν τῆς Μελιτινῆς τηνικαῦτα κατάρχοντα Ἄμερα
to the — of-Melitene then ruling Amer
γίνεται, κἀκεῖθεν πρὸς τὸν ἀμεραμουνῆ παραγίνονται.
becomes and-from-there to the commander-of-the-faithful they-come
μετὰ δὲ πολλῆς ἀποδεχθέντες τιμῆς, καὶ λόγον ἀσφαλείας
with and much received honor and word of-security
δόντες τε καὶ λαβόντες ὁμοίως, ἐξέρχονται μετ' οὐ
having-given both and having-received likewise they-go-out after not
πολὺ κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων γῆς, καὶ τῶν τροπαίων ἕνεκεν,
long against the of-Romans land and of-the trophies for-the-sake
ἐπεὶ πρὸς πολυπληθίαν ἐνεδίδοσαν, πόλεις τε κτίζειν
since to great-multitude they-increased cities both to-found
ἐπιχειροῦσιν αὐτοῖς, τὴν οὕτω καλουμένην Ἀργαοῦν καὶ
they-undertake for-themselves the(-one) so called Argaous and
τὴν Ἀμάραν, καὶ αὖθις πολλῶν ἐκεῖσε ἐπιρρεόντων τῇ
— Amara and again many there flowing-in with-the

αὐτῇ κακίᾳ ἐνισχημένων καὶ ἑτέραν κτίζειν κατάρχουσι,
same wickedness held and another to-found they-begin
Τεφρικὴν ταύτην κατονομάσαντες· ἀφ' ὧν ὁρμῶντες πολλοὶ
Tephrike it having-named from which setting-out many
κατ' αὐτὸ γινόμενοι, ὅ τε τῆς Μελιτινῆς Ἄμερ, ὃν
at the-same becoming the both — of-Melitene Amer whom
οὕτω πως συμφθείροντες τὰ στοιχεῖα Ἄμβρον ἐκάλεσαν
so somehow corrupting the letters Ambros called
οἱ πολλοί, καὶ ὁ τῆς Ταρσοῦ Ἀλῆς καὶ αὐτὸς οὗτος ὁ
the many and the(-one) — of-Tarsus Ales and himself this —
Καρβέας ὁ δείλαιος, οὐκ ἔληγον αὐθαδῶς τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
Karbeas the wretched not ceased willfully the of-the Romans
γῇ λυμαινόμενοι. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν Ἀλῆς ἔν τινι τῶν Ἀρμενίων
land ravaging but — indeed Ales in some of-the Armenians
χώρᾳ ἄρχειν ἀποσταλεὶς ἐκεῖσε θᾶττον ἢ βουλῆς εἶχε
land to-rule sent there quicker than of-counsel he-had
τὸν βίον κατέστρεψε σὺν τῷ ἑαυτοῦ ἀκαίρῳ στρατῷ· ὁ δὲ
the life ended with the his-own untimely army — and
Ἄμερ μετὰ τοῦ συνάρχοντος αὐτοῦ τοῦ Σκληροῦ (οὕτως
Amer with the co-ruler his — Skleros so
ἐλέγετο) εἰς ἐμφύλιον στὰς πόλεμον ἐκ φιλονεικίας
he-was-called into civil having-stood war from contentiousness
ἐφθείρετό τε καὶ ἐκείνῳ ἀλλ' οὐκ ἄλλοις πολεμεῖν
was-destroyed both and with-that(-man) but not others to-fight
ᾤετο δεῖν. εἰς τοσοῦτον δὲ τούτοις ἡ ἔρις ἐπηύξητο
thought (it)-necessary to so-much and to-them the strife had-increased
καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἀντεστρατήγουν, ἄχρις ἂν εἰς δέκα μόλις
and against-one-another they-campaigned until — to ten scarcely
ἔληγεν χιλιάδας ἡ τούτων ἰσχὺς ἐκ πεντήκοντά που
ended thousand the their strength from fifty somewhere
καὶ μικρόν τι πρός. ἐπεὶ γοῦν οὗτος τῶν ἐχθρῶν
and (a)-little something besides when at-any-rate this(-man) the enemies

ὑπερίσχυσεν, ἔγνω αὖθις θρασύτητι καταστρατηγούμενος
overpowered he-resolved again by-boldness being-outgeneraled
κατὰ τὴν Ῥωμαίων ὅπλα κινεῖν, τῷ Καρβέᾳ ἑνούμενος.
against the(-land) of-Romans arms to-move — with-Karbeas united
ἀντεστρατεύετο δὲ αὐτοῖς Πετρωνᾶς, τὴν τοῦ δομεστίκου
campaigned-against and them Petronas the of-the domestic
τότε ἀρχὴν διοικῶν· λόγῳ μὲν γὰρ Βάρδα ταύτην
then office administering in-word indeed for to-Bardas it
διέπειν ἐδέδοτο, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεὶ σχολάζειν οὗτος ἠναγκάζετο
to-manage had-been-given but since to-be-occupied this(-man) was-compelled
ὡς ἐπίτροπος, τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἠξίου, στρατηγὸν ὄντα τῶν
as guardian the brother he-asked general being of-the
Θρακησίων, πράγματι ταύτην διέπειν καὶ διοικεῖν.
Thrakesioi in-fact it to-manage and to-administer

17–21 · BARDAS, THEOKTISTOS, AND THE TREASURY

Michael longs to campaign, but Bardas, hungry for power, sees Manuel withdraw from the palace before Theoktistos' envy and then, through the emperor's tutor, persuades Michael that Theoktistos plans a marriage for Theodora or one of her daughters and means to put out Michael's eyes. Theoktistos is seized, imprisoned, and stabbed, and Bardas takes his office. Theodora curses them both, then shows the senate the treasury she and Theophilos stored: 1,090 centenaria of gold and about three of silver. Michael squanders it on chariot races, his godchildren, and his jesters, melts down the golden plane tree, lions, griffins, and organ, and leaves Basil almost nothing.

Πλὴν ἀνθορμᾶν κατὰ τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν καὶ ἀντεπεξιέναι 17
but to-rush-back against the Ishmaelites and to-march-out-against
καὶ Μιχαὴλ ὁ βασιλεύς (ἄρτι γὰρ τὴν παιδικὴν ἡλικίαν
also Michael the emperor just for the childish age
παραμείψας πρὸς τὴν τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἠπείγετο) ἐβούλετό
having-passed to the of-the men he-hastened he-wished

τε καὶ δι᾽ ἐπιθυμίας εἶχεν ἀεί. ἔγνω δέ πως ταῦτα
both and in desire he-had always he-resolved and somehow these(-things)
βουλευόμενος ἀπὸ τῶν ἐμφυλίων πρότερον, ὡς οὐκ
planning from the civil(-wars) first that not
ὤφειλεν, ἐναπάρξασθαι, οὐκ οἴκοθεν οὐδ᾽ ἀφ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ,
he-ought to-begin not from-home nor from himself
τῇ δὲ τοῦ ἐπιτροπεύοντος Βάρδα γνώμῃ τε καὶ βουλῇ.
by-the but of-the guardian Bardas mind both and counsel
ὅθεν δὲ καὶ ὅπως, δηλώσει καὶ ταῦτα ἡ ἱστορία·
whence and also how will-make-clear also these(-things) the history
κωφὸν γὰρ τῷ ὄντι πως καὶ διάκενον τὸ σῶμα τῆς
dumb for in-the reality somehow and empty the body of-the
ἱστορίας, ὅταν ἐστερημένας ἔχει τὰς αἰτίας τῶν πράξεων.
history when deprived it-has the causes of-the deeds
ἀλλ᾽ ἔνθα μὲν καὶ ἡμῖν ὑπὸ τοῦ χρόνου καλῶς οὐ
but where indeed also to-us by the time well not
διέγνωσται, συγγνώμην πάντως οἱ φιλομαθεῖς ἀπονέμοιεν
it-has-been-discerned pardon surely the learning-loving should-assign
τοῖς ἀληθεῖς ἀλλ᾽ οὐ πλασματώδεις γράφειν ἐθέλουσιν,
to-the(-ones) true but not fictitious to-write wishing
ὧν οὐδὲ τῷ τυχόντι ἀπορία καθέστηκεν· ὅπου δὲ
for-whom not-even to-the chance(-man) difficulty is-established where but
γνώριμος, δηλοῦν δεῖ ταύτην καὶ σαφῆ καθιστᾶν
known to-make-clear (it)-is-necessary it and plain to-make
τοῖς ἀναγινώσκουσιν, ὡς οὐκ ἄλλοθεν πάντως ἢ
to-the(-ones) reading since not from-elsewhere surely than
ἐκ τούτων χορηγουμένης τῆς ὠφελείας αὐτοῖς.
from these being-supplied the benefit to-them

18 Ἐγένετο δὲ τούτῳ τῷ Βάρδᾳ ἔρως τῆς βασιλείας οὐκ
there-came and to-this — Bardas (a)-love of-the empire not
ἀγεννής, καὶ ἔρως οὐ κατὰ τοὺς ἄλλους, νῦν μὲν αὐξανόμενος
ignoble and (a)-love not like the others now indeed increasing

νῦν δὲ ταῖς τοῦ λογισμοῦ ὁρμαῖς προσεπικοπτόμενος, ἀλλὰ
now and by-the of-the reasoning impulses being-checked but
δύσερώς τις καὶ δυσαπάλλακτος. μᾶλλον δέ, ἵνα τὸν λόγον
hopelessly-in-love some and hard-to-be-rid-of rather but that the account
πορρωτέρω ἀγάγωμεν, ἐγένετο δὴ τῷ Μανουὴλ πρὸς τὸν
further we-may-lead there-came indeed — to-Manuel with —
Θεόκτιστον, ἀμφοτέροις ἐπιτροπεύουσιν καὶ αὐτοῦ που
Theoktistos both being-guardians and there somewhere
κατὰ τὰ ἀνάκτορα διαιτωμένοις, διαφορά τις, ἢ καὶ
in the palace living (a)-difference some which also
καθοσίωσιν ἐπεκάλει καὶ λάθρα ταχέως εἶχεν ὑπολαλούμενα
treason charged and secretly quickly had whispered
αὐτῷ. ταύτην δὴ ὁ Μανουὴλ εὐλαβούμενος, καὶ τὸν
against-him this indeed — Manuel fearing and the
φθόνον ἄμαχόν τινα καὶ δυσκαταγώνιστον ἐνορῶν, ᾠήθη
envy invincible some and hard-to-overcome seeing he-thought
δεῖν τοῦτον ἀκρωτηριάσαι καὶ καθελεῖν, εἰ μόνον
(it)-necessary this to-cut-short and to-destroy if only
γένοιτο πορρωτέρω τοῦ παλατίου. καὶ δὴ κάτεισιν
he-might-be farther-away from-the palace and indeed he-goes-down
εἰς τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ, κατὰ τὴν κινστέρναν τοῦ Ἄσπαρος
to the house his at the cistern — of-Aspar
ὄντα, ὃν εἰς σεμνείου τύπον ὕστερον ἐνηγάγετο καὶ
being which into of-(a)-monastery form later he-brought and
τὸν χοῦν ἐκεῖσε κατέθετο. ἐκεῖθεν γοῦν ἑκάστοτε
the dust there laid-down from-there at-any-rate each-time
ἀφικνούμενος κοινωνὸς ἐγίνετο τῶν κατὰ τὰ ἀνάκτορα
coming (a)-partner he-became of-the in the palace
διοικήσεων. τοῦτον οὕτως οὐ δι᾽ ἑαυτοῦ ἀλλὰ διὰ τοῦ
administrations him thus not through himself but through —
Θεοκτίστου ἀποσεισάμενος ὁ Βάρδας, ταὐτὸν δὲ εἰπεῖν
Theoktistos having-shaken-off — Bardas the-same and to-say

καὶ ἀποφορτισάμενος, καὶ τὴν τύχην λαβὼν πρὸς τὸ
also having-unloaded and the fortune having-taken for the
ἑαυτοῦ σπουδαζόμενον κοινωνόν, ἐβουλεύετο καὶ αὐτὸς
his-own being-pursued partner he-planned also himself
οὐκέτι δι᾽ ἑτέρου δι᾽ ἑαυτοῦ δὲ διανύσαι τὸ πᾶν, καὶ
no-longer through another through himself but to-accomplish the all and
τέως τὸν Θεόκτιστον καθελεῖν, ἵνα μὴ τῆς ἐπὶ τὰ πρόσω
meanwhile — Theoktistos to-destroy that not of-the to the forward
φορᾶς τοῦτον ἔχοι ἐμπόδιον καὶ ἅμα τὸν πολὺν
course him he-might-have (as)-hindrance and at-once the much
ὄνειδον τὸν ἐπὶ τῇ νύμφῃ αὐτοῦ (καὶ γὰρ ὠνείδιζε
reproach the(-one) for the daughter-in-law his and for he-reproached
τοῦτον διηνεκῶς) ἀπορραπίσοι καὶ πορρωτέρω ποιήσεται.
him continually he-might-dash-away and farther he-will-make
19 ὑπῆρχε γοῦν τῷ βασιλεῖ Μιχαὴλ παιδαγωγὸς ἀνάγωγός
there-was at-any-rate for-the emperor Michael (a)-tutor ill-bred
τε καὶ πόρρωθεν τρόπων τῶν εὐγενῶν. τοῦτον ἠξίου
both and far of-ways the noble him asked
ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτόν τε καὶ Θεόκτιστον καὶ τὴν μητέρα
the emperor him both and Theoktistos and the mother
ἀνωτέρω τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀξιωμάτων ἀναγαγεῖν καὶ μείζονα
higher-than the imperial dignities to-raise and greater
τούτῳ ἐπιβραβεῦσαι τιμήν. οὐκ ἐπείθετο γοῦν τούτῳ ὁ
on-him to-bestow honor not obeyed at-any-rate him —
Θεόκτιστος, οὐδὲ ταῖς αὐτοῦ ἀρέσκειν ἀρεσκείαις ἠβούλετο,
Theoktistos nor with-the his to-please blandishments wished
ἐπαξίως λέγων καὶ οὐκ ἀναξίως τὰ τῆς βασιλείας
worthily saying and not unworthily the(-affairs) of-the empire
δεῖν διοικεῖν. τοῦτον ὄργανον τὸν παιδαγωγὸν ὁ
(it)-is-necessary to-administer this instrument the tutor —
Βάρδας λαβὼν πονηρὸν οὐκ ἐπαύετο ζιζάνιά τινα περὶ τοῦ
Bardas having-taken wicked not ceased tares some about the

ἀνδρὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ ἐνσπείρων καὶ τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως ψυχῇ,
man in-the his-own sowing and in-the of-the emperor soul
ἄλλα τε πολλὰ περὶ τῶν κοινῶν διοικήσεων λέγων, ὡς
other(-things) both many about the common administrations saying that
οὐ καλῶς οἰκονομοῦνται, καὶ ὅτι σοὶ καταλειφθείσης ὡς
not well they-are-managed and that to-you having-been-left as
κληρονομίας τῆς βασιλείας πόρρω σου ταύτην οὗτος
inheritance the empire far from-you it this(-man)
ποιεῖ, γάμον μητρί σου ἢ τῶν ταύτης θυγατέρων μιᾷ
makes marriage with-mother your or of-the her daughters with-one
ἐμμελετῶν, καὶ σοῦ τοῦ ταύτης υἱοῦ πόρρω που ποιῆσαι
planning and of-you the her son far somewhere to-make
τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς. ταῦτα γοῦν ὡς βέλη πήξας ἐν
the eyes these(-things) at-any-rate like arrows having-fixed in
καρδίᾳ τοῦ βασιλέως διήγειρέ τε, καὶ ὅπως μὴ ταῦτα
(the)-heart of-the emperor he-roused both and so-that not these(-things)
γένοιτο, συνετῆς ἔφασκε δεῖν καὶ ταχίστης βουλῆς.
might-happen of-wise he-said (it)-is-necessary and quickest counsel
ὡς δὲ πολλάκις περὶ τούτου συνήρχοντο τοῦ πράγματος,
when and often about this they-met the matter
μίαν ταύτην ἐκύρουν καὶ γνώμην ἀπέφαινον τοῦ ἐκ μέσου
one this they-ratified and (a)-judgment declared of-the from (the)-midst
τὸν Θεόκτιστον ποιῆσαι δολοφονίᾳ τινὶ ἢ ὑπερορίᾳ.
— Theoktistos to-make by-treacherous-murder some or by-exile
ἐδέδοκτο οὖν ταῦτα, καὶ πέρας ἔσπευδε τοῖς
had-been-resolved then these(-things) and (an)-end he-hastened to-the(-things)
βουληθεῖσιν ἐπάγειν· τὸ δὲ ἦν ἐν τῷ τοῦτον μέλλειν
wished to-bring-on it and was in the him to-be-about
πρὸς τὸν Λαυσιακὸν ἐξέρχεσθαι μετὰ τὴν τῶν ἀναφορῶν
to the Lausiakos to-go-out after the of-the reports
διοίκησιν ἐπακολουθῆσαι μικρὸν τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ τοῦτο
administration to-follow (a)-little the emperor and this

μόνον ἀνακραγεῖν τὸ "ἐπάρατε αὐτόν" τοῖς πραιποσίτοις.
only to-cry-out the lift him to-the praipositoi
τότε ὁ Βάρδας ἐν τῷ Λαυσιακῷ συνεδρίαζεν. ὡς οὖν
then — Bardas in the Lausiakos sat-in-session when then
ὁ Θεόκτιστος προέκυπτεν ἐξιών, τὸ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ σύνθημα
— Theoktistos stooped-forward going-out the — of-Michael signal
προτρέχον ἅμα καὶ προφθάνον τοῦτον ὁρῶν ἔγνω φυγῇ
running-ahead at-once and anticipating him seeing he-resolved by-flight
τὴν σωτηρίαν πραγματεύσασθαι. ἡ φυγὴ δὲ πρὸς τὸν
the safety to-procure the flight and to the
ἱππόδρομον κατὰ τὰ ἀσηκρητεῖα· καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖσε τότε τὸ
hippodrome at the asekreteia and for there then the
τῶν ἀσηκρήτων ὑπῆρχε καταγώγιον. ἀλλ' ὑπὸ πολλῶν ὁ
of-the asekretai was lodging but by many the
εἷς συλληφθεὶς μένειν ἀλλ' οὐ φεύγειν κατηναγκάζετο· καὶ
one having-been-seized to-stay but not to-flee was-compelled and
ξίφος ὁ Βάρδας γυμνώσας αὐτοχειρίᾳ τοὺς οἵτινες
(a)-sword — Bardas having-bared with-his-own-hand the(-ones) whoever
εἶεν διακωλύσοντες ἀμυνόμενος ἠπείλει, πρὸς τὸν φόνον
might-be going-to-hinder warding-off he-threatened to the murder
τῶν ὑπὸ χεῖρα τινί. ἀλλὰ ψαῦσαι μὲν ἐτόλμησε
of-the(-ones) under hand of-someone but to-touch indeed dared
τούτου τότε οὐδείς, ἀπήγετο δὲ πρὸς τὰ Σκῦλα, φρουρᾷ
him then no-one he-was-led-away and to the Skyla to-custody
τέως παραδοθησόμενος, μέχρις ἂν τὰ κατ' αὐτοῦ
for-a-time going-to-be-handed-over until — the(-things) concerning him
ἀποφήναιντο. ὡς δ' οὐ ζῆν δέει τῆς Αὐγούστης αὐτὸν
they-should-declare when but not to-live from-fear of-the Augusta him
ἐβουλεύσαντο, ἵνα καὶ μὴ θᾶττον ἀπολυθῇ, τῶν καθ'
they-planned that also not quicker he-be-released of-the(-ones) of
ἑταιρείαν τινὰ ἐξαπέστειλαν γυμνὸν ἐπισείοντα ξίφος
(the)-hetaireia some(-one) they-sent-out bare brandishing (a)-sword

αὐτῷ. ὡς δ' οὖν εἶδε ξιφήρη τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἐπιόντα,
at-him when but then he-saw sword-bearing the man coming-on
κατὰ τοῦ σκάμνου οὗτος ὑπέδυ, τὰς λαβὰς βουλόμενος
under the bench this(-man) went-under the grips wishing
ἐκφυγεῖν· ἀλλ' ἔλαθε κατὰ γαστέρα πληγεὶς καὶ θανάτῳ
to-escape but escaped-notice in (the)-belly struck and to-death
παραδοθείς, τῶν ἐγκάτων ἐκχυθέντων αὐτοῦ. ὅτε δὴ
handed-over the bowels having-been-poured-out his when indeed
καὶ ὁ Μανουὴλ φοιβόληπτος ὥσπερ γενόμενος τῷ Βάρδᾳ
also — Manuel possessed like having-become — to-Bardas
καθαρῶς λέγεται ἀνειπεῖν
clearly is-said to-have-proclaimed

"ξίφος γυμνώσας εἰς Θεοκτίστου φόνον,
(a)-sword having-bared for of-Theoktistos murder
ὅπλιζε σαυτὸν εἰς σφαγὴν καθ' ἡμέραν."
arm yourself for slaughter by day

Ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν Θεόκτιστος οὕτω τὸ τοῦ βίου πέρας 20
but — indeed Theoktistos thus the of-the life end
ἀπείληφεν, καὶ μετὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ σφαγὴν ὁ Βάρδας τὴν τοῦ
received and after the his slaughter — Bardas the of-the
κανικλείου φροντίδα καὶ τιμὴν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἀνελάμβανεν· ἡ
kanikleios charge and honor to himself took-up —
δὲ δὴ Θεοδώρα τούτων ὡς ᾔσθετο, λυσίκομος δὴ
and indeed Theodora these(-things) when she-perceived with-loosened-hair indeed
θέουσα, πολλὰ κατολοφυρομένη ἀνέκλαιεν καὶ ὀδυρμῶν τὰ
running much bewailing lamented and with-wailings the
βασίλεια ἐπλήρου, ἀραῖς ἀμφοτέρους καθυποβάλλουσα καὶ
palace filled to-curses both subjecting and
"ὦ ἀναιδεῖς καὶ παμμίαροι" λέγουσα "θῆρες, τί σὺ μέν,
O shameless and all-foul saying beasts why you indeed

ἀχάριστον γέννημα, τὸν δεύτερόν σου πατέρα πονηρὰ
ungrateful offspring the second your father evil(-things)
ἀντέδωκας ἀγαθῶν; καὶ σὺ βάσκανε δαῖμον καὶ πονηρέ,"
you-repaid for-good(-things) and you envious demon and wicked
τὸν ἀδελφὸν ἐπιτραγῳδοῦσα, "τὴν ἐμὴν ἐμίανας ἀρχήν,
the brother declaiming-at the my you-defiled rule
καθαρὰν φυλαχθεῖσαν καὶ ἄχραντον; ἔστι θεὸς τῶν
pure kept and undefiled there-is (a)-god of-the(-things)
τολμωμένων ἔφορος, ὃς ἀμφοτέρους οὐκ ἀλλοίως ἀλλ'
dared overseer who both not otherwise but
ὁμοίῳ θανάτῳ παραδώσει δήπου καὶ φονικῷ." καὶ ἅμα
by-like death will-hand-over surely and murderous and at-once
ἐπεθείασέ πως, τὰς χεῖρας πετάσασα, "ἴδοιμι ἐπιπεσοῦσαν,
she-invoked-god somehow the hands having-spread may-I-see (it)-falling
κύριε, ἴδοιμι τὴν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τούτου ἐκδίκησιν." ταύτης
lord may-I-see the of-the man this vengeance her
οὖν ἔκτοτε τὰς πυκνὰς ἀρὰς μὴ φέροντες καὶ ὀνειδισμούς,
then from-then the frequent curses not bearing and reproaches
καὶ ἅμα τὴν κατ' αὐτὸν ἐλαύνων ὁ Βάρδας ὁδόν,
and at-once the according-to himself driving — Bardas road
ἔγνωσαν καὶ ταύτην ἐκεῖθεν ἀπώσασθαι καὶ γυμνῇ χωρεῖν
they-resolved also her from-there to-thrust-away and with-bare to-go
πρὸς ἅπαν αὐτοῖς τὸ δοκοῦν κεφαλῇ. ὅπερ ἐκείνη
to every(-thing) for-them the seeming head which she
καταφωράσασα (καὶ γὰρ ἦν ἰδεῖν καὶ στοχάσασθαι
having-detected also for she-was to-see and to-guess
δυνατὴ) ἀντιπράττειν οὐκ ᾤετο δεῖν, φόνους τῶν
able to-act-against not she-thought (it)-necessary murders of-the
ἀνθρώπων καὶ ὁμοφύλων βλάβας ἐκφεύγουσα· τὸν δὲ
men and of-kinsmen harms fleeing the and
τέως πλοῦτον, τὸν σήμερον ἐν τοῖς ἀνακτόροις
for-a-time wealth the(-one) today in the palace

ἀποθησαυριζόμενον, ἔγνω τῇ συγκλήτῳ ποιεῖν φανερόν,
stored-up she-resolved to-the senate to-make plain
τὸν υἱόν τε τῆς ἀφειδοῦς δαπάνης κωλύουσα καὶ τὴν
the son both from-the unsparing expense hindering and the
ἑαυτῆς κηρύττουσα ἀρετήν. καὶ δὴ εἰς ἐπήκοον στᾶσα
her-own proclaiming virtue and indeed in (the)-hearing having-stood
ἐξεβόησεν ὡς πρὸς τοῖς ἐνενήκοντα χίλια μὲν χρυσοῦ
she-cried-out that besides the ninety thousand indeed of-gold
τῷ βασιλικῷ ταμιείῳ κεντηνάρια ἐναπόκεινται, ἀργυρίου
in-the imperial treasury centenaria are-laid-up of-silver
δὲ ὡσεὶ τριῶν, καὶ τῶν μὲν εἶναι τὸν ταύτης ἄνδρα
and about three and of-the(-one) indeed to-be the her husband
θησαυριστήν τε καὶ πριστήν, τῶν δὲ αὐτὴν μὴ
treasurer both and provider of-the(-other) and her not
καταναλίσκειν φιλούσης καὶ κατασπαταλᾶν.
to-spend loving and to-squander
Ἀλλὰ καίτοι τοσοῦτος ὁ βασιλικὸς ὢν θησαυρὸς εἰς οὐδὲν 21
but although so-great the imperial being treasure to nothing
ἐχώρησε παντελῶς τῇ ἀπονοίᾳ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ καὶ ἀκαίρῳ
it-went utterly by-the folly — of-Michael and untimely
φιλοτιμίᾳ. ταῖς γὰρ τῶν ἵππων ἁμίλλαις, εἴπερ τις ἕτερος,
munificence in-the for of-the horses contests if-ever anyone other
ἀγαλλόμενος, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖνος ἡνιοχεῖν (ὦ τῆς τότε
delighting and himself that-one to-drive-chariots O the then
ταπεινωθείσης τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας) οὐ παραιτούμενος,
humbled of-the Romans empire not refusing
τῶν συμπαιζόντων αὐτῷ καὶ συνηνιοχούντων ἐκ τοῦ
of-the(-ones) playing-with him and driving-with from the
θείου βαπτίσματος τὰ τέκνα υἱοθετούμενος τὸν βασίλειον
divine baptism the children adopting the imperial
ἐξεκένου πλοῦτον, πεντήκοντα δὴ καὶ τεσσαράκοντα
he-emptied wealth fifty indeed and forty

καὶ τὸ ἐλάχιστον ἑκάστῳ τριάκοντα χρυσίου λίτρας
and the least to-each thirty of-gold pounds
ἐπιχορηγῶν. ποτὲ δέ τινι πατρικίῳ (Ἱμέριος οὗτος
supplying once and to-some patrician Himerios this(-one)
ἐκαλεῖτο ὁ Χοῖρος, διὰ τὴν τοῦ προσώπου οὕτω
was-called the Pig because-of the of-the face so
κατονομαζόμενος ἀγριότητα) ἄλλως αἰσχρολογοῦντι κατὰ
being-named savageness otherwise talking-obscenely at
τὴν τράπεζαν καὶ ψόφον ἐκ τῆς βεβήλου αὐτοῦ γαστρὸς
the table and (a)-noise from the profane his belly
κατὰ πρόσωπον τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τῶν συνδειπνούντων
to (the)-face of-the emperor and of-the(-ones) dining-with
ἀφιέντι, ὡς καὶ τὸ φατλίον τὸ τούτους φωταγωγοῦν
letting-out so-that also the lamp the(-one) them lighting
ἐκ τοῦ τηλικούτου ψόφου κατασβέσαι, τῷ παραδόξῳ
from the so-great noise to-have-put-out for-the paradox
τοῦ τοιούτου θαύματος χρυσίου λίτρας ἔδωκεν ἑκατόν. καὶ
of-the such wonder of-gold pounds he-gave hundred and
Χειλᾶ δὲ ἄλλοτε τοῦ σὺν αὐτῷ ἡνιοχοῦντος τὸν υἱὸν
of-Cheilas too another-time the(-one) with him driving the son
ἐκ τοῦ θείου λουτροῦ ἀναδεξάμενος ὁμοίως χρυσίου λίτρας
from the divine bath having-sponsored likewise of-gold pounds
δέδωκεν ἑκατόν. οὕτως ἐκεῖνος εἰς οὐδὲν δέον τὰ δημόσια
he-gave (a)-hundred thus he for nothing needful the public(-funds)
κατανάλισκεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐντὸς ὀλίγου καιροῦ τὸν τοσοῦτον
spent since and within little time the so-great
πλοῦτον ταῖς τοιαύταις σκηνικαῖς καὶ ἀθέσμοις κατανάλωσε
wealth in-the such theatrical and lawless he-spent
πράξεσι, δεινὸς ἐραστὴς ὢν ἱπποδρομίας, ἦλθεν δὲ ὁ
deeds terrible lover being of-chariot-racing came and the(-time)
τῆς διανομῆς τῶν βασιλικῶν δωρεῶν καιρός, καὶ χρημάτων
of-the distribution of-the imperial gifts time and of-money

πόρος οὐκ ἦν δι᾽ ὧν τὰ στρατεύματα φιλοτιμούμενα
means not was through which the armies being-rewarded
τὰς τῶν ἐχθρῶν παρατάξεις ἀμύνονται, τήν τε χρυσῆν
the of-the enemies battle-lines ward-off the both golden
ἐκείνην καὶ πολυθρύλητον πλάτανον καὶ τοὺς δύο χρυσοῦς
that and much-famed plane-tree and the two golden
λέοντας, πρὸς δὲ καὶ τοὺς δύο γρῦπας ὁλοχρύσους ὄντας
lions besides and also the two griffins all-golden being
καὶ σφυρηλάτους, καὶ τὸ ὁλόχρυσον ὄργανον, ἀλλὰ καὶ
and hammered and the all-golden organ but also
ἕτερα ἔργα τῆς βασιλικῆς ἐκθέσεως, ὁλκὴν ἔχοντα τῶν
other works of-the imperial display weight having of-the
διακοσίων οὐκ ἔλαττον κεντηναρίων, χωνεύσας χαράξαι
two-hundred not less centenaria having-melted to-strike
δέδωκεν ἐν τῷ βασιλικῷ ταμιείῳ. καὶ στολὰς δέ τινας
he-gave in the imperial treasury and robes too some
βασιλικὰς καὶ αὐγουστιακάς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου
imperial and of-the-Augusta but also of-the senatorial
βουλῆς, τὰς μὲν ὁλοχρύσους τὰς δὲ χρυσοϋφάντους
council the(-ones) indeed all-golden the(-others) and gold-woven
οὔσας ἐν τῷ εἰδικῷ, πρὸς τῷ τέλει, ἐκδέδωκεν
being in the private(-treasury) at the end he-gave-out
ἐξαπορῶν, ὡς ἂν χαραχθῶσι. πλὴν οὐκ ἔφθασαν
being-at-a-loss so-that — they-might-be-struck but not they-were-in-time
χωνευθῆναι, καὶ ἐκεῖνος μὲν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο,
to-be-melted and he indeed out-of men became
ταύτας δὲ Βασίλειος ὁ ἀοίδιμος τὴν βασιλείαν λαβὼν καὶ
them and Basil the celebrated the empire having-taken and
καταλαβὼν ἔτι ἀλυμάντους ἀνεκαλέσατο, καὶ τὸ νῦν
having-found still unharmed recalled and the(-coin) now
σενζάτον καλούμενον χαραχθῆναι ἐκελεύσατο, ἐκ τοσούτου
sentzaton called to-be-struck ordered from so-great

πλούτου μηδὲν ἕτερον εὑρηκὼς ἢ χρυσίου κεντηνάρια
wealth nothing other having-found than of-gold centenaria
τρία, μιλιαρίσια δὲ σακκία ἐννέα, ἃ καὶ δημοσιεύσας
three of-miliaresia and sacks nine which also having-made-public
καὶ πᾶσι δῆλα ποιήσας ἀπωδύρετο τῆς συγκλήτου ἐνώπιον
and to-all plain having-made he-lamented the senate before
τὴν ὅθεν ἔμελλε ποιήσεσθαι τῆς πολιτείας διοίκησιν.
the whence he-was-going to-make of-the state administration

22–25 · THEODORA DEPOSED; SAMOSATA AND POSON

Michael and Bardas tonsure Theodora and her daughters and confine them in the Karianos palace; the writer lists her brothers and sisters and tells of Kalomaria's charity to the prisoners. Bardas becomes kouropalates. At Samosata the Saracens fall on the army at the liturgy and Michael flees; Karbeas captures generals, freeing Abesalom but keeping Seon until he dies. Trapped again near Anzes, Michael lags behind when Manuel breaks out and escapes only when Amer withdraws. Amer sacks Amisos and has the sea flogged. Blessed by the monk John, Petronas traps him at Poson, where Amer falls and his army perishes; monk and general die within days of each other.

22 Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν προϊόντος τοῦ χρόνου γεγόνασιν· τότε
but these(-things) indeed advancing the time happened then
δὲ εἴθιστο Θεοδώρα κατὰ τὸν ἐν Βλαχέρναις θεῖον
and was-accustomed Theodora at the in Blachernai divine
συχνῶς πως ἐπιφοιτᾶν ναόν, ὁμοῦ μὲν εὐχάς τινας
frequently somehow to-visit church at-once indeed prayers some
ἀποδιδοῦσα θεῷ, ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ τοῦ λουτροῦ μετέχουσα. ὡς
rendering to-god at-once and also of-the bath partaking when
γοῦν ὀψέ ποτε ἀφίκετο, τὸν Πετρωνᾶν ἀδελφὸν αὐτῆς
at-any-rate late once she-came — Petronas brother her
ὄντα πέμψαντες ὁ Μιχαήλ τε καὶ Βάρδας ἀποκείρουσί
being having-sent — Michael both and Bardas tonsure

τε ταύτην μετὰ τὰς θυγατέρας ὁμοῦ, καὶ τοῖς κατὰ τὰ
both her with the daughters together and in-the at the
Καριανοῦ ἀνακτόροις τότε μὲν περιορίζουσιν· ὕστερον δὲ
of-Karianos palace then indeed confine later and
οὐχ ἅπαξ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ δὶς ἀποστείλαντες εἰσεκόμισαν
not once only but also twice having-sent they-carried-in
τὸν ἐνόντα πλοῦτον αὐταῖς, καὶ κοινῶς πως καὶ ἰδιωτικῶς
the present wealth to-them and commonly somehow and privately
ἀλλ᾽ οὐ βασιλικῶς εἴασαν ζῆν. ἀλλ᾽ ἐκείνη μὲν μετ᾽ οὐ
but not imperially let(-them) live but she indeed after not
πολὺ τῶν τῇδε μεθίστατο, καὶ βασιλεὺς ὁ ἀοίδιμος
long from-the(-things) here departed and emperor the celebrated
Βασίλειος αὐτῆς τε τὸν νεκρὸν καὶ τὰς αὐτῆς θυγατέρας
Basil her both the corpse and the her daughters
πρὸς τὸ τῆς μάμμης ἔπεμπε μοναστήριον ἐνδιαιτᾶσθαι,
to the of-the grandmother sent monastery to-live
οὕτω τῶν Γαστρίων κατονομαζόμενον, καὶ ὁσίως ζῆν τε
so of-the Gastria named and holily to-live both
καὶ πολιτεύεσθαι. αὕτη μὲν οὕτως ἀπεβίω, ὄνομα τῷ
and to-conduct-themselves she indeed thus died (a)-name to-the
υἱῷ, οὐχ ὡς ἐκεῖνοι, πονηρὸν ἀλλ᾽ ἀγαθὸν ἀπολιποῦσά τε
son not as those wicked but good having-left both
καὶ σεμνόν. ἐδήλου δὲ καὶ ἡ πρὸ ταύτης βίβλος ὅθεν τε
and revered made-clear and also the before this book whence both
κἀκ τίνων ἐξέφυ καὶ ὅπως ἦλθεν εἰς τὰ βασίλεια, καὶ
and-from whom she-sprang and how she-came into the palace and
τὰς αὐτῇ ὅσαι δὴ θυγατέρες ἐκ κοιλίας γεγέννηνται·
the to-her as-many-as indeed daughters from (the)-womb have-been-born
δηλώσει δὲ αὕτη συγγένειαν αὐτῆς τὴν λοιπήν. ἦσαν
will-make-clear and this(-book) kinship her the remaining were
οὖν οἱ δηλωθέντες ἄρρενες δύο ἀδελφοί, ὅ τε Πετρωνᾶς
then the made-clear males two brothers — both Petronas

στρατηγὸς κατὰ τὸ Θρακήσιον καὶ πατρίκιος τηνικαῦτα,
general in the Thrakesion and patrician then
καὶ Βάρδας ὁ δηλωθείς, ὃς καὶ παρὰ Θεοφίλου εἴς τι
and Bardas the made-clear(-one) who also by Theophilos in some
τῶν οὐ δεόντων καταληφθείς, τῆς συνήθους προελεύσεως
of-the not fitting(-things) caught the customary procession
ἱσταμένης, κατὰ τὸ ὡρολόγιον ἐτύφθη μαγγλάβια ἑξήκοντα.
standing at the clock was-beaten (with)-manglabia sixty
ἀδελφαὶ δὲ τρεῖς, ἥ τε εὐφήμῳ οὕτω καλουμένη
sisters and three the both with-auspicious so called
ὀνόματι Καλομαρία καὶ Σοφία καὶ ἡ Εἰρήνη. ἀλλ'
name Kalomaria and Sophia and — Irene but
ἡ μὲν Σοφία εἰς κοίτην ἐδίδοτο Κωνσταντίνῳ τῷ
— indeed Sophia to bed was-given to-Constantine the(-one)
κατὰ τὸν Βαβούτζικον, ἡ δὲ Καλομαρία Ἀρσαβὴρ τῷ
at — Baboutzikos the and Kalomaria to-Arsaber the
τηνικαῦτα μὲν πατρικίῳ ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ μαγίστρῳ, [ἡ δὲ
then indeed patrician afterward and also magistros — and
Εἰρήνη] τῷ Εἰρήνης τῆς μητρὸς τοῦ μετὰ ταῦτα
Irene to-the of-Irene the mother of-the(-one) after these(-things)
τὸν πατριαρχικὸν θρόνον ἀντιλαβομένου Φωτίου ἀδελφῷ·
the patriarchal throne having-taken of-Photius brother
μεθ' οὗ καὶ δύο τεκνώσασα παῖδας, Στέφανόν τε τὸν
with whom also two having-borne children Stephen both the
μάγιστρον καὶ Βάρδαν τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ἀδελφὸν καὶ μάγιστρον,
magistros and Bardas the his-own brother and magistros
τὸν τοῦ πατρικίου Κωνσταντίνου καὶ στρατηγοῦ
the(-one) of-the patrician Constantine and general
Σικελίας, τὸν τοῦ Κοντομύτου γαμβρόν (ἐκεῖθεν γὰρ
of-Sicily the(-one) — of-Kontomytes son-in-law from-there for
αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ τοῦ Κοντομύτου ἐκληρώθη προσηγορία), τὴν
to-him also the — of-Kontomytes fell-by-lot appellation the

συγγένειαν πρὸς τὸν πατριάρχην ἔσωζε Φώτιον· ἐξάδελφοι
kinship with the patriarch kept Photius cousins
γὰρ οἱ δύο μάγιστροι οὗτοι τούτου ἐτύγχανον. αὕτη δὲ
for the two magistroi these of-him were she and
οὖν ἡ μήτηρ τῶν εἰρημένων, ἐπεὶ τοῦ προτέρου ἀνδρὸς
then the mother of-the said(-ones) when of-the first husband
διὰ θανάτου ἠμάρτανεν, οὐχ εἵλετο καὶ δεύτερον ἰδεῖν
through death she-was-bereft not chose also (a)-second to-see
μάτην ἀποβιοῦντα, ζῶσα δὲ χήρα καὶ τῇ ἑαυτῆς
in-vain dying living and (a)-widow and with-the her-own
συνοῦσα ἀδελφῇ κατὰ τὰ βασίλεια, αὐχμηρόν τινα καὶ
being-with sister in the palace squalid some and
ταπεινὴν ἐστολισμένη στολήν, ἔτι δὲ μὴν καὶ μέλαιναν,
humble having-dressed garment further and indeed also black
τὸν ὕπαρχον ἀπολαμβάνουσα τῆς χειρός, οὐ μὴν δὲ
the eparch taking by-the hand not indeed but
καὶ τὸν τειχιώτην, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν νούμερον συνεπαγομένη,
also the teichiotes but also the noumeros bringing-along
κατὰ νουμηνίαν ἀπῄει βάδην τε καὶ πεζῇ διὰ τῶν
at new-moon she-went step-by-step both and on-foot through the
σχολῶν πρὸς τοὺς ἐν τοῖς δεσμωτηρίοις κατεχομένους
scholae to the(-ones) in the prisons held
τῆς τε Χαλκῆς καὶ τοῦ Πραιτωρίου καὶ τῶν Νουμέρων,
— both of-Chalke and — of-Praetorium and of-the Noumera
τίνος τε χάριν ἀποκέκλεισται ἕνα ἐρωτῶσα καθ' ἕνα καὶ
for-what both sake he-has-been-shut-up one asking by one and
διοικοῦσα τοὺς μὲν δι' ἑαυτῆς τοὺς δὲ διὰ τῆς πρὸς
managing some indeed through herself others and through the to
τὴν ἀδελφὴν ὑπομνήσεως, ἑκάστῳ τῶν φρουρουμένων
the sister reminder to-each of-the(-ones) guarded

εὐλογίαν ἐπιχορηγοῦσα οὐ μικρὰν καὶ ἐλεημοσύνην. καὶ
blessing supplying not small and alms and
τὰ μὲν κατὰ τὴν γυναικωνῖτιν οὕτω.
the(-things) indeed in the women's-quarters thus

23 Ὁ δὲ Βάρδας ἦν ὅλος τὰ τῆς βασιλείας ἐπιτροπεύων
— and Bardas was wholly the(-affairs) of-the empire directing
καὶ διοικῶν, καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν διαφερόντως ὡς συγγενὴς
and administering and of-the rest especially as kinsman
τοῦ βασιλέως ἀγαπώμενος· ἔνθεν καὶ τὴν κουροπαλάτου,
of-the emperor loved whence also the of-kouropalates
οἷον ἆθλον ἐπὶ τῇ ἀδελφῇ, τιμὴν ἀναδέχεται, καὶ
as-it-were (a)-prize for the sister honor he-receives and
κατὰ τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν καὶ τοῦ Ἄμερ, ὥσπερ εἴρηται,
against the Ishmaelites and — Amer as has-been-said
ἀντιστρατεύονται μετὰ τοῦ Μιχαήλ, ἄρτι τελοῦντος αὐτοῦ
they-campaign with — Michael just passing his
εἰς ἄνδρας ἐξ ἀγενείων, δυνάμει πάσῃ τε καὶ χειρί.
into men from beardless(-boys) with-force all both and hand
ὡς δ' οὖν τῆς τῶν ἐναντίων ἐπέβησαν γῆς, κατὰ
when and then the of-the opponents they-set-foot-on land at
πόλιν Σαμόσατα λεγομένην, δυνάμει τε βρίθουσαν καὶ
(a)-city Samosata called with-force both teeming and
ἰσχύϊ, ἄγονται, καὶ ταύτην ἐπεχείρουν πολιορκεῖν.
with-strength they-are-brought and it they-tried to-besiege
ἀλλ' ἐλελήθεισαν οὐ κατὰ Θεοδώρας αἴροντες χεῖρα,
but they-had-not-noticed not against Theodora raising (a)-hand
κατὰ δὲ πολυτρόπων ἀνδρῶν. ὡς μὲν γὰρ ἦν τρίτη
against but much-wily men when indeed for it-was third
τῆς ἐφεδρείας τούτοις ἡμέρα, ἡ πρώτη δὲ καὶ κυρία
of-the siege for-them day the first and also sovereign
τῶν ἡμερῶν, ἔμελλον δὲ τὴν ἀναίμακτον μυσταγωγίαν
of-the days were-about and the unbloody mystagogy

ἐκπληροῦν ὡς ἂν τῶν ἁγίων μυστηρίων μετάσχοιεν,
to-perform so-that — of-the holy mysteries they-might-partake
ἐξαίφνης, εἴτ' ἀφυλάκτως τελοῦντες αὐτά, εἴτε καὶ
suddenly whether unguardedly performing them or also
καταφρονητικῶς ἔχοντες πρὸς τὴν πόλιν δι' ἀπειρίαν
contemptuously being(-disposed) toward the city because-of inexperience
ὡς μὴ πρὸς βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ἆραι τολμῶντος χεῖρα
as not against (the)-emperor of-Romans to-raise daring (a)-hand
τινός, κατὰ τὴν ὥραν ἐν ᾗ τῶν θείων ἔμελλον
anyone at the hour in which of-the divine they-were-about
μετασχεῖν μυστηρίων, πάντοθεν μεθ' ὅπλων ἐκπεπηδηκότες
to-partake mysteries from-all-sides with arms having-leapt-out
τῆς πόλεως, οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν τὸν ὅστις Ῥωμαίων
of-the city not was(-it-possible) to-see the(-one) who of-Romans
οὐκ ἐχρῆτο φυγῇ. ἔνθα καὶ ὁ Μιχαὴλ μόλις που τὸν
not used flight where also — Michael scarcely somehow the
ἵππον ἀναβὰς φεύγων καθωρᾶτο, ἀλλ' οὐ προπολεμῶν·
horse having-mounted fleeing was-seen but not fighting-in-front
οὕτω που μόγις ἐκσέσωστο, σκηνὰς αὐτὰς καὶ τὴν
thus somehow scarcely he-had-been-saved tents themselves and the
ὅση τούτοις θεραπεία προσῆν ἐκεῖ καταλελοιπώς. ἔνθα
as-much-as to-them service was-present there having-left where
καὶ τὸν προμνημονευθέντα φασὶν ἀριστεῦσαι Καρβέαν
also the before-mentioned they-say to-have-excelled Karbeas
τὸν τὴν Τεφρικὴν οἰκοδομησάμενον, καὶ πολὺν οὐ
the(-one) — Tephrike having-built and much not
μόνον τοῦ χυδαίου φθόρον λαοῦ κατεργάσασθαι, ἀλλὰ
only of-the common destruction people to-have-wrought but
καὶ τῶν μεγάλων δὴ στρατηγῶν ζωγρείᾳ λαβεῖν τόν τε
also of-the great indeed generals by-capture to-take the both
τζαγγότουβον τὸν Ἀβεσαλὼμ καὶ Σηὼν τὸν παλατῖνον,
tzangotoubos — Abesalom and Seon the palatinos

καὶ ἑτέρους ὑποστρατήγους καὶ τουρμάρχας ἄχρι τῶν
and others lieutenant-generals and tourmarchs up-to the
ἑκατόν. ἐτηροῦντο οὖν οἱ δηλωθέντες στρατηγοὶ μετὰ τὴν
hundred were-kept then the made-clear generals after the
τοῦ πολέμου παραδρομὴν ἐν τῇ φυλακῇ· καὶ δὴ χρήματα
of-the war rout in the prison and indeed money
ἱκανὰ τῷ Καρβέᾳ ἐδίδοσαν, οἴκοθεν μεταπεμψάμενοι, τὴν
sufficient — to-Karbeas they-gave from-home having-sent-for the
αὐτῶν ἀπολύτρωσιν ἐξαιτούμενοι. ὡς δ' ἔλαβεν ἐπὶ χεῖρας
their ransom asking when and he-took on hands
ὁ Καρβέας, ἠρώτα τὸν Σηὼν εὐθὺς εἰ πρὸς ἀφροδίσια ἔχοι
— Karbeas he-asked — Seon at-once if toward sexual-pleasures he-were
ἐρωτικῶς καὶ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα κίνησιν ἔχοι τὴν ἐμπαθῆ·
amorously and the his-own body motion had the passionate
ὡς δ' ἀπηγόρευσεν ὁ Σηὼν καὶ πάσχειν τι τοιοῦτον
when and refused — Seon and to-suffer something such
ἀπέφησεν, ἠρώτα πάλιν τὰ ὅμοια τὸν Ἀβεσαλώμ. ὁ
denied he-asked again the like(-things) — Abesalom he
δὲ τὴν αὐτοῦ φωράσας κακίαν καὶ μοχθηρίαν, εἴτε καὶ
and the his having-detected wickedness and depravity or also
ἄλλως ἀληθῶς, τοῦτό τε πάσχειν καὶ κίνησιν ὑπομένειν
otherwise truly this both to-suffer and motion to-undergo
εἰπών, τούτῳ μὲν "λυτροῦσαι" ἔφη "τῶν δεσμῶν," καὶ
having-said to-him indeed you-are-ransomed he-said from-the bonds and
ἅμα ἀπέλυεν, τῷ δὲ Σηὼν "οὐ βούλεταί σε τὸ θεῖον
at-once released — and to-Seon not wills you the divine
λυθῆναι δὴ τῆς φρουρᾶς," καὶ ἅμα ἐδίδου τούτῳ τὰ
to-be-released indeed from-the custody and at-once gave to-him the
λύτρα τὰ δοθέντα αὐτῷ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ, καὶ τῇ φρουρᾷ
ransom the(-ransom) given to-him for him and in-the custody
ἐγκατέκλειεν ἄχρις οὗ τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπεστάλαξεν.
shut-up until which(-time) the soul he-dripped-away

Ἐπεὶ δὲ δεύτερος ἤδη χρόνος παρέδραμε καὶ μυριάδας 24
when and (a)-second already year ran-by and myriads
ἤκουε τρεῖς κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεύειν, τὴν ἥτταν
he-heard three against the Romans to-march the defeat
αὖθις ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἀνακαλέσασθαι ἐπιθυμῶν, Θρᾳκάς τε καὶ
again — Michael to-retrieve desiring Thracians both and
Μακεδόνας μέχρι τῶν τεσσάρων συνηθροικὼς μυριάδων,
Macedonians up-to the four having-gathered myriads
ἐξήει πρόθυμος κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ. ὡς δὲ κατά τι χορτοφόρον
went-out eager against him when and on some grass-bearing
πεδίον Κελάριον οὕτω λεγόμενον κατεσκήνητο, ἄρτι δὴ
plain Kelarion so called he-had-encamped just indeed
Ἄμερ αὐτῷ καταστρατηγῶν πορρωτέρω τῆς τετριμμένης
Amer him outgeneraling farther-than the beaten
ᾔει ὁδοῦ, πρὸς τὸ Χωνάριον ἐπισπεύδων. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ
went road to the Chonarion hastening in and this
ἐγγύτερόν τε γενόμενος καὶ χεῖρας δὴ προσβαλὼν καὶ
nearer both having-come and hands indeed having-laid-on and
πόλεμον συνάψας νεανικὸν φεύγειν ἀλλ᾽ οὐ μένειν τὸν
battle having-joined vigorous to-flee but not to-stay the
βασιλέα ἠνάγκαζεν. ἀλλὰ φεύγειν μὲν ἐπειρᾶτο, ἕως
emperor compelled but to-flee indeed he-tried while
τὸν τῶν ἵππων ἀκμάζειν δρόμον ἀλλ᾽ οὐ διακόπτεσθαι
the of-the horses to-be-at-its-height course but not to-be-cut-off
ὑπελάμβανεν. καὶ δὴ σταθερᾶς τε μεσημβρίας ἐνούσης
he-supposed and indeed steady both midday being-on
καὶ καύματος οὐκ ὀλίγου θάλποντος ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ἡλίου
and heat not little warming from the of-the sun
φλογώσεως, κατά τινα ὀρεινὸν ἀναβαίνειν τόπον βιάζονται,
burning to some mountainous to-climb place they-force
Ἀνζῆν οὕτω λεγόμενον, δυσπρόσοδόν τε καὶ τραχέσι λίθοις
Anzes so called hard-of-access both and with-rough stones

οὐκ εὔοδον. ἐκεῖσε δὴ φεύγων ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐνηυλίζετο,
not easy-to-travel there indeed fleeing the emperor bivouacked
καὶ ἐκ ποδὸς ὁ Ἄμερ αὐτῷ ἐπακολουθῶν περικυκλοῖ,
and at heel — Amer him following surrounds
ὡς ἐν δικτύῳ θέλων λαβεῖν. κἂν ἔλαβεν αὐτὸν
as in (a)-net wishing to-take and-would-have taken him
δορυάλωτον, ἀλλ' ἡ τῶν βασιλικῶν ταγμάτων ἰσχὺς
spear-captive but the of-the imperial regiments strength
καρτερῶς ἀπομαχομένη καὶ τὸ τοῦ τόπου ἀνεστηκός τε
stoutly fighting-off and the of-the place upstanding both
καὶ ὑπερέχον μικρόν τι τούτους διέσωσεν. ἔνθα καὶ τὸν
and overtopping (a)-little somewhat them saved where also the
περὶ ψυχῆς αὐτῶν κίνδυνον ἀγωνιζομένων καὶ δεδιότων,
about soul their danger struggling and fearing
βουλὴν ἠνάγκαζε τὸν Μανουὴλ λέγειν ὁ Μιχαὴλ τὴν
(a)-counsel compelled — Manuel to-speak — Michael the(-one)
ἀμφοτέρους δὴ διασώσουσαν. ὁ δὲ τὰ δι' ὧν
both indeed going-to-save he and the(-things) through which
ἐστὶ φανερὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀφελέσθαι συμβουλευσάμενος,
is plain the emperor to-take-off having-advised
καὶ ἰδιωτικὸν ἀναλαβόμενον σχῆμα μετὰ λογάδων ἀνδρῶν
and private having-taken-up guise with picked men
καὶ δυνάμει προεχόντων τὴν τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἔφη φάλαγγα
and in-strength excelling the of-the enemies he-said phalanx
διαρρήξαντα ἔξω τούτων γενέσθαι περιφανῶς. ὡς δὲ καὶ
having-broken-through outside them to-be conspicuously when and also
περὶ τοῦ παραμένοντος ὄχλου τε καὶ στρατοῦ δεύτερον
about the remaining crowd both and army (a)-second(-time)
ἐπυνθάνετο, ὅπως δὴ σωθεῖεν, ὁ Μιχαήλ, "ἀλλὰ σὲ
he-inquired how indeed they-might-be-saved — Michael but you
μὲν γένοιτο" φησίν, "βασιλεῦ, σώζεσθαι ἀβλαβῆ, θεῷ δὲ
indeed may-it-be he-says O-emperor to-be-saved unharmed to-god and

μελήσει περὶ αὐτῶν· οὐ γάρ ἐστιν ἐπ᾽ ἴσης βασιλέα
will-be-a-care about them not for it-is on equal(-footing) (an)-emperor
καὶ Ῥωμαίων τινὰ αἰχμάλωτον γενέσθαι ἐχθροῖς.᾽᾽
and of-Romans some(-one) captive to-become to-enemies
ἀλλαξάμενος οὖν τὴν ἐσθῆτα ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ περὶ τὸν
having-changed then the clothing the emperor and about —
Μανουὴλ ὅλος γενόμενος ἔσπευδεν ἐπακολουθεῖν, τούτου μεθ᾽
Manuel wholly having-become hastened to-follow him with
ἑτέρων διαρρηξάντων τὴν φάλαγγα. ἀλλ᾽ ὅτε δὴ κατὰ τὸ
others having-broken-through the phalanx but when indeed at the
δεινὸν ἐγένοντο καὶ παρατάξεως πλησίον που τῶν
terrible(-point) they-came and of-battle-line near somewhere of-the
ἐχθρῶν, ἔρημος τῷ φόβῳ δυνάμεώς τε γενόμενος καὶ
enemies bereft by-the fear of-strength both having-become and
χειρῶν ἐναπομένειν ἠγάπα, ἀλλ᾽ οὐ προτρέχειν αὐτοῦ. ὡς
of-hands to-remain-behind he-preferred but not to-run-ahead of-him when
δ᾽ ὁ Μανουὴλ τὴν φάλαγγα διακόψας τε καὶ περισωθεὶς
and — Manuel the phalanx having-cut-through both and having-been-saved
τὸν βασιλέα οὐκ εἶχεν ὁρᾶν, αὖθις τὴν κατόπιν ἔθει ὁδόν,
the emperor not had to-see again the behind he-ran road
τὸν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ κίνδυνον δεδιώς. ὡς δὲ πάλιν ἐγένοντο
the for him danger fearing when and again there-were
συμβολαὶ καὶ πολὺς φόβος συνέπιπτε τῶν Σαρακηνῶν,
clashes and much fear fell-upon the Saracens
ἔγνω δὴ πορρωτέρω χωρήσειν ὁ Ἄμερ, νάματά τινα
resolved indeed farther to-go — Amer streams some
καὶ χορτάσματα ζητῶν, σημήνας τὸ ἀνακλητικόν· ὅτε
and fodder seeking having-signaled the recall when
καὶ τυχὼν ἀδείας ὁ Μιχαὴλ μόλις που ἐκεῖθεν
also having-obtained respite — Michael scarcely somehow from-there
διεσέσωστο ἀδεῶς, καὶ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανήρχετο.
had-been-saved fearlessly and to the reigning(-city) returned

25 Δεύτερος οὖν μόλις που παρῆλθε χρόνος, καὶ αὖθις
(a)-second then scarcely somehow passed year and again
ἐκστρατεύσας ὁ Ἄμερ σὺν τεσσαράκοντα χιλιάσι στρατοῦ
having-marched-out — Amer with forty thousands of-army
ὁμοῦ μὲν τὴν Ἀρμενιακὴν ὁμοῦ δὲ καὶ τὴν πρὸς
at-once indeed the Armeniakon at-once and also the(-city) on
θάλασσαν Ἀμισὸν ἐξεπόρθει τε καὶ κατεδουλαγώγει τῇ τοῦ
(the)-sea Amisos sacked both and enslaved by-the of-the
κωλύοντος ἐρημίᾳ· ὅτε δὴ καὶ ταὐτὸν ἐκείνῳ τῷ ἄφρονι
hindering(-one) absence when indeed also the-same(-thing) as-that the senseless
Ξέρξῃ λέγεται παθεῖν, καὶ κελεῦσαι ῥάβδοις τύπτειν
Xerxes is-said to-have-suffered and to-have-ordered with-rods to-beat
τὴν θάλασσαν, ὅτι μὴ πορρωτέρω προκατεστόρεστο ἀλλ'
the sea because not farther it-had-been-spread-out but
ἐγγὺς αὐτὸν λεηλατοῦντα καταλαμβανομένη κεκώλυκεν.
near him plundering overtaking it-had-hindered(-him)
ἐφ' οἷς ἀσχάλλων ὁ Μιχαὴλ καὶ ἀδημονῶν ἐκέλευσε
at which(-things) vexed — Michael and distressed ordered
τὸν Πετρωνᾶν, ἀδελφὸν τῆς βασιλίσσης τυγχάνοντα καὶ
— Petronas brother of-the empress being and
τῶν Θρακησίων τὴν στρατηγίδα διέποντα, παντὶ σθένει
of-the Thrakesioi the generalship managing with-all strength
συμπαραλαβόντα τὰς τῶν Ῥωμαίων δυνάμεις χωρῆσαί
having-taken-along the of-the Romans forces to-go
ποι κατ' αὐτοῦ καὶ μὴ παρορᾶν ἐπὶ πολὺ τὴν τῶν
somewhere against him and not to-overlook for long the of-the
Ῥωμαίων καταληϊζόμενον γῆν. ὁ τοῦ Βάρδα τότε τῶν
Romans plundering land the — of-Bardas then of-the
βασιλικῶν ταγμάτων τε καὶ σχολῶν ἦρχεν υἱός,
imperial regiments both and scholae was-commanding son
παῖς ἔτι κομιδῇ περὶ δέκα ἢ ἐννέα ἔτη που ὤν·
(a)-child still altogether about ten or nine years somewhere being

ὄνομα τούτῳ Ἀντίγονος. ὃ καὶ θαυμάζειν μοι ἔπεισιν,
(the)-name to-him Antigonos which also to-wonder-at to-me comes
ὅπως ἀγχινοίας τε καὶ σοφίας, ὡς φασίν, ἀντιποιούμενος,
how of-shrewdness both and wisdom as they-say laying-claim
ἑαυτῷ πάντα οἷον λαφύσσων καὶ προσαγόμενος, οὐχ
for-himself all as-it-were gulping and drawing-to-himself not
ἑτέρῳ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐνεχείρει ἀρχὴν ἐν καιρῷ δεινῷ
to-another the such entrusted office in time terrible
τε καὶ δυσχερεῖ. πλὴν ἐδίδου τὸ ταύτης προσωπεῖον
both and difficult but he-gave the of-it mask
τέως τῷ ἀδελφῷ. ὁ δ' ὡς τῶν βασιλικῶν ἤκουσε
for-a-time to-the brother he and when the imperial he-heard
γραμμάτων πρὸς τὸν ἐχθρὸν αὐτὸν καθοπλιζόντων καὶ
letters against the enemy him arming and
ἀνδραγαθεῖν παρακελευομένων, ἀλλοιωθείς τε καὶ περὶ
to-be-brave exhorting having-been-changed both and about
τῶν πραγμάτων τὴν ὅπως ἔξουσι καλῶς βουλευόμενος
the affairs the(-way) how they-will-be well taking-counsel
ἐν τῷ κατὰ τὴν Ἔφεσον Ἁγίῳ ὄρει προσήδρευεν, εἴτ'
at the at — Ephesos Holy Mountain he-sat-in-attendance whether
ἀπολεγόμενος εἴτε καὶ τῆς ἄνωθεν ἐπικουρίας δεόμενος.
despairing or also of-the from-above help needing
ἐκεῖσε γοῦν αὐτοῦ τὸ τέως ἐνδιαιτωμένου, φήμη τις
there at-any-rate him the for-a-time living (a)-report some
ἄγγελος προτρέχουσα Ἰωάννην ἐκεῖνον μοναχόν τε καὶ
messenger running-ahead John that monk both and
περιβόητον, μακρὸν ὄντα τὸ εἶδος, ἀνυπόδετον τοὺς πόδας
renowned tall being the form unshod the feet
ἀεὶ καὶ κατὰ τὸ Λάτρος ἐνδιατρίβοντα, αὐτομολοῦντα
always and on the Latros dwelling coming-of-his-own-accord
διήγγειλεν. τοῦτον ἡσυχάζοντα καὶ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ κελλίου
announced him keeping-quiet and from-the his-own cell

μήποτε ἐξερχόμενον ὁ χρόνος ἐκεῖνος ἐθαύμαζεν. ὡς δ'
never coming-out the time that marveled-at when and
οὖν περὶ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ὁ πατρίκιος διακήκοεν ὡς ὅτι που
then about the man the patrician heard that that somewhere
πλησίον ἐστὶν ὀνάριον ἐποχούμενος, ἀπήντα θέων
near he-is (a)-little-donkey riding he-went-to-meet running
τὸν μοναχὸν καὶ τοὺς πόδας αὐτοῦ κατελάμβανεν. ὁ δὲ
the monk and the feet his grasped he and
μηδὲν μελλήσας "ἄπιθί" φησι "κατὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν τοῖς
not-at-all having-delayed go-away he-says against the Saracens to-the
βασιλικοῖς πειθόμενος γράμμασιν, ἄπιθι· θεὸν γὰρ ἕξεις
imperial obeying letters go-away god for you-will-have
ῥυόμενόν σε καὶ προπορευόμενον, εἰ μόνον τὸν αὐτῷ
rescuing you and going-before if only the to-him
ἠγαπημένον Ἰωάννην ἀντ' ἄλλου τινὸς φυλακτηρίου ταῖς
beloved John instead-of other some amulet on-the
ἀσπίσι πάντων ἐγγεγραμμένον φέροις τρανῶς." καὶ
shields of-all inscribed you-should-carry clearly and
ἅμα προστίθει ὡς οὐκ ἄλλου τινὸς ἕνεκεν ἢ τούτου
at-once he-adds that not of-other any for-the-sake than this
τὴν ἐνταῦθα πορείαν πεποίημαι.
the here journey I-have-made
τούτου ταῖς εὐχαῖς καθοπλισθεὶς κατά τινα τόπον οὕτω
of-him by-the prayers armed at some place so
λεγόμενον Πόσοντα, φυσικήν τινα ἀσφάλειαν διὰ πετρῶν
called Poson natural some security through rocks
ἔχοντα καὶ κρημνῶν, τὸν Ἄμερ καταλαμβάνει πανστρατιᾷ.
having and cliffs — Amer he-overtakes with-all-the-army
τούτῳ καὶ ποταμὸς παραρρεῖ ἀπὸ τὸ ἀρκτῷον πρὸς τὸ
by-it also (a)-river flows-past from the north to the
μεσημβρινὸν ἐλαυνόμενος, Λαλακάων ὀνομαζόμενος, καὶ
south driven Lalakaon named and

λιβάδιον παράκειται Γῦριν ἀγροικικῇ φωνῇ καλούμενον. ἔγνω
(a)-meadow lies-beside Gyris in-rustic speech called learned
γοῦν ὁ Πετρωνᾶς ἐκεῖσε τοῦτον ἐναυλιζόμενον, καὶ πάντῃ
at-any-rate — Petronas there him bivouacking and every-way
ἔσπευδεν ἀδιεξόδευτόν τε καταστῆσαι καὶ ἄφυκτον. καὶ
hastened impassable both to-make and inescapable and
δὴ τοὺς μὲν τὸ ἀρκτῷον μέρος καθέξοντας στρατηγοὺς
indeed the(-ones) indeed the northern part going-to-hold generals
τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν καὶ Βουκελλαρίων καὶ Κολωνείας καὶ
of-the Armeniakoi and Boukellarioi and Koloneia and
Παφλαγονίας ἐπέστελλεν αὐθωρόν, τὸ δὲ μεσημβρινὸν τὸν
Paphlagonia he-sent at-once the and southern the(-one)
Ἀνατολικῶν τὸν Ὀψικίου καὶ Καππαδοκίας στρατηγοὺς
of-Anatolikoi the(-one) of-Opsikion and Cappadocia generals
σὺν τοῖς Σελευκείας καὶ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ κλεισουράρχαις·
with the of-Seleukeia and — of-Charsianon kleisourarchs
αὐτὸς δὲ μετὰ τῶν βασιλικῶν τεσσάρων ταγμάτων
he and with the imperial four regiments
καὶ τῶν Θρᾴκης καὶ Μακεδονίας στρατηγῶν (καὶ γὰρ
and the of-Thrace and Macedonia generals and for
εἰρηνευόντων τῶν Βουλγάρων νόμος ἦν αὐτοῖς μετὰ τῶν
being-at-peace the Bulgarians (a)-law was for-them with the
Ἀνατολικῶν συγκινδυνεύειν καὶ συστρατεύειν) τὸ δυτικὸν
Easterners to-share-danger and to-campaign-with the western
μέρος κατείληφεν, ἔχων καὶ τὸ θέμα τῶν Θρακησίων μεθ'
part he-occupied having also the theme of-the Thrakesioi with
ἑαυτοῦ. ὡς γοῦν οὕτω πάντοθεν περιφρουρεῖσθαι καὶ ὡς
himself when at-any-rate thus from-all-sides to-be-guarded-around and like
θηρίον ἐναποκεκλεῖσθαι παρὰ Ῥωμαίων ὁ Ἄμερ ἀκήκοεν,
(a)-beast to-be-shut-in by Romans the Amer heard
ἔγνω δεῖν οἰωνίσασθαι, καί τινα τῶν αἰχμαλώτων
he-resolved (it)-necessary to-take-omens and some of-the captives

μετακαλεσάμενος ἠρώτα τήν τε τοῦ τόπου προσηγορίαν
having-summoned he-asked the both of-the place name
καὶ τοῦ λιβαδίου τε καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. ὡς δ' ὁ
and of-the meadow both and of-the river when and the
ἐρωτηθεὶς αἰχμάλωτος μικρὸν παραγραμματίζων Πτώσοντα
asked captive (a)-little altering-the-letters Ptoson
ἔφησεν ἀντὶ Πόσοντα, τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σημαίνειν πτῶσιν
said instead-of Poson the his-own to-signify fall
ὁ Ἄμερ διεσάφησεν, λαοῦ τε κάκωσιν παραφράζων
— Amer explained of-people both ill-treatment paraphrasing
τὸν ποταμόν, καὶ γυρισθῆναι δεινῶς αὐτοὺς παρὰ τῶν
the river and to-be-turned-around terribly them by the
Ῥωμαίων ἐκ τῆς τοῦ λιβαδίου συνεμπτώσεως, ὅπερ
Romans from the of-the meadow coincidence which
ἐκαλεῖτο Γῦριν. "ἀλλ' ὅμως οὐκ ἀποκνητέον" φησίν,
was-called Gyris but nevertheless not (it)-must-be-shrunk-from he-says
"ἀλλὰ διεγερτέον καὶ πρὸς τὸν αὔριον γενησόμενον
but (it)-must-be-roused and for the tomorrow going-to-be
πόλεμον ἀνδριστέον." καὶ ἅμα ὁπλίζεσθαι πάντας καὶ
war (it)-must-be-manly and at-once to-arm all and
νεόσμηκτα δεικνύειν ὡς νεουργὰ τὰ ξίφη ἐκέλευσεν. ἐπεὶ
freshly-polished to-show as new-made the swords he-ordered when
δὲ ἡμέρα ἄρτι ἐξανατέλλουσα τὴν ὅπως περιγένηται τοὺς
and day just rising the how he-may-overcome the
Ῥωμαίους ἀνοχὴν ἐπέφερεν, δεῖν ἔκρινε πρὸς μὲν τὸ
Romans respite brought (it)-necessary he-judged toward indeed the
ἀρκτῷον φυλάττοντας τὴν ἔξοδον αὐτῷ ἐκζητεῖν, ὡς
north guarding the exit for-himself to-seek when
δ' ἥ τε τοῦ τόπου κακία καὶ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ταχθέντων
and the both of-the place badness and of-the there posted
στρατηγῶν εὐανδρία ἀπήντα τοῦτον καὶ διεκώλυεν, ἐπὶ τὸ
generals manliness met him and hindered to the

μεσημβρινὸν ὁρμᾶσθαι ἐξεβιάζετο. ὡς δὲ κἀκεῖθεν τὴν
south to-rush he-was-forced when and from-there-too the
ὁμοίαν εὕρισκεν τῶν ἐναντίων παράταξιν, ἔγνω δεῖν
like he-found of-the opponents battle-line he-resolved (it)-necessary
ὑπὸ τοῦ τόπου ἐφελκόμενος (καὶ γὰρ ἦν λεῖος καὶ
by the place being-drawn and for it-was smooth and
εὐπρόσιτος) τῶν λοιπῶν κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνον μᾶλλον χωρεῖν, ᾗ
accessible of-the rest against that(-side) rather to-go where
καὶ τὸν Πετρωνᾶν ἑώρα κατασκηνούμενον καὶ φυλάττοντα.
also — Petronas he-saw encamped and guarding
καὶ δὴ κρότῳ καὶ βοῇ κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἐφαλλόμενος
and indeed with-clatter and shout against the enemies leaping-on
οὐδ᾽ ὅλως εἴκοντας τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἐφεύρισκεν, ἀλλ᾽
not at-all yielding the Romans he-found but
ἰσχυροτέρους καὶ αὐτὸν ἀνδρικῶς ἀντικρούοντας καὶ μᾶλλον
stronger and him manfully striking-back and rather
ἀνθισταμένους νεανικῶς· διὸ καὶ μικρὸν συσταλεὶς καὶ
resisting vigorously wherefore also (a)-little having-drawn-back and
εἰς ἑαυτὸν αὖθις γενόμενος ἐπεβάρει πάλιν μετὰ δυνάμεως,
to himself again having-come he-pressed-on again with force
ἐκπόρευσίν τινα καὶ κάθοδον ἑαυτῷ πoριζόμενος. ἀλλὰ
(a)-going-out some and (a)-way-down for-himself procuring but
καὶ αὖθις τούτῳ οὐκ ἐνδόντες ἀλλ᾽ ὑπαντήσαντες καὶ
also again to-him not having-given-way but having-met and
ἀναστρέψαντες τῷ συμπεφράχθαι, καὶ μέχρις τούτων
having-turned(-him)-back by-the to-be-fenced-in and up-to these
τοῦτο ποιεῖν κατηνάγκασαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντοθεν ἀναφανέντας
this to-do they-compelled when and from-all-sides appearing
καὶ ἄλλους ἄλλοθεν ἐκπηδῶντας τοὺς τὰ ἀρκτῷα καὶ
and others from-elsewhere leaping-out the(-ones) the northern and
μεσημβρινὰ μέρη κατοικοῦντας καθεώρακε, τότ᾽ ἤδη τὴν
southern parts occupying he-saw then already the

σωτηρίαν ἀπογνοὺς καὶ τὰς φρένας ὥσπερ τινὶ κεραυνῷ
safety having-despaired-of and the wits as by-some thunderbolt
βληθεὶς ἐχώρει κατὰ ξιφῶν, οὐδὲ προτέρων ἀμελῶν· ἔνθα
struck he-went against swords not-even former(-things) neglecting where
καιρίαν πληγεὶς αὐτός τε πτῶμα γίνεται χαλεπόν, καὶ
mortally struck he both (a)-corpse becomes grievous and
τῶν ἑαυτοῦ διασώζεται οὐδεὶς οὐδαμοῦ. ὡς δὲ τὸν τούτου
of-the his-own is-saved no-one nowhere when and the his
υἱὸν μετά τινος φάλαγγος ἀποδρᾶναί που διήκουον,
son with some phalanx to-have-escaped somewhere they-heard
καὶ τοῦτον ὁ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ κλεισουράρχης καταλαβὼν
also him the — of-Charsianon kleisourarch having-overtaken
οὐκ ἄποθεν χειροῦταί τε μετὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος καὶ
not far subdues both with the army and
τῷ στρατηγῷ φέρων δίδωσι Πετρωνᾷ. οὕτως μὲν οὖν
to-the general bringing gives to-Petronas thus indeed then
ὁ Πετρωνᾶς τὰ κατὰ τοῦ Ἄμερ στήσας τρόπαια διὰ
— Petronas the against — Amer having-set-up trophies in
πολλῆς εἶχεν ἔκτοτε τὸν μοναχὸν αἰδοῦς καὶ τιμῆς,
much held from-then the monk reverence and honor
προφήτην ἄλλον ἀποκαλῶν. καὶ δὴ καὶ τὰ τῆς
(a)-prophet another calling and indeed also the(-things) of-the
ψυχῆς τούτῳ ἀναθεὶς πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἰσελαύνει
soul to-him having-entrusted to the reigning(-city) he-rides-in
τοῦτον ἐπιφερόμενος, πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὸν Βάρδαν
him bringing-along to the emperor and — Bardas
τὴν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς θειάζων καλῶς ἀρετήν. καὶ [ἀλλ'] ὁ
the of-the man extolling well virtue and but —
μὲν Πετρωνᾶς τὸ τοῦ δομεστίκου οὐκέτι προσωπεῖον
indeed Petronas the of-the domestic no-longer mask
καθυπεκρίνετο, ἀλλ' αὐτὴν ἐλάμβανεν ἐκ βασιλέως τιμήν·
played but itself took from (the)-emperor (the)-honor

καὶ ὁ μοναχὸς τὴν πρὸς θεὸν ἐκδημίαν παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ
and the monk the to god departure from him(-god)
διδαχθεὶς τὸν Πετρωνᾶν ἀνεδίδασκεν ὡς διὰ ταχέων
having-been-taught — Petronas taught that through quick(-time)
μέλλων ἀποδημεῖν. "καὶ ποῖ με δὴ" ὁ Πετρωνᾶς
being-about to-depart and where me indeed — Petronas
"ἀπαίρων τὸ σὸν ἀρνίον, ὁ ποιμήν μου καὶ ἐραστά,
departing the your lamb the shepherd my and lover
βούλει καταλιπεῖν;" μετὰ κλαυθμοῦ ἐπυνθάνετο. "ἆρα
do-you-wish to-leave with weeping asked then
τούτῳ τῷ βίῳ; ἀλλὰ δέδοικα μὴ πρὸς τὸν πρότερον
in-this the life but I-fear lest to the former
ὄλισθον αὖθις παραρρυῶ καὶ γένωνταί μοι τὰ ἔσχατα
slip again I-slide and become for-me the last(-things)
τῶν προτέρων οὐ κρείττονα." "καὶ βούλει" φησὶν ὁ
than-the former not better and do-you-wish says the
μοναχός "ἐμοὶ συνεπακολουθῆσαι;" καὶ οὗτος "ναί, πάτερ"
monk me to-follow and he yes father
ἔφη, "μεθ᾽ ἡδονῆς." καὶ δὴ νόσῳ καὶ οὗτος βληθεὶς ἅμα
said with pleasure and indeed by-disease also he struck at-once
τῇ οἴκαδε ὑποστροφῇ ἐδήλου τὰ συμπίπτοντα τῷ
with-the homeward return made-known the(-things) befalling to-the
ἀββᾷ, καὶ ἀντεδηλοῦτο φάναι ὡς μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ γενήσῃ μετὰ
abba and was-answered to-say that with me you-will-be after
μικρόν, ὡς ᾐτήσω. καὶ δή τινων ἡμερῶν παρελθουσῶν ὁ
(a)-little as you-asked and indeed some days having-passed the
μοναχός τε μετεκαλεῖτο πρὸς τὸν θεὸν καὶ οὗτος αὐθωρὸν
monk both was-summoned to — god and he at-once
ὡς ἐκ συνθήματος ἐπηκολούθει λαμπρῶς· καὶ τοσοῦτον
as from (a)-signal followed brilliantly and so-much
ἦν κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν ἀμφοτέρων ἡ ἐκεῖθεν ἀποδημία
was at the same time of-both the from-there departure

ὡς ἄτερος ἑτέρου, καίτοι γε μικροῦ τοῦ διαστήματος
that the-one the-other's although at-least small the interval
ὄντος, μὴ ἀκοῦσαι τὸν θάνατον. τοιούτῳ μὲν δὴ τέλει
being not to-have-heard the death with-such indeed indeed (an)-end
τοῦ βίου ὁ Πετρωνᾶς χρησάμενος λέγεται, ἐτελεύτα δὲ
of-the life — Petronas having-met is-said died and
καὶ πρὸ τούτου ὁ Μανουὴλ νόσῳ δή τινι κρατηθείς.
also before him — Manuel by-disease indeed some overcome

26–29 · BARDAS CAESAR AND LEO THE PHILOSOPHER

Bardas rises to Caesar and governs, eyeing the throne, while Michael races chariots. Bardas revives learning with schools at the Magnaura under Leo the philosopher. Leo, poor and unknown, becomes known when a captured pupil astonishes Mamoun, the ruler of the Ishmaelites, who writes inviting him; through the logothete Theoktistos the letter reaches Theophilos, who enriches Leo and sets him teaching publicly. When Mamoun offers twenty centenaria of gold and lasting peace for a short loan of him, Theophilos refuses and makes him metropolitan of Thessalonike, where in a famine he times the sowing by the stars, and the rich harvest, which the chronicler credits to God and not to Leo's art, wins him the city's love. Schooled in Constantinople and on Andros and deposed after three years, he heads the new school with Theodore, Theodegios, and Kometas.

26 Μετέβαινε δὲ καὶ ὁ Βάρδας καὶ τὰς ἐκ βασιλέως ἤμειβε
changed and also — Bardas and the from (the)-emperor exchanged
συνεχῶς τιμάς, ὥσπερ τις νέος γαῦρός τε καὶ φιλότιμος
continually honors like some young proud both and ambitious
τὰς ποικίλας τῶν πρὸς τέρψιν στολάς. μετέβαινε γοῦν
the varied of-the for delight robes he-changed at-any-rate
καὶ πρὸς τὴν Καίσαρος ἀνῄει δόξαν τε καὶ τιμήν, τοῦ
also to the of-Caesar went-up glory both and honor —
Μιχαὴλ οὐ πρὸς ἕτερόν τι τῶν πολιτικῶν τοσοῦτον
Michael not toward other anything of-the civil(-affairs) so-much

ἐπτοημένου ἢ θέατρα καὶ ἵππων ἁμιλλητήρια. καὶ τὸ δὴ
excited than theaters and of-horses race-courses and the indeed
χαλεπόν, οὐκ ἠγάπα μόνον θεατὴς εἶναι, εἴγε καὶ
grievous(-thing) not he-was-content only spectator to-be if-indeed also
τοσοῦτον ἐσχόλαζεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸς ἡνιοχεῖν ὁ τῆς
so-much he-had-leisure but also himself to-drive-chariots the(-one) of-the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας, θέαμα τυγχάνων καὶ παίγνιον
of-the Romans empire spectacle being and plaything
πᾶσι δὴ καὶ κατάγελως. οὕτως ὁ Βάρδας τοῦ ἀδελφιδοῦ
for-all indeed and laughingstock thus — Bardas of-the nephew
ἐπετρόπευεν, καὶ οὐδὲ ζῆν, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἠθέλησεν, εἰ μὴ
was-guardian and not-even to-live as it-seems he-wished if not
τοῦτον μεταπείσει τὸ ἀνδράποδον. πλὴν διώκει τέως
him will-win-over the slave but he-manages for-a-time
αὐτὸς τὰ πολιτικά, καὶ τῆς βασιλείας κατεστοχάζετο ὡς
himself the civil(-affairs) and the empire aimed-at as
αὐτὴν εὐκαίρως περιληψόμενος. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν εἰς τὸ
it opportunely going-to-seize but these(-things) indeed for the
μέλλον ἐταμιεύετο· τότε δὲ τῆς ἔξω σοφίας ἐπιμεληθεὶς (καὶ
future were-stored-up then and of-the outer wisdom having-taken-care and
γὰρ ἦν τῷ τοσούτῳ χρόνῳ παραρρυεῖσα καὶ πρὸς τὸ
for it-was in-the so-great time having-slipped-away and to the
μηδὲν ὅλως κεχωρηκυῖα τῇ τῶν κρατησάντων ἀγροικίᾳ
nothing at-all having-gone by-the of-the(-ones) having-ruled boorishness
καὶ ἀμαθίᾳ) καὶ διατριβὰς τῶν μαθηματικῶν κατὰ
and ignorance and schools of-the mathematical(-sciences) at
Μαγναύραν ποιήσας αὖθις ἀκμάζειν καὶ ἀνηβᾶν ταύτην
Magnaura having-made again to-flourish and to-grow-young it
ἐσπούδαζέ τε καὶ πεφιλοτίμητο. καὶ τοῦτο τῶν ἔργων αὐτοῦ
he-was-eager both and was-ambitious and this of-the works his
κάλλιστόν τε καὶ περιβόητον ὂν οὐκ ἴσχυσέ πως τὰς
finest both and renowned being not was-able somehow the

ἐνούσας ἄλλως κῆρας αὐτῷ ἀπονίψασθαι. ἦρχε δὲ καὶ τῆς
being-in otherwise stains in-him to-wash-off ruled and also the
τοιαύτης σχολῆς τὴν μὲν φιλοσοφίαν ἐξηγούμενος Λέων
such school the indeed philosophy expounding Leo
ἐκεῖνος ὁ μέγας τε καὶ φιλόσοφος, ὃς κατὰ συγγένειαν μὲν
that the great both and philosopher who by kinship indeed
τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου τῷ πατριάρχῃ Ἰαννῇ ᾠκείωτο, τὸν θρόνον
of-the cousin to-the patriarch Iannes was-related the throne
δὲ τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης κατέχων, ἐπειδὴ νῦν ἐκ καθαιρέσεως
and — of-Thessalonike holding since now from deposition
ἐσχόλαζεν, εἰς ταύτην προεβιβάζετο τὴν σχολήν, τὴν
he-had-leisure to this was-promoted the school the
ἀμαθίαν πόρρω ποι ἀπελαύνων καὶ ἀποτρεπόμενος.
ignorance far somewhere driving-away and turning-away

27 Ἄξιον δὲ μηδ' ὅπως εἰς γνῶσιν ἦλθεν ὁ τηλικοῦτος
worthy and not-even how into knowledge came the so-great
ἀνὴρ τῷ τότε κρατοῦντι παραδραμεῖν. Θεόφιλος δὲ ἦν,
man to-the then ruling(-one) to-pass-by Theophilos and was
ὁ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ σπορεὺς καὶ πατήρ. οὗτος οὖν ἐπεὶ τὴν
the — of-Michael sower and father this(-man) then since the
τῶν μαθημάτων εἰς ἄκρον ἐπιστήμην ἐξήσκησεν,
of-the mathematical(-sciences) to (the)-summit knowledge practiced
τοσοῦτον χωρήσας διὰ πασῶν, τῆς φιλοσοφίας καὶ τῶν
so-far having-gone through all of-the philosophy and of-the
αὐτῆς ἀδελφῶν, ἀριθμητικῆς τέ φημι καὶ γεωμετρίας καὶ
her sisters of-arithmetic both I-mean and of-geometry and
ἀστρονομίας, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς πολυθρυλήτου μουσικῆς, καὶ εἰς
of-astronomy but also of-the much-famed music and to
ἄκρον αὐτῶν ἐλάσας ὡς οὐδεμιᾶς ἕτερος σπουδῇ τε
(the)-summit of-them having-driven as of-none another with-zeal both
πολλῇ καὶ βίῳ ἀπράγμονι καὶ μεγέθει φύσεως, εὐτελεῖ
much and with-life untroubled and with-greatness of-nature cheap

τινὶ καταλύματι χρώμενος καὶ καταγωγίῳ τοὺς εἰς αὐτὸν
some lodging using and inn the(-ones) to him
φοιτῶντας ἐπαίδευεν, ἐκδιδάσκων ἥντινα ἐπιστήμην καὶ
coming taught teaching whatever science also
βούλοιντο. ὡς δ' ἤδη χρόνος παρίππασεν καὶ τῶν μαθητῶν
they-might-wish when and already time had-ridden-by and of-the students
οὐκ ὀλίγοι κατὰ τὰς ἐπιστήμας προέκοπτον, συνέβη τινὰ
not few in the sciences advanced it-happened some
νεανίαν τῶν ἑαυτοῦ φοιτητῶν, τῆς γεωμετρικῆς ἐπιστήμης
youth of-the his-own pupils of-the geometric science
ἄρτι τὸ πέρας κατειληφότα, ὑπογραφέα γενέσθαι τινὸς
just the end having-attained secretary to-become of-some
στρατηγίδα τάξιν διέποντος, καὶ προκοπῆς ἕνεκεν τοῦ
generalship rank managing and of-advancement for-the-sake of-the
βίου ἀγαπῆσαι τούτῳ ἀκολουθεῖν. ὡς δὲ κατὰ τὸν πόλεμον
life to-be-content him to-follow when and in the war
ἅμα τούτῳ ἐγένετο, ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως,
together with-him he-was by the Hagarenes not I-know how
ζωγρεῖται καὶ τῶν ἐπιφανῶν τινὶ εἰς δουλείαν διὰ τὸ
he-is-captured and of-the notables to-one into slavery because-of the
νέον τῆς ἡλικίας δίδοται. Μαμοῦν ἐκεῖνος οὕτω καλούμενος
youth of-the age he-is-given Mamoun that(-one) so called
τηνικαῦτα μὲν τῶν Ἰσμαηλιτῶν ἐτέλει ἀμεραμνουνῆς,
at-that-time indeed of-the Ishmaelites ranked commander-of-the-faithful
ἄλλοις τε μαθήμασι σχολάζων Ἑλληνικοῖς καὶ δὴ καὶ
to-other both studies devoting-himself Hellenic and indeed also
γεωμετρίας ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖστον οὐκ ἀμελῶν. λόγου δέ ποτε
of-geometry as for the most(-part) not neglecting (a)-word and once
παρὰ τοῦ τὸν νεανίαν ἔχοντος δεσπότου κινηθέντος περὶ
by the(-one) the youth having master having-been-moved about
τῆς σπουδῆς ἀμεραμνουνῆ καὶ τῆς τῶν μαθημάτων
the zeal of-commander-of-the-faithful and of-the of-the sciences

ἐπιμελείας, ὡς δὴ καὶ περὶ τῆς γεωμετρίας ἔλεγεν, ἀκοῦσαι
care as indeed also about the geometry he-spoke to-hear
τούτου εἶπεν ὁ νεανίας ἐπιθυμεῖν καὶ τῶν αὐτοῦ διδασκάλων,
him said the youth to-desire and of-the his teachers
ὡς καὶ αὐτοῦ τινὰ ἔχοντος ἐπιστήμην γεωμετρικήν. ὡς οὖν
as also himself some having science geometric when then
ἀνέμαθεν ὁ ἀμεραμνουνῆς, μετὰ περιχαρείας εἰσκαλεῖται
learned the commander-of-the-faithful with joy he-summons(-him)
πολλῆς, καὶ τὸν αἰχμάλωτον ἐπυνθάνετο εἰ γνῶσιν τῆς
much and the captive he-asked if knowledge of-the
τοιαύτης κέκτηται ἐπιστήμης. καὶ ἐπεὶ τὴν συγκατάθεσιν
such he-possesses science and since the assent
ἐποιήσατο, ἔτι μὲν ἀπιστίαν πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου λόγους
he-made still indeed disbelief toward the his words
ὁ βάρβαρος κεκτημένος οὐκ ἔλεγεν ἑτέρους εἶναι ὑπὸ
the barbarian having not said others to-be under
τὸν οὐρανὸν τῶν ἐκείνου διδασκάλων ἐκτός. ὡς δ' ὁ
the heaven of-the his teachers outside(-of) when and the
νεανίας ἔλεγεν τούτων διακοῦσαι ἐπιθυμεῖν καὶ τῆς αὐτῶν
youth said them to-hear to-desire and of-the their
διδασκαλίας, εὐθὺς οὗτοι παραστάντες ἀπήρχοντο ταύτης,
teaching at-once these having-stood-by began it
καὶ διεχάραττον τὰ τρίγωνά τε καὶ τετράγωνα σχήματα,
and drew the triangles both and squares figures
καὶ τοὺς Εὐκλείδου κανόνας προσέφερον, καὶ τὸ μὲν
and the of-Euclid rules brought-forward and the(-one) indeed
ὅτι ἐδίδασκον ἀνδρικῶς καὶ ἐπιστημονικῶς, τοῦτο λέγοντες
that they-taught manfully and scientifically this saying
τοιαύτην ἔχοι τὴν κλῆσιν καὶ τοιαύτην τὸ ἕτερον,
such might-have the name and such the other
αἰτίαν δὲ καὶ λόγον, καὶ διότι οὕτως τε ἔστιν καὶ κλῆσιν
cause but and reason and why thus both it-is and (a)-name

ἔχοι, κατάλληλον ἀπεδίδοσαν οὐδαμῶς, ἀμάθειαν καὶ
it-should-have fitting they-rendered in-no-way ignorance and
ἄγνοιαν, ἀλλ᾽ οὐ στενότητα γλώττης πως ἔχοντες.
unknowing but not narrowness of-tongue somehow having
ὡς οὖν τούτους γαυρουμένους ἑώρα καὶ μέγα φρονοῦντας
when then them exulting he-saw and greatly thinking
ἐπὶ τῇ τῶν σχημάτων ὁ νεανίας καταγραφῇ, "τί" φησίν
at the of-the figures the youth drawing why he-says
"ὦ οὗτοι, ἐπὶ παντὸς λόγου καὶ πράγματος τῆς αἰτίας
O these(-men) in every word and matter the cause
τὸ κράτος ἐχούσης καὶ τοῦ διότι, ὑμεῖς τὴν ὕπαρξιν
the power having and the why you the existence
μόνον λέγοντες τοὺς τούτων παρατρέχετε λόγους ὡς οὐκ
only saying the of-these you-run-past reasons as not
ἀναγκαίους; καὶ εἰς ταὐτὸν τὸν διδασκόμενον ἄγετε
necessary and into the-same(-place) the(-one) being-taught you-lead
ὅπου καὶ τὸν μηδὲν παιδευόμενον μηδέ τι περὶ
where also the(-one) nothing educated nor anything about
τούτων διαγινώσκοντα;" τῶν δὲ διαπορησάντων καὶ τὰς
these(-things) discerning they and being-at-a-loss and the
αἰτίας τούτων διευκρινεῖν καὶ διδάσκειν παρακελευομένων,
causes of-these to-make-clear and to-teach exhorting
ἐπεὶ διερμηνεύοντα καὶ σαφῶς λέγοντα ταύτας διήκουον,
when interpreting and clearly saying them they-heard
ὡς τοῦτο μὲν διὰ τόδε καὶ τοῦτο διὰ τόδε τὴν
that this indeed because-of this and this because-of this the
εἰρημένην ἔχει κλῆσίν τε καὶ γραφήν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτῶν ὁ
said has name both and drawing and at-once their the
νοῦς διηνοίγετο καὶ τῶν λεγομένων συνίεσαν, θάμβει
mind was-opened and the(-things) said they-understood with-amazement
λοιπὸν συσχεθέντες ἠρώτων ὁπόσους τὸ Βυζάντιον τοιούτους
henceforth seized they-asked how-many — Byzantion such

τρέφει ἄνδρας ἐπιστήμονας. ὡς δὲ πολλοὺς οὗτος ἔλεγεν
nourishes men scientific when and many he said
καὶ ἑαυτὸν τῷ τῶν μαθητιώντων χορῷ ἀλλ᾽ οὐ τῶν
and himself to-the of-the would-be-learners chorus but not of-the
διδασκόντων κατέλεγεν, περὶ τοῦ διδασκάλου τοῦτον αὖθις
teachers he-numbered about the teacher him again
ἐπανηρώτων, οὐ ζῶσιν ἔτι ἠρίθμηται καὶ ὑπεράνω
they-asked-in-turn not among-(the)-living still is-counted and above
πέφυκε γῆς. ὁ δὲ "ἔστι τε", ἔφησεν "ὑπὲρ γῆς,"
is (the)-earth he and is both he-said above earth
καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀρετὴν ἐξεθείασεν, ἀκτήμονα βίον διάγειν
and the his virtue extolled possessionless life to-lead
λέγων αὐτὸν καὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς ἄγνωστον, ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ
saying him and to-the many unknown in wisdom
διαλάμποντα. γράμματα γοῦν εὐθὺς ὁ Μαμοῦν πρὸς
shining letters at-any-rate at-once — Mamoun to
ἐκεῖνον διαχαράττει, τόνδε τὸν νοῦν περιέχοντα, "ὡς ἐκ
him writes this the sense containing as from
τοῦ καρποῦ τὸ δένδρον ἐπέγνωμεν, ἐκ τοῦ μαθητοῦ τὸν
the fruit the tree we-recognized from the student the
διδάσκαλον. ἐπεὶ γοῦν τόσος ὢν περὶ τὴν ἐπιστήμην τῶν
teacher since at-any-rate so-great being about the knowledge of-the
ὄντων δι᾽ ἀρετὴν καὶ γνώσεως βάθος ἄγνωστος εἶ
beings because-of virtue and of-knowledge depth unknown you-are
τοῖς σοῖς συμπολίταις καὶ τῆς σοφίας καὶ γνώσεως οὔπω
to-the your fellow-citizens and of-the wisdom and knowledge not-yet
τοὺς καρποὺς ἀπείληφας, ὅτι μηδὲ τιμῆς ἠξίωσαι
the fruits you-have-received since not-even of-honor you-have-been-deemed-worthy
παρ᾽ αὐτῶν, μὴ ἀπαξιώσῃς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς ἡμᾶς καὶ τῆς σῆς
by them do-not disdain to-come to us and of-the your
διδασκαλίας μεταδοῦναι ἡμῖν. εἰ γὰρ οὕτω τοῦτο γένηται,
teaching to-give-a-share to-us if for thus this happens

τοὺς αὐχένας σοι κλινεῖ γένος ἅπαν τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν,
the necks to-you will-bow (the)-race all the of-the Saracens
καὶ πλούτου καὶ δωρεῶν ἀξιωθήσῃ, ὧν οὐδεὶς
and of-wealth and of-gifts you-will-be-deemed-worthy of-which no-one
πώποτε ἀνθρώπων ἠξίωται.” ἐπιδοὺς οὖν τὰ
ever of-men has-been-deemed-worthy having-handed then the
γράμματα τῷ νεανίᾳ, καὶ δώροις αὐτὸν φιλοφρονησάμενος,
letters to-the youth and with-gifts him having-treated-kindly
τὸν διδάσκαλον καταλαμβάνειν ἐκέλευσεν, καὶ τιμὰς εὐθὺς
the teacher to-reach he-ordered and honors at-once
ὑπισχνεῖτο καὶ δωρεὰς καὶ αὖθις, εἰ βούλοιτο, τὴν εἰς
promised and gifts and again if he-wished the to
οἶκον ἐπάνοδον, μόνον εἰ τοῦτον πείσειε τὴν τῶν
home return only if him he-should-persuade the of-the
Ῥωμαίων καταλιπεῖν γῆν. ὡς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἔφθασε
Romans to-leave land when the reigning(-city) he-reached
καὶ τοῦ διδασκάλου πρὸς πρόσωπον ἔστηκεν, ἡ τούτου
and of-the teacher to face stood the his
θέα ἀναφλέξασά τε καὶ οἷον θερμαίνουσα ὀλοφύρεσθαι
sight having-kindled both and as-it-were warming to-lament
κατηνάγκαζε, καὶ δάκρυσιν οὐ παρειὰς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ
compelled and with-tears not cheeks only but also
τράχηλον καὶ στέρνα διάβροχα ἐμποιεῖν.
neck and breast drenched to-make
καὶ τὸ πρῶτον ἀφασία τῶν δρωμένων τὸν διδάσκαλον
and the first speechlessness at-the(-things) being-done the teacher
κατελάμβανεν, τίς τε εἴη οὐκ εἰδώς, καὶ ὅτου
seized who both he-might-be not knowing and of-what
ταῦτα ἕνεκεν διαπράττοιτο· ἥ τε γὰρ τούτου μορφὴ
these(-things) for-the-sake he-might-be-doing the both for his form
ἀλλοιωθεῖσα τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ τῇ τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας
changed by-the time and by-the of-the captivity

κακουχίᾳ ἀλλοῖον τὸν νεανίαν ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἐκεῖνον εἶναι τὸν
hardship different the youth but not that(-one) to-be the(-one)
γνωριζόμενον ἀνεδίδασκεν. ὡς δὲ τὴν τούτου γνῶσιν
known taught when and the his recognition
κατὰ μικρὸν ἐδίδου, ὄνομα καὶ μαθήματα ἐπειπών, καὶ
by little he-gave (his)-name and studies having-said and
προσετίθει τὰ τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς
he-added the(-things) of-the captivity and the cause of-the
ἀπολυτρώσεώς τε καὶ ἀφίξεως, καὶ ἅμα εἰς χεῖρας
ransom both and arrival and at-once into hands
ἐδίδου δὴ τὴν γραφήν, τότε δὴ κοινῇ τὴν τραγῳδίαν
he-gave indeed the letter then indeed in-common the tragedy
ἐπλήρουν καὶ θρηνῳδίαν. πλὴν οὐκ ἀκίνδυνον εἶναι
they-fulfilled and lament but not without-danger to-be
λογισάμενος τὴν ἐκ τῶν ἐχθρῶν γραφήν, εἴ γέ ποτε
having-reckoned the from the enemies letter if at-least ever
κατάφωρος γένοιτο, τῷ λογοθέτῃ πρόσεισι (Θεόκτιστος
detected it-should-become to-the logothete he-goes Theoktistos
οὗτος ἦν ὁ παρανάλωμα τῷ Βάρδᾳ γενόμενος) καὶ
this(-one) was the(-one) (a)-waste — to-Bardas having-become and
διηγεῖτο τὰ τοῦ αἰχμαλώτου πάντα καὶ μαθητοῦ, καὶ
recounted the(-things) of-the captive all and student and
ἅμα δίδωσιν τὴν τοῦ ἀμεραμνουνῆ γραφήν. αὕτη ἡ
at-once gives the of-the commander-of-the-faithful letter this the
αἰτία τῆς τοῦδε τοῦ ἀνδρὸς πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα γνώσεώς
cause of-the this the man to the emperor knowledge
τε καὶ οἰκείωσις. οὗτος ὁ μαθητὴς καὶ τοῦτο τὸ γράμμα
both and familiarity this the student and this the letter
τήν τε τοῦ Λέοντος σοφίαν ἐν ὑπαίθρῳ γενέσθαι ἐν
the both — of-Leo wisdom in open-air to-be in
γωνίᾳ τέως οὖσαν ἐποίησεν καὶ τῆς εὐτελείας ἐκείνης
(a)-corner for-a-time being made and from-the cheapness that

καὶ πενίας ἔξω παρήγαγεν. τό τε γὰρ γράμμα ἐμφανίζει
and poverty out led the both for letter shows
τῷ Θεοφίλῳ ὁ λογοθέτης, καὶ προσκαλεῖται τοῦτον
— to-Theophilos the logothete and summons him
αὐτός, καὶ πλουτίζεται καὶ ἐν τῷ τῶν ἁγίων μ΄ ναῷ
he(-Theophilos) and he-is-enriched and in the of-the holy 40 church
διδάσκειν δημοσίᾳ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπείγεται. οὐ πολὺς
to-teach publicly by the emperor he-is-urged not much
γοῦν χρόνος, καὶ ἐπεὶ διέγνω ὁ Μαμοῦν μὴ βούλεσθαι
at-any-rate time and when learned — Mamoun not to-wish
τὸν φιλόσοφον τῆς οἰκείας τὴν ἀλλοτρίαν ἀλλάξασθαι,
the philosopher for-the own the foreign to-exchange
διὰ γραφῆς ἐκτίθησιν ἀπορίας γεωμετρικῶν τε καὶ
through (a)-letter he-sets-out problems of-geometric both and
ἀστρολογικῶν ζητημάτων καί τινων ἑτέρων δυσδιαγνώστων
astrological questions and of-some other hard-to-discern
κεφαλαίων, καὶ τὴν λύσιν τούτων κομίσασθαι ἀξιοῖ. ὡς
chapters and the solution of-these to-receive he-asks when
δ᾽ οὖν ἕκαστον προσηκόντως ἡρμήνευσεν ὁ Λέων καὶ
and then each fittingly interpreted — Leo and
τὰς τούτων λύσεις ἐξέθετο, προσεφήρμοσέ τε τούτοις καί
the of-these solutions set-out he-fitted both to-these also
τινα προγνώσεως ἐκπλήξεως ἕνεκα, τότε δὴ μεγάλως
some(-things) of-foreknowledge of-astonishment for-the-sake then indeed greatly
ἐπὶ χεῖρας λαβόντα αὐτὰ τὸν ἀμεραμνουνῆ τρωθῆναι
on hands having-taken them the commander-of-the-faithful to-be-wounded
δὴ τῷ τούτου πόθῳ, καὶ μέγα ἀνακραγεῖν, τὸν ἄνδρα
indeed by-the for-him longing and greatly to-cry-out the man
τῆς φιλοσοφίας καὶ τῶν μαθημάτων ὑπεραγάμενος. ὅθεν
of-the philosophy and of-the sciences admiring-exceedingly whence
εὐθὺς οὐ πρὸς ἐκεῖνον πρὸς δὲ τὸν Θεόφιλον ἐπιστολὴν
at-once not to that(-man) to but — Theophilos (a)-letter

πέμπει, τὸν νοῦν τοῦτον ἐμπεριέχουσαν, ὡς ἐβουλόμην
sends the sense this containing that I-wished
μὲν αὐτὸς ἀφικέσθαι σοι, ἔργον φίλου τε καὶ μαθητοῦ
indeed myself to-come to-you (the)-work of-friend both and student
ἐκπληρῶν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἥ τε προσανακειμένη μοι ἀρχὴ ἐκ
fulfilling since and the both devolved-on me rule from
θεοῦ καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὑπὸ τὴν χεῖρά μου τελῶν καὶ ἐξουσίαν
god and the much under the hand my ranking and authority
λαὸς τοῦτο οὐ συγχωρεῖ, ἀξιῶ τὸν ὃν ἔχεις ἐπὶ
people this not permits I-ask the(-man) whom you-have in
φιλοσοφίᾳ καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις ἐπιστήμαις περιβόητον ἄνδρα
philosophy and the other sciences renowned man
βραχύ τινα χρόνον ἐπαποστεῖλαι, καὶ συγγενέσθαι μοι
short some time to-send and to-be-with me
τοῦτον πεῖσαι, τρόπῳ διδασκαλίας τῆς αὐτοῦ ἐπιστήμης
him to-persuade by-way of-teaching of-the his knowledge
μεταδιδόντα καὶ ἀρετῆς τῷ οὕτως ἔχοντι ἐμοὶ
sharing and of-virtue with-the(-one) thus being me
πρὸς ἐκείνας ἐρωτικῶς. πάντως δὲ οὐκ ἀναβολή τις
toward those(-things) amorously surely and not (a)-delay any
γενήσεται ὅτι τε τῶν οὐχ ὁμογλώσσων ἐγὼ καὶ ὅτι
will-be because both of-the not of-the-same-tongue I(-am) and because
τῆς πίστεως ἀλλότριος· ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι μᾶλλον τοιοῦτος ὁ
of-the faith (a)-stranger but because rather such the(-one)
ἀξιῶν, πέρας ἡ αἴτησις λήψεται παρὰ φίλοις ἐπιεικέσι τε
asking (an)-end the request will-take among friends reasonable both
καὶ χρηστοῖς. χάρις δέ σοι καταβληθήσεται ὑπὲρ τούτου
and good (a)-favor and to-you will-be-paid for this
χρυσίου μὲν εἴκοσι κεντηνάρια, εἰρήνη δὲ καὶ σπονδαὶ
of-gold indeed twenty centenaria peace and also treaties
ἀΐδιοί τε καὶ ἀτελεύτητοι. τοσούτοις μὲν ἐκεῖνος τὴν
everlasting both and unending for-so-much indeed he the

αὐτοῦ ἐξωνεῖτο παρουσίαν καὶ ἄφιξιν· ἀλλ᾽ ὁ Θεόφιλος
his bought presence and arrival but — Theophilos
ἀνταποκρίνας καὶ ἄλογον τὸ οἰκεῖον δοῦναι ἑτέροις
having-answered and irrational the own(-good) to-give to-others
καλὸν καὶ τὴν τῶν ὄντων γνῶσιν ἔκδοτον ποιῆσαι τοῖς
fine(-thing) and the of-the beings knowledge given-up to-make to-the
ἔθνεσι, δι᾽ ἧς τὸ τῶν Ῥωμαίων γένος θαυμάζεταί τε
nations through which the of-the Romans race is-admired both
καὶ τιμᾶται παρὰ πᾶσιν, ἐκείνῳ μὲν οὐκ ἐπένευσε,
and is-honored among all to-that(-man) indeed not assented
τοῦτον δὲ διὰ τιμῆς πλείονος σχὼν τὸν Ἰωάννην
him and through honor greater having-held — John
τοῦ πατριαρχικοῦ τότε θρόνου ἀντιποιούμενον κατὰ τὴν
of-the patriarchal then throne laying-claim-to for the
Θεσσαλονικέων μητρόπολιν, καὶ ὡς πλήρη σοφίας ὄντα
of-Thessalonians metropolis and as full of-wisdom being
καὶ ὡς οἰκειούμενον τούτῳ κατὰ συγγένειαν, χειροτονεῖν
and as related to-him by kinship to-ordain
ἐγκελεύεται.
he-orders
ὃς ἐπεὶ μετὰ τὴν χειροτονίαν κατὰ τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην 28
who when after the ordination in — Thessalonike
ἐγένετο, εἶχε μὲν ἅπαντας τὴν αὐτοῦ εὐλαβουμένους τε
he-was had indeed all the his revering both
καὶ τιμῶντας ἀρετήν, εἶχε δὲ μᾶλλον τιμῶντας τοῦτον
and honoring virtue had and rather honoring him
λαμπρότερον ἔκ τινος αἰτίας ἦν ὁ λόγος δηλοῖ.
more-brilliantly from some cause which the account makes-clear
περὶ τὰς τῶν καρπῶν γονὰς στεῖρά πως τοσοῦτον
about the of-the fruits generation barren somehow so-much
ὡρᾶτο ἡ γῆ καὶ ἄτεκνος κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ ὡς καὶ
was-seen the earth and childless at that(-point) of-time that also

θάνατον κατεπείγεσθαι. οὓς ἰδὼν τῷ τῆς συμπαθείας
death to-be-pressed-on whom having-seen by-the of-the sympathy
οἴκτῳ βληθεὶς μήτ᾽ ἀθυμεῖν παρῄνει μήτε μὴν συμφοραῖς
pity struck neither to-despair he-advised nor indeed by-misfortunes
ἐπαπόλλυσθαι, εἴγε δὴ βούλοιντο τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ ἐπικουρίας
to-perish-besides if-indeed indeed they-wished of-the — of-god help
καὶ αὐτοῦ γε τυχεῖν. περί τινα γοῦν καιρόν, ὃν ἐκ
and of-him at-least to-obtain at some at-any-rate time which from
τῆς ἀστρολογικῆς ἐδιδάσκετο ἀστέρων τινῶν ἐπιτολαῖς τε
the astrology he-was-taught of-stars some by-risings both
καὶ φάσεσιν ἀπόρροιάν τινα καὶ συμπάθειαν τοῖς περιγείοις
and phases (an)-emanation some and sympathy to-the earthly(-things)
προσγίνεσθαι, τὰ σπέρματα τῇ γῇ κατεβάλλετο καὶ
to-come-to the seeds to-the earth he-cast-down and
ὑπὸ κόλπους ταύτης ἐδίδου, ὧν τοσαύτην γενέσθαι
under (the)-folds of-it he-gave of-which so-great to-happen
συνέβη εὐφορίαν τε καὶ εὐκαρπίαν, ἐπεὶ τὸ ἔαρ ἀνέτελλεν
it-befell fertility both and fruitfulness when the spring rose
καὶ ὁ τοῦ θέρους ἐφεστήκει καιρός, ὡς πολλοὺς
and the(-one) of-the summer was-at-hand time that many
ἐπαρκέσαι χρόνους αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰς τὸ ἑξῆς, πάντως οὕτω
to-suffice years for-them and for the following surely thus
τοῦ θεοῦ τὸν ἄμητον πολύχουν ἐνεγκαμένου ταῖς τῶν
— god the harvest abundant having-brought to-the of-the(-ones)
ἀναγκαζομένων λιτανείαις ἐπιδόντος καὶ ἱκετείαις, ἀλλ᾽ οὐ
constrained litanies having-given-way and supplications but not
τῇ ἐκείνου περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ματαιοπονίᾳ. τοῦτο γοῦν
to-the his about the such(-things) vain-labor this at-any-rate
τὴν ἐπὶ πλέον τῶν Θεσσαλονικέων ηὔξησε πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα
the for more of-the Thessalonians increased toward the man
στοργὴν καὶ τὸ φίλτρον αὐτῶν διήγειρεν, ὡς εἰκός.
affection and the love their roused as likely

θαυμαζόντων δὲ πολλῶν περὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ σοφίας, καὶ 29
marveling and many about the his wisdom and
ὅπως εἰς ἄκρον ἔφθασε πασῶν τῶν ἐπιστημῶν, λέγεται
how to (the)-summit he-reached of-all the sciences he-is-said
πρός τινα τῶν ἑαυτοῦ συνήθων φάναι "ὡς τὴν μὲν
to some of-the his-own acquaintances to-have-said that the(-art) indeed
γραμματικὴν καὶ ποιητικὴν κατὰ τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν
grammatical and poetic in — Constantinople
διατρίβων κατώρθωσεν, ῥητορικὴν δὲ καὶ φιλοσοφίαν καὶ
spending-time he-achieved rhetoric but and philosophy and
ἀριθμῶν ἀναλήψεις κατὰ τὴν νῆσον Ἄνδρον γενόμενος·
of-numbers reckonings in the island Andros having-been
ἐκεῖσε γάρ τινι σοφῷ ἀνδρὶ ἐντυχὼν καὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς μόνον
there for some wise man having-met and the beginnings only
καί τινας λόγους παρ' αὐτοῦ λαβών, ἐπεὶ μὴ ὅσον
and some principles from him having-taken since not as-much-as
ἐβούλετο εὗρισκεν, τῇ χέρσῳ ταύτης περινοστῶν καὶ
he-wished he-found on-the mainland of-it wandering-about and
μοναστήρια καταλαμβάνων καὶ τὰς ἀποκειμένας βίβλους
monasteries reaching and the stored books
ἀνερευνῶν τε καὶ ποριζόμενος, καὶ πρὸς τὰς κορυφὰς τῶν
searching-out both and procuring and to the summits of-the
ὀρέων σπουδαιότερον ταύτας ἐμμελετῶν, πρὸς τὸ τῆς
mountains more-zealously them studying to the of-the
γνώσεως οὕτως ὕψος ἀνεβιβάζετο, ὅτε δὴ καὶ κόρον σχὼν
knowledge thus height he-was-raised when indeed also satiety having
τῶν μαθημάτων πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν αὖθις ὑπέστρεψεν,
of-the studies to the reigning(-city) again he-returned
τὰ σπέρματα τῶν ἐπιστημῶν ταῖς τῶν βουλομένων
the seeds of-the sciences into-the of-the(-ones) wishing
διανοίαις καταβαλλόμενος." ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν πρότερον·
minds casting-down but these(-things) indeed earlier

καὶ νῦν δὲ ἐπεὶ μετὰ τρεῖς χρόνους (τοσοῦτος δὲ ὁ
and now too since after three years so-much and the
τῆς τοῦ θρόνου ἀντιλήψεως χρόνος) ἐκ τῆς καθαιρέσεως
of-the of-the throne holding time from the deposition
αὖθις ἐσχόλαζεν, τῆς κατὰ τὴν Μαγναύραν μὲν οὗτος
again he-had-leisure of-the at — Magnaura indeed he
ἦρχε φιλοσόφου σχολῆς, ὁ δὲ δὴ τούτου φοιτητὴς
ruled of-philosophy school the(-one) and indeed his pupil
Θεόδωρος τοῦ τῆς γεωμετρίας διαιτητηρίου προΐστατο, καὶ
Theodore of-the of-the geometry school presided-over and
Θεοδήγιος τοῦ τῆς ἀστρονομίας, καὶ Κομητᾶς τῆς τὰς
Theodegios the(-one) of-the astronomy and Kometas the(-one) the
φωνὰς ἐξελληνιζούσης γραμματικῆς· οἷς ὁ Βάρδας καὶ
words hellenizing of-grammar to-whom — Bardas also
δαψιλῶς ἐπαρκῶν καὶ ἐκ φιλομαθίας πολλάκις ἐπιφοιτῶν
lavishly supplying and from love-of-learning often visiting
καὶ τῶν διδασκομένων τὰς φύσεις ἐπιρρωννύς, ἐντὸς
and of-the(-ones) taught the natures strengthening within
τοῦ καθήκοντος χρόνου ὥσπερ πτερὰ τοῖς λόγοις διδοὺς
the due time as-it-were wings to-the words giving
πτεροφυεῖν ἐποίει καὶ προβαίνειν εἰς τοὔμπροσθεν.
to-grow-wings made and to-advance into the-forward

Bardas judges in the hippodrome courts. When the patriarch Ignatius bars him from communion for living with his daughter-in-law, Bardas shuts him in a tomb, exiles him to Mytilene, wins over the protesting bishops by deceit, and makes the learned Photius patriarch; a synod with legates from Rome deposes Ignatius, who is beaten, and priests are punished until they commune with Photius. The Rus ravage the Pontus and besiege the City, retreat when Photius propitiates God, and later ask for baptism. Cretans raid the islands, and earthquakes topple a statue of Victory whose fall Leo reads as the coming fall of the emperor's second. Michael races at St. Mamas, silences the beacons so news will not spoil the races, and rebukes a minister who brings word of Amer's raid.

Καὶ τοῖς τοῦ ἱπποδρόμου δὲ συνεχῶς ὁ Βάρδας ἑαυτὸν 30
and to-the of-the hippodrome too continually — Bardas himself
ἐδίδου κριτηρίοις, καὶ ἐραστὴς νομίζεσθαι ταύτης τῆς
gave courts and (a)-lover to-be-thought of-this the
γνώμης φιλοτιμούμενος. ἔτυχε δ' ἂν παρὰ
judgment being-ambitious would-have-won(-credit) and — among
πολλοῖς, τοῦ χρόνου τὰ γεγονότα καλύψαντος· ἀλλὰ
many the time the(-things) having-happened having-covered but
πάλιν τὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας κυκήσας τε καὶ ἀναταράξας,
again the(-affairs) of-the church having-stirred both and having-confounded
καὶ ἀντὶ γαλήνης φιλονεικίας αὐτῇ καὶ κακώσεων
and instead-of calm of-contentions for-it and ill-treatments
[καὶ] ὀλεθρίων αἴτιος γεγονώς, εἰκότως οὐ τὴν κρείττω
and destructive cause having-become fittingly not the better
δόξαν ἀλλὰ τὴν ἐναντίαν ἠνέγκατο. ἄρτι γὰρ τὸν βίον
reputation but the opposite bore just for the life
Μεθοδίου μετηλλαχότος, τέσσαρας μόνους χρόνους τὸν
Methodios having-changed four only years the
τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως θρόνον κεκρατηκότος, Ἰγνάτιον
— of-Constantinople throne having-held Ignatius

μοναχὸν ὄντα καὶ τῆς μονῆς ἡγούμενον τοῦ Σατύρου, τὸν
(a)-monk being and of-the monastery abbot — of-Satyros the
Νικηφόρου μὲν τοῦ βασιλέως ἔκγονον, υἱὸν δὲ Μιχαήλ,
of-Nikephoros indeed the emperor descendant son and of-Michael
τὸν ἐπ᾽ εὐλαβείᾳ καὶ ἀρετῇ παντοίᾳ μαρτυρηθέντα
the(-one) for piety and virtue all-kinds attested
πρὸς τὸν τῆς πατριαρχίας θρόνον ἀναβιβάζουσι καὶ τῆς
to the of-the patriarchate throne they-raise and of-the
οἰκουμένης τοὺς οἴακας ἐμπιστεύουσιν. οὗτος οὖν μετά
inhabited-world the helms they-entrust this(-man) then after
τινας χρόνους τὸν Βάρδαν ἐπὶ τῇ τοῦ οἰκείου γυναίου
some years — Bardas for the of-the own wife
ἀλόγως καὶ ἀναιτίως ἀποβολῇ τῆς αὐτοῦ δὲ νύμφης
irrationally and causelessly casting-off of-the his and daughter-in-law
περιπλοκῇ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀπείργων, ἐπεὶ μὴ τῶν θείων
embrace from-the church shutting-out since not the divine
κανόνων ἠμέλει, τὴν ἣν ἐκείνῳ ἐδίδου ποινὴν τῆς
canons he-neglected the which to-that(-man) he-gave penalty from-the
ἐκκλησίας ἀποπεμπόμενος, ταύτην εἰσπράττεται παρ᾽
church being-sent-away this he-exacts from
αὐτοῦ. καὶ ἵνα τὸν λιμὸν καὶ τὴν δίψαν παρῶ καὶ τὰς
him and that the hunger and the thirst I-may-pass-over and the
ἐπὶ γῆς τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐκτάσεις τε καὶ ῥαβδισμοὺς καὶ
on (the)-ground of-the man stretchings both and beatings and
τὰς καθ᾽ ὅλον τὸ σῶμα ὠμοτάτας πληγάς, ἓν τοῦτο μόνον
the over whole the body most-cruel blows one this only
ἐγὼ εἰπὼν ἐπὶ τὰ συνεχῆ βαδιοῦμαι τῆς ἱστορίας.
I having-said to the continuous(-part) I-will-go of-the history
31 παρεδίδου τὸν Ἰγνάτιον ὁ Βάρδας φρουρᾷ, καὶ φρουρᾷ
handed-over — Ignatius — Bardas to-custody and to-custody
ἀπηνεῖ τε καὶ χαλεπῇ· ἡ δὲ ἦν ἐν τῷ τῶν ἱερῶν
harsh both and grievous it and was in the of-the holy

ἀποστόλων τεμένει, οὐκ ἐν τῷ δὴ μεγάλῳ τε καὶ
apostles precinct not in the(-one) indeed great both and
σεμνῷ, ἀλλ᾽ ἔνθα οἱ τάφοι καὶ λέγονται καὶ εἰσίν. ἐκεῖσε
revered but where the tombs both are-said and are there
δὴ ἐναποκλείσαντες ἔν τινι τοῦτον τάφῳ τοῦ Κοπρωνύμου,
indeed having-shut-in in some him tomb — of-Kopronymos
ἐν κρυμῷ καὶ παγετῷ γυμνότερον ὑπέρου, τὸ τῆς
in frost and ice barer than-a-pestle the(-word) of-the
παροιμίας, ἐν μετεώρῳ ἐπικαθίσαντες τὰ τοῦ κρυμοῦ
proverb in (the)-air having-set(-him) the(-things) of-the frost
καὶ χειμῶνος πάσχειν ἐξεβιάζοντο· τὰ δὲ ἦν ἡ δυσεντερία
and winter to-suffer they-forced(-him) these and were the dysentery
τε καὶ τῶν ἐντὸς ἀναγκαίων ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ψύχους
both and of-the inner necessaries from the of-the cold
ὑπερβολῆς διὰ γαστρὸς ἀπόρροια καὶ θάνατος ἐκ τούτου
excess through (the)-belly flux and death from this
πικρός. ἀπεβίω δ᾽ ἂν ἐκ τῆς τῶν φρουρούντων
bitter he-would-have-died and — from the of-the(-men) guarding
δεινότητος καὶ ὠμότητος (ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι ὅ τε Γοργονίτης
terribleness and cruelty were and these — both Gorgonites
Ἰωάννης καὶ ὁ Σκουτελόπτης Νικόλαος καὶ Θεόδωρος ὁ
John and — Skouteloptes Nicholas and Theodore the
Μωρός), εἰ μή τις οἴκτῳ βαλλόμενος (Κωνσταντῖνος
Fool if not some(-one) by-pity struck Constantine
ἦν ὁ Ἀρμενιακός) τῇ τούτων ἀπουσίᾳ ἐν τῷ μέλλειν
he-was the Armeniakos in-the their absence at the to-be-about
σιτίζεσθαι ἐκεῖθέν τε τὸν ἄνθρωπον κατεβίβαζεν, καὶ
to-eat from-there both the man brought-down and
οἴνῳ βραχεῖ, ἔτι δὲ καὶ ἄρτῳ καὶ μικρᾷ τινὶ περιθάλψει
with-wine little still and also with-bread and small some warming
τὸ λυποῦν ἐπ᾽ ὀλίγον παρεμυθεῖτο. ὡς δὲ τὸ τῆς
the pain for (a)-little consoled when and the(-measure) of-the

τιμωρίας ἀρκούντως ἐδόκει αὐτῷ, τότε δὴ ὑπερόριον
punishment sufficiently seemed to-him then indeed banished
μὲν τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον κατὰ τὴν νῆσον Μιτυλήνην ποιεῖ·
indeed the man this to the island Mytilene he-makes
ἐπεὶ δὲ καί τινες τῶν ἐπισκόπων ἀντέλεγον καὶ τὴν δίκην
when and also some of-the bishops spoke-against and the justice
πόρρω που δὴ οὖσαν καὶ ἀποφοιτήσασαν ἐπεκαλοῦντο
far somewhere indeed being and having-departed appealed
καὶ οὐκ εἴ τι γένηται ἄλλον δέξασθαι ἠπείλουν, ἀλλὰ
and not if anything should-happen another to-receive threatened but
τῆς ἐκκλησίας συναπορρήγνυσθαι, τὸν ἐκ τούτου τάραχον
from-the church to-break-off the from this disturbance
δὴ κατευλαβηθεὶς ἔγνω καὶ τούτους ἀπάτῃ περιελθεῖν
indeed having-feared he-resolved also them by-deceit to-get-round
καὶ ἀλωπεκῇ. ἰδίᾳ γοῦν καὶ κρυφῇ τούτων ἕκαστον
and fox-craft privately at-any-rate and secretly of-them each
μετακαλούμενος οὐ μικρόν τι καὶ ταπεινὸν ὑπισχνεῖτό
summoning not small something and humble he-promised
τε καὶ ἐδίδου, εἰ μόνον ἀποσταῖεν τοῦ Ἰγνατίου, ἀλλὰ
both and gave if only they-should-stand-off — from-Ignatius but
τὸν θρόνον αὐτὸν Κωνσταντινουπόλεως. ὡς δ' ἐνεδίδοσαν
the throne itself of-Constantinople when and yielded
ἅπαντες καὶ τῆς μὲν δόξης ἡττῶντο, τοῦ δὲ καλοῦ
all and by-the indeed glory were-worsted the(-thing) and fine
ἕνεκεν καὶ νομίμου ἀντέλεγεν οὐδείς, τότε δὴ τότε
for-the-sake and lawful spoke-against no-one then indeed then
ὑπετίθει ὡς ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς αὐτοῖς τὰς ὑποσχέσεις
he-suggested that the indeed emperor to-them the promises
μὲν ἐκπληρώσειεν, αὐτοὶ δὲ τὸ εὔσχημον τηροῦντές τε
indeed would-fulfill yourselves and the seemly keeping both
καὶ σεμνὸν ἅμα τῷ πρὸς αὐτὸν κληθῆναι μὴ πρὸς
and revered at-once with-the to him to-be-called not to

τὰ διδόμενα κατανεύσητε, ἵνα καὶ αὐτός, φησί, τῆς
the(-things) given you-should-nod that also he he-says of-the
ὑμῶν εἴη ὑπεραγάμενος ἀρετῆς. οὕτως δὴ ἕκαστον
your may-be admiring virtue thus indeed each
οὐχ ὁμοῦ ἀλλ᾽ ἰδίᾳ καὶ κατὰ μόνας πρὸς τὸν Μιχαὴλ
not together but privately and by alone to — Michael
προσκαλούμενος μὴ αὐθωρὸν ἐπιπηδᾶν τῇ τιμῇ ἀνέπειθεν.
summoning not at-once to-leap-on the honor he-persuaded
καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἐκ μόνου προσρήματος ἀξιούμενοί τε
and these indeed from only (a)-salutation being-deemed-worthy both
καὶ ἀπαρνούμενοι ἔλαθον ἑαυτοὺς παραδειγματίσαντες·
and refusing unawares themselves having-made-an-example
τῆς γὰρ ἀρετῆς ἐξέπιπτον τῷ τῆς δόξης νικώμενοι
from-the for virtue they-fell by-the of-the glory being-conquered
ἔρωτι, καὶ ταύτης αὖθις ἡμάρτανον, ὅτι μὴ καλῶς ἀλλ᾽
love and from-this again they-failed because not well but
ἐπιβούλως τὸν Ἰγνάτιον παρεδίδοσαν.
treacherously — Ignatius they-handed-over
οὕτως οὖν ἐπεὶ καὶ οὗτοι ἄνθρωποι ὄντες ἐφάνησαν 32
thus then since also these men being appeared
καὶ οὕτω δὴ ἠπατήθησαν, Φωτίῳ ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ μὲν ὄντι
and so indeed were-deceived to-Photius for wisdom indeed being
γνωρίμῳ ἀνδρί, κοσμικῆς δὲ τάξεως ἀντιποιουμένῳ καὶ τὴν
known man of-secular and rank laying-claim and the
τοῦ πρωτοασηκρῆτις δεδραγμένῳ τιμήν, τὸν θρόνον ἐδίδου
of-the protoasekretis having-grasped honor the throne he-gave
τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως. καὶ ἵνα δὴ καὶ τὰ αὐτῶν
— of-Constantinople and that indeed also the(-things) their
κραταιότερα ἀποφήνωσιν, τοποτηρητὰς μὲν ἐκ Ῥώμης ἐπ᾽
more-powerful they-might-show (the)-legates indeed from Rome on
ἄλλαις προφάσεσι (κατὰ γὰρ τῶν εἰκονομάχων) σταλέντας
other pretexts against for the iconoclasts sent

μεταπεμψάμενοι, κατὰ δὲ Ἰγνατίου μετὰ τοῦ καιροῦ
having-summoned against and Ignatius with the time
γεγονέναι παρασκευάσαντες καὶ συνεδριάσαντες, καὶ ἐν τῷ
to-have-come having-prepared and having-sat-in-council and in the
τῶν θείων ἀποστόλων τεμένει δεδημοσιευμένῃ καθαιρέσει
of-the divine apostles precinct to-(a)-published deposition
τοῦτον καθυποβαλόντες, ἐπεὶ τῆς ἐξορίας μετεκαλέσαντο,
him having-subjected when from-the exile they-recalled(-him)
πυγμαῖς τὰ πρόσωπα καὶ τοὺς ὀδόντας συνθλάσαντες,
with-fists the faces and the teeth having-crushed
πᾶσαν σκοτόμαιναν κατὰ τῶν ἱερέων κακῶς, καὶ δεύτερος
all madness against the priests evilly and (a)-second
τῶν ὄντων ἐπὶ γῆς μηδέπω φανῇ. ἀλλ' ὅσα μὲν
of-the beings on earth not-yet may-appear but as-many-as indeed
καὶ ἄλλα κατὰ πάντων ἱερέων ἐνεανιεύσατο, φυλακαῖς
also other(-things) against all priests he-acted-insolently to-prisons
τε καὶ ὑπερορίαις καὶ ποιναῖς ὠμοτάταις ὁσημέραι
both and to-exiles and to-penalties most-cruel daily
παραδιδούς, ἵνα τῷ Φωτίῳ συγκοινωνήσωσι, βίβλοι τε
handing-over that — with-Photius they-might-share-communion books both
πολλαὶ καὶ ὁ πᾶς οὐκ ἐπιλίποι χρόνος ἐκτραγῳδῶν.
many and the all not would-fail time bewailing

33 Ἐντεῦθεν γοῦν τὰ μὲν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡ τῶν Ῥὼς
from-here at-any-rate the(-things) indeed of-the Romans the of-the Rus
ἐκάκου ἐπιδρομή (ἔθνος δὲ οὗτοι Σκυθικὸν ἀνήμερόν τε
harmed incursion (a)-nation and these Scythian savage both
καὶ ἄγροικον), τόν τε Πόντον αὐτόν, οὐ μὴν καὶ τὸν
and boorish — both Pontus itself not indeed also —
Εὔξεινον, κατεπίμπρα καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν πόλιν περιεστοίχιζεν,
Euxine burned and itself the city surrounded
τηνικαῦτα τοῦ Μιχαὴλ κατὰ Ἰσμαηλιτῶν ἐκστρατεύοντος.
then — Michael against Ishmaelites campaigning

πλὴν ἀλλ᾽ ἐκεῖνοι μὲν τότε θείας ἐμφορηθέντες ὀργῆς,
yet but they indeed then with-divine filled wrath
Φωτίου τὸ θεῖον ἐξιλεωσαμένου τοῦ τῆς ἐκκλησίας τοὺς
Photius the divine having-propitiated the(-one) of-the church the
οἴακας ἔχοντος, οἴκαδε ἐκπεπόρευντο· καὶ μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ
helms having home went-out and after not long
πάλιν τὴν βασιλεύουσαν πρεσβεία αὐτῶν κατελάμβανεν,
again the reigning(-city) (an)-embassy their reached
τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος ἐν μετοχῇ γενέσθαι αὐτοὺς
of-the divine baptism in participation to-become them
λιτανεύουσα, ὃ καὶ γέγονεν.
entreating which also happened
Τὰ μὲν οὖν ἡ τούτων ἐκάκου ἐπιδρομή· τὰ 34
the(-things) indeed then the their harmed incursion the(-others)
δὲ ὁ τῆς Κρήτης στόλος ἀναγόμενος, ὡς κουμβαρίων
and the — of-Crete fleet putting-out about of-kombaria
ἄχρι εἴκοσι, ἑπτὰ γαλέας καί τινας σατούρας μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ
up-to twenty seven galleys and some satourai with itself
ἐπαγόμενος, ἐληΐζετό τε καὶ κατεδουλαγώγει, νῦν μὲν τὰς
bringing plundered both and enslaved now indeed the
Κυκλάδας νήσους περινοστῶν, νῦν δὲ ἄχρι Προικοννήσου
Cyclades islands wandering-about now and up-to Proconnesus
τὴν παράλιον ἅπασαν. τὰ δὲ οἱ συνεχεῖς τῶν σεισμῶν
the coast all the(-things) and the continual of-the earthquakes
ἐλυμαίνοντό τε καὶ πρὸς τοὔδαφος ἔβαλλον, νῦν μὲν καθ᾽
ravaged both and to the-ground threw now indeed on
ἣν ἡ τοῦ κυρίου καὶ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν ἀνάληψις ἑορτάζεται,
which the of-the lord and savior our ascension is-celebrated
τὸ πρὸς νότον τρίτον τοῦ Ἑξακιονίου πρὸς γῆν ἐδαφίζοντες,
the toward south third — of-Hexakionion to earth razing
ναούς τε εὐπρεπεῖς καὶ οἴκους λαμπρούς, νῦν δὲ στήλας τήν
churches both seemly and houses brilliant now and pillars the

τε κατὰ Χρυσῆν πύλην τῆς πόλεως Νίκην ἐγκαθιδρυμένην
both at Golden Gate of-the city Victory set-up
τάς τε ἐν τῷ Δευτέρῳ κατὰ τὴν ἁγίαν Ἄνναν στερρῶς
the(-ones) both in the Deuteron at the holy Anna firmly
ἱσταμένας ἐγκατασείσαντες· ἣν ὁ μαθηματικὸς Λέων
standing having-shaken-down which the mathematician Leo
καταπεπτωκυῖαν ἰδὼν τὴν τοῦ δευτέρου ἐκ βασιλέως
fallen having-seen the of-the second from (the)-emperor
πτῶσιν ἔλεγεν ἐπαπειλεῖν καθαρῶς. μακρὸν εἴη λέγειν
fall said to-threaten clearly long it-would-be to-tell
ποταμῶν ἀφάνειαν καὶ πηγῶν καὶ ἄλλ' ἄττα παθήματα
of-rivers disappearance and of-springs and other some sufferings
κατά τε Ἰσαυρίαν καὶ καθ' ἑκάστην χώραν ἐπιγινόμενα.
in both Isauria and in each land occurring
Ἃ πάντα ὁ βασιλεύων ἐν δευτέρῳ θέμενος ὅλος εἶχετο
which all the reigning(-one) in second having-set wholly held-to
τῶν ἱππικῶν ἀγώνων κατὰ τὸν ἐν Εὐξείνῳ ἀνεγηγερμένον
the equestrian contests at the on (the)-Euxine raised
ναὸν τοῦ ἁγίου Μάμαντος.
church of-the holy Mamas
καί ποτε δὲ — ἀλλὰ συνήθειάν τινα διηγήσομαι πρότερον,
and once too but (a)-custom some I-will-recount first
ἣ τὴν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν καθ' ἡμῶν ἐκστρατείαν διὰ
which the of-the Saracens against us expedition through
πυρσοῦ ἐν ἀκαρεῖ ἐδήλου καὶ παρεγύμνου τῷ βασιλεῖ.
beacon in (an)-instant made-clear and laid-bare to-the emperor
ἔρυμά τι καὶ φρούριον τῇ κατὰ Κιλικίαν Ταρσῷ
(a)-stronghold some and fort to-the in Cilicia Tarsus
πλησιάζον καὶ γειτονοῦν οὕτω καλούμενον Λοῦλον ἔστιν.
near and neighboring so called Loulon there-is
οἱ τεταγμένοι οὖν τοῦτο φρουρεῖν, ἅμα τῷ τὴν
the(-men) posted then this to-guard at-once with-the the

ἐκείνων ἰδεῖν ἐκδρομήν, διὰ φανοῦ δηλοῦσιν τοῖς
their to-see sally through (a)-beacon signal to-the(-men)
κατὰ τὸν Ἀργαῖον βουνόν, καὶ οἱ αὖθις τοῖς
on — Argaios hill and the(-ones) again to-the(-ones)
κατὰ τὴν Ἰσάμον, καὶ οἱ τοῖς κατὰ τὸ Αἴγιλον,
on — Isamos and the(-ones) to-the(-ones) on — Aigilos
καὶ τοῦτο τοῖς κατὰ τὸν Μάμαντα πάλιν βουνόν·
and this to-the(-ones) on — Mamas again hill
εἶτα τοῦτον ὁ Κύριζος διαδεχόμενος, καὶ αὖθις τοῦτον ὁ
then this — Kyrizos receiving and again this —
Μώκιλος, ἐκ τούτου δὲ ὁ τοῦ ἁγίου Αὐξεντίου βουνὸς
Mokilos from this and the of-the holy Auxentios hill
τοῖς ἐν τῷ μεγάλῳ παλατίῳ κατὰ τὸ ἡλιακὸν τοῦ
to-the(-ones) in the great palace at the terrace —
Φάρου ἐπὶ τούτου διαιταρίοις ἀφωρισμένοις ἐν βραχεῖ
of-Pharos on this in-rooms set-apart in short(-time)
ἐποίει δὴ φανερά. ποτὲ γοῦν τοῦ Μιχαὴλ κατὰ
it-made indeed plain once at-any-rate — Michael at
τὸν εἰρημένον τοῦ μάρτυρος Μάμαντος ναὸν ἱππάσασθαι
the said of-the martyr Mamas church to-race
μέλλοντος καὶ τὸ σύνθημα τῆς ἱπποδρομίας δεδωκότος,
being-about and the signal of-the race having-given
ἐπεὶ κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν ὁ ἐκ τοῦ Φάρου φανὸς διὰ τοῦ
when at the evening the from — Pharos beacon through the
παππίου ἐδήλου τὴν τῶν ἐθνῶν ἐκδρομήν, εἰς τοσοῦτον
papias made-clear the of-the nations sally into so-great
ἦλθεν ἀγῶνα καὶ φόβον ὁ βασιλεὺς δέει τοῦ μὴ
came anguish and fear the emperor from-fear of-the not
παροφθῆναι τὴν ἡνιοχείαν αὐτοῦ παρὰ τῶν θεατῶν τῆς
to-be-overlooked the chariot-driving his by the spectators the
τοιαύτης ἕνεκεν ἀγγελίας, εἰς ὅσον ἄλλος τις ἦλθεν
such for-the-sake news as much-as other anyone came

κινδυνεύων ὑπὲρ τῆς ψυχῆς καὶ τοῦ μὴ πλησιάσαι τούτους
being-in-danger for the soul and of-the not to-approach them
μᾶλλον ἀγωνιζόμενος. οὕτως ἐκεῖνος ἐθεατρίζετό τε καὶ
rather struggling thus he was-made-a-spectacle both and
οὐκ ᾐσχύνετο. ὅθεν ἵνα μήτε τις τῶν αὐτοῦ ἀγώνων
not was-ashamed whence that neither anyone of-the his contests
ἀπολιμπάνοιτο μήτ' ἄλλο τι τῶν ἐκεῖθεν ἀνιαρῶν
should-be-absent nor other anything of-the from-there grievous(-things)
προσπῖπτον χαλαρωτέρους ποιήσῃ τοὺς θεατάς, μηκέτι
falling-upon slacker should-make the spectators no-longer
τοὺς πλησιάζοντας φανοὺς ἐνεργεῖν προσέταξεν, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ
the near beacons to-work he-ordered but in-silence
βαθείᾳ καὶ λήθῃ τὰ τοιαῦτα παρακαλυφθῆναι μακρᾷ.
deep and forgetfulness the such(-things) to-be-covered long
36 Ἄλλοτε δὲ πάλιν, ἵνα σαφεστέρα γένηται ἡ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς
another-time and again that clearer may-become the of-the man
ἀναγωγία καὶ ἄνοια, αὐτοῦ ἐφ' ἅρματος ἱσταμένου καὶ
ill-breeding and folly him on (a)-chariot standing and
τῆς βαλβῖδος μέλλοντος ἐκπηδᾶν (ἐπάτει δὲ βένετος,
from-the starting-line being-about to-leap-out drove and (as)-Blue
καὶ πράσινος ὁ λογοθέτης Κωνσταντῖνος, ὁ πατρικίου
and Green the logothete Constantine the of-(the)-patrician
Θωμᾶ καὶ γεγονότος λογοθέτου τοῦ δρόμου πατήρ,
Thomas and having-become logothete of-the dromos father
λευκὸς δὲ ὁ Χειλᾶς καὶ ῥούσιος ὁ Κρασᾶς· οὐκ ἦν
(as)-White and — Cheilas and (as)-Red — Krasas not was
δὲ οὐδὲ τῷ πρωτοασηκρῆτις σχολάζειν, ὥσπερ οὐδὲ
and not-even to-the protoasekretis to-be-at-leisure as not-even
τῷ πρωτονοταρίῳ τοῦ δρόμου, ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν ἦν
to-the protonotarios of-the dromos but the(-one) indeed was
κομβινογράφος τῶν βενέτων, ὁ δὲ τῶν πρασίνων)
kombinographos of-the Blues the(-other) and of-the Greens

— αὐτῶν οὖν ἐφ᾽ ἅρματος ἱσταμένων μετὰ καὶ τῆς
them then on (a)-chariot standing with also the
ἡνιοχικῆς στολῆς, καὶ ἐπαγγελίας φθασάσης ὅτι δεινῶς
charioteer's dress and (a)-message having-arrived that terribly
ὁ Ἄμερ κατατρέχει τε καὶ κατασύρει τὸ Θρακήσιον
— Amer overruns both and sweeps — Thrakesion
καὶ τοῖς Μαλαγίνοις πλησιάζει καὶ προσδοκῶνται ὅσον
and — to-Malagina draws-near and are-expected as-much-as
οὐδέπω δεινά, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ στυγνάσαντος μὲν τοῦ
not-yet terrible(-things) and at this having-been-gloomy indeed the
πρωτονοταρίου, ἀπαγγείλαντος δὲ μετὰ κατηφείας τὴν
protonotarios having-announced and with dejection the
ἐκ τοῦ δομεστίκου τῶν σχολῶν ἀπόκρισιν καὶ ἅμα ἐπὶ
from the domestic of-the scholae answer and at-once on
χεῖρας τὰ γράμματα φέροντός τε καὶ δεικνύοντος, "τίνι"
hands the letters bearing both and showing with-what
φησίν, "ὦ οὗτος, τόλμῃ χρησάμενος τοιαῦτα κατὰ τὸν
he-says O this(-man) daring having-used such(-things) during the
ἀναγκαῖον τοῦτον ἀγῶνά μοι διαλέγειν ἐπιχειρεῖς, τοῦτο
necessary this contest to-me to-discuss you-attempt this
μόνον σπουδάζοντι, εἰ μὴ τὸν μέσον εὐώνυμον ἰδεῖν
only being-eager if not the middle left to-see
παρατετραμμένον; ὑπὲρ οὗ μοι πᾶς ὁ ἀγών."
turned-aside for which to-me all the contest

Michael dines in a poor woman's house, parodies the liturgy with Gryllos as mock patriarch, and mocks his mother. Bardas dreams his own death and, marching with Michael against Crete, is cut down at Kepoi by Basil and his men in a plot Michael abets. Michael adopts Basil, makes him magistros, and crowns him co-emperor, but comes to hate him for his rebukes, crowns the oarsman Basilikinos, and has a spear thrown at Basil in a hunt, which misses. Chamberlains kill Michael at St. Mamas, after fourteen years with Theodora, eleven alone, and one with Basil. His offerings to the Great Church are praised.

37 Καὶ οὐχὶ μὲν τούτῳ τῷ πόθῳ, ἢ εἰ βούλει γε, πάθει
and not indeed by-this the longing or if you-wish at-least by-passion
ἡλίσκετο, ἑτέρων δὲ ἀπρεπεστέρων ἐκτὸς ἦν, ἀλλὰ
he-was-caught of-others and more-unseemly outside he-was but
καὶ μέτριον ἦθος ἀμέτρως καταδιώκων ἐξέπιπτε τοῦ
also moderate character immoderately pursuing he-fell-out of-the
πρέποντος καὶ τῆς βασιλικῆς τιμῆς τὰ μάλιστα.
fitting and of-the imperial honor the(-things) most
καί ποτε γυναίῳ, ἧς τὸν παῖδα υἱοθετησάμενος ἦν,
and once (a)-woman whose the child having-adopted he-was
κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν συντυχὼν ἐκ βαλανείου μὲν ἐρχομένῃ
on the road having-met from (the)-bath indeed coming
τὴν ἑαυτῆς δὲ κάλπιν ἐπὶ χεῖρας ἐχούσῃ, ἐκ τοῦ
the her-own and pitcher on hands having from the
ἵππου ἀπορριφεὶς τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ὅσοι ἐκ
horse having-thrown-himself the indeed others as-many-as from
τῆς συγκλήτου τούτῳ ἐπηκολούθουν κατὰ τὰ ἐκεῖσε
the senate him followed to the there
ὄντα ἀνάκτορα ἐξαπέστειλεν, ἀκόλαστα δέ τινα καὶ
being palace he-sent-off licentious and some and
μυστικὰ ἀνδράρια ἑταιρισάμενος ἀπῄει μετὰ τῆς
secret mannikins having-taken-as-companions he-went-off with the

γυναικός, τὴν κάλπιν τῶν ἐκείνης χειρῶν ἀναλαβών, καὶ
woman the pitcher from-the her hands having-taken-up and
"ἄγε δή, ὦ γύναι, θαρροῦσα" ἐπέλεξεν "ἐμὲ κατὰ τὸ
come indeed O woman taking-courage he-said me in the
οἴκημά σου ἀπόδεξαι, ψωμοῦ πιτυρώδους ἔφεσιν ἔχοντα
house your receive of-morsel bran-filled desire having
καὶ ἀσβεστοτύρου." δεῖ γὰρ τὴν ἐκείνου λέξιν
and of-cottage-cheese (it)-is-necessary for the his word
εἰπεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ ξένῳ τοῦ θεάματος ἡ γυνὴ ἦν
to-say since and at-the strangeness of-the sight the woman was
ἐνεὸς καὶ πάντων ἠπόρει, μήτε μὴν τράπεζαν μήτε
dumbfounded and for-all(-things) was-at-a-loss neither indeed table nor
τὰ ταύτης στολίζοντα ἔχουσα, ὁ Μιχαὴλ θᾶττον
the(-things) of-it adorning having — Michael quicker
ἢ λόγος εἶχε στραφείς, τὸ ὃ ἔφερε σάβανον ἐκ
than word had having-turned the which she-carried towel from
τοῦ βαλανείου ἔτι διάβροχον ὂν λαβών, ἀντὶ λεπτῆς
the bath still soaked being having-taken instead-of fine
ὀθόνης, ἣ τῇ τραπέζῃ ἐπίκειται, χρησάμενος, καὶ τὴν
linen which on-the table is-laid having-used and the
κλεῖδα τῆς γυναικὸς ἀφελὼν αὐτὸς ἦν τὰ πάντα,
key of-the woman having-taken-away he was the all
βασιλεύς, τραπεζοποιός, μάγειρος, δαιτυμών. ἐκβαλὼν
emperor table-setter cook diner having-thrown-out
δὲ τὰ ἃ εἶχεν τῆς πενιχρᾶς ἐκείνης ἡ κιβωτός,
and the(-things) which held of-the poor that(-woman) the chest
εἱστιᾶτο ταύτῃ καὶ συνεδείπνει, τὴν μίμησιν πρὸς τὸν
he-feasted with-her and dined-with the imitation to the
ἐμὸν ἀναφέρων Χριστὸν καὶ θεόν. κἀκεῖθεν βάδην
my referring Christ and god and-from-there step-by-step
αὖθις ἀπῄει πρὸς τὰ ἀνάκτορα, πολλῆς εὐηθείας καὶ
again he-went-off to the palace much silliness and

ἀλαζονείας καὶ τύφου καταγινώσκων τῶν πρὸ τοῦ
boastfulness and pride condemning of-the before the(-time)
βασιλέων· οὗ ἐκεῖνοι λήρου εἰ ἤκουσαν, "ἀλλ' οὐχ ἄλλως
emperors which those nonsense if they-had-heard but not otherwise
τρυφῶντα καὶ παίζοντα ταῦτα" ἔφησαν "ἐχρῆν
reveling and playing these(-things) they-would-have-said (it)-was-necessary
σε ποιεῖν καὶ τὸν ἡμέτερον τύφον καταγινώσκειν, ἀλλὰ
you to-do and the our pride to-condemn but
προπολεμοῦντα καὶ τῶν ἀναγκαίων σπανίζοντα καὶ τοῖς
fighting-in-front and of-the necessaries lacking and to-the
στρατιώταις σύνδειπνον ὄντα καὶ ἐραστήν, ἀλλ' οὐ
soldiers dining-companion being and lover but not
γυναίων καπηλίδων καὶ μοχθηρῶν." ταῦτ' οὖν ἅπαντα
of-women tavern-keepers and wretched these(-things) then all
μισητόν τε ἐποίει τὸν Μιχαὴλ καὶ τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ ἐκίνει
hated both made — Michael and the — of-god moved
δικαιοτάτην ὀργήν.
most-just wrath

38 Καὶ τὸ δὴ χαλεπώτερον, ἡ τῶν ὧν εἶχε μεθ'
and the indeed more-grievous(-thing) the of-the(-men) whom he-had with
ἑαυτοῦ φρατρία, Σατυροί τινες οὗτοι καὶ πρὸς πᾶσαν
himself brotherhood Satyrs some these and for every
αἰσχρουργίαν ἀκόλαστοι· εἶπεν ἄν τις αὐτοὺς θιασώτας
obscenity licentious would-say — someone them revelers
εἶναι Διονύσου καλῶς. οὓς ἐκεῖνος διὰ τιμῆς ἄγων
to-be of-Dionysus well whom he through honor holding
τε καὶ αἰδοῦς, τῶν θείων κατολιγωρῶν, ἱερατικὰς
both and respect the divine(-things) despising priestly
στολὰς χρυσοϋφάντους τε ἐπετίθει καὶ ὠμοφόρια, καὶ
robes gold-woven both put-on(-them) and omophoria and
ἄλλως ἠνάγκαζεν ἀσχημόνως τε καὶ ἀνάγνως τελεῖν τὰ
otherwise compelled indecently both and impurely to-perform the

ἁγνά, καὶ πατριάρχην τὸν ἔξαρχον τούτων ἐκάλει, οὕτω
pure(-things) and patriarch the leader of-them he-called so
Γρῦλον καλούμενον, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς ἕνδεκα μητροπολίτας
Gryllos called the and rest eleven metropolitans
τῶν ἐξαιρέτων θρόνων τε καὶ λαμπρῶν, οἷς εἰ
of-the chosen thrones both and brilliant with-whom if
μὴ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκοινώνει, οὐδὲ βασιλεύειν ἠξίου· ὅθεν
not also himself shared not-even to-reign he-thought-fit whence
ὁ Κωλωνείας οὗτος ἐλέγετό τε καὶ ὀνομάζεται
the(-one) of-Koloneia this(-man) was-called both and is-named
πρόεδρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ᾄδειν ἐχρῆν αὐτοὺς καὶ
proedros since and also to-sing (it)-was-necessary-for them and
τελεῖν τὰ μυστήρια, τὰς μὲν ᾠδὰς ἐξεπλήρουν διὰ
to-perform the mysteries the indeed songs they-fulfilled through
κιθάρας, νῦν μὲν ἠρέμα πως οὕτω καὶ λιγυρῶς
(the)-cithara now indeed softly somehow so and shrilly
ἐπηχοῦντες, τὰ μυστικὰ μιμούμενοι, νῦν δὲ ἀνέτῳ
sounding the mystic(-parts) imitating now and with-unrestrained
φορᾷ καὶ διαπρυσίῳ, τὰς ἐκφωνήσεις δῆθεν τῶν ἱερέων.
rush and piercing the exclamations forsooth of-the priests
καὶ σκεύη δὲ διάχρυσα καὶ ἐκ μαργάρων συγκείμενα
and vessels too gilded and of pearls composed
ὄξους τε καὶ σινήπεως ἐκπληροῦντες τοῖς οἷς
of-vinegar both and mustard filling to-the(-ones) whom
ἐβούλοντο μεταλαμβάνειν ἐδίδοσαν, τῶν ἀχράντων οὕτω
they-wished to-partake they-gave of-the immaculate thus
καταπαίζοντες μυστηρίων. οὗτος οὖν ὁ Γρῦλος καὶ
mocking mysteries this then — Gryllos also
ὄνῳ ἐπωχεῖτο τὰς δημοσίας προόδους τελῶν, καὶ
on-(a)-donkey rode the public processions performing and
τὸν τοιοῦτον θίασον συνεπόμενον ἔχων ἠγάλλετο. καί
the such company following having exulted and

ποτε συνέβη συντυχεῖν Ἰγνατίῳ τῷ μακαρίτῃ πατριάρχῃ
once it-happened to-meet Ignatius the blessed patriarch
κατὰ πρόοδον τῇ ἐκκλησιαστικῇ λιτῇ μετὰ τοῦ ἱερατικοῦ
in procession by-the ecclesiastical litany with the priestly
κλήρου ἐφεπομένῳ. ὡς οὖν εἶδεν αὐτὸν ὁ Γρῦλος,
clergy following when then saw him — Gryllos
ἄσμενος τοῦ πράγματος ἑλόμενος ἐξῆρχέ τε τῶν
gladly of-the matter having-chosen he-led both the
κρουμάτων, καὶ τὸν φελόνην ἀναστείλας μετὰ τῶν αὐτοῦ
strummings and the phelonion having-drawn-up with the his
συμμυστῶν εὐτονωτέρας τε ἔκρουε τὰς κιθάρας καὶ
fellow-initiates more-vigorously both struck the citharas and
τοὺς εὐαγεῖς ἐκείνους λοιδορίαις καὶ αἰσχίστοις ἔβαλλε
the holy those with-insults and most-shameful pelted
ῥήμασι.
words

39 καὶ Θεοδώραν δὲ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ μητέρα ἔτι ζῶσαν
and Theodora too the his-own mother still living
καὶ τοῖς ἀνακτόροις διαιτωμένην μετεκαλέσατό ποτε
and in-the palace dwelling he-summoned once
εὐλογηθησομένην παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ, πλασάμενος τοῦτον εἶναι
going-to-be-blessed by him having-pretended this(-one) to-be
τὸν μακαρίτην Ἰγνάτιον. ὡς οὖν ἐξῄει μετ᾽ εὐλαβείας
the blessed Ignatius when then she-came-out with piety
καὶ αἰδοῦς ἡ ἱερωτάτη γυνή, ἔρριψεν εἰς τοὔδαφος
and reverence the most-holy woman threw to the-ground
ἑαυτὴν ἐξαιτουμένη εὐχὴν (καὶ γὰρ ἐλάνθανε τέως, τὴν
herself asking (a)-prayer and for be-escaped-notice for-a-time the
γενειάδα κρύπτων κατὰ τὸ πρόχειρον), ψόφον αὐθωρὸν
beard hiding at the ready (a)-noise at-once
ἐπαφεὶς δυσωδίας πλήρη καὶ ῥήματα ἀπρεπῆ τὰς
having-let-out of-stench full and words unseemly the

ἐκείνης καὶ τῶν εὐσεβεστέρων εἰς ἑαυτοὺς ἐξεκαλεῖτο
her and of-the more-pious upon themselves called-forth
ἀράς, ἢ καὶ τὸ μέλλον ἀποφοιβάσασα τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ
curses who also the future having-prophesied of-the — of-god
προνοίας τε καὶ χειρὸς ἔξω γενέσθαι διεσάφει τῷ
providence both and hand out-of to-be explained —
Μιχαήλ.
to-Michael
Ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦν ἄνδρα παρατραπέντα δὴ τῆς
but not was(-it-possible) (a)-man turned-aside indeed from-the
εὐθείας καὶ ἀποστάντα τῆς ἀρετῆς ἀνακληθῆναι καὶ
straight(-road) and having-departed from-the virtue to-be-recalled and
τῆς μακαρίας λαβέσθαι ὁδοῦ. ὅθεν οὐδὲ πορρωτέρω
the blessed to-take road whence not-even farther
δὴ τὰ κακά, ἀλλ' ἑαυτοῖς ἐκείνοις πλησιάζειν ἐποίουν
indeed the evils but to-themselves those to-draw-near made
οἱ τῶν τοιούτων αἴτιοι καὶ ἐφευρεταί. καὶ πρῶτον
the(-ones) of-the such causes and inventors and first
μὲν εἰς ἑαυτὸν ὁ Βάρδας ταῦτα ἐπέφερεν, μᾶλλον
indeed upon himself — Bardas these(-things) brought rather
δὲ ὁ Θεόκτιστος ὁ κανίκλειος πρὸ αὐτοῦ, εἴτε δὴ
and — Theoktistos the kanikleios before him whether indeed
τῷ παντελῶς τούτῳ χαρίζεσθαι πάντας δὴ ὁμοθυμαδὸν
by-the wholly him to-gratify all indeed with-one-accord
καὶ μὴ τῶν πονηροτέρων ἀνακόπτειν διδαγμάτων
and not from-the more-wicked to-check teachings
ὡς ἐπιτρόπων ἐπιχειρούντων, εἴτε δὴ τοῦ μὲν ἑνὸς
as guardians attempting or indeed the indeed one
ἀναστέλλοντος, τοῦ δ' ἑτέρου μὴ τὰ ἴσα φρονοῦντος
restraining the and other not the equal(-things) thinking
ἐξ ἐριθείας καὶ συναναστέλλοντος, ἀλλ' ἐπιτρέποντος
from rivalry and joining-in-restraining but permitting

μᾶλλον, ὡς καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐν τοῖς καθ᾽ ἡμᾶς χρόνοις
rather as also we in the(-times) of us times
τοιούτους ἐθεασάμεθα. πλὴν ἐπήγαγον εἰς ἑαυτοὺς τὰ
such(-men) beheld but they-brought upon themselves the
κακά, καὶ ὁ μὲν Θεόκτιστος νῦν μέν, ὡς εἴρηται,
evils and — indeed Theoktistos now indeed as has-been-said
σφαττόμενος, νῦν δὲ ταῖς αἷς ἐπεχείρει δουλείαις μὴ
being-slaughtered now and in-the which he-attempted services not
κατευοδούμενος. καὶ γὰρ πολλῶν στρατιῶν πολλάκις
prospering and for of-many armies often
προκριθεὶς ἡγεμών, καὶ κατὰ πολλῶν ὁρμήσας πολεμίων
preferred leader and against many having-rushed enemies
νῦν τε καὶ πρὸ τούτου οὐδαμοῦ νικήσας ὑπέστρεψεν
now both and before this nowhere having-conquered he-returned
ἢ τὸ σύνολον τῶν ἐχθρῶν καθυπερτερῶν, ἡττώμενος
or the whole of-the enemies overcoming being-defeated
δὲ καὶ πανωλεθρίᾳ τὰ στρατεύματα παραδούς, οὐκ
but and to-total-destruction the armies having-handed-over not
οἶδα εἴτε φρονήσεως ἀμοιρῶν καὶ λόγου καὶ τῶν ἐν
I-know whether of-prudence having-no-share and of-reason and of-the in
πολέμοις ἀνδραγαθημάτων ἀπείρως ἔχων ἅτε δὴ
wars brave-deeds inexperienced being inasmuch-as indeed
μήτε μελετήσας ταῦτα ποτέ, ἢ τινι ἄλλῃ μείζονι
neither having-practiced these(-things) ever or by-some other greater
αἰτίᾳ τῇ ὑπὲρ ἡμᾶς, ἢ καὶ τῇ εἰρημένῃ νυνί.
cause the(-one) beyond us or also by-the said now
καὶ γὰρ ἡλιακῶν ποτὲ ἐκλείψεων δύο γεγενημένων,
and for of-solar once eclipses two having-happened
κατὰ τῶν Ἀβασγῶν οὗτος προκριθεὶς στρατηγὸς
against the Abasgians this(-man) preferred (as)-general
θεομηνίας ἀπήλαυσε δυστυχῶς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ναυαγίῳ
divine-wrath enjoyed unfortunately the(-ones) indeed for on-shipwreck

περιπεσόντες περὶ τὴν ἑαυτῶν ζωὴν ἐδυστύχησαν, οἱ
having-fallen about the their-own life were-unfortunate the(-others)
δὲ καὶ τῆς ξηρᾶς ἐπιβάντες ταῖς ἐκείνων δυστυχίαις
and also the dry-land having-set-foot-on in-the their misfortunes
συνεκοινώνησαν. καὶ οὗτος μὲν οὕτως ἀπώλετο ὁ
shared and this indeed thus perished the
στρατός· μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ δὲ πάλιν θρασύτερον ἁψάμενος
army after not long and again more-boldly having-touched
τοῦ πολέμου ὑπὲρ τὰς τέσσαρας μυριάδας ἀπέβαλε
the war beyond the four myriads he-lost
τοῦ στρατοῦ. καὶ αὖθις κατὰ τῶν ἐν Κρήτῃ Ἀράβων
of-the army and again against the in Crete Arabs
στρατεύσας ἄπρακτος ὑπέστρεψεν, οὐκ ὀλίγους τῶν
having-campaigned unsuccessful he-returned not few of-the(-men)
περὶ αὐτὸν ἐκεῖσε καταλιπὼν διὰ τὸ φυγῇ χρησάμενον
about him there having-left because-of the flight having-used
ἀθρόως ἀπαλλαγῆναι αὐτῆς. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἐκεῖνος
in-a-body to-be-rid of-it but these(-things) indeed he
πρότερον·
before
νῦν δὲ σύμβολά τινα προφανῆ καὶ κομητῶν ἐπιτολαὶ 40
now and signs some manifest and of-comets risings
καὶ ὄψεις ὀνειράτων γινόμεναι τὰ μέλλοντα τῷ Βάρδᾳ
and visions of-dreams happening the future — to-Bardas
δεινὰ παρεγύμνουν, οὐκ ἐξ αὐτομάτου πάντως ἢ καὶ
terrors laid-bare not from chance surely or also
ἄλλως ἀλόγῳ φορᾷ, προνοίᾳ δέ τινι τοῦ μὴ τὸν
otherwise by-irrational motion by-providence but some of-the(-one) not the
θάνατον ζητοῦντος ὡς τὴν ἐπιστροφὴν τοῦ ἁμαρτωλοῦ.
death seeking as the turning of-the sinner
κατὰ τὸν ὕπνον γοῦν ἔδοξεν οὗτος πρὸς τὸ τοῦ
in the sleep at-any-rate seemed he to the —

θεοῦ τέμενος, ᾧ ἐπώνυμον Σοφία, μετὰ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ
of-god precinct to-which (the)-name (is)-Wisdom with — Michael
ἐν πανδήμῳ πανηγύρει καὶ προελεύσει φοιτᾶν. ὡς
in public festival and procession to-go when
οὖν ἀφίκοντο καὶ κατὰ μέσον ἐγένοντο τοῦ ναοῦ,
then they-arrived and in (the)-middle they-were of-the church
λευκοφόροι τινὲς ἀνεφαίνοντο δύο τὸν ἀριθμόν, τὸ σχῆμα
white-clad some appeared two the number the form
ἀγγελοειδεῖς· ὡς δὲ προσωτέρω μᾶλλον ἐχώρησαν, ἄλλο
angel-like when and farther rather they-went other
μὲν ὁρῶσιν οὐδέν, ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ θρόνῳ τινὰ γηραιὸν
indeed they-see nothing on and the throne some old(-man)
ἐγκαθήμενον (Πέτρον εἶναι τοῦτον τὸν κορυφαῖον τῶν
sitting Peter to-be this(-one) the chief of-the
ἀποστόλων ὑπώπτευσαν) καὶ περὶ τοὺς ἐκείνου πόδας
apostles they-suspected and about the his feet
τὸν μακαρίτην Ἰγνάτιον καλινδούμενον καὶ τὴν παρ᾽
the blessed Ignatius rolling and the from
ὧν ἐπεπόνθει δεινὰ ἐκδίκησιν ἰδεῖν ἐξαιτούμενον.
whom he-had-suffered terrible(-things) vengeance to-see asking
ὁ δὲ ἐκείνῳ τε οἷα συμπάσχων ἔφησε δοῦναι οὐκ
he and to-him both as sympathizing said to-give not
εἰς μακράν, καὶ τῶν ἐφεστώτων ἑνὶ (δύο δὲ
for long and of-the(-ones) standing-by to-one two and
τούτῳ χρυσοφοροῦντες ἐφαίνοντο) μάχαιραν οὐ μεγάλην
to-this gold-wearing appeared (a)-sword not large
δοὺς "ἄγε δή, ταύτῃ" ἔφησε "τὸν μὲν τῇ τῶν
having-given come indeed with-this he-said the(-one) indeed in-the of-the
εὐωνύμων χώρᾳ ἐγκαταστήσας μεληδὸν διάτεμνε τὸν
left place having-set limb-by-limb cut-apart the
θεόργιστον," οὕτω δὴ τὸν Καίσαρα εἰπών, "τὸν δὲ
god-hated thus indeed the Caesar having-said the(-one) and

ἄλλον ἀσεβότεκνον,” οὕτω τὸν βασιλέα κατονομάσας,
other impious-child so the emperor having-named
“κατάλεγε μὲν τοῖς δεξιοῖς, τὴν δ’ ὁμοίαν δίκην
enroll indeed with-the right(-ones) the but like penalty
ἀπεκδέχεσθαι πρόσειπε.” καὶ ὁ μὲν ὄνειρος οὕτω
to-await tell and the indeed dream thus
δὴ ἐτελεύτα· ὃ δὲ ὕπαρ ἀλλ’ οὐκ ὄναρ
indeed ended which but (a)-waking-vision but not (a)-dream
ἐστίν,
is
ἄρτι κατὰ τῶν Κρητικῶν πανδημεὶ μετὰ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ 41
just against the Cretans with-all-the-people with — Michael
καθωπλίζετο, καὶ πρὸς τὸν τῆς ὑπεραγίας δεσποίνης ἡμῶν
he-was-arming and to the of-the all-holy lady our
θεοτόκου ναόν, ὃς οὕτω δὴ Ὁδηγοὶ κατονομάζεται,
god-bearer church which so indeed Hodegoi is-named
προσφοιτήσας εἰσῄει μετὰ λαμπάδων τὸν συντακτήριον
having-gone he-entered with torches the farewell
ἐκπληρῶν. ὡς οὖν τοῖς ἀδύτοις πλησιάζων ἀπῄει, ἄφνω
fulfilling when then to-the sanctuary approaching he-went suddenly
τῶν αὐτοῦ ὤμων ἡ χλανὶς ὀλισθήσασα αἰσθέσθαι τοῦτον
from-the his shoulders the cloak having-slipped to-perceive him
καινοτέρων δεινῶν ἐνεποίησεν. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ πρὸ μιᾶς
of-newer of-terrors made and he too before one
ἡμέρας τοῦ μέλλειν αὐτὸν ἀπαίρειν ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως,
day of-the to-be-about him to-depart from the city
εἴτ’ ἀφ’ αὐτοῦ εἴτε καὶ ἄλλως ὑπὸ τοῦ μέλλοντος
whether from himself or also otherwise by the future
ἐλαυνόμενος, τοὺς φίλους συναγαγὼν εἰς ταὐτὸν καὶ
being-driven the friends having-gathered into the-same(-place) and
συμποσιάσας μεμνῆσθαί τε τῆς αὐτοῦ παρῄνει φιλίας
having-feasted to-remember both the his he-exhorted friendship

αὐτοὺς καὶ λεγάτα ὡς τοῦ βίου ἤδη γινόμενος ἔξω
them and legacies as from-the life already becoming out(-of)
ἐπέδωκεν. ἀλλ᾽ ἔδει ταῦτα τέλος λαβεῖν. ὡς οὖν
he-gave but (it)-was-necessary these(-things) (an)-end to-take when then
κατὰ τῆς Κρήτης ἐξῄεσαν καὶ τῷ θέματι τῶν Θρακησίων
against — Crete they-went-out and the theme of-the Thrakesioi
ἐπέβησαν κατὰ Κήπους, τόπον τινὰ οὕτω κατονομαζόμενον,
set-foot-on at Kepoi (a)-place some so named
οἱ τούτοις ὑπηρετοῦντες προφθάσαντες τὰς σκηνὰς
the(-men) them serving having-got-ahead the tents
κατεπήγνυον ἁμίλλῃ χρώμενοι καὶ σπουδῇ. ἔνθα πως,
pitched rivalry using and zeal where somehow
εἴτε δὴ κατὰ πρόνοιαν εἴτε δὴ καὶ ἄλλως δι᾽
whether indeed by providence or indeed also otherwise because-of
ἄγνοιαν, τὴν μὲν τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἐπὶ πεδιάδος χωρίου καὶ
ignorance the indeed — of-Michael on level ground and
ὁμαλοῦ αὐλαίαν ἐκπεταννύουσιν, εἰς λόφον δέ τινα καὶ
even tent they-spread-out on (a)-hill and some and
ὑπερανεστηκότα χῶρον τῆς γῆς τὴν τοῦ Καίσαρος· ὅπερ
overtopping place of-the earth the(-one) of-the Caesar which
ὡς ἑρμαῖόν τι καὶ ἀπροσδόκητον κέρδος λαβόντες οἱ
as (a)-windfall some and unexpected gain having-taken the(-men)
τῷ Μιχαὴλ κατεβόων τοῦ Καίσαρος, κατῃτιῶντο τὸ
— to-Michael cried-out of-the Caesar accused the(-thing)
γεγονὸς καὶ τὰς κατ᾽ ἐκείνου ἔρραπτον συμβουλάς.
having-happened and the against him stitched counsels
ἀλλ᾽ ἔθραττεν αὐτοὺς καὶ νωθροτέρους πως πρὸς τὴν
but troubled them and more-sluggish somehow to the
ἐγχείρησιν ἐποίει ἡ τοῦ Καίσαρος κραταιοτέρα ἰσχύς· ὅ
attempt made the of-the Caesar more-powerful strength the
τε γὰρ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν Ἀντίγονος τούτῳ μᾶλλον,
both for domestic of-the scholae Antigonos him rather

ἀλλ᾽ οὐ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὡς υἱὸς ἐπειθάρχει καὶ ἤγετο, οἵ
but not the emperor as son obeyed and was-led the
τ᾽ ἄλλοι δὴ στρατηγοί, καὶ ὁ τοῦ δρόμου τοὺς
both others indeed generals and the(-one) of-the dromos the
λόγους διδούς, οὕτω καλούμενος Συμβάτιος, ἐπὶ θυγατρὶ
words giving so called Symbatios for (the)-daughter
αὐτοῦ ὑπάρχων γαμβρὸς ἀναντιρρήτως τὰ ἐκείνου
his being son-in-law indisputably the(-things) of-that(-man)
φρονεῖν ἠναγκάζετο. ἀλλ᾽ ἔλαθεν οὗτος κλαπεὶς καὶ
to-think was-compelled but escaped-notice he stolen(-away) and
μᾶλλον τὸν φόνον τοῦ πενθεροῦ κατεργασόμενος. ὡς
rather the murder of-the father-in-law going-to-work-out when
οὖν ἡ βουλὴ ἠρτύθη καὶ ὁ λόχος ηὐτρέπιστο καὶ
then the counsel was-prepared and the ambush had-been-made-ready and
οἱ τὸ ἔργον εἰς πέρας ἄγοντες ἕτοιμοι, σύνθημα
the(-men) the deed to end bringing ready (the)-signal
ὁ Συμβάτιος ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἄλλος ηὐτρέπιστο. ἄρτι οὖν
— Symbatios but not another had-been-made-ready just then
ἐξῄει τὰς ἀναφορὰς ἀναγνοὺς ἐξ αὐτῶν, καὶ τὸ
he-came-out the reports having-read from them and the
σημεῖον ἐδίδου σταυρὸν εἰς τὸ πρόσωπον ἐγχαράττων
sign he-gave (a)-cross on the face drawing
αὐτοῦ. ἀλλ᾽ αὖθις ἀναβολαί τινες ἦσαν καὶ ἀτολμίαι
his but again delays some were and failures-of-nerve
τῷ παρουσιάζειν καὶ κατὰ τὸ πρόσωπον ἵστασθαι τὴν
by-the to-be-present and at the face to-stand the
τοῦ Καίσαρος ἑταιρείαν· ὅπερ ὁ Μιχαὴλ εὐλαβούμενος
of-the Caesar retinue which — Michael fearing
μὴ κατάφωρος γένηται καὶ καθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ ἐπισπάσῃ
lest detected he-should-become and upon himself should-draw
τὴν μάχαιραν, ἐθαρσοποίει τε τοὺς ἄνδρας διὰ πιστοῦ
the sword encouraged both the men through faithful

τινὸς καὶ θαρραλεωτέρους ἐδείκνυ ταῖς ὑποσχέσεσι
some(-one) and bolder made(-them) with-the promises
καὶ τιμαῖς.
and honors
κἂν παρῆλθεν τὸν κίνδυνον καὶ τὸν φόνον ὁ Καῖσαρ
and-would-have passed the danger and the murder the Caesar
ἐξέφυγεν, τῷ δέει τούτων καταπλησσομένων καὶ ἀθυμίᾳ
escaped by-the fear them being-stunned and by-despondency
καταβαλλομένων· ἀλλὰ πάλιν δι᾽ ἀποκρίσεως ἐδήλου
being-cast-down but again through (a)-reply he-made-known
τῷ Βασιλείῳ (παρακοιμώμενος δὲ οὗτος ἦν) τὴν ἐπὶ
— to-Basil parakoimomenos and this(-man) was the on
ξυροῦ ἑστῶσαν ἀνάγκην, καὶ ἀπελέγετο τὴν ζωήν, καὶ
(a)-razor standing necessity and renounced the life and
πρὸς τὸν φόνον καθώπλιζεν. ὧν ἀκηκοὼς ὁ Βασίλειος,
to the murder armed(-them) which having-heard — Basil
καὶ περὶ τοῦ βασιλέως κατορρωδῶν, ἀπορρῖψαι πείθει τὸ
and about the emperor dreading to-cast-off persuades the
δέος αὐτούς, καὶ "ὦ τῆς ἀνδρίας" εἰπὼν "καὶ εὐτόλμου
fear them and O of-the courage having-said and of-daring
ψυχῆς" ἐπτέρωσέ τε ἄφνω αὐτοὺς καὶ εἰσπηδῆσαι πρὸς
soul be-winged both suddenly them and to-leap-in to
τὸν ἀγῶνα ἐποίησεν. οὓς ὁ Βάρδας ἀθρόως ξιφήρεις
the contest made whom — Bardas all-at-once sword-bearing
ἰδὼν καὶ καταπλαγεὶς ἔγνωκέ τε τὸν θάνατον καὶ
having-seen and astonished knew both the death and
πρὸς τοὺς πόδας ἔρριψε τοῦ βασιλέως αὐτόν. ἀλλ᾽
to the feet threw of-the emperor himself but
οὐκ ἦν τοῦτον διεκφυγεῖν· ὅθεν αὐθωρὸν ἐκεῖθέν
not was(-it-possible) this to-escape whence at-once from-there
τε αὐτὸν ἀποσπῶσι καὶ μεληδὸν κατατέμνουσι, μηνὶ
both him they-drag-away and limb-by-limb cut-up in-month

Ἀπριλλίῳ, εἰκάδι πρώτῃ, ἰνδικτιῶνος τεσσαρεσκαιδεκάτης.
April twenty first of-indiction fourteenth
εἶτα κοντῷ τὰ παιδογόνα τούτου ἀπαιωρήσαντες μόρια
then on-(a)-pole the generative his having-hung parts
παραδειγματίζουσί τε καὶ θριαμβεύουσι. θορύβου δὲ
they-make-an-example both and parade of-uproar and
πολλοῦ γενομένου καὶ ταραχῆς, ἦν ἰδεῖν καὶ
much having-arisen and confusion was(-it-possible) to-see also
τὸν Μιχαὴλ μικροῦ τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς θέοντα· ἀλλ'
— Michael almost the(-race) for soul running but
ὁ τῆς βίγλης δρουγγάριος (Κωνσταντῖνος δὲ ἦν)
the(-one) of-the Vigla droungarios Constantine and he-was
ἐν μέσῳ που συρρυεὶς τὸν πολὺν ἐκεῖνον διέλυσε
in (the)-middle somewhere having-flowed-in the much that dissolved
θροῦν, εὐφημίαις τε βάλλων αὐτὸν καὶ παρατάξεις
murmur with-acclamations both pelting him and battle-lines
ἀνθοπλίζων κατὰ τῶν ἐπανισταμένων. ὁ μὲν δὴ
arming against the(-ones) rising-up — indeed indeed
Βάρδας οὕτως ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο, καὶ οὕτως ἡ κατὰ
Bardas thus out-of men became and thus the against
τῶν Κρητῶν διελύθη στρατιά, τοῦ βασιλέως κατὰ τὸ
the Cretans was-dissolved army the emperor to the
Βυζάντιον ὑποστρέψαντος.
Byzantion having-returned
Καὶ ἕτερον δὲ σημεῖον πρὸ δύο ἢ καὶ πρὸ τριῶν 42
and another too sign before two or also before three
ἡμερῶν τῷ Βάρδᾳ παρεσημαίνετο· ἡ γὰρ Θεοδώρα,
days to-Bardas was-signified — for Theodora
εἴτ' ἄλλως θεοφορουμένη εἴτε δὴ καὶ ὑπό τινος
whether otherwise god-inspired or indeed also from some(-one)
τῶν μεμελετημένων διακούσασα, ἐσθῆτά τινα
of-the(-things) planned having-heard (a)-garment some

παγκάλην μὲν καὶ χρυσαῖς πέρδιξι πεποικιλμένην,
very-fine indeed and with-golden partridges embroidered
οὐκ ἀναλογοῦσαν δὲ τῷ μήκει τῆς ἡλικίας αὐτοῦ
not proportioned but to-the length of-the stature his
ἀλλὰ καὶ πολὺ ἀποδέουσαν αἰνιγματωδῶς ἐξαπέστειλεν.
but also much falling-short enigmatically sent-off
τό τε γὰρ πέρδικας ἀλλὰ μή τινας ἄλλας τῶν
the both for partridges but not some others of-the
ὀρνίθων ἐνυφᾶναι, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τὸ τῆς ἐσθῆτος
birds to-weave-in but indeed also the(-thing) of-the garment
ἐνδέον εἰς δόλον ἐμπεσεῖν θᾶττον ἢ ἔδει
falling-short into guile to-fall quicker than (it)-was-necessary
προυσήμανεν.
foretold

43 Πλὴν ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς ὑπέστρεφε, τόν τε Βασίλειον,
yet but the indeed emperor returned — both Basil
ἐπεὶ μὴ εὐμοίρει παιδός, υἱοποιεῖται καὶ τῆς τῶν
since not he-was-blessed (with)-(a)-child he-adopts and of-the of-the
μαγίστρων τιμῆς ἀξιοῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ χρόνου προϊόντος
magistroi honor deems-worthy when and time advancing
τὰ κοινὰ διοικεῖν οὐχ οἷός τε ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἦν καὶ
the common(-affairs) to-administer not able — — Michael was and
τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἀφελείας ᾐσθάνετο καὶ ἅμα ἐπανάστασιν
the his-own simplicity he-perceived and at-once (an)-uprising
μελετᾶσθαι καὶ ἀποστασίαν παρὰ τῆς συγκλήτου διήκουεν
to-be-planned and (a)-revolt by the senate be-heard
τῷ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων διοικεῖσθαι κακῶς, καὶ
by-the the(-affairs) of-the Romans to-be-administered badly also
τὸ περιμάχητον διάδημα τῇ κεφαλῇ αὐτοῦ ἐπιτίθησι,
the much-fought-for diadem on-the head his he-places
καὶ βασιλέα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πεντηκοστῆς, μηνὶ Μαΐῳ,
and (as)-emperor on-the day of-Pentecost in-month May

εἰκάδι ἕκτῃ, ἰνδικτιῶνος τεσσαρεσκαιδεκάτης, ἀναδείκνυσί
twenty sixth of-indiction fourteenth proclaims
τε καὶ ἀναγορεύει κατὰ τὴν μεγάλην ἐκκλησίαν ᾗ
both and acclaims in the great church to-which
ἐπώνυμον σοφία θεοῦ. ἀλλ᾽ ὅστις μὲν οὗτος ὁ
(the)-name (is)-wisdom of-god but who indeed this —
Βασίλειος καὶ ὅθεν, καὶ ὅπως ἦλθεν εἰς γνῶσιν τοῦ
Basil and whence and how he-came into knowledge of-the
κρατοῦντος, ἡ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ἱστορία δηλώσει· τὰ νῦν
ruler the about him history will-make-clear the now
δὲ τῆς βασιλείου δόξης ἀξιωθεὶς εἴχετο μὲν τῆς
and of-the imperial glory deemed-worthy he-held indeed to-the
βασιλείας, ἀπείχετο δὲ τῶν καθ᾽ ἑκάστην ἁμιλλητηρίων
empire he-kept-away and from-the on each(-day) races
καὶ ἱπποδρομιῶν καὶ τῶν περὶ τὸν αἰσχρότατον
and horse-races and of-the(-ones) about the most-shameful
Γρῦλον καὶ ψευδοπατριάρχην αἰσχρουργιῶν, ὧν ἀκαίρως
Gryllos and false-patriarch obscenities in-which untimely
ἐνετρύφα ὁ Μιχαήλ.
reveled — Michael
πάντων μὲν γὰρ κόρον εἶναι καὶ τῶν αἰσχρῶν καὶ 44
of-all indeed for satiety to-be also of-the shameful(-things) and
τῶν φυσικῶν εἴρηταί τε πολλοῖς, καὶ ἡ πεῖρα τούτων
of-the natural has-been-said both by-many and the experience of-these
διδάσκαλος ἀκριβής· Μιχαὴλ δὲ τῷ τότε κρατοῦντι οὔτε
teacher exact Michael and to-the then ruling neither
τῶν ἱπποδρομιῶν οὔτε μὴν τῶν ἄλλων ἀκρατοποσίων
of-the horse-races nor indeed of-the other unmixed-drinkings
τε καὶ αἰσχρῶν κόρος ἦν, ὡς φασίν. ἃ πειρώμενος
both and shameful(-things) satiety was as they-say which trying
κωλύειν ὁ Βασίλειος καὶ πορρωτέρω τούτων ποιεῖν
to-hinder — Basil and farther from-them to-make

αὐτόν, νῦν μὲν παραινέσεσι χρώμενος, νῦν δ' ἄλλως
him now indeed exhortations using now and otherwise
μῖσος παρὰ τῶν πολιτῶν καὶ τὰς παρὰ τῶν ἱερέων
hatred from the citizens and the from the priests
ἀρὰς καὶ τὰς τῆς συγκλήτου ἐπαναστάσεις προτιθεὶς
curses and the of-the senate uprisings setting-before(-him)
καὶ οἷον ἐνώπιον αὐτοῦ ζωγραφῶν, ἔλαθε τῷ
and as-it-were before him painting escaped-notice to-the
φθόνῳ ἑαυτὸν καθυποβαλών, καὶ ἀντὶ φίλου ἐχθρὸς
envy himself subjected and instead-of friend enemy
καὶ μεμισημένος ὁ υἱοθετηθεὶς ἐνομίζετο. ἐντεῦθεν οὐ
and hated the adopted(-one) was-thought from-here not
πολὺ τὸ ἐν μέσῳ, καί τινα ἄλλον, τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
much the in between and some other of-the imperial
δρόμωνος ἐρέτην τηνικαῦτα τελοῦντα (Βασιλικῖνος οὗτος
dromon oarsman then serving Basilikinos this(-one)
ἐλέγετο, καὶ ἀδελφὸς ἦν Καπνογένους ἐκείνου τοῦ
was-called and brother he-was of-Kapnogenes that the(-one)
τὴν ὑπαρχικὴν ἀξίαν ἠξιωμένου τὸ δεύτερον), ἀγαγὼν
the eparchal rank deemed-worthy the second(-time) having-brought
τὴν πορφύραν τε ἐνδύει καὶ τὸ διάδημα περιτίθησιν,
the purple both he-clothes(-in) and the diadem puts-around
καὶ τὰ παράσημα τῶν ὑποδημάτων περιβαλὼν ἐξάγει
and the insignia of-the shoes having-put-on he-leads-out
πρὸς τὴν σύγκλητον τῆς χειρὸς ἔχων αὐτόν, καὶ
to the senate by-the hand holding him and
πρὸς τὴν γερουσίαν φησὶν ὡς ἔδει πάλαι με
to the council he-says that (it)-was-necessary long-ago me

τοῦτον εἰς τουτονὶ τὸν περίβλεπτον κόσμον, ὦ ἄνδρες,
him into this(-very) the admired adornment O men
ἐπαγαγεῖν.
to-bring

πρῶτον μὲν εἶδος ἄξιον τυραννίδος,
first indeed (a)-form worthy of-tyranny
καὶ δεύτερον δὲ συμφυὲς πέλει στέφος,
and second too natural is (the)-crown
ἅπαντα δ' ἁρμόζουσι πρὸς τὴν ἀξίαν·
all and fit to the rank

καὶ ὅτι πόσον ἦν κάλλιον τοῦτόν με ποιῆσαι
and that how-much it-would-have-been finer him me to-make
βασιλέα ἢ τὸν Βασίλειον, ἐφ' ᾧ μεταμεμέλημαι ἐφ'
emperor than — Basil at which I-have-repented in
οἷς αὐτὸν ἐβασίλευσα." αὕτη τῆς καταλύσεως αὐτοῦ
which him I-made-emperor this of-the downfall his
ἡ ἀρχή. τοῦτο πάντας περιηχῆσαν ἐκπλαγῆναί τε
the beginning this all having-resounded-round to-be-astonished both
τούτους ἐποίησε καὶ ἀφασίᾳ καταληφθῆναι πολλῇ, ὅτι
them made and by-speechlessness to-be-seized much that
κατὰ τοὺς μυθικοὺς Γίγαντας βασιλέας σπαρτοὺς καθ'
like the mythical Giants emperors sown(-ones) on
ἑκάστην ἡμέραν ἀναδίδωσιν. ηὔξητο μὲν οὖν ἔκτοτε
each day he-sends-up increased indeed then from-then
τὸ πρὸς τὸν Βασίλειον μῖσος, καὶ σφοδρότερον κατὰ
the toward — Basil hatred and more-violently according-to
τὴν τοῦ πυρὸς φύσιν ἐγίνετο, ὑπέκκαυμα ἔχον καὶ
the of-the fire nature it-became fuel having and
αἴτιον τὸ μήτε συμφθείρεσθαι βούλεσθαι τούτοις
cause the(-thing) neither to-be-corrupted-with to-wish with-them

αὐτὸν μήτε μὴν συνεπάγεσθαι ταῖς ἀκολάστοις γνώμαις
him nor indeed to-be-drawn-along by-the licentious judgments
αὐτῶν. εἰς τοσαύτην γὰρ ὁ Μιχαὴλ πολλάκις ἄνοιαν ἐξ
their to so-great for — Michael often folly from
ἀκρατοποσίας καὶ μέθης ἐξώκειλεν ὡς κατ' αὐτὴν μὲν
unmixed-drinking and drunkenness ran-aground that in it indeed
καὶ τὸν ταύτης καιρὸν δεινά τινα καὶ πέρα δεινῶν
and the of-it time terrible(-things) some and beyond terrible
ἐγκελεύεσθαι· τοῦ μὲν γὰρ ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὰ ὦτα καὶ
to-order of-the(-one) indeed for to-take-off the ears and
ἄλλου τὴν ῥῖνα καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν ἑτέρου προσέταττεν·
of-another the nose and the head of-another he-commanded
ἃ εἰ μή τινες οἴκτῳ κρατούμενοι παρημέλουν καὶ πρὸς
which if not some by-pity overcome neglected and to
τὴν αὔριον ἔπεμπον, ἀνάκλησίν τινα καὶ μεταμέλειαν τοῦ
the morrow sent recall some and repentance of-the
ἀνδρὸς ἐκδεχόμενοι, ὅπερ καὶ ἦν, κἂν ἀπώλετο
man expecting which also was(-so) and-would-have perished
σύμπας ὁ παραμένων αὐτῷ καὶ συγκαρτερῶν.
all the(-company) remaining with-him and enduring-with(-him)
μικροῦ δὲ καὶ Βασίλειος συναπώλετο, τῆς παροινίας
almost and also Basil perished-with of-the drunken-violence
οὐκ ὀλιγάκις παίγνιον γεγονώς. ἀλλ' ἐκαρτέρει καὶ ἔμενε
not seldom (a)-plaything having-become but he-endured and waited
μετάμελόν τινα γενηθῆναι κατὰ τὸν ἄνδρα ὀψὲ γοῦν
repentance some to-come-about in the man late at-any-rate
ὑποτοπάζων. ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦν τοῦτον ὥσπερ ἁρμάτειον
suspecting but not was(-it-possible) him like (a)-chariot
τροχὸν ἐκ πρώτης ἡλικίας καμφθέντα, οὐδ' ἂν εἴ
wheel from first age bent not-even — if
τι γένοιτο, τὴν ἐξ ἀρχῆς εὐθυωρίαν λαβεῖν.
anything should-happen the from (the)-beginning straightness to-take

τοιγαροῦν μείζονα κατὰ Βασιλείου συρράπτει ἐπιβουλήν.
therefore greater against Basil he-stitches (a)-plot
ἡ δὲ ἦν ἐν τῷ κυνηγίῳ λόγῳ μὲν κατὰ τῆς θήρας
it and was in the hunt in-word indeed against the game
ἔργῳ δὲ κατὰ τοῦ Βασιλείου τὴν τῆς λόγχης ῥῖψιν
in-deed but against — Basil the of-the spear throw
ποιῆσαί τινα τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν. καὶ τοῦτο αὐτὸς ὁ
to-make some(-one) of-the shield-bearers and this himself the(-one)
προσταγεὶς καὶ τὴν λόγχην ἀφεὶς κατὰ τὸν τῆς ἐξόδου
ordered and the spear having-let-fly at the of-the exit
καιρὸν ἐξαγορεύσας δῆλον πεποίηκε καὶ πιστόν. ἀφῆκε
time having-confessed plain made and credible let-fly
μὲν οὖν οὗτος τὴν λόγχην ὁ κελευσθείς, διημάρτανε
indeed then he the spear the(-one) ordered missed
δέ· καὶ οὕτω σέσωστο ὁ Βασίλειος, ἔγγιστα θανάτου
and also thus was-saved — Basil nearest to-death
γενόμενος, ὑπὸ τοῦ τὸν θάνατον καταπεπατηκότος θεοῦ.
having-come by the the death having-trampled god
ταῦτ' οὖν ἔκπυστα γενόμενα πᾶσι καὶ φανερὰ τὴν
these(-things) then known having-become to-all and plain the
κατ' αὐτοῦ ἠκόνησε μάχαιραν. ἵνα γὰρ μὴ καὶ τὸν
against him whetted sword that for not also —
Βασίλειον ὡς πρὸ μικροῦ τὸν Καίσαρα σφαττόμενον
Basil as before (a)-little the Caesar slaughtered
ἴδωσι, καὶ πρὸ τούτου αὐτὸν Θεόκτιστον, εἴτε
they-might-see and before this him Theoktistos whether
βουλῇ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς εἴτε γνώμῃ τῶν
by-counsel of-the senatorial council or by-judgment of-the(-ones)
φιλούντων Βασίλειον (κοινὸς γὰρ καὶ κατ' αὐτῶν ὁ
loving Basil common for also against them the
θάνατος ἐπηπείλητο) σφάττεται ὑπὸ τῶν προκοίτων
death had-been-threatened he-is-slaughtered by the chamberlains

τοῦ βασιλέως ἀνδρῶν, κατὰ τὰ ἀνάκτορα τοῦ ἁγίου
of-the emperor men at the palace of-the holy
μεγαλομάρτυρος Μάμαντος, μηνὶ Σεπτεμβρίῳ, εἰκάδι
great-martyr Mamas in-month September twenty
τετάρτῃ, ἰνδικτιῶνος πρώτης, ἔτους ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ
fourth of-indiction first of-year six-thousandth
τριακοσιοστοῦ ἑβδομηκοστοῦ ἕκτου, ὥρᾳ τῆς νυκτὸς
three-hundredth seventieth sixth at-hour of-the night
τρίτῃ, βεβασιλευκὼς ἔτη μετὰ μὲν τῆς Θεοδώρας τῆς
third having-reigned years with indeed — Theodora the
τούτου μητρὸς τέσσαρα καὶ δέκα, καὶ μόναρχος δέκα καὶ
his mother four and ten and sole-ruler ten and
ἕν, καὶ πρὸς τοῖς τρισὶ μησὶ χρόνον ἕνα ὕστερον μετὰ
one and besides the three months year one later with
Βασιλείου.
Basil

45 Καὶ τὰ μὲν εἰρημένα σκηνικά τε ἅπαντα καὶ
and the(-things) indeed said theatrical both all and
θεατρικά, ἄξιον δὲ μεμνῆσθαι καὶ τῶν ἐπαινετῶν. ἡ
stage-like worthy and to-remember also the praiseworthy(-things) the
γὰρ τῶν ὧν ἔφερεν ἀναθημάτων ἐν τῷ περιωνύμῳ ναῷ
for of-the which he-brought offerings in the renowned church
τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ σοφίας κατασκευὴ φιλεργῶς τελεσθεῖσα
of-the — of-god wisdom making industriously completed
καὶ φιλοτίμως ἐπαινετή. οὔτε γὰρ τῷ δίσκῳ τῶν
and munificently (is)-praiseworthy neither for to-the paten of-the
παλαιῶν τι κειμηλίων καὶ ἱερῶν, καὶ τῶν ἀφ᾽
ancient any treasures and holy and of-the(-ones) since
οὗ γεγόνασιν ἄνθρωποι τεχνουργηθέντων ἐν ναοῖς,
which(-time) there-have-been men wrought in churches
κατὰ τὸ μέγεθος ἐξισάζεται, οὔτε τις εὐπρέπεια καὶ
in the size is-equaled nor any seemliness and

ὡραιότης τινὶ τῶν γενομένων ἐπήνθησεν, πάντων
beauty in-any of-the(-things) made bloomed of-all
ἐκεῖ τῶν ὡραίων καὶ τιμίων συνδεδραμηκότων·
there the beautiful(-things) and precious having-run-together
καὶ τὸ ποτήριον δὲ τούτῳ λίαν κατάλληλον. οὐ
and the chalice too to-this very fitting not
μὴν δὲ καὶ ὁ εἰς φωταγωγίαν κατασκευασθεὶς
indeed but also the for lighting made
αὐτῷ κύκλος, ὅπερ φασὶ πολυκάνδηλον, τινὶ τῶν
for-it circle which they-call polykandelon than-any of-the
ἄλλων ἠλάττωται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος ἐκ χρυσοῦ ὅλος
others is-less but also this of gold wholly
γενόμενος, λίτρας ἔχων ἑξήκοντα, τῶν ἄλλων διαφέρει
made pounds having sixty from-the others differs
κατὰ πολὺ καὶ τούτῳ δίδωσι τὰ πρωτεῖα καὶ τὸ
by much and to-this gives the first-prize and the
σεβάσμιον.
reverence
